

# **Device Management**

SL1 version 8.10.0

## Table of Contents

Introduction to Devices	
Overview	
What is a Device?	1
What is a Device Record?	
How Does the ScienceLogic Platform Manage Devices?	2
Device Concepts and Terminology	
What is Discovery?	
What is Virtualization?	
What is a Dynamic Application?	
What is a Credential?	
What is a Virtual Device?	
What are Component Devices?	
What is a Device Class?	7
What is a Device Category?	8
What is an Asset Record?	8
What is the ScienceLogic agent?	9
Overview of Collection and Data	10
Overview	
What Is Collection?	10
What Kind of Data Can the ScienceLogic Platform Collect?	11
What Kind of Data can the ScienceLogic agent Collect?	
What is Device Availability?	13
What is Device Latency?	14
Monitoring Policies	14
Device Registry Pages	16
Viewing the List of All Devices	16
Device Manager Preferences	19
Filtering the List of Devices	20
Special Characters	21
Using the Advanced Filter with the List of Devices	25
Generating a Report for Multiple Devices	
Generating a Report for a Single Device	29
Viewing the List of Component Devices	
Viewing Children Devices	
Filtering the List of Component Devices	
Using the Advanced Filter with the List of Component Devices	
Bulk Actions in the Device Management Page	
Bulk Actions for Component Devices	39
Bulk Merging and Unmerging of Devices	40
Performing a Bulk Device Merge	
Performing a Bulk Device Unmerge	44
Viewing Details in the Device Reports Panel	46
What is the Device Reports panel?	
Device Dashboards in the Device Summary Page	49
The Default Device Summary Page	
Read-Only Information	
Vitals	
Tickets and Events	
Elements	
Monitors	57

System Component Utilization
Shortcut Keys for Device Reports panel
Overview
Viewing System Vitals for a Device Viewing Availability Reports for a Device Viewing Latency Reports for a Device Viewing a Report on CPU Usage for a Device Viewing a Report on Physical Memory Usage for a Device Viewing a Report on Physical Memory Usage for a Device 73 Viewing a Report on Virtual Memory Usage for a Device 75 Viewing a Report on File System Usage for a Device 77 Viewing Reports on Network Interfaces 77 Viewing Reports for Network Interfaces 81 Default Reports for Network Interfaces 82 Network Utilization Report 84 Network Bandwidth Usage Report 85 Network Bandwidth Usage Report (Stacked) 86 Network Error Report (Percent) 87 Network Error Report (Percent) 88 CBQoS Reports for Network Interfaces 90 Class Map Overview 92 Match Statements Overview 93 Policing Overview 94 Queueing Overview 95 Set Overview 95 Set Overview 96 Traffic Shaping Overview 97 WRED Overview 97 WRED Overview 97 Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy 104 Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy 105 Viewing Reports on an SOAP or SML Transaction Policy 115 Viewing Port Availability Reports for a Single Device 116 Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy 116 Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Device 117 Viewing Ravialability Reports for a Single Device 117 Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Device 118 Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device 119 Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device 112 Viewing Configuration & Journal Data 125 Overview 125 Overview 125 Overview 125 Overview 126 Overview 127 Overview 128
Viewing Availability Reports for a Device
Viewing Latency Reports for a Device Viewing a Report on CPU Usage for a Device 71 Viewing a Report on Physical Memory Usage for a Device 73 Viewing a Report on Virtual Memory Usage for a Device 75 Viewing a Report on File System Usage for a Device 77 Viewing Reports on Network Interfaces 77 Viewing Reports for Network Interfaces 81 Default Reports for Network Interfaces 82 Network Utilization Report 84 Network Bandwidth Usage Report 85 Network Bandwidth Usage Report 86 Network Error Report 87 Network Error Report 88 CBQoS Reports for Network Interfaces 90 Class Map Overview 92 Match Statements Overview 92 Match Statements Overview 93 Policing Overview 94 Queueing Overview 95 Set Overview 96 Traffic Shaping Overview 97 WRED Overview 97 WRED Overview 97 WRED Overview 97 WRED Overview 97 Viewing Reports about DNS Servers and DNS Records for a Device 102 Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy 104 Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy 105 Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy 106 Viewing Reports on a Web Content Policy 115 Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy 116 Viewing Port Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device 112 Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy 115 Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy 116 Viewing Rong Configuration & Journal Data 125 Configuration Dynamic Applications 125 Configuration Dynamic Applications
Viewing a Report on CPU Usage for a Device
Viewing a Report on CPU Usage for a Device
Viewing a Report on Physical Memory Usage for a Device
Viewing a Report on File System Usage for a Device77Viewing Reports on Network Interfaces81Default Reports for Network Interfaces82Network Utilization Report84Network Bandwidth Usage Report85Network Bandwidth Usage Report (Stacked)86Network Error Report87Network Error Report (Percent)88CBQoS Reports for Network Interfaces90Class Map Overview92Match Statements Overview93Policing Overview94Queueing Overview95Set Overview96Traffic Shaping Overview96Viewing Reports about DNS Servers and DNS Records for a Device102Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy104Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy106Viewing Reports for a Single System Process on a Device112Viewing Reports for a Vieb Content Policy116Viewing Ravailability Reports for a Single Device115Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Device115Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Viewing a Report on File System Usage for a Device77Viewing Reports on Network Interfaces81Default Reports for Network Interfaces82Network Utilization Report84Network Bandwidth Usage Report85Network Bandwidth Usage Report (Stacked)86Network Error Report87Network Error Report (Percent)88CBQoS Reports for Network Interfaces90Class Map Overview92Match Statements Overview93Policing Overview94Queueing Overview95Set Overview96Traffic Shaping Overview96Viewing Reports about DNS Servers and DNS Records for a Device102Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy104Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy106Viewing Reports for a Single System Process on a Device112Viewing Reports for a Vieb Content Policy116Viewing Ravailability Reports for a Single Device115Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Device115Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Viewing Reports on Network Interfaces81Default Reports for Network Interfaces82Network Utilization Report84Network Bandwidth Usage Report85Network Bandwidth Usage Report (Stacked)86Network Error Report87Network Error Report (Percent)88CBQoS Reports for Network Interfaces90Class Map Overview92Match Statements Overview93Policing Overview94Queueing Overview95Set Overview96Traffic Shaping Overview97VRED Overview100Viewing Reports about DNS Servers and DNS Records for a Device102Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy104Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy106Viewing Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device112Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Device on a Device122Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Default Reports for Network Interfaces82Network Utilization Report84Network Bandwidth Usage Report85Network Bandwidth Usage Report (Stacked)86Network Error Report87Network Error Report (Percent)88CBQoS Reports for Network Interfaces90Class Map Overview92Match Statements Overview93Policing Overview94Queueing Overview95Set Overview96Traffic Shaping Overview97WRED Overview100Viewing Reports about DNS Servers and DNS Records for a Device102Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy104Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy106Viewing Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device112Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Device on a Device122Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Network Utilization Report
Network Bandwidth Usage Report (Stacked) 86 Network Bandwidth Usage Report (Stacked) 86 Network Error Report 87 Network Error Report (Percent) 87 Network Error Report (Percent) 88 CBQoS Reports for Network Interfaces 90 Class Map Overview 92 Match Statements Overview 93 Policing Overview 94 Queueing Overview 95 Set Overview 95 Set Overview 96 Traffic Shaping Overview 97 WRED Overview 97 WRED Overview 97 WRED Overview 97 WRED Overview 97 Viewing Reports about DNS Servers and DNS Records for a Device 102 Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy 104 Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy 106 Viewing Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device 112 Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy 115 Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy 116 Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device 112 Viewing Configuration & Journal Data 125 Overview 125 Configuration Dynamic Applications 125
Network Bandwidth Usage Report (Stacked)86Network Error Report87Network Error Report (Percent)88CBQoS Reports for Network Interfaces90Class Map Overview92Match Statements Overview93Policing Overview94Queueing Overview95Set Overview96Traffic Shaping Overview97WRED Overview97Viewing Reports about DNS Servers and DNS Records for a Device102Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy104Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy106Viewing Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device112Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device122Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Network Error Report87Network Error Report (Percent)88CBQoS Reports for Network Interfaces90Class Map Overview92Match Statements Overview93Policing Overview94Queueing Overview95Set Overview96Traffic Shaping Overview97WRED Overview100Viewing Reports about DNS Servers and DNS Records for a Device102Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy104Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy106Viewing Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device112Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device122Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Network Error Report (Percent)88CBQoS Reports for Network Interfaces90Class Map Overview92Match Statements Overview93Policing Overview94Queueing Overview95Set Overview96Traffic Shaping Overview97WRED Overview100Viewing Reports about DNS Servers and DNS Records for a Device102Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy104Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy106Viewing Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device112Viewing Port Availability Reports for a Single Device115Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device122Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
CBQoS Reports for Network Interfaces 90 Class Map Overview 92 Match Statements Overview 93 Policing Overview 94 Queueing Overview 95 Set Overview 96 Traffic Shaping Overview 97 WRED Overview 97 WRED Overview 97 WRED Overview 100 Viewing Reports about DNS Servers and DNS Records for a Device 102 Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy 104 Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy 106 Viewing Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device 112 Viewing Port Availability Reports for a Single Device 115 Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy 116 Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device 122 Viewing Configuration & Journal Data 125 Overview 125 Configuration Dynamic Applications 125
Class Map Overview92Match Statements Overview93Policing Overview94Queueing Overview95Set Overview96Traffic Shaping Overview97WRED Overview100Viewing Reports about DNS Servers and DNS Records for a Device102Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy104Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy106Viewing Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device112Viewing Port Availability Reports for a Single Device115Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device122Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Match Statements Overview93Policing Overview94Queueing Overview95Set Overview96Traffic Shaping Overview97WRED Overview100Viewing Reports about DNS Servers and DNS Records for a Device102Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy104Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy106Viewing Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device112Viewing Port Availability Reports for a Single Device115Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device122Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Policing Overview
Queueing Overview95Set Overview96Traffic Shaping Overview97WRED Overview100Viewing Reports about DNS Servers and DNS Records for a Device102Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy104Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy106Viewing Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device112Viewing Port Availability Reports for a Single Device115Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device122Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Set Overview96Traffic Shaping Overview97WRED Overview100Viewing Reports about DNS Servers and DNS Records for a Device102Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy104Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy106Viewing Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device112Viewing Port Availability Reports for a Single Device115Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device122Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Traffic Shaping Overview
WRED Overview
Viewing Reports about DNS Servers and DNS Records for a Device102Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy104Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy106Viewing Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device112Viewing Port Availability Reports for a Single Device115Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device122Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy104Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy106Viewing Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device112Viewing Port Availability Reports for a Single Device115Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device122Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy106Viewing Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device112Viewing Port Availability Reports for a Single Device115Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device122Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Viewing Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device112Viewing Port Availability Reports for a Single Device115Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device122Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Viewing Port Availability Reports for a Single Device115Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device122Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy116Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device122Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device122Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Viewing Configuration & Journal Data125Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Overview125Configuration Dynamic Applications125
Configuration Dynamic Applications
Viewing Data
Generating a Report of the Data
Viewing Historical Data
Editing the Application
Journal Dynamic Applications
Selecting Data to View
Viewing Data
Searching & Filtering the List of Data
Special Characters 132
Generating a Report of the Data
Editing the Application
Network Interfaces
Overview

Viewing All Interfaces Discovered by the ScienceLogic Platform	138
Viewing Interfaces for a Single Device	142
Generating a Report for Multiple Network Interfaces	146
Generating a Report for a Single Network Interface	148
Monitoring Interfaces	
Defining a Detailed Monitoring Policy for a Single Interface	150
Defining Monitoring Settings for Multiple Interfaces	
Defining Thresholds for an Interface	
Viewing the List of Discovered CBQoS Objects	
Filtering the List of Quality of Service (QoS) Objects	
Editing Thresholds for a Quality of Service (QoS) Object	
Viewing Reports About Interfaces and Bandwidth	
Global Settings that Affect Interfaces	
Behavior Settings	
Interface Threshold Defaults	
Quality of Service Threshold Defaults	
Monitoring Networks	
Overview	
IPv4 Networks	
Viewing the List of IPv4 Networks	
Filtering the List of Networks	
Browsing a Network	
Viewing Used and Unused IP Addresses in a Network	
Viewing Devices Aligned with a Network	
Viewing Interfaces Aligned with a Network	
Viewing a Map of a Network	
Generating a Report for a Network  Defining a New Network	
Merging One or More Networks	
Synchronizing One or More Networks	
Editing a Network's Properties	
Performing Dynamic Discovery for a Network	
Creating a Ticket About a Network	
Deleting One or More IPv4 Networks	
Hardware and Software	
Overview	
Viewing the List of All Discovered Hardware Components	
Filtering the List of Hardware Components	
Generating a Report for Multiple Hardware Components on Multiple Devices	
Hiding a File System	
Changing Thresholds for One or More File Systems	
Viewing the List of All Discovered Software Titles	
Filtering the List of Software Titles	
Viewing a List of Software Titles for a Single Device	
Filtering the List of Software	
Generating a Report on All Software on All Devices	
Generating an Exclusion Report for a Single Software Title	
Device Logs	216
Viewing Logs for a Device	216
Viewing Events Associated with a Log Entry	
Creating an Event Policy from a Log Entry	
Viewing Logs for All Devices	

Device Relationships	221
Overview of Device Relationships	
Viewing the List of Device Relationships	
Filtering the List of Device Relationships	
Viewing the Relationships for a Single Device	
The Device View Page	227
Event Correlation	
Defining Device Relationships	229
Device Categories that Don't Support Parent-Child Devices	230
Events that May Not Be Displayed in the Event Console	
Defining Event Correlation	
Layer-2 Topology Collection	234
CDP Topology Collection	
LLDP Topology Collection	
Layer-3 Topology Collection	
SSL Certificates	
Monitoring SSL Certificates	241
System Settings that Affect SSL Certificates in the ScienceLogic Platform	
Viewing the List of SSL Certificates	
Filtering the List of SSL Certificates	245
Device Processes	246
Overview	246
Viewing the List of Device Processes	247
Filtering the List of Device Processes	248
Viewing a List of System Processes on a Single Device	
Generating a Report on Multiple System Processes	
Generating an Exclusion Report for a Single System Process	253
Viewing the System Process Monitoring Policies	
Filtering the List of System Process Monitoring Policies	255
Defining a Monitoring Policy for a System Process	256
Editing a Monitoring Policy for a System Process	259
Executing a System Process Monitoring Policy	260
Example Policy for System Process	261
Viewing Reports for a System Process Policy	261
Deleting a System Process Monitoring Policy	261
Windows Services	263
Overview	263
Viewing the List of Windows Services	264
Filtering the List of Windows Services	
Viewing a List of Windows Services on a Single Device	266
Generating a Report on Multiple Windows Services	270
Generating an Exclusion Report for a Single Windows Service	272
Viewing the Windows Service Monitoring Policies	
Filtering the List of Windows Service Monitoring Policies	274
Defining a Policy to Monitor Windows Services	
Optional Settings in the ScienceLogic Platform	275
Required Configuration	
Required Configuration on External Device	
Defining the Policy	278
Executing a Monitoring Policy for a Windows Service	
Editing a Monitoring Policy for a Windows Service	
Example Policy for Windows Service	282

Viewing Reports about Windows Services	282
Deleting a Windows Service Policy	282
TCP Ports	284
What is a Port?	284
Port Security	284
Port Availability	
Viewing a List of All Open Ports on All Devices	285
Filtering the List of IP Ports	
Viewing a List of All Open Ports on a Single Device	
System Settings for Monitoring Port Availability	
Viewing the TCP/IP Port Monitoring Policies	
Filtering the List of TCP/IP Port Monitoring Policies	
Defining a Monitoring Policy for Port Availability	
Editing a Monitoring Policy for a TCP/IP Port	
Executing a TCP-IP Port Monitoring Policy	
Example Policy for TCP/IP Port Availability	
Viewing Reports for a Port-Availability Policy	
Deleting a TCP/IP Port Monitoring Policy	
he ScienceLogic agent	
Overview	
What is the ScienceLogic agent?	
What Kind of Data Can the ScienceLogic agent Collect?	
Installing the ScienceLogic agent	
Gathering Installation Information from the Device Manager Page	
Installing the Agent on a Linux System	
Checking the Version of the agent on a Linux System	
Updating the agent on a Linux System	
Uninstalling the agent on a Linux System	
Installing and Updating the Agent on a Windows System	
Checking the Version of the agent on a Windows System	
Uninstalling the agent on a Windows System	
Viewing the Discovered Device	
Configuring the Agent	
Adding the "SL Agent" Column to the Device Manager Page	
Configuring Agent Settings on a Device	
Nonitoring Domain Servers and DNS Records	
Monitoring Domain Names	
Viewing the List of Domain Name Monitoring Policies	
Filtering the List of Domain-Name Monitoring Policies	
Defining a Monitoring Policy for a Domain Name	
Editing a Monitoring Policy for a Domain Name	
Example Policy for Domain Name	
Executing the Domain-Name Monitoring Policy	
Viewing Reports for a Domain-Name Monitoring Policy	
Deleting a Domain-Name Policy	
Nonitoring Email Round-Trips	
Monitoring Email	
Viewing the Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policies	
Filtering the List of Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policies	
Defining an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy	
Required System Settings in the ScienceLogic Platform	
Required Configuration on the External Email Client	318

Defining the Policy	319
Editing an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy	321
Example Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy	
How the ScienceLogic Platform Collects and Calculates Round-Trip Time	322
Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy	
Deleting an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy	
Events for Email Round-Trip Policies	
Monitoring SOAP and XML Transactions	326
Monitoring SOAP or XML Transactions	326
Viewing the SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring Policies	327
Filtering the List of SOAP/XSL Transaction Policies	
Defining a SOAP/XML Transaction Policy	328
Editing a SOAP/XML Transaction Policy	331
Executing a SOAP/XML Transaction Policy	333
Example SOAP/XML Transaction Policy	333
Viewing Reports on a SOAP/XML Transaction Policy	334
Viewing Raw Data from a SOAP/XML Policy	334
Deleting a SOAP/XML Policy	
Monitoring Web Content	
Monitoring Web Content	
Viewing the Web Content Monitoring Policies	337
Filtering the List of Web Content Monitoring Policies	
Defining a Web Content Policy	
Executing the Web Content Monitoring Policy	344
Editing a Web Content Policy	
Example Web Content Policy	345
Viewing Reports on a Web Content Policy	346
Viewing ASCII Page Content	346
Viewing the Monitored Website	347
Deleting a Web Content Monitoring Policy	348
Managing a Single Device with the Device Administration Panel	349
What is the Device Administration Panel?	349
Actions Menu	352
Device Properties	355
Viewing Read-Only Information About the Device	356
Editing Device Settings	357
ldentification	358
Monitoring & Management	358
Preferences	362
Adding an IP Address to a Device	363
Removing an IP Address from a Device	365
Managing Device IP Addresses	366
Clearing the Device Cache	368
Aligning a Secondary Credential	370
Adding the Device to a Device Group	372
Creating a Ticket About the Device	
Adding a Note to a Device	376
Aligning Custom Attributes with a Device	379
Creating a New Extended Custom Attribute	380
Deleting an Extended Custom Attribute from a Device	382
Associating a Product SKU with the Device	
Merging Devices	384

Unmerging Individual Devices 389 Performing Administrative Tasks for One or More Devices 389 Shortcut Keys for Device Administration panel 390 Monoging Device Classes and Device Categories 392 Device Classess 392 Generic   SNMP 393 Non-SNMP 393 Non-SNMP 393 Agent-Only Device Classes 394 Filtering the List of Device Classes 394 Filtering a List of Device Classes 394 Filtering a New Device Classe of Type "SNMP-Enabled" 398 Editing an SNMP Enabled Device Class 397 Creating Device Classes 396 Creating a New Device Class of Type "SNMP-Enabled" 398 Editing an SNMP Enabled Device Class of Type "SNMP-Enabled" 398 Editing an SNMP Enabled Device Class of Type "SNMP-Enabled" 398 Editing an New Device Class for Devices with Device Class "Generic   SNMP" 401 Creating a New Device Class for Devices That Do Not Support SNMP 401 Creating a New Device Class for Devices That Do Not Support SNMP 405 Applying the New Device Class During Auto-Discovery 411 Editing a Device Class of Type "Component" 412 Editing a Device Class of Type "Component" 412 Editing a Device Class of Type "Component" 414 Managing Device Classes 415 Manually Changing the Device Classes 415 Manually Changing the Device Classes 415 Allgning One or More Device Classes 417 Allgning One or More Device Classes 417 Allgning One or More Device Classes 417 Peleting a Device Category 420 Editing a Device Category 421 Editing a Device Category 422 Editing a Device Category 424 Editing a Device Category 429 Editing a Device Category 431 Editing a Device Category 431 Edit	Merging Individual Devices	385
Shortcut Keys for Device Administration panel Managing Device Classes and Device Categories  Device Classes	Unmerging Individual Devices	387
Wandging Device Classes and Device Categories       392         Device Classes       392         Generic   SINMP       393         Non-SMMP       393         Component       393         Agent-Only Device Classes       393         Itlering the List of Device Classes       394         Filtering the List of Device Classes       396         Creating Device Classes       396         Creating and New Device Class of Type "SNMP-Enabled"       398         Editing an SNMP-Enabled Device Class       397         Creating a New Device Class for Device with Device Class "Generic   SNMP"       401         Creating a New Device Class for Devices That Do Not Support SNMP       401         Applying the New Device Class for Device State of Provices That Do Not Support SNMP       405         Applying the New Device Class During Auto-Discovery       411         Editing a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled       411         Creating a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled       411         Legacy Device Class of Type "Component"       412         Editing a Device Class of Type "Component"       414         Legacy Device Classes of Type "ICMP"       414         Monually Changing the Device Class for a Device       415         Changing Device Classes       417     <	Performing Administrative Tasks for One or More Devices	389
Wandging Device Classes and Device Categories       392         Device Classes       392         Generic   SINMP       393         Non-SMMP       393         Component       393         Agent-Only Device Classes       393         Itlering the List of Device Classes       394         Filtering the List of Device Classes       396         Creating Device Classes       396         Creating and New Device Class of Type "SNMP-Enabled"       398         Editing an SNMP-Enabled Device Class       397         Creating a New Device Class for Device with Device Class "Generic   SNMP"       401         Creating a New Device Class for Devices That Do Not Support SNMP       401         Applying the New Device Class for Device State of Provices That Do Not Support SNMP       405         Applying the New Device Class During Auto-Discovery       411         Editing a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled       411         Creating a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled       411         Legacy Device Class of Type "Component"       412         Editing a Device Class of Type "Component"       414         Legacy Device Classes of Type "ICMP"       414         Monually Changing the Device Class for a Device       415         Changing Device Classes       417     <	Shortcut Keys for Device Administration panel	390
Generic   SINMP		
Generic   SINMP	Device Classes	392
Agent-Only Device Classes 393 Agent-Only Device Classes 394 Kewing the List of Device Classes 394 Filtering the List of Device Classes 396 Creating Device Classes 396 Creating Device Classes 397 Editing an New Device Class of Type "SNMP-Enabled" 398 Editing an SNMP-Enabled Device Class 597 Editing an SNMP-Enabled Device Class 597 Editing an SNMP-Enabled Device Class 597 Editing an New Device Class for Device with Device Class "Generic SNMP" 401 Creating a New Device Class for Devices That Do Not Support SNMP 405 Applying the New Device Class During Auto-Discovery 411 Editing a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled 411 Editing a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled 411 Editing a Device Class of Type "Component" 412 Editing a Device Class of Type "Component" 414 Legacy Device Classes of Type "Component" 414 Legacy Device Classes of Type "Component" 414 Managing Device Classes of Type "ICMP" 415 Managing Device Classes of Type "Component" 415 Changing the Lon for a Device Class for a Device 415 Changing the Lon for a Device Classes 415 Changing the Lon for a Device Classes 417 Deleting One or More Device Classes 417 Aligning One or More Device Classes with a Device Dashboard 418 Device Categories 418 Device Categories 419 Pingable Device Category 420 Editing a Device Category 420 Editing a Device Category 421 Editing a Device Category 422 Editing a Device Category 424 Availability Monitoring on a Device Dashboard 423 Monitoring Device Availability and Device Latency 424 Event and Availability for Component Devices Latency 431 Defining Latency Monitoring on a Device Latency 433 Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency 433 Perice Maintenance 439 What is the Device Toolbox 430 What is the Device Toolbox 430 What is the Device Maintenance? 430 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 430		
Agent-Only Device Classes 393 Agent-Only Device Classes 394 Kewing the List of Device Classes 394 Filtering the List of Device Classes 396 Creating Device Classes 396 Creating Device Classes 397 Editing an New Device Class of Type "SNMP-Enabled" 398 Editing an SNMP-Enabled Device Class 597 Editing an SNMP-Enabled Device Class 597 Editing an SNMP-Enabled Device Class 597 Editing an New Device Class for Device with Device Class "Generic SNMP" 401 Creating a New Device Class for Devices That Do Not Support SNMP 405 Applying the New Device Class During Auto-Discovery 411 Editing a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled 411 Editing a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled 411 Editing a Device Class of Type "Component" 412 Editing a Device Class of Type "Component" 414 Legacy Device Classes of Type "Component" 414 Legacy Device Classes of Type "Component" 414 Managing Device Classes of Type "ICMP" 415 Managing Device Classes of Type "Component" 415 Changing the Lon for a Device Class for a Device 415 Changing the Lon for a Device Classes 415 Changing the Lon for a Device Classes 417 Deleting One or More Device Classes 417 Aligning One or More Device Classes with a Device Dashboard 418 Device Categories 418 Device Categories 419 Pingable Device Category 420 Editing a Device Category 420 Editing a Device Category 421 Editing a Device Category 422 Editing a Device Category 424 Availability Monitoring on a Device Dashboard 423 Monitoring Device Availability and Device Latency 424 Event and Availability for Component Devices Latency 431 Defining Latency Monitoring on a Device Latency 433 Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency 433 Perice Maintenance 439 What is the Device Toolbox 430 What is the Device Toolbox 430 What is the Device Maintenance? 430 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 430		
Agent-Only Device Classes 394 Viewing the List of Device Classes 394 Filtering the List of Device Classes 396 Creating Device Classes 397 Creating a New Device Class of Type "SNMP-Enabled" 398 Editing an SNMP-Enabled Device Class		
Viewing the List of Device Classes       394         Filtering the List of Device Classes       396         Friltering the Usit of Device Classes       397         Creating a New Device Class of Type "SNMP-Enabled"       398         Editing an SNMP-Enabled Device Class for a Device with Device Class "Generic   SNMP"       401         Creating a New Device Class for a Device with Device Symptom SNMP       405         Applying the New Device Class During Auto-Discovery       411         Editing a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled       411         Creating a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled       411         Editing a Device Class of Type "Component"       412         Editing a Device Class of Type "Component"       414         Legacy Device Classes of Type "Component"       414         Legacy Device Classes of Type "Component"       414         Managing Device Classes of Type "ICMP"       414         Managing Device Classes of Type "ICMP"       414         Legacy Device Classes of Type "ICMP"       415         Manually Changing the Device Classes       415         Manually Changing the Device Classes       417         Changing the Lon for a Device Classes       417         Aligning One or More Device Classes       417         Pilepting the List of Device Category       420		
Filtering the List of Device Classes		
Creating Device Classes		
Creating a New Device Class of Type "SNMP-Enabled"		
Editing an SNMP-Enabled Device Class Creating a New Device Class for a Device with Device Class "Generic   SNMP" 401 Creating a New Device Class for Devices That Do Not Support SNMP 405 Applying the New Device Class During Auto-Discovery 410 Editing a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled 411 Creating a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled 411 Creating a Device Class of Type "Component" 412 Editing a Device Class of Type "Component" 414 Legacy Device Classes of Type "Component" 414 Legacy Device Classes of Type "ICMP" 414 Managing Device Classes of Type "ICMP" 415 Managing Device Classes of Type "ICMP" 415 Changing the loon for a Device Class for a Device 415 Changing the loon for a Device Classes 417 Aligning One or More Device Classes 417 Aligning One or More Device Classes 417 Aligning One or More Device Classes 418 Device Categories 418 Viewing the List of Device Category 420 Creating a New Device Category 420 Editing a Device Category 421 Editing a Device Category 422 Aligning One or More Device Categories with a Device Dashboard 423 Monitoring Device Availability and Device Latency 422 Alonitoring Device Availability Monitoring on a Device 425 Defining Availability Thresholds 427 Configuring Availability For Component Devices 425 Defining Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency 431 Defining Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency 433 Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency 433 Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency 433 Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency 433 Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency 434 What is the Device Toolbox? 434 Viewing the Session Logs 437 Device Maintenance 439 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 439 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 439 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 440	Creating a New Device Class of Type "SNMP-Enabled"	398
Creating a New Device Class for a Device with Device Class "Generic   SNMP" 401 Creating a New Device Class for Devices That Do Not Support SNMP 405 Applying the New Device Class \$ 410 Maintaining the New Device Class During Auto-Discovery 411 Editing a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled 411 Creating a Device Class of Type "Component" 412 Editing a Device Class of Type "Component" 414 Legacy Device Classes of Type "Component" 414 Managing Device Classes of Type "ICMP" 415 Managing Device Classes of Type "ICMP" 416 Managing Device Classes of Type "ICMP" 417 Managing Device Classes of Type "ICMP" 417 Managing Device Classes 417 Deleting One or More Device Class for a Device 418 Changing the Loon for a Device Class 617 Deleting One or More Device Classes 417 Deleting One or More Device Classes with a Device Dashboard 418 Device Categories 418 Viewing the List of Device Category 420 Creating a New Device Category 420 Creating a New Device Category 420 Creating a New Device Category 421 Aligning One or More Device Categories with a Device Dashboard 423 Monitoring Device Availability and Device Latency 424 Availability 60 Configuring Availability Thresholds 425 Defining Availability Thresholds 427 Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device 428 Latency 431 Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device 431 Defining Latency Thresholds 433 Device Toolbox 434 What is the Device Toolbox? 434 Viewing the Device Toolbox? 434 Viewing the Device Toolbox 435 Device Maintenance 439 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 439 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 439 What is User Maintenance? 439	Editing an SNMP-Enabled Device Class	401
Creating a New Device Class for Devices That Do Not Support SNMP Applying the New Device Class Applying the New Device Class Alto Maintaining the New Device Class During Auto-Discovery Alt1 Editing a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled 411 Creating a Device Class of Type "Component" 412 Editing a Device Class of Type "Component" 414 Legacy Device Classes of Type "Component" 414 Managing Device Classes of Type "ICMP" 414 Managing Device Classes of Type "ICMP" 415 Manually Changing the Device Class for a Device 415 Changing the Icon for a Device Class 417 Deleting One or More Device Class with a Device Dashboard 418 Device Categories 419 "Pingable" Device Category 420 Creating a New Device Category 420 Creating a Device Category 420 Editing a Device Category 421 Deleting a Device Category 422 Aligning One or More Device Categories with a Device Dashboard 423 Monitoring Device Category 422 Availability 424 Configuring Availability and Device Latency 431 Configuring Availability For Component Devices 431 Defining Latency Thresholds 432 Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device 433 Device Toolbox 434 What is the Device Toolbox? 435 Device Maintenance 439 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 430 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 440		
Applying the New Device Class During Auto-Discovery		
Maintaining the New Device Class During Auto-Discovery  Editing a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled  411  Editing a Device Class of Type "Component"  414  Legacy Device Class of Type "Component"  414  Legacy Device Classes of Type "ICMP"  415  Managing Device Classes  415  Changing the Lorn for a Device Class for a Device  515  Changing the Lorn for a Device Classes  417  Deleting One or More Device Classes  418  Newing the List of Device Classes with a Device Dashboard  418  Viewing the List of Device Categories  419  "Pingable" Device Category  420  Editing a Device Category  421  Deleting a Device Category  422  Aligning One or More Device Category  422  Aligning One or More Device Category  423  Aligning One or More Device Category  424  Availability  Availability Availability and Device Latency  424  Configuring Availability Monitoring on a Device  425  Defining Availability Thresholds  426  Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device  431  Configuring Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency  431  Configuring Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency  433  Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency  434  What is the Device Toolbox?  434  Accessing the Device Toolbox?  434  Viewing the Session Logs  What is Scheduled Maintenance?  439  What is Scheduled Maintenance?  440		
Editing a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled 411 Creating a Device Class of Type "Component" 412 Editing a Device Class of Type "Component" 414 Legacy Device Classes of Type "ICMP" 414 Managing Device Classes of Type "ICMP" 415 Manually Changing the Device Classes 415 Manually Changing the Device Class for a Device 415 Changing the Icon for a Device Class 417 Peleting One or More Device Classes 417 Aligning One or More Device Classes with a Device Dashboard 418 Device Categories 418 Viewing the List of Device Category 420 Creating a New Device Category 420 Editing a Device Category 421 Aligning One or More Device Category 422 Aligning One or More Device Category 422 Aligning One or More Device Categories with a Device Dashboard 423 Monitoring Device Category 422 Aligning One or More Device Categories with a Device Dashboard 423 Monitoring Device Availability and Device Latency 424 Availability 424 Availability 424 Availability 425 Defining Availability Monitoring on a Device 425 Defining Availability Monitoring on a Device 425 Defining Availability Thresholds 427 Configuring Availability for Component Devices 428 Latency 431 Defining Latency Monitoring on a Device 431 Defining Latency Monitoring on a Device 433 Device Toolbox 434 Accessing the Device Toolbox page 434 Viewing Reports on Device Toolbox page 437 Device Maintenance 439 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 439 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 439 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 439		
Creating a Device Class of Type "Component" 412 Editing a Device Class of Type "Component" 414 Legacy Device Classes of Type "ICMP" 414 Managing Device Classes  415 Manually Changing the Device Classes  415 Manually Changing the Device Class for a Device 415 Changing the Icon for a Device Class  417 Deleting One or More Device Classes  417 Aligning One or More Device Classes  418 Device Categories  418 Viewing the List of Device Categories  419 "Pingable" Device Category  420 Creating a New Device Category  420 Editing a Device Category  421 Deleting a Device Category  422 Aligning One or More Device Categories with a Device Dashboard  423 Monitoring Device Category  422 Aligning One or More Device Categories with a Device Dashboard  423 Monitoring Device Category  422 Configuring Availability Monitoring on a Device Dashboard  423 Configuring Availability Thresholds  427 Configuring Availability Thresholds  427 Configuring Availability Thresholds  427 Configuring Availability For Component Devices  428 Latency  431 Defining Latency Monitoring on a Device  431 Defining Latency Thresholds  433 Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency  431 Defining Latency Thresholds  433 Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency  434 Accessing the Device Toolbox  434 What is the Device Toolbox page  434 Viewing the Session Logs  439 What is User Maintenance?  439 What is User Maintenance?  439		
Editing a Device Class of Type "Component" 414 Legacy Device Classes of Type "ICMP" 414 Managing Device Classes 415 Manually Changing the Device Class for a Device 415 Changing the Icon for a Device Class for a Device 417 Deleting One or More Device Classes 417 Aligning One or More Device Classes 417 Aligning One or More Device Classes with a Device Dashboard 418 Device Categories 419 Viewing the List of Device Categories 419 Pingable" Device Category 420 Creating a New Device Category 420 Creating a Device Category 421 Deleting a Device Category 422 Aligning One or More Device Categories with a Device Dashboard 423 Monitoring Device Availability and Device Latency 424 Configuring Availability Monitoring on a Device 425 Defining Availability Thresholds 427 Configuring Availability Thresholds 427 Configuring Availability for Component Devices 428 Latency 431 Defining Latency Monitoring on a Device 429 Latency 431 Defining Latency Monitoring on a Device 431 Defining Latency Thresholds 433 Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency 431 Defining Latency Thresholds 433 Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency 434 What is the Device Toolbox 434 Accessing the Device Toolbox 434 Viewing the Session Logs 437 Device Maintenance 439 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 439 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 439 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 440	Creating a Device Class of Type "Component"	412
Legacy Device Classes of Type "ICMP"  Managing Device Classes  A15  Manually Changing the Device Class for a Device  Changing the Icon for a Device Class  417  Deleting One or More Device Classes  417  Aligning One or More Device Classes  418  Device Categories  418  Viewing the List of Device Categories  419  "Pingable" Device Category  420  Creating a New Device Category  421  Deleting a Device Category  422  Aligning One or More Device Category  423  Monitoring Device Category  424  Availability  424  Configuring Availability Monitoring on a Device  Defining Availability Thresholds  427  Configuring Availability for Component Devices  Latency  431  Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device  432  More Toolbox  434  Accessing the Device Toolbox page  435  What is User Maintenance?  439  What is User Maintenance?	Editing a Device Class of Type "Component"	414
Managing Device Classes		
Manually Changing the Device Class for a Device		
Changing the Icon for a Device Class Deleting One or More Device Classes 417 Aligning One or More Device Classes with a Device Dashboard 418 Device Categories 418 Viewing the List of Device Categories 419 "Pingable" Device Category 420 Creating a New Device Category 420 Editing a Device Category 421 Deleting a Device Category 422 Aligning One or More Device Categories with a Device Dashboard 423 Monitoring Device Availability and Device Latency 424 Configuring Availability Monitoring on a Device 425 Defining Availability Thresholds 426 Latency 427 Configuring Availability for Component Devices 428 Latency 431 Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device 431 Defining Latency Thresholds 432 Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency 433 Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency 434 Accessing the Device Toolbox page 435 Viewing the Session Logs 436 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 439 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 439 What is User Maintenance? 439 What is User Maintenance?		
Deleting One or More Device Classes		
Aligning One or More Device Classes with a Device Dashboard Device Categories 418 Viewing the List of Device Categories 419 "Pingable" Device Category 420 Creating a New Device Category 421 Deleting a Device Category 422 Aligning One or More Device Category 423 Alonitoring Device Category 424 Availability 424 Availability 424 Configuring Availability Monitoring on a Device 425 Defining Availability Thresholds 427 Configuring Availability Thresholds 428 Latency 429 Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device 429 Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device 431 Defining Latency Thresholds 431 Configuring Latency Thresholds 433 Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency 431 Defining Latency Thresholds 433 Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency 434 What is the Device Toolbox? 434 Accessing the Device Toolbox page 435 Device Maintenance 439 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 439 What is Scheduled Maintenance? 439 What is User Maintenance? 439		
Device Categories		
Viewing the List of Device Categories419"Pingable" Device Category420Creating a New Device Category420Editing a Device Category421Deleting a Device Category422Aligning One or More Device Categories with a Device Dashboard423Monitoring Device Availability and Device Latency424Availability424Configuring Availability Monitoring on a Device425Defining Availability Thresholds427Configuring Availability for Component Devices428Latency431Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device431Defining Latency Thresholds433Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency433Device Toolbox434What is the Device Toolbox?434Accessing the Device Toolbox page434Viewing the Session Logs437Device Muintenance439What is Scheduled Maintenance?439What is User Maintenance?439		
"Pingable" Device Category420Creating a New Device Category420Editing a Device Category421Deleting a Device Category422Aligning One or More Device Categories with a Device Dashboard423Monitoring Device Availability and Device Latency424Availability424Configuring Availability Monitoring on a Device425Defining Availability Thresholds427Configuring Availability for Component Devices428Latency431Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device431Defining Latency Thresholds433Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency433Device Toolbox434Mhat is the Device Toolbox?434Viewing the Session Logs437Device Maintenance439What is Scheduled Maintenance?439What is User Maintenance?440		
Creating a New Device Category		
Editing a Device Category		
Deleting a Device Category		
Aligning One or More Device Categories with a Device Dashboard  Monitoring Device Availability and Device Latency  Availability  Configuring Availability Monitoring on a Device  Defining Availability Thresholds  Configuring Availability for Component Devices  Latency  Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device  Latency  Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device  Latency  Configuring Latency Thresholds  Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency  What is the Device Toolbox?  A34  Accessing the Device Toolbox page  Viewing the Session Logs  What is Scheduled Maintenance?  What is User Maintenance?  439  What is User Maintenance?		
Monitoring Device Availability and Device Latency424Availability424Configuring Availability Monitoring on a Device425Defining Availability Thresholds427Configuring Availability for Component Devices428Latency431Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device431Defining Latency Thresholds433Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency433Device Toolbox434What is the Device Toolbox?434Accessing the Device Toolbox page434Viewing the Session Logs437Device Maintenance439What is Scheduled Maintenance?439What is User Maintenance?440		
Availability		
Configuring Availability Monitoring on a Device		
Defining Availability Thresholds427Configuring Availability for Component Devices428Latency431Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device431Defining Latency Thresholds433Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency433Device Toolbox434What is the Device Toolbox?434Accessing the Device Toolbox page434Viewing the Session Logs437Device Maintenance439What is Scheduled Maintenance?439What is User Maintenance?440		
Configuring Availability for Component Devices428Latency431Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device431Defining Latency Thresholds433Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency433Device Toolbox434What is the Device Toolbox?434Accessing the Device Toolbox page434Viewing the Session Logs437Device Maintenance439What is Scheduled Maintenance?439What is User Maintenance?440		
Latency431Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device431Defining Latency Thresholds433Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency433Device Toolbox434What is the Device Toolbox?434Accessing the Device Toolbox page434Viewing the Session Logs437Device Maintenance439What is Scheduled Maintenance?439What is User Maintenance?440		
Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device		
Defining Latency Thresholds		
Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency433Device Toolbox434What is the Device Toolbox?434Accessing the Device Toolbox page434Viewing the Session Logs437Device Maintenance439What is Scheduled Maintenance?439What is User Maintenance?440		
Device Toolbox434What is the Device Toolbox?434Accessing the Device Toolbox page434Viewing the Session Logs437Device Maintenance439What is Scheduled Maintenance?439What is User Maintenance?440		
What is the Device Toolbox?434Accessing the Device Toolbox page434Viewing the Session Logs437Device Maintenance439What is Scheduled Maintenance?439What is User Maintenance?440		
Accessing the Device Toolbox page	Device Toolbox	434
Viewing the Session Logs437Device Maintenance439What is Scheduled Maintenance?439What is User Maintenance?440		
Device Maintenance439What is Scheduled Maintenance?439What is User Maintenance?440		
What is Scheduled Maintenance?		
What is User Maintenance?		
The Maintenance Minimum Severity Setting441		
	The Maintenance Minimum Severity Setting	441

Enabling and Disabling User Maintenance for a Single Device	
Enabling and Disabling User Maintenance for a One or More Devices	4
Scheduling Maintenance for a Single Device	4
Viewing the Schedule Manager	
Defining a Scheduled or Recurring Device Maintenance Window for a Single Device	4
Scheduling Maintenance for One or More Devices	4
Enabling or Disabling Scheduled Maintenance for One or More Devices	4
Deleting Scheduled Maintenance for One or More Devices	4
Managing Dynamic Applications	4
Overview	
Viewing the List of Dynamic Applications	
Searching and Filtering the List of Dynamic Applications	
Special Characters	
Viewing the Dynamic Applications Associated with a Device	
Viewing the Status of a Dynamic Application	
Found	
Collect	
How the ScienceLogic Platform Manages Collect Status	
Stopping Collection	
Starting Collection	
Collection Objects that are Excluded from Maintenance	
Status of Objects for Deviation	
Manually Associating a Dynamic Application with a Device	
Editing the Credential Associated with a Dynamic Application	
Performing Other Administrative Tasks for an Aligned Dynamic Application	
Enabling or Disabling Objects	
Restarting Automatic Maintenance of Collection Objects	
Editing the Poll Frequency for a Dynamic Application on the Current Device	
Stopping Data Collection for a Dynamic Application	
Resetting Statistical Data for a Dynamic Application	
Resetting Persistent Session Objects for a Dynamic Application	4
Testing Data Collection for a Dynamic Application	4
Removing Data Collected by a Dynamic Application	
Bulk Un-Aligning Dynamic Applications	
Setting Thresholds for Dynamic Applications	
Dynamic Applications and Discovery	
How Does the ScienceLogic Platform Align Dynamic Applications During Discovery?	
Queuing Discovery from the Dynamic Applications Manager Page	
Grouping Dynamic Application Data Using Collection Labels	
What are Collection Labels and Collection Groups?	
Viewing the List of Collection Labels	
Filtering the List of Collection Labels	
Special Characters	
Creating a Collection Group	
Creating a Collection Label What is Normalization?	
What are Duplicates and How Does the ScienceLogic Platform Manage Them?	
What is Precedence?	
Aligning a Presentation Object with a Collection Label	
Viewing and Managing the List of Presentation Objects Aligned with a Collection Label	
Viewing and Editing Duplicate Presentation Objects by Collection Label	
Viewing and Managing the List of Devices Aligned with a Collection Label	4

Editing Duplicate Presentation Objects by Device	
Editing Duplicate Presentation Objects for a Single Device	502
Editing a Collection Label	503
Deleting a Collection Label	
Viewing Reports About Collection Labels on a Single Device	
Viewing Dashboards About Collection Labels	
Device Thresholds and Data Retention	
Overview	
Global Settings for Thresholds	
Device Thresholds	
Bulk Management with Device Groups and Device Templates	
Overview	
What is a Device Group?	
What is a Device Template?	
Virtual Devices	
What is a Virtual Device?	
Defining a Virtual Device	
Directing Data to a Virtual Device	
Redirecting Log Data to a Virtual Device	
Aligning a Dynamic Application with a Virtual Device	
Customizing the User Interface for a Device	
Custom Navigation	
Editing a Custom Navigation tab	
Vanishing & Purging Devices	
Overview	
Setting Vanish and Purge Thresholds	
Viewing the List of Vanished Devices	
Filtering the List of Devices	
Using the Advanced Filters	
Manually Purge Selected Devices	
Set One or More Devices to Never Purge	
Device Dashboards	
Overview	
Viewing the List of Device Dashboards	
Creating a Device Dashboard	
Aligning Device Dashboards	
Aligning a Device Dashboard with a Device	
Aligning a Device Dashboard with a Device Class	
Aligning a Device Dashboard with a Device Category	
Aligning a Device Dashboard with a Dynamic Application	
Editing a Device Dashboard	
Deleting a Device Dashboard	
Copying a Device Dashboard  Defining the Global Default for Device Dashboards	
Unaligning a Device Dashboard	
Moving Alignment for Device Dashboards	
Using Custom Attributes	
Overview Viewing the List of Custom Attributes	
Filtering the List of Custom Attributes  Filtering the List of Custom Attributes	
Viewing the List of Subscribers for a Custom Attribute	
Creating Custom Attributes	
Croding Coston / Illiboros	

Deleting One or More Custom Attributes	567
Custom Attributes in the ScienceLogic API	
Using a Dynamic Application to Create and/or Populate Custom Attributes	
Using Custom Attributes to Define Device Groups	571
Viewing Custom Attributes in the Custom Table Widget	

# Chapter

1

### **Introduction to Devices**

#### Overview

This manual describes:

- How data is collected from monitored devices by the ScienceLogic platform.
- How that data is displayed in the user interface.
- How to configure settings and monitoring policies that control how data is collected from devices.

A shorter version of this manual is available, **Device Records and Data**, that covers only the first two topics. If you have already read the **Device Records and Data** manual, you have already read the following sections in this manual:

- All of chapters 1 3, 5 7, 10, and 12.
- The sections in chapters 4, 8, 9, 11, 13, 14, and 15 that describe how to view data.

### What is a Device?

Devices are all networked hardware in your network. SL1 can monitor any device on your network, even if your organization uses a geographically diverse network. For each managed device, you can monitor status, create policies, define thresholds, and receive notifications (among other features). Some of the devices that SL1 can monitor are:

- Bridges
- Copiers
- Firewalls
- Load Balancers

Introduction to Devices

- Modems
- PDU Systems
- Probes
- Printers
- Routers
- Security Devices
- Servers
- Switches
- Telephony
- Terminals
- Traffic shapers
- UPS Systems
- Workstations

In SL1, devices also include component devices and virtual devices.

#### What is a Device Record?

As part of monitoring your network, SL1 collects data using common networking protocols. Most collected data is associated with a *device* in SL1. A device in SL1 is a record that can represent:

- Physical network hardware, for example, servers, switches, routers, printers, etc.
- A component of a larger system, for example, a data store in a hypervisor system, a blade server, etc.
- Any other entity about which you want to collect data, but want or need to associate that data with a container that does not correspond directly to a physical device or a component. For example, you might configure a device record that represents a web site or a cloud service.

### How Does the ScienceLogic Platform Manage Devices?

- Using discovery, the ScienceLogic platform automatically discovers all hardware and hardware-components in your network. The platform can also automatically discover most software applications running in your network.
- Using Dynamic Applications, the platform can automatically discover component devices.
- During discovery, devices are categorized by device class and device category for quick identification. You
  can customize device classes and device categories and also define custom device classes and device
  categories.
- In the platform's [Registry] tab, you can view details about each discovered device, including IP address and MAC address, operating system, hardware components (like CPU, RAM, swap, file systems), interfaces, open ports, and installed software.

2 Introduction to Devices

- For each device, you can use the Device Administration panel to define configuration and policies for the device.
- For each device, you can use the Device Reports panel to view details about the device, including graphical reports.
- The ScienceLogic platform can monitor bandwidth usage for each discovered network interface. The platform can generate reports and billing documents for each network interface.

NOTE: The ScienceLogic platform includes pre-defined events (sometimes called "alerts" in other applications). An event is a message that is triggered when a specified condition is met. Among other things, an event can signal that a server has gone down, that a device is exceeding CPU or disk-space thresholds, that communication with a device has failed, or simply display the status of a device or component. You can define and customize events to best fit your infrastructure. Events can be viewed through the platform, sent to users' email accounts, and sent to users' pagers or cell phones.

- You can define customized performance thresholds and hardware thresholds for a device. The platform can generate events based on these thresholds.
- The platform monitors availability and latency for each device. You can define availability and latency thresholds. The platform also generates graphical reports on each device's availability and latency.
- The platform monitors open ports. Based on user-defined policies, the ScienceLogic platform can generate an event when a new port is opened on any device in the network.
- The platform can monitor port-availability for each port in the network.
- The platform can discover and monitor the hardware components of each device.
- The platform can discover and monitor the software running on each device.
- The platform can monitor system processes and Windows services running on a device. Based on userdefined policies, the platform can generate an event when a process or service is running or when a process or service is not running and should be.
- You can use **device groups and device templates** to automate the configuration and policies for multiple devices.
- You can create a virtual device to store data that you want to manage with the platform but that can't be associated with a traditional device or that you don't want associated with a traditional device.
- You can monitor **ESX servers and VMware** "guest" devices as you would monitor any other hardware-based device.
- You can create parent and child relationships between devices. These relationships allow you to use a single solution to resolve problems for the related devices.
- You can create **asset records** for one, multiple, or all devices in the network. The ScienceLogic platform automatically populates as many fields as possible, using information retrieved during discovery.
- The ScienceLogic platform includes an exhaustive list of real-time, dynamic, graphical reports to display trends and status for individual devices, groups of devices, or the entire network. These reports can be saved in multiple formats and can be printed.

Introduction to Devices 3

## Chapter

2

## **Device Concepts and Terminology**

### What is Discovery?

**Discovery** is the tool that automatically finds all the hardware-based devices, hardware components, and software applications in your network. You must provide the discovery tool with a range or list of IP addresses and/or a list of fully-qualified domain names (hostnames), and the discovery tool determines if a device, hardware component, or software application exists at each IP address. For each device, hardware component, or software application the discovery tool "discovers", the discovery tool can collect a list of open ports, DNS information, SSL certificates, list of network interfaces, device classes to align with the device, topology information, and basic SNMP information about the device. The discovery tool also determines which (if any) Dynamic Applications to align with the device. If the discovery tool finds Dynamic Applications to align with the device, the discovery tool triggers collection for each aligned Dynamic Application.

For more information about discovery, see the **Discovery & Credentials** manual.

### What is Virtualization?

Virtualization is when multiple virtual machines run on a single hardware platform. Each virtual machine is a software-based implementation of a computer that executes programs like a hardware-based computer. A virtual machine provides a platform on which you can run an operating system and software applications. For example, a single server could contain a virtual machine running Windows and Windows applications, another VM running Linux and Linux applications, another VM running BSD and BSD applications, and another running Macintosh OS and Macintosh applications.

A hypervisor is the software that allows one or more virtual machines to run on a single hardware platform. The hypervisor software allows the virtual machines to share the RAM, CPU, and disk space on the hardware platform.

Each virtual machine can run its own operating system. A virtual machine can provide an alternate instruction set from the hardware-based computer.

Virtual machines are frequently used to:

- Run multiple operating systems on a single computer.
- Consolidate hardware servers and run multiple server applications on a single server.
- Provide multiple, isolated development environments.

### What is a Dynamic Application?

Dynamic Applications are the customizable policies that tell the platform what data to collect from devices and applications. For example, suppose you want to monitor a MySQL database running on a device in your network. Suppose you want to know how many insert operations are performed on the MySQL database. You can create or edit a Dynamic Application that monitors inserts. Every five minutes (for example), the platform could check the number of insert operations performed on the MySQL database. The platform can use the retrieved data to trigger events and/or to create performance reports.

The ScienceLogic platform includes Dynamic Applications for the most common hardware and software. You can customize these default Dynamic Applications to suit your environment. You can also create custom Dynamic Applications.

The platform's Dynamic Applications support a variety of protocols, to ensure that the platform can always communicate with the devices and applications in your network and retrieve information from them. Dynamic Applications can use the following protocols to communicate with devices:

- SNMP
- SQL
- XML
- SOAP
- XSLT (uses SOAP and XSLT to convert XML data to a new format)
- WMI (Windows Management Instrumentation), including WMI and WBEM
- Windows PowerShell
- Custom Python applications (called "snippets") for proprietary or more complex data retrieval

### What is a Credential?

**Credentials** are access profiles (usually username, password, and any additional information required for access) that allow the ScienceLogic platform to retrieve information from devices and from software applications on devices.

• Discovery uses SNMP credentials to retrieve SNMP information during initial discovery and nightly autodiscovery. If the platform can connect to a device with an SNMP credential, the platform deems that device "manageable" in the platform.

- Dynamic Applications use credentials to retrieve SNMP information, database information, SOAP information, XML information, XSLT information, and WMI information.
- Proxied Web Services use SOAP/XML Host credentials to pass authentication information to external web services.
- The ScienceLogic platform includes a type of credential called "Basic/Snippet" that is not bound to a specific authentication protocol. You can use this type of credential for Dynamic Applications of type "WMI", of type "snippet", and when defining system backups. "Basic/Snippet" credentials can also be used for monitoring Windows devices using PowerShell.
- The ScienceLogic platform includes a type of credential that allows the platform to communicate with an LDAP or Active Directory system. For details on integrating the platform with LDAP or Active Directory, see the manual *Using Active Directory and LDAP*.
- The ScienceLogic platform includes a type of credential that allows Dynamic Applications of type "Snippet" to
  use SSH to communicate with a remote device. To use these Dynamic Applications, you must define an SSH
  credential.
- The ScienceLogic platform includes a type of credential that allows Dynamic Applications to retrieve data
  from Windows devices. If you align a Dynamic Application for PowerShell with a PowerShell credential, the
  ScienceLogic platform assumes that you want to use its built-in agentless transport to communicate with
  Windows devices.

If necessary, a single device can use multiple credentials. If more than one agent or application is running on the device, each agent or application can be associated with its own credential. During discovery, the platform will use the appropriate credential for each agent.

For example, suppose you want the platform to discover a device that supports SNMP v2. To retrieve SNMP data from that device, the platform must use a valid SNMP v2 read-only community string. So we would first go to the device and define the SNMP read-only community string. Then we would return to the platform and create a credential in the ScienceLogic system, using that community string. This new credential would allow discovery to retrieve SNMP data from the device.

Now suppose this same device also includes a MySQL database. Suppose you want the platform to use a Dynamic Application to monitor that database. To retrieve data from the database, the platform must use a valid username and password for that database. So we would first go to the device that hosts the MySQL database and create a database username and database password for the platform to use. Then we would return to the platform and create a credential in the ScienceLogic system. The credential would include the database username and database password for the MySQL database. This credential would allow the Dynamic Application to retrieve data about the MySQL database.

For more information about credentials, see the *Discovery & Credentials* manual.

### What is a Virtual Device?

A virtual device is a container for collected data. A virtual device can be used when you want to:

Monitor a device or application that doesn't support TCP/IP, SNMP, or both. The device's data can be
pushed to the ScienceLogic platform via another method (for example, email) and stored in a virtual device.

- Monitor multiple SNMP agents on a single device. In such a case, one of the SNMP agents (for example, a
  hardware agent) can be associated with the device and another SNMP agent (for example, an agent that
  monitors a software application) can be associated with a virtual device.
- Isolate and monitor specific parameters separately from their originating device. For example, you might
  want to monitor a database and keep its data separate from the hardware data you are collecting from the
  host device.

### What are Component Devices?

The ScienceLogic platform uses Dynamic Applications to retrieve data from a management device and discover each entity managed by that management device. The ScienceLogic platform then uses that retrieved data to create a device for each managed entity. In some cases, the managed entities are nested.

- In the ScienceLogic platform a managed entity is called a **component device**. A component device is an entity that runs under the control of a physical management device.
- In the platform, the *root device* is the physical device that manages one or more component devices.
- In the platform, a parent device is a device that has associated entities modeled as component devices. A
  parent device can be either a root device or another component device.

For example, in a Cisco UCS system, the platform might discover a physical server that hosts the UCS manager. The platform might discover a chassis as a component device. The chassis is a child device to the physical server; the physical server is the root device. The platform might also discover a blade as a component device that is part of the chassis. The blade is a child device to the chassis. The chassis is the parent device.

The **Device Components** page displays all root devices and component devices in an indented view, so you can easily view the hierarchy and relationships between child devices, parent devices, and root devices.

Depending on your Key Privileges, you can access the Device Management tools, the Device Administration tools, view details about each device's interfaces, generate and print a report about a device, file a ticket about a device, view an asset record for a device, and perform bulk administrative tasks from this page.

### What is a Device Class?

In the ScienceLogic platform, each device is associated with a device class. Typically, device classes map to a make/model pair. When possible, the ScienceLogic platform automatically assigns each discovered device to a device class. Device classes determine:

- How devices are represented in the user interface.
- Whether the device is a physical device or a virtual device.
- How managed devices are discovered with the discovery tool.

The ScienceLogic platform includes already-defined device classes for the most popular hardware. The **Device Class Editor** page allows advanced administrators to define new or legacy device classes in the platform and to customize properties of existing device classes.

Most TCP/IP-compliant devices have an internally-defined class ID, called the System Object ID and abbreviated to SysObjectID. This SysObjectID is an SNMP OID defined by the manufacturer. Each manufacturer specifies a SysObjectID for each different hardware model. In the platform, each SNMP device class is associated with a SysObjectID. During initial discovery, the platform searches each device for the SysObjectID and assigns each device to the appropriate device class.

The ScienceLogic platform also includes device classes for devices that do not support SNMP. These device classes are associated with values returned by nmap. The platform runs nmap against each device during discovery.

### What is a Device Category?

A device category is a logical categorization of a device by primary function; for example, "server", "switch", or "router". The ScienceLogic platform uses device categories to group related devices in reports and views.

Device categories are paired with device classes to organize and describe discovered devices. Device class usually describes the manufacturer. Device category describes the function of the hardware. Each device class can include a device category.

**NOTE**: "Reserved" device categories are those device categories required by the ScienceLogic platform.

These device categories cannot be edited or deleted. If a device category does not display the bomb icon (), the device category is a reserved device category and cannot be deleted.

### What is an Asset Record?

An asset record is a collection of relevant information about an asset. In the ScienceLogic platform, asset records are usually created for hardware devices.

In the ScienceLogic platform, asset records can contain information about:

- The name, make, and model of a device.
- The serial number of a device.
- Function and status of the device.
- Networking information, like host ID, IP address, and DNS server for the device.
- Hardware information like amount of memory, CPU, and BIOS or EPROM version.
- Physical location of the device.
- Vendor information for the device, including PO or check number, warranty policy, and service policy.
- Description of the network interface.
- Description of each hardware component (if applicable).
- Description of installed software (if applicable).

The ScienceLogic platform will populate as many fields as possible automatically, using data retrieved during discovery and collections. You can enter values in all the fields or in only those fields that are required for your business processes.

You can specify which asset fields will be populated from data retrieved during discovery and collections and which fields will be populated manually. To specify this behavior, go to the **Asset Automation** page (System > Settings > Assets).

### What is the ScienceLogic agent?

A **ScienceLogic agent** is a program that runs on a device or element monitored by SL1. An agent collects data from the device, interface, or other element and pushes that data back to SL1. You can install and use multiple agents, as needed.

Because an agent is always running on a device, an agent can collect more granular data than can be collected by polling the device periodically. You can monitor devices using agents or by SL1 polling the device, or you can use both methods.

For more information about installing and configuring the ScienceLogic agent, see the chapter *The ScienceLogic* Agent.

# Chapter

3

## **Overview of Collection and Data**

#### Overview

This section describes the process of data collection as well as the types of data that the ScienceLogic platform can collect. This section also describes collection using the ScienceLogic agent, including how to install the agent on a Windows or Linux device.

### What Is Collection?

**Collection** is the tool that retrieves policy-based information and Dynamic Application-based information from a device. After a device is discovered, you can define monitoring policies for that device in the ScienceLogic platform. For example, if you define a policy to monitor a system process, the collection tool retrieves that information.

- Dynamic Applications use collection processes to collect data.
- Monitoring Policies for devices also trigger collection. These polices include:
  - Domain Name Policies
  - Email Round-Trip policies
  - SOAP/XML Transaction policies
  - System Process Policies
  - TCP/IP Port Policies
  - Web Content Policies
  - Windows Services Policies

- The ScienceLogic platform automatically collects the following about each managed device:
  - Device availability and device latency
  - Network topology
  - File system information, if available
  - A list of open ports
  - o Bandwidth-usage
- The ScienceLogic agent automatically collects the following about each device on which it is installed:
  - Device availability
  - Device performance and configuration metrics
  - A list of open ports
  - Log information
  - System processes

## What Kind of Data Can the ScienceLogic Platform Collect?

- Using discovery, the ScienceLogic platform automatically discovers all hardware and hardware-components
  in your network. The platform can also automatically discover most software applications running in your
  network.
- Using Dynamic Applications, the platform can automatically discover component devices.
- During discovery, devices are categorized by device class and device category for quick identification. You
  can customize device classes and device categories and also define custom device classes and device
  categories.
- In the platform's [Registry] tab, you can view details about each discovered device, including IP address and MAC address, operating system, hardware components (like CPU, RAM, swap, file systems), interfaces, open ports, and installed software.
- For each device, you can use the Device Administration panel to define configuration and policies for the device.
- For each device, you can use the Device Reports panel to view details about the device, including graphical reports.
- The ScienceLogic platform can monitor bandwidth usage for each discovered network interface. The platform can generate reports and billing documents for each network interface.

NOTE: The ScienceLogic platform includes pre-defined events (sometimes called "alerts" in other applications). An event is a message that is triggered when a specified condition is met. Among other things, an event can signal that a server has gone down, that a device is exceeding CPU or disk-space thresholds, that communication with a device has failed, or simply display the status of a device or component. You can define and customize events to best fit your infrastructure. Events can be viewed through the platform, sent to users' email accounts, and sent to users' pagers or cell phones.

- You can define customized performance thresholds and hardware thresholds for a device. The platform can generate events based on these thresholds.
- The platform monitors availability and latency for each device. You can define availability and latency thresholds. The platform also generates graphical reports on each device's availability and latency.
- The platform monitors open ports. Based on user-defined policies, the ScienceLogic platform can generate an event when a new port is opened on any device in the network.
- The platform can monitor port-availability for each port in the network.
- The platform can discover and monitor the hardware components of each device.
- The platform can discover and monitor the software running on each device.
- The platform can monitor system processes and Windows services running on a device. Based on userdefined policies, the platform can generate an event when a process or service is running or when a process or service is not running and should be.
- You can use **device groups and device templates** to automate the configuration and policies for multiple devices.
- You can create a virtual device to store data that you want to manage with the platform but that can't be associated with a traditional device or that you don't want associated with a traditional device.
- You can monitor ESX servers and VMware "guest" devices as you would monitor any other hardwarebased device.
- You can create parent and child relationships between devices. These relationships allow you to use a single solution to resolve problems for the related devices.
- You can create **asset records** for one, multiple, or all devices in the network. The ScienceLogic platform automatically populates as many fields as possible, using information retrieved during discovery.
- The ScienceLogic platform includes an exhaustive list of real-time, dynamic, graphical reports to display trends and status for individual devices, groups of devices, or the entire network. These reports can be saved in multiple formats and can be printed.

### What Kind of Data can the ScienceLogic agent Collect?

A ScienceLogic agent collects the following data:

- Device Availability. SL1 can determine the availability state of a device (available or unavailable) and generate trended availability graphs based on uptime data collected by the agent.
- Host Performance Metrics. Using a Dynamic Application, SL1 translates data provided by an ScienceLogic agent to trend the following metrics:
  - o Overall CPU Utilization
  - o Per-Processor CPU Utilization
  - o Disk Average Queue Length
  - o Disk Utilization
  - Memory Utilization

- o Network Bytes Read
- Network Bytes Written

These metrics can be viewed in the [Performance] tab in the Device Reports panel.

- **Host Configuration**. Using a Dynamic Application, SL1 collects the following configuration data based on data provided by the agent:
  - The number and speed of the installed CPUs
  - The overall and per-disk storage size
  - The amount of installed memory

The collected configuration data can be viewed in the [Configs] tab in the Device Reports panel.

- **System Processes**. The agent collects a list of all processes running on the device. The list of processes is displayed in the **[Processes]** tab in the **Device Reports** panel. Monitoring policies can be configured to trend and alert on process availability, process CPU usage, and process memory usage.
- Open Ports. The agent collects a list of open TCP and UDP ports on the device. The list of open ports is
  displayed in the [TCP/UDP Ports] tab in the Device Reports panel. Monitoring policies can be configured to
  trend and alert on port availability.
- Logs. The agent can be configured to push logs that match specific criteria from a log file or the Windows
  Event Log to SL1. Logs collected by the agent appear in the Device Logs page for a device and can be
  configured to trigger events.

## What is Device Availability?

Availability means a device's ability to accept connections and data from the network. During polling, a device has two possible availability values:

- 100%. Device is up and running.
- 0%. Device is not accepting connections and data from the network.

By default, the method the platform uses to monitor availability of the device is determined by the first method of discovery:

- If the agent is installed and creates a device record before the device is discovered as an SNMP or pingable device, availability is measured based on whether the agent is reporting data to the platform.
- If the device is discovered as an SNMP or pingable device before the agent is installed, availability is measured based on the method used to discover the device (SNMP, ICMP, or TCP).

If a device or interface becomes unavailable multiple times in a specified time frame, the platform can generate an "availability flapping" event. By default, the platform generates an event if a device becomes unavailable three times in an hour, or if an interface becomes unavailable three times in twenty-four hours.

To generate availability reports, the platform must be configured to collect availability and latency data from devices. The following section describes how to configure the platform to collect this data.

**NOTE**: Unlike for hardware-based devices, the ScienceLogic platform does not use use an ICMP, TCP, or UDP to monitor availability for component devices. Component Devices use a Dynamic Application collection object to measure availability. The platform polls component devices for availability at the frequency defined in the Dynamic Application. For details, see the description of the **Component Identifier** field in the **Collection Objects** page.

### What is Device Latency?

Latency means the amount of time it takes the ScienceLogic platform to communicate with a device. Specifically, latency refers to the amount of time between when the platform initiates communication with a device and when the device responds and allows communication. Latency is expressed in milliseconds (ms).

The ScienceLogic platform uses ports to monitor a device's latency. You specify which ports to use for device latency in the **Device Properties** page.

### Monitoring Policies

For each device in the ScienceLogic platform, you can define the following types of monitoring policies:

- **Domain Name policies**. Monitor the availability and lookup time for a specific domain-name server and a specific record on a domain-name server.
- **Email Round-Trip policies**. Monitor the amount of time it takes to send an email message from the ScienceLogic platform to an external mail server and then back to the platform.
- SOAP/XML Transaction policies. Monitor any server-to-server transactions that use HTTP and can post files or forms (for example, SOAP/XML, email, or RSS feeds). Periodically, the platform sends a request and some data and then examines the result of the transaction and compares it to a specified expression match.
- **System Process policies**. Monitor the device and look for the specified system process. You can define a process policy that also specifies:
  - How much memory a process can use.
  - How many instances of a process can run simultaneously.
  - Whether or not to generate an event if the process is running.
- TCP/IP Port policies. Monitor ports for availability every five minutes. If a port is not available, the platform creates an event. The data gathered by the port policy is used to create port-availability reports.
- Web Content policies. Monitor a website for specific content. The ScienceLogic platform will periodically check the website for specified content. If the content cannot be found on the website, the platform will generate an event.

- Windows Service policies. Monitor the device and look for the specified service. You can define a service policy so that:
  - The ScienceLogic platform generates an event if the service is not running.
  - The ScienceLogic platform generates an event if the service is running.
  - The ScienceLogic platform starts, pauses, or restarts the service.
  - The ScienceLogic platform reboots or shuts down the device.
  - The ScienceLogic platform triggers the execution of a script (script must reside on the device).

You can define these policies either from the **Device Administration** panel of a device or from the pages in Registry > Monitors section.

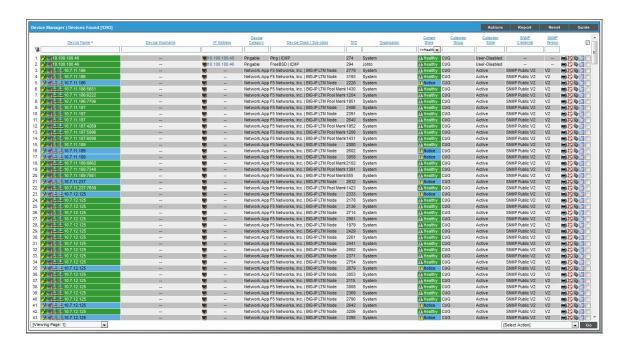
# Chapter

4

## **Device Registry Pages**

## Viewing the List of All Devices

After running discovery for the first time, you can view the list of discovered devices in the **Device Manager** page. To access the **Device Manager** page, go to Registry > Devices > Device Manager:



Device Registry Pages 16

The **Device Manager** displays the following information about each device:

**TIP**: To sort the list of devices, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort the list by descending order, click the column heading again.

- **Device Name**. Name of the device. For devices running SNMP or with DNS entries, the name is discovered automatically. For devices without SNMP or DNS entries, the device's IP address will appear in this field.
- **Device Hostname**. For devices that are discovered and managed by hostname (instead of IP address), this field displays the fully qualified hostname for the device.
- IP Address. The IP address of the device.
- **Device Category**. The category assigned to the device. Categories include servers, routers, switches, firewalls, and printers, among others. The category is automatically assigned during discovery, at the same time as the as Device Class/Sub-Class.
- Device Class/Device Sub-Class. The manufacturer (device class) and type of device (sub-class). The Device Class/Sub-Class is automatically assigned during discovery, at the same time as the Category.
- DID. Device ID. This is a unique number automatically assigned to the device by the platform.
- Organization. The Organization to which the device is assigned.
- Current State. Condition of the device, based upon events generated by the device. Condition can be one of the following:
  - Critical. Device has a serious problem that requires immediate attention.
  - Major. Device has a problem that requires immediate attention.
  - o Minor. Device has a less-serious problem.
  - Notice. Device has an informational event associated with it.
  - Healthy. Device is running with no problems.

NOTE: The appearance of the *Current State* field depends upon value in the *Show Severity Badges* field in your user preferences. If the *Show Severity Badges* field is enabled, the value in the *Current State* column will be displayed as a color-coded badge. If the *Show Severity Badges* field is not enabled, the value in the *Device Name* column and the value in the *Current State* column will be painted with the severity color.

- Collection Group. Specifies the collector group to which the device belongs. Collector Groups are defined in the Collector Group Management page (System > Settings > Collector Groups) and specify a primary Data Collector and an optional failover collector. A Data Collector server is the appliance that gathers data from the device. For All-In-One Appliances, this field displays only the built-in Collector Group (and any virtual Collector Groups).
- Collection State. Collection state can be one of the following:
  - Active. The ScienceLogic platform is collecting data from the device.

- Unavailable. The ScienceLogic platform cannot connect to the device, and will not collect data from the device until the device becomes available.
- Disabled. The ScienceLogic platform is not currently collecting data from the device.
- Component Vanished. The component device has vanished, i.e. is not currently being reported by its root device. The ScienceLogic platform cannot collect data from the device at this time.
- SNMP Credential. Primary credential used by the platform to retrieve SNMP information about the device.

**NOTE**: Your organization membership(s) might affect the display in the **SNMP Credential** column. For details, see the **Discovery and Credentials** manual.

- SNMP Version. The version of SNMP used by the SNMP Credential.
- **SL Agent**. Indicates if the ScienceLogic agent is installed on the device. If the agentis installed on the device, see SL Agent column displays a gear icon that can be used to access agent settings. For more information about editing Agent settings, see the *Monitoring Using the Agent* manual. The **SL Agent** column does not appear on the **Device Manager** page by default. For more information about adding or removing columns on the **Device Manager** page, see the **Device Manager Preferences** section.
- Tools. Displays icons for managing devices. The choices are:
  - Device Administration ( ). Leads to the **Device Properties** page, where you can define basic device parameters and parameters for discovery. From the **Device Properties** page, you can also access the other pages in the **Device Administration** tools.
  - Device Management (1111). Leads to the Device Summary page, where you can see reports and logs related to the device. From the Device Summary page, you can also access the other pages in the Device Reports tools.
  - o Root Device ( ). Indicates that the device is a **component device**. Leads to the **Device Properties** page of the root device for the component device. In the platform, the **root device** is the physical device that hosts the system that manages the component device.
  - Parent Device (4). Indicates that the device is a component device. Leads to the Device Properties page of the parent device for the component device. In the platform, the parent device can be either another component device or a physical device. A parent device can be either: a the component device between the current component device and the next layer in the component-device hierarchy or a root device.
  - Interfaces (**)**. Leads to the **Interfaces Found** page, where you can view details about each network interface on the device. For details on device interfaces, see the **Device Management** manual.
  - Print Report ( ). Generates a report for the selected icon. Spawns the Report Selector page, where you can specify the information to include in the report (Full Report, Status, Config, Hardware, Notes, Software, Processes, Network, Events, and Health) and the format in which the report will be generated (Create Report as HTML Document, Create Report as PDF Document, Create Report as MS Word Document, or Create Report as MS Excel Document).

Device Registry Pages 18

- Create Ticket ( Leads to the **Ticket Editor** page, where you can define and file a new ticket for the device. For details on creating tickets, see the manual **Ticketing**.
- View Asset Record( ). This icon appears if an asset record has already been defined for the device.

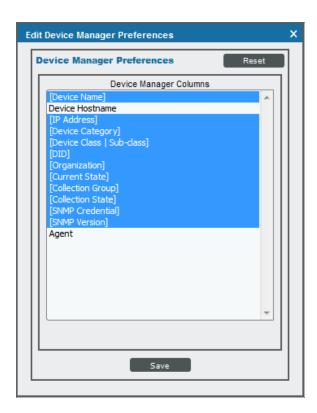
  This icon leads to the **Asset Properties** page, where you can view the asset record for the device.
- Create Asset Record ( ). This icon appears if an asset record has not been defined for the device. This icon leads to the **Asset Properties** page, where you can create an asset record for the device.
- Checkbox (2). Applies the action in the **Select Action** drop-down to the device. To select all checkboxes (i.e., to select all devices), select the large red check icon.

#### **Device Manager Preferences**

The **Device Manager Preferences** page allows you to customize the display and behavior of the **Device Manager** page. To access this page, go to the **Device Manager** page, select the **[Actions]** menu, and then choose *Device Manager Preferences*.

In the **Device Manager Preferences** page, you can customize the following:

• Device Manager Columns. In this list, you can select the default columns to be displayed in the Device Manager page.



**NOTE**: When you edit the list of columns in the **Device Manager Columns** field, the selected list of columns in the **Account Preferences** page is automatically updated. When you edit the list of columns in the **Account Preferences** page, the selected list of columns in this page is updated.

#### Filtering the List of Devices

You can filter the list on the **Device Manager** page by one or more parameters. Only devices that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **Device Manager** page.

To filter by each parameter except *Current State*, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Device**Manager page searches for devices that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list of devices is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use special characters to filter each parameter.

Filter the list by one or more of the following parameters:

- **Device Name**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching device name.
- **Device Hostname**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching hostname.
- *IP Address*. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching IP address.
- **Device Category**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching device category.
- **Device Class**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching device class.
- **DID**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching device ID.
- **Organization**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching organization.
- Current State >=. Specifies the device's current state. Only those devices that match all the previously selected fields and have the specified condition will be displayed. A device's condition is determined by its most severe, outstanding event. The choices are:
  - >=Healthy. Include devices with a condition of "Healthy" or greater. This will include all devices.
  - >=Notice. Include devices with a condition of "Notice" or greater. This means, include devices with a condition of "Notice", "Minor", "Major", and "Critical".
  - >=Minor. Include devices with a condition of "Minor" or greater. This means, include devices with a condition of "Minor", "Major", and "Critical".

Device Registry Pages 20

- >=Major. Include devices with a condition of "Major" or greater. This means, include devices with a condition of "Major" and "Critical".
- >=Critical. Include devices with a condition of "Critical" or greater. This means, include devices with a condition of "Critical", because there is no "greater" condition.
- Collection Group. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching Collector Group.
- Collection State. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching Collection State.
- **SNMP Credential**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Manager**r page will display only devices that have a matching SNMP credential.
- **SNMP Version**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching SNMP version.

**TIP**: To return to the default list of events, select the **[Reset]** button.

#### **Special Characters**

You can include the following special characters to filter by each column except those that display date and time:

NOTE: When searching for a string, the ScienceLogic platform will match substrings by default, even if you do not include any special characters. For example, searching for "hel" will match both "hello" and "helicopter". When searching for a numeric value, the ScienceLogic platform will not match a substring unless you use a special character.

#### String and Numeric

- , (comma). Specifies an "OR" operation. Works for string and numeric values. For example:
  - "dell, micro" matches all values that contain the string "dell" OR the string "micro".
- & (ampersand). Specifies an "AND" operation. Works for string and numeric values. For example:

"dell & micro" matches all values that contain both the string "dell" AND the string "micro", in any order.

- ! (exclamation point). Specifies a "not" operation. Works for string and numeric values. For example:
  - "!dell" matches all values that do not contain the string "dell".
  - "! ^ micro" would match all values that do not start with "micro".
  - "!fer\$" would match all values that do not end with "fer".
  - "! ^ \$" would match all values that are not null.
  - "! ^ " would match null values.
  - "!\$" would match null values.
  - "!\*" would match null values.
  - "happy, !dell" would match values that contain "happy" OR values that do not contain "dell".

**NOTE**: You can also use the "!" character in combination with the arithmetic special characters (min-max, >, <, >=, <=, =) described below.

• \* (asterisk). Specifies a "match zero or more" operation. Works for string and numeric values. For a string, matches any string that matches the text before and after the asterisk. For a number, matches any number that contains the text. For example:

"hel\*er" would match "helpers" and "helicopter" but not "hello".

- "325\*" would match "325", "32561", and "325000".
- "\*000" would match "1000", "25000", and "10500000".
- ? (question mark). Specifies "match any one character". Works for string and numeric values. For example:
  - "I?ver" would match the strings "oliver", "levers", and "lover", but not "believer".
  - "135?" would match the numbers "1350", "1354", and "1359", but not "135" or "13502"

#### String

- ^ (caret). For strings only. Specifies "match the beginning". Matches any string that begins with the specified string. For example:
  - "^sci" would match "scientific" and "sciencelogic", but not "conscious".
  - "^happy\$" would match only the string "happy", with no characters before or after.
  - "! ^ micro" would match all values that do not start with "micro".
  - "! ^ \$" would match all values that are not null.
  - "! ^ " would match null values.

Device Registry Pages 22

- \$ (dollar sign). For strings only. Specifies "match the ending". Matches any string that ends with the specified string. For example:
  - "ter\$" would match the string "renter" but not the string "terrific".
  - "^happy\$" would match only the string "happy", with no characters before or after.
  - "!fer\$" would match all values that do not end with "fer".
  - "! ^ \$" would match all values that are not null.
  - "!\$" would match null values.

NOTE: You can use both ^ and \$ if you want to match an entire string and only that string. For example,
 " ^ tern\$" would match the strings "tern" or "TERN"; it would not match the strings "terne" or
 "cistern".

#### Numeric

- min-max. Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value between the minimum value and the maximum value, including the minimum and the maximum. For example:
  - "1-5 "would match 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5.
- - (dash). Matches numeric values only. A "half open" range. Specifies values including the minimum and greater or including the maximum and lesser. For example:
  - "1-" matches 1 and greater. So would match 1, 2, 6, 345, etc.
  - "-5" matches 5 and less. So would match 5, 3, 1, 0, etc.
- > (greater than). Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value "greater than". For example:
  - ">7" would match all values greater than 7.
- < (less than). Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value "less than". For example:
  - "<12" would match all values less than 12.
- >= (greater than or equal to). Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value "greater than or equal to". For example:
  - =>7 would match all values 7 and greater.
- <= (less than or equal to). Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value "less than or equal to". For example:
  - "=<12" would match all values 12 and less.

- = (equal). Matches numeric values only. For numeric values, allows you to match a negative value. For example:
  - "=-5" would match "-5" instead of being evaluated as the "half open range" as described above.

#### **Additional Examples**

- "aio\$". Matches only text that ends with "aio".
- "^shu". Matches only text that begins with "shu".
- "^silo\$". Matches only the text "silo", with no characters before or after.
- "!silo". Matches only text that does not contains the characters "silo".
- "!^silo". Matches only text that does not start with "silo".
- "!0\$". Matches only text that does not end with "0".
- "! ^ silo\$". Matches only text that is not the exact text "silo", with no characters before or after.
- "! ^". Matches null values, typically represented as "--" in most pages.
- "!\$". Matches null values, typically represented as "--" in most pages.
- "!^\$". Matches all text that is not null.
- silo, laggr". Matches text that contains the characters "silo" and also text that does not contain "aggr".
- "silo, 02, laggr". Matches text that contains "silo" and also text that contains "02" and also text that does not contain "aggr".
- "silo, 02, laggr, 101". Matches text that contains "silo" and also text that contains "02" and also text that does not contain "aggr" and also text that does not contain "01".
- "^s\*i\*l\*o\$". Matches text that contains the letter "s", "i", "l", "o", in that order. Other letters might lie between these letters. For example "sXiXIXo" would match.
- "!^s\*i\*l\*o\$". Matches all text that does not that contains the letter "s", "i", "l", "o", in that order. Other letters might lie between these letters. For example "sXiXIXo" would not match.
- "!vol&!silo". Matches text that does not contain "vol" AND also does not contain "silo". For example, "volume" would match, because it contains "vol" but not "silo".
- "!vol&02". Matches text that does not contain "vol" AND also contains "02". For example, "happy02" would match, because it does not contain "vol" and it does contain "02".
- "aggr,!vol&02". Matches text that contains "aggr" OR text that does not contain "vol" AND also contains "02".
- "aggr,!vol&!infra". Matches text that contains "aggr" OR text that does not contain "vol" AND does not contain "infra".
- "\*". Matches all text.
- "!\*". Matches null values, typically represented as "--" in most pages.
- "silo". Matches text that contains "silo".
- "!silo". Matches text that does not contain "silo".
- "!^silo\$". Matches all text except the text "silo", with no characters before or after.
- "-3,7-8,11,24,50-". Matches numbers 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 11, 24, 50, and all numbers greater than 50.

Device Registry Pages 24

- "-3,7-8,11,24,50-,a". Matches numbers 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 11, 24, 50, and all numbers greater than 50, and text that includes "a".
- "?n". Matches text that contains any single character and the character "n". For example, this string would match "an", "bn", "cn", "1 n", and "2 n".
- "n\*SAN". Matches text the contains "n", zero or any number of any characters and then "SAN". For example, the string would match "nSAN", and "nhamburgerSAN".
- "^?n\*SAN\$". Matches text that begins with any single character, is following by "n", and then zero or any number of any characters, and ends in "SAN".

### Using the Advanced Filter with the List of Devices

In the **Device Manager** page, you can specify one or more parameters to filter the display of devices. Only devices that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed.

The Advanced Filter Tool allows you to make selections instead of manually typing in a string to filter on.

**TIP**: To select multiple entries in the Advanced Filter Tool, hold down the **<Ctrl>** key and left-click the entries.

After selecting all filters, select the [Apply] button to apply the filters to the list of devices.

To reset each field and apply no filters, select the [Reset] button.

To access the Advanced Filter Tool:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page.
- Click on the funnel icon (\*).
- 3. The Advanced Filter Tool will display advanced filters for each column in the page.

**NOTE**: Unlike the "find while you type" feature, the Advanced Filter Tool is not applied to the list of devices until you select the **[Apply]** button.

- 4. In the Advanced Filter Tool, you can filter by one or more of the following filters.
  - **Device Name**. In the Match Any fields, you can enter one or more text strings to match, including special characters. The **Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching device name.
  - **Device Hostname**. In the *Match Any* fields, you can enter one or more text strings to match, including special characters. The **Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching hostname.
  - IP Address. In the Match Any fields, you can enter one or more text strings to match, including special characters. The **Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching IP address.

- Device Category. Select from a list of device categories that have member devices. The Device
   Manager page will display only devices that have a matching device category.
- Device Class | Sub-class. In the Match Any fields, you can enter one or more text strings to match, including special characters. The Device Manager page will display only devices that have a matching device class or sub-class.
- **DID**. In the From and To field, you can specify a range of device IDs. The **Device Manager** page will display only devices that fall within that range of device IDs.
- Organization. Select from a list of organizations that have member devices. The **Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching organization.
- Current State. You can select from a list of device states. The Device Manager page will display only devices that have a matching state.
- Collection Group. Select from a list of collection groups that have member devices. The **Device**Manager page will display only devices that have a matching collection group.
- Collection State. Select from a list of collection states that have member devices. The Device Manager page will display only devices that have a matching collection state.
- **SNMP Credential**. Select from a list of SNMP credentials that have member devices. The **Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching SNMP credential.
- **SNMP Version**. Select from a list of SNMP versions that have member devices. The **Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching SNMP version.
- **SL Agent**. Select either Yes or No. Yes indicates that the agent is installed on the device. No indicates that the agent is not installed on the device. The **Device Management** page will display only devices that either have or do not have the agent installed.
- 5. After selecting all filters, select the [Apply] button to apply the filters to the list of devices.
- 6. To reset each field and apply no filters, select the [Reset] button.

**TIP**: You can perform an advanced filter and then perform a second advanced filter on the results of the first advanced filter. You can continue to modify and apply an advanced filter multiple times.

### Generating a Report for Multiple Devices

From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager), you can generate a report on all devices in the ScienceLogic platform or on multiple devices in the platform. The report will be in .xlsx format and will contain all the information displayed in the **Device Manager** page.

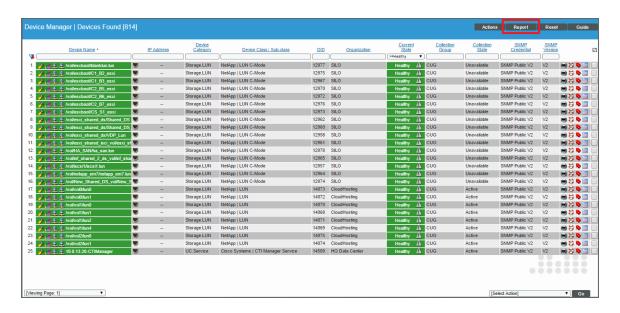
Device Name	IP Address	Device Category	Device Class   Sub-class	DID	Organization	State	Col Group	Collection	SNMP Credential	SNMP Version
/vol/esxboot/blanklun.lun		Storage.LUN	NetApp   LUN C-Mode	12977	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	V2
/vol/esxboot/C1 B2 esxi		Storage.LUN	NetApp   LUN C-Mode	12975	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	V2
/vol/esxboot/C1 B3 esxi		Storage.LUN	NetApp I LUN C-Mode	12967	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	V2
/vol/esxboot/C2 B5 esxi		Storage.LUN	NetApp I LUN C-Mode	12970	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	V2
/vol/esxboot/C2_B6_esxi		Storage.LUN	NetApp   LUN C-Mode	12972	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	V2
/vol/esxboot/C2 B7 esxi		Storage.LUN	NetApp   LUN C-Mode	12976	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	V2
/vol/esxboot/CS S1 esxi		Storage.LUN	NetApp   LUN C-Mode	12973	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	V2
/vol/esxi shared ds/Shared DS		Storage,LUN	NetApp   LUN C-Mode	12962	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	V2
/vol/esxi shared ds/Shared DS clone	040314 163750	Storage.LUN	NetApp   LUN C-Mode	12960	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	V2
/vol/esxi shared ds/VDP Lun		Storage.LUN	NetApp   LUN C-Mode	12958	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	V2
/vol/esxi shared isci vol/esxi shared is	ci	Storage.LUN	NetApp   LUN C-Mode	12961	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	V2
/vol/HA SAN/ha san.lun	-	Storage.LUN	NetApp   LUN C-Mode	12978	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	V2
(vol/inf shared 2 ds vol/inf shared 2	s	Storage.LUN	NetApp I LUN C-Mode	12965	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	
/vol/iscsi1/iscsi1.lun	-	Storage.LUN	NetApp   LUN C-Mode	12957	SILO	Healthy	CUG			V2
/vol/netapp em7/netapp em7.lun		Storage.LUN	NetApp I LUN C-Mode	12964	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable		V2
/vol/New Shared DS vol/New Shared	DS	Storage.LUN	NetApp I LUN C-Mode	12974	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	
/vol/vol0/lun0		Storage.LUN	NetApp   LUN	14073	CloudHosting	Healthy	CUG	Active	SNMP Public V2	
/vol/vol0/lun1		Storage.LUN	NetApp I LUN	14072	CloudHosting	Healthy	CUG	Active	SNMP Public V2	
/vol/vol1/lun0		Storage.LUN	NetApp   LUN	14070	CloudHosting	Healthy	CUG	Active	SNMP Public V2	
/vol/vol1/lun1		Storage.LUN	NetApp   LUN	14068	CloudHosting	Healthy	CUG		SNMP Public V2	
/vol/vol1/lun2		Storage.LUN	NetApp I LUN	14071	CloudHosting	Healthy	CUG	Active		V2
/vol/vol1/lun4		Storage.LUN	NetApp   LUN	14069	CloudHosting	Healthy	CUG	Active	SNMP Public V2	
/vol/vol2/lun0		Storage.LUN	NetApp I LUN	14075	CloudHosting	Healthy	CUG	Active	SNMP Public V2	
/vol/vol2/lun1		Storage.LUN	NetApp   LUN	14074	CloudHosting	Healthy	CUG	Active	SNMP Public V2	
10.0.13.20-CTIManager		UC.Service	Cisco Systems I CTI Manager Service	14509	HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG	Active		V2
10.0.13.20-Extension Mobility		UC.Service	Cisco Systems   Extension Mobility Service		HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG	Active		V2
10.0.13.20-Extension Mobility		UC.Service	Cisco Systems   Extension Mobility Service	14507	HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG	Active	SNMP Public V2	
10.0.13.20-Tip		UC.Service	Cisco Systems   Tomcat	14511	HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG	Active	SNMP Public V2	
10.0.13.20-WebDialer Web Service		UC.Service	Cisco Systems   Cisco WebDialer Service	14508	HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG	Active	SNMP Public V2	
10.0.13.21-CTIManager		UC.Service	Cisco Systems   CTI Manager Service	14519	HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG	Active	SNMP Public V2	
10.0.13.21-Extension Mobility		UC.Service	Cisco Systems   Extension Mobility Service		HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG	Active		V2
10.0.13.21-Tftp		UC.Service	Cisco Systems   TFTP Service	14518	HQ Data Center	Major	CUG	Active	SNMP Public V2	
10.0.13.21-Tip		UC.Service	Cisco Systems   Tomcat	14521	HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG	Active	SNMP Public V2	
10.0.13.21-WebDialer Web Service		UC.Service	Cisco Systems   Cisco WebDialer Service	14520	HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG	Active	SNMP Public V2	
10.0.13.21-Webbialer Web Service		UC.Service	Cisco Systems   Cisco Webbialer Service	14526	HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG	Active	SNMP Public V2	
10.0.13.22-Extension Mobility		UC.Service	Cisco Systems   Extension Mobility Service		HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG		SNMP Public V2	
10.0.13.22-Extension Mobility		UC.Service	Cisco Systems   TFTP Service	14525	HQ Data Center	Major	CUG	Active		V2 V2
10.0.13.22-Tip		UC.Service	Cisco Systems   Tomcat	14528	HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG	Active		V2 V2
10.0.13.22-10ffcat 10.0.13.22-WebDialer Web Service		UC.Service	Cisco Systems   Cisco WebDialer Service	14527	HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG	Active		V2 V2
10.168.37.35		UC.Device.Trunk	Cisco Systems   H323 Trunk	14604	Enterprise Video	Healthy	CUG		SNMP Public V2	
192.168.40.196	192,168,40,196	Pingable	Linux I ICMP	12612	HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG	Active	ONWIF FUDIIC VZ	VZ
192.168.40.196 192.168.53.245-CTIManager	192.108.40.190	UC.Service	Cisco Systems   CTI Manager Service	14378	HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	 V2
192.108.53.245-C TIMANAGER									SNMP Public V2	
192.168.53.245-Extension Mobility 192.168.53.245-Tftp		UC.Service UC.Service	Cisco Systems   Extension Mobility Service Cisco Systems   TFTP Service	14382	HQ Data Center HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	
192.168.53.245-1ftp 192.168.53.245-Tomcat		UC.Service UC.Service	Cisco Systems   Temporal	143/9	HQ Data Center HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2 SNMP Public V2	
192.168.53.245-Tomcat 192.168.53.245-WebDialer Web Service		UC.Service	Cisco Systems   Tomcat Cisco Systems   Cisco WebDialer Service		HQ Data Center HQ Data Center	Healthy	CUG			V2 V2
192.168.53.245-WebDialer Web Service 192.168.54.120		Service Servers.VMware	VMware I Host Server	13024	HQ Data Center SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	DIVIMP PUBLIC V2	V.Z
192.168.54.120		Servers.VMware Servers.VMware	VMware I Host Server	13024	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	-	-
192.168.54.121 192.168.54.122		Servers.VMware Servers.VMware	VMware   Host Server VMware   Host Server		SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable		
				12991					-	-
192.168.54.123		Servers VMware Servers VMware	VMware   Host Server	13025	SILO SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable Unavailable	-	-
192.168.54.124			VMware   Host Server			Healthy	CUG		-	-
192.168.54.125		Servers.VMware	VMware   Host Server		SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	-	-
192.168.54.126		Servers.VMware	VMware   Host Server	12995	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	-	<u> </u>
20_Po13_Flexpod - Nexus_a		OEM	Cisco Systems   Nexus vPC	14565	SILO	Healthy	CUG		Cisco SNMPv2 - Ex	
20_Po13_Flexpod - Nexus_b	I	OEM	Cisco Systems   Nexus vPC	14558	SILO	Healthy	CUG	Unavailable	SNMP Public V2	V2

**NOTE**: If you want to include only specific devices in the report, use the "search as you type" fields at the top of each column. You can filter the list of devices by one or more column values. You can then generate the report, and only the devices displayed in the **Device Manager** page will appear in the report.

To generate a report about all or multiple devices:

1. Log in to the ScienceLogic platform.

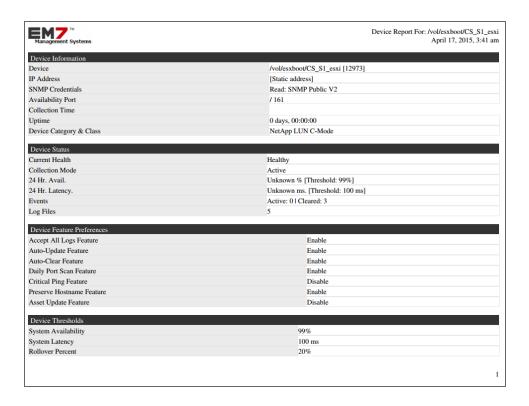
2. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).



- 3. If you want to filter the list of devices, use the "search as you type" fields at the top of each column. You can filter the list of devices by one or more column values.
- 4. Select the [Report] menu in the upper right.
- 5. When prompted, specify the output format for the report and if you want to save it to disk.

## Generating a Report for a Single Device

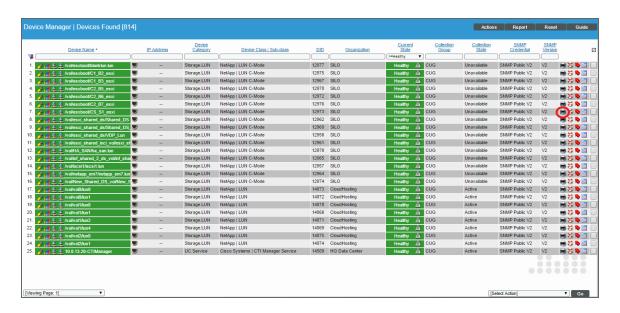
From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager), you can generate a detailed report on a single device. You can specify the information to include in the report (Full Report, Status, Config, Hardware, Notes, Software, Processes, Network, Events, Health) and the format in which the report will be generated (Create Report as HTML Document, Create Report as PDF Document, Create Report as MS Word Document, Create Report as MS Excel Document).



To generate a detailed report on a single device:

1. Log in to the ScienceLogic platform.

2. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).



- 3. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to generate a detailed report. Select the printer icon ( ) for that device.
- 4. The **Report Creator** modal page appears. In the **Report Creator** modal page, you can specify which information to include in the device report and the format in which the report will be generated.



- 5. Select one of the following to specify the information to include in the device report:
  - [Full Report]. Includes information about device status, status of all device policies, status of all monitors, status of hardware components, status of all thresholds defined for the device, a list of all active events associated with the device, and information about the last collection time and last entry to the device log.
  - [Status]. Includes information about device status, status of all monitors, status of hardware components, status of all thresholds defined for the device, and information about the last collection time and last entry to the device log.

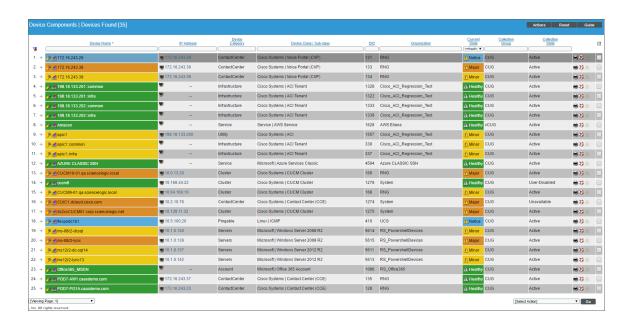
- [Config]. Includes status of all monitors, status of all thresholds defined for the device, and information about the last collection time and last entry to the device log.
- [Contacts]. Includes contact information for the device's organization and contact information for all vendors and warranty/support accounts.
- [Hardware]. Includes overview of hardware components for the device.
- [Notes]. Includes all notes created in the Notepad Editor page.
- [Software]. Displays a list of software installed on the device.
- [Processes]. Displays a list of all processes running on the device.
- [Network]. Includes information about network ports and network configuration.
- [Events]. Includes a list of all active events associated with the device.
- [Health]. Includes information about device status, status of all monitors, status of all Dynamic Applications associated with the device, status of all thresholds defined for the device, and a list of all active events associated with the device.
- 6. Select from the following list of formats in which the report can be generated:
  - Create Report as HTML Document
  - Create Report as PDF Document
  - Create Report as MS Word Document
  - Create Report as MS Excel Document
  - CSV Comma Separated Values

## Viewing the List of Component Devices

You can view the list of component devices from the **Device Components** page. To view the list of component devices:

1. Go to the **Device Components** page (Registry > Devices > Device Components).

2. The **Device Components** page displays the following about each device:



**TIP**: To sort the list of devices, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort by descending order, click the column heading again.

- **Plus-sign icon** (+). Clicking on this icon expands the device and displays the children devices underneath the device. Each device that displays a plus-sign icon has children devices.
- **Minus-sign icon** ( <sup>-</sup> ). Clicking on this icon collapses the device and hides the children devices for this device. Each device that displays a minus-sign icon has children devices.
- **Device Name**. Name of the device. For devices running SNMP, component devices, or devices with DNS entries, the name is discovered automatically. For root devices without SNMP or DNS entries, the device's IP address will appear in this field.
- IP Address. The IP address of the device. Appears only for physical devices.
- **Device Category**. The category assigned to the device. Categories include servers, routers, switches, firewalls, printers, etc. The category is automatically assigned during discovery, at the same time as the as Device-Class/Sub-Class.
- Device-Class/Device Sub-Class. The manufacturer (device class) and type of device (sub-class). The
  Device-Class/Sub-Class is automatically assigned during discovery, at the same time as the as
  Category.
- **DID**. Device ID. This is a unique number automatically assigned to the device by the ScienceLogic platform.
- Organization. The Organization to which the device is assigned.

- Current State. Condition of the device, based upon events generated by the device. Condition can be one of the following:
  - o Critical. Device has serious problem that requires immediate attention.
  - Major. Device has problem that requires immediate attention.
  - Minor. Device has less-serious problem.
  - Notice. Device has an informational event associated with it.
  - Healthy. Device is running with no problems.
- Collector Group. Specifies the collector group to which the device belongs. Collector Groups are defined in System > Settings > Collector Groups and specify one or more Data Collectors. A Data Collector is the appliance that gathers data from the device. For All-In-One Appliances, this field displays only the built-in Collector Group (and any virtual Collector Groups)
- Collection State. Collection state can be one of the following:
  - Active. The ScienceLogic platform is currently collecting data from the device.
  - User-Disabled. Collection has been manually disabled for this device by a user. The ScienceLogic platform will not collect data from the device until a user manually re-enables collection.
  - Unavailable. The device is currently unavailable, so the platform cannot collect data from the device at this time.
  - Component Vanished. The component device has vanished, i.e. is not currently being reported by its root device. The ScienceLogic platform cannot collect data from the device at this time.
- Tools. Displays icons for managing devices. The choices are:
  - Device Administration ( ): Leads to the **Device Properties** page, where you can define basic device parameters and parameters for auto-discovery. From the **Device Properties** page, you can also access the other pages in the Device Administration tools
  - Device Management (\*\*\*): Leads to the **Device Summary** page, where you can see reports and logs related to the device. From the **Device Summary** page, you can also access the other pages in the Device Management tools.
  - Interfaces (**)**. Leads to the **Interfaces Found** page, where you can view details about each network interface on the device.

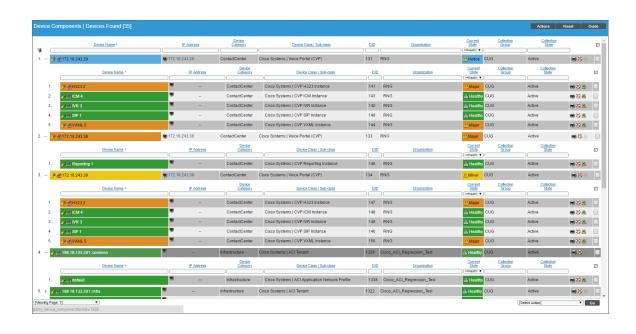
- Print Report (). Generates a report for the selected device. Opens the Report Selector modal page, where you can specify the information to include in the report (Full Report, Status, Config, Hardware, Notes, Software, Processes, Network, Events, Health) and the format in which the report will be generated (HTML Document, PDF Document, MS Word Document, MS Excel Document, CSV File).
- Create Ticket ( ). Leads to the **Ticket Editor** page, where you can define and file a new ticket for the device.
- View Asset Record (\*). This icon appears if an asset record has already been defined for the
  device. This icon leads to the Asset Properties page, where you can view the asset record for the
  device.
- Create Asset Record ( ). This icon appears if an asset record has not been defined for the device.

  This icon leads to the **Asset Properties** page, where you can create an asset record for the device.
- Checkbox (2). Applies the action in the [Select Action] drop-down to the device. To select all the checkboxes, select the large red check icon.

### Viewing Children Devices

You can view component child devices of a root device in the **Device Components** page. If that child device also serves as a root device, you can also view its component child devices, and so forth. To view component children devices for root devices:

- 1. Go to the **Device Components** page (Registry > Devices > Device Components).
- 2. In the **Device Components** page, find the root device for which you want to view its component children. Select its plus sign icon (+).
- 3. The device will be expanded to display the component children devices below the root device.



4. You can select the plus sign icon for each component child device that also serves as a root device. To collapse the component child devices, select their minus sign icon ( -).

#### Filtering the List of Component Devices

You can filter the list on the **Device Components** page by one or more parameters. Only component devices that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **Device Components** page.

To filter by each parameter except *Current State*, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Device Components** page searches for component devices that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use special characters to filter each parameter.

Filter the list by one or more of the following parameters:

- **Device Name**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Components** page will display only devices that have a matching device name.
- IP Address. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Components** page will display only devices that have a matching IP address.
- **Device Category**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Components** page will display only devices that have a matching device category.
- Device Class | Sub-Class. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Device Components page will display only devices that have a matching device class.
- **DID**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Components** page will display only devices that have a matching device ID.
- Organization. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Device Components page will display only devices that have a matching organization.
- Current State >=. Specifies the device's current state. Only those devices that match all the previously selected fields and have the specified condition will be displayed. A device's condition is determined by its most severe, outstanding event. The choices are:
  - >=Healthy. Include devices with a condition of "Healthy" or greater. This will include all devices.
  - >=Notice. Include devices with a condition of "Notice" or greater. This means, include devices with a condition of "Notice", "Minor", "Major", and "Critical".
  - >=Minor. Include devices with a condition of "Minor" or greater. This means, include devices with a condition of "Minor", "Major", and "Critical".
  - >=Major. Include devices with a condition of "Major" or greater. This means, include devices with a condition of "Major" and "Critical".
  - >=Critical. Include devices with a condition of "Critical" or greater. This means, include devices with a condition of "Critical", because there is no "greater" condition.
- **Collection Group**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Components** page will display only devices that have a matching Collector Group.

• Collection State. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Device Components page will display only devices that have a matching Collection State.

**TIP**: To return to the default list of events, select the [Reset] button.

### Using the Advanced Filter with the List of Component Devices

You can use the Advanced Filter tool to select one or more parameters to filter the display of devices in the **Device Components** page. Only devices that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed.

**TIP**: To select multiple entries in the Advanced Filter tool, hold down the <Ctrl> key and left-click the entries.

- After selecting all filters, select the [Apply] button to apply the filters to the list of devices.
- To reset each field and apply no filters, select the Reset button.

To access the Advanced Filter tool:

- 1. Go to the **Device Components** page (Registry > Devices > Device Components).
- 2. Click on the funnel icon (\*\*).
- 3. The Advanced Filter Tool will display advanced filters for each column in the page. You can filter by one or more of the following parameters:

**NOTE**: Unlike the "filter-while-you-type" feature, the Advanced Filter tool is not applied to the list of devices until you select the **Apply** button

- **Device Name**. In the Match Any fields, you can enter one or more text strings to match, including special characters. The **Device Components** page will display only devices that have a matching device name.
- *IP Address*. In the *Match Any* fields, you can enter one or more text strings to match, including special characters. The **Device Components** page will display only devices that have a matching IP address.
- **Device Category**. Select from a list of device categories that have member devices. The **Device Components** page will display only devices that have a matching device category.
- **Device Class | Sub-class**. In the *Match Any* fields, you can enter one or more text strings to match, including special characters. The **Device Components** page will display only devices that have a matching device class or sub-class.
- **DID**. In the From and To field, you can specify a range of device IDs. The **Device Components** page will display only devices that fall within that range of device IDs.
- Organization. Select from a list of organizations that have member devices. The **Device Components** page will display only devices that have a matching organization.
- Current State. You can select from a list of device states. The Device Components page will display only devices that have a matching state.

- Collection Group. Select from a list of collection groups that have member devices. The **Device**Components page will display only devices that have a matching collection group.
- Collection State. Select from a list of collection states that have member devices. The **Device Components** page will display only devices that have a matching collection state.
- 4. After selecting the desired filters, clickthe [Apply] button to filter the list of devices.
- 5. To reset each field and apply no filters, clickthe [Reset] button.

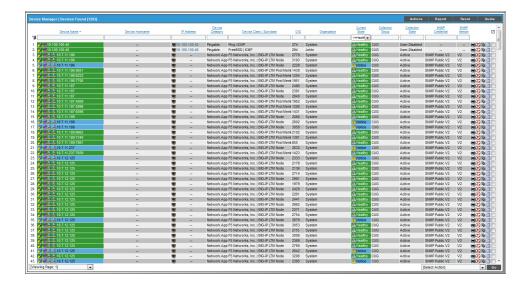
**TIP**: You can perform an advanced filter and then perform a second advanced filter on the results of the first advanced filter. You can continue to modify and apply an advanced filter multiple times.

### Bulk Actions in the Device Management Page

The **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager) contains a drop-down field in the lower right called **Select Action**. This field allows you to apply an action to multiple devices at once.

To apply an action to multiple devices:

1. In the **Device Manager** page, select the checkbox for each device you want to apply the action to. To select all checkboxes for all devices, select the red checkbox (**D**) at the top of the page.



- 2. In the **Select Action** drop-down list, select one of the following actions:
  - **Delete Devices**. Deletes all selected devices from the ScienceLogic platform. Tickets associated with the device are unlinked from the device, but are not deleted.

- Modify by Template. Displays the Applying Template to Device page, where you can apply the settings in a device template to all selected devices. You can also make one-time changes to the template, and those changes will be applied only to the selected devices. For details on using device templates, see the manual Device Groups and Device Templates.
- Clear Device Logs. Deletes data from the device's log files. For details on device logs, see the chapter on Device Logs.
- Create Asset Record. Creates an asset record for each selected device. For details on asset records, see the Asset Management manual.
- Schedule Maintenance. Leads to the Maintenance Schedule page. In this page you can specify a date and time to put each selected device into "maintenance mode". During maintenance mode, the platform will not generate events about the selected devices. You can choose to disable or enable polling during maintenance mode. Even if polling is enabled, the platform will collect information from the selected devices but will not generate events for the devices. For details on scheduling maintenance, see the chapter on Maintenance.
- Find Collection Label Duplicates. Leads to the Duplicates page. In this page, you can view a list of
  devices where the Collection Labels have more than one possible presentation object aligned. From
  this page, you can manually align a single presentation object with a Collection label for a device. For
  more information on Collection Labels, see the chapter Graphing Data from Multiple Dynamic
  Applications in a Single Dashboard Widget.
- Change Collection State. Changes the status of the device in the ScienceLogic platform. The choices are:
  - Active. The platform polls the device on a regular basis and updates the data displayed in the platform.
  - Disabled. The platform does not poll the device. Data displayed in the platform is not updated.
- Change User Maintenance Mode. Changes the user maintenance mode setting for the selected devices. For details on user maintenance mode, see the chapter on Maintenance.
- Change Collector Group: Changes the Data Collector(s) used to collect data from the device. Choose from the list of all Collector Groups in the ScienceLogic platform. When you select one of the collector groups, each selected device will by polled by the collectors in the collector group. This option does not appear for All-In-One Appliances. For details on collector groups and their relationships to devices, see the manual System Administration.
- Move To Organization: Associates a device with an organization. The list of choices will include all
  organizations in the ScienceLogic platform. For details on organizations in the platform, see the
  manual Organizations and Users.
- Align SNMP Read Credential. This option applies the selected credential to all selected devices. The
  selected devices will use the selected credential as their primary credential. Secondary credentials will
  remain unchanged. Choose from a list of all SNMP Read credentials in the ScienceLogic platform
  (defined in the Credential Management page [System > Manage > Credentials]). For more
  details on Credentials, see the manual on Credentials and Discovery.
- Add to Device Group. This option aligns the selected devices with the selected device group. The selected devices will then appear in Device Group Views and will inherit the properties of the device group, including scheduling, access, and visibility.

Align to Device Dashboard. This option aligns the selected device dashboard with the selected device group. Choose from a list of all device dashboards in the ScienceLogic platform (defined in the Device Dashboards page [System > Customize > Device Dashboards]). For more details on Device Dashboards, see the Device Dashboards chapter.

## **Bulk Actions for Component Devices**

The **Device Components** page (Registry > Devices > Device Components) contains a drop-down field in the lower right called **Select Action**. This field allows you to apply an action to multiple devices at once.

To apply an action to multiple devices:

- 1. In the **Device Components** page, select the checkbox for each device you want to apply the action to. To select all checkboxes for all devices, select the red checkbox (**II**) at the top of the page.
- 2. In the **Select Action** drop-down list, select one of the following actions:
  - **Delete Devices**. Deletes all selected devices from the ScienceLogic platform. Tickets associated with the device are unlinked from the device, but are not deleted.

**NOTE**: You cannot delete a parent device or root device that has associated component devices. To delete a root device, you must first delete all device components for that root device. To delete the component devices, you must first disable collection and then delete the devices. You can then delete the root device.

- Modify by Template. Displays the Applying Template to Device page, where you can apply the
  settings in a device templates to all selected devices. You can also make one-time changes to the
  template, that will be applied only to the selected devices.
- Clear Device Logs. Deletes data from the device's log files.
- Schedule Maintenance. Leads to the Maintenance Schedule page. In this page, you can specify a date and time to put each selected device into "maintenance mode". During maintenance mode, the ScienceLogic platform will not generate events about the selected devices. You can choose to enable or disable polling during maintenance mode. Even if polling is enabled, the ScienceLogic platform will collect information from the selected devices but will not generate events for the devices.
- **Create Asset Record**. Automatically creates an asset record for the device. The ScienceLogic platform automatically populates as many fields as possible, using retrieved data.
- Change Collection State. Changes the status of the device in the ScienceLogic platform. The choices are:
  - Active. The ScienceLogic platform polls the device on a regular basis and updates the data displayed in the platform.
  - Active (recursive). The ScienceLogic platform polls the device on a regular basis and updates the
    data displayed in the platform. The platform also polls all children devices (of the selected device)
    on a regular basis and updates their data.

- Disabled. The ScienceLogic platform does not poll the device. Data displayed in the platform is not updated.
- Disabled (recursive). The ScienceLogic platform does not poll the device. The platform does not update data about the device. The platform also does not poll any children devices (of the selected device) and does not update data about the children devices.
- Change Collector Group. Changes the collector group used to collect data from the device.
   Choose from the list of all collector groups and virtual collector groups in the ScienceLogic platform.
   When you select one of the collector groups, each selected device will by polled by the collectors in the collector group. For All-In-One Appliances, you can select only the built-in Collector Group and any virtual Collector Groups.
  - If you align a device with a virtual Collector Group, the ScienceLogic platform will store all historical data from all aligned devices, but will no longer perform collection on those devices or trigger events for these devices.
- Move to Organization. Associates a device with an organization. The list of choices will include all
  organizations in the ScienceLogic platform.
- Align SNMP Read Credential. This option applies the selected credential to all selected devices. The
  selected devices will use the selected credential as their primary credential. Secondary credentials will
  remain unchanged. Choose from a list of all SNMP Read credentials in the ScienceLogic platform
  (defined in System > Manage > Credentials).
- Add to Device Group. This option aligns the selected devices with the selected device group. The selected devices will then appear in Device Group Views and will inherit the properties of the device group, including scheduling, access, and visibility.
- 3. Select the [Go] button. The ScienceLogic platform will apply the selected option to the selected devices.

### Bulk Merging and Unmerging of Devices

If your ScienceLogic system includes a physical device and a component device, you can merge those device records into a single record for easier monitoring. Merging consolidates the devices and their data—device fields, values, graphs, behaviors, and other user interface elements—providing you with a single set of data for the device. Additionally, merged devices consume only a single device license.

Merging does not remove, replace, or add any data; merging simply groups data together. When you merge a physical device and a component device, the device record for the component device no longer displays in the user interface, while the device record for the physical device displays in user interface pages that previously displayed the component device. For example, the physical device is displayed instead of the component device in the **Device Components** page and the **Component Map** page. All existing and future data for both devices will be associated with the record for the physical device.

Merged devices can be unmerged back into individual device records, if needed.

The **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager) contains options for the bulk merging or unmerging of multiple pairs of physical and component devices. These features are convenient if you have a large number of devices you want to merge or unmerge in a single session.

**NOTE**: You can merge only two individual devices together into a single merged device. To do so, you must have user permissions that allow merging and unmerging on both devices.

**NOTE**: When you merge devices, active events associated with the component device will be set to "cleared." The cleared events will not be associated with the physical device. If the devices are unmerged, the cleared events cannot be moved back to the component device.

**CAUTION:** Merging devices also merges the log data from each device. The log data cannot later be unmerged.

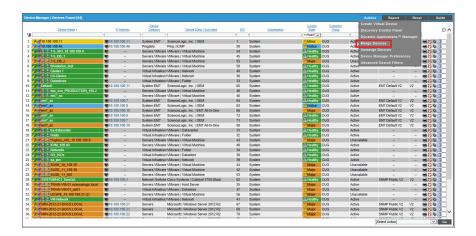
### Performing a Bulk Device Merge

If you have a large number of devices to merge, you can perform a bulk device merge, which is more efficient than merging device pairs individually. A bulk device merge enables you to select from multiple pairs of devices—particularly those with matching IP addresses or device names—and choose the pairs to merge.

**NOTE**: If you have a small number of physical and component devices that you want to merge, you can merge each pair individually. For more information, see the *Merging Individual Devices* section.

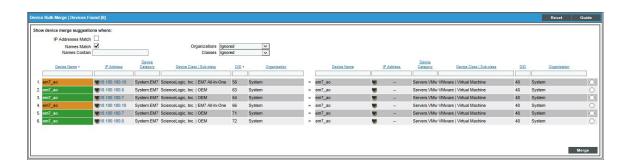
To perform a bulk device merge:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Select the [Actions] menu and then choose Merge Devices.



**TIP**: Because of the potentially large number of devices that could be merged, no results display when the **Device Bulk Merge** page initially displays. You must select one of the checkboxes or begin typing a name in the **Names Contain** field for results to display on the page.

#### 3. On the **Device Bulk Merge** page:



- Select the *IP Addresses Match* checkbox if you want the page to display a list of devices where the physical device and the component device a have matching *IP* addresses.
- Select the **Names Match** checkbox if you want the page to display a list of devices where the physical device and the component device have matching Device Names.
- If you want the page to display a list of devices that could be merged where the Device Names of the physical device and the component device contain the same character(s), enter those characters in the **Names Contain** field.
- In the Organizations field:
  - Select *Ignored* if you do not want to filter the list of devices based on the Organizations assigned to the physical device and the component device.
  - Select Match if you want to filter the list of devices to include only physical devices and component devices that have matching Organizations.
  - Select Don't Match if want to filter the list of devices to include only physical devices and component devices that do not have matching Organizations.

#### • In the Classes field:

- Select Ignored if you do not want to filter the list of devices based on the Device Classes assigned to the physical device and the component device.
- Select Match if you want to filter the list of devices to include only physical devices and component devices that are assigned matching Device Classes.
- Select Don't Match if you want to filter the list of devices to include only physical devices and component devices that are assigned non-matching Device Classes.

**NOTE**: You can make selections in the **Organizations** and **Classes** fields only after you make a selection or entry in the **IP Addresses Match**, **Names Match**, and/or **Names Contain** fields.

The **Device Bulk Merge**page displays a list of physical device and component device pairs that match your search criteria. Each numbered row indicates a pair of devices that could be merged.

4. Select the radio button(s) in the last column of each row of device pairs that you want to merge, then select the [Merge] button. The radio buttons are grouped per physical device, i.e., you can select only one row for each physical device.

**NOTE**: You can select each component device only once for merging. If you attempt to select the same component device in multiple rows, you will receive an error message when you select the **[Merge]** button.

5. A modal window displays that asks you to confirm the merge. Select the **[Yes]** button.



6. The platform begins merging the selected devices. When the message, "Device Bulk Merge complete" displays, select the [Close/Esc] button.

**NOTE**: To view an updated list of devices that includes your merged devices, select the **[Reset]** button on the **Device Manager** page.

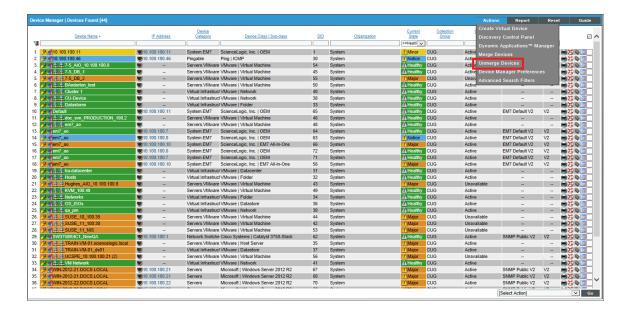
### Performing a Bulk Device Unmerge

If you have a large number of devices to unmerge, you can perform a bulk device unmerge, which is more efficient than unmerging device pairs individually. A bulk device unmerge enables you to view a list of merged devices and select all of the devices you want to unmerge.

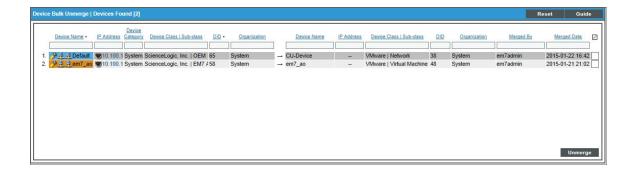
**NOTE**: If you have a small number of devices that you want to unmerge, you can unmerge each pair individually. For more information, see the *Unmerging Individual Devices* section.

To unmerge multiple devices:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Select the [Actions] menu and then choose Unmerge Devices.



3. The **Device Bulk Unmerge** page displays a list of merged devices. Each numbered row indicates a pair of merged devices that can be unmerged. Select the checkboxes in the last column of each row of devices that you want to unmerge, then select the **[Unmerge]** button.



4. A modal window displays that asks you to confirm the unmerging. Select the **[Unmerge]** button.



5. When the message, "Device Bulk Unmerge complete" displays, select the [Close/Esc] button.

**NOTE**: To view an updated list of devices that includes your unmerged devices, select the **[Reset]** button on the **Device Manager** page.

# Chapter

5

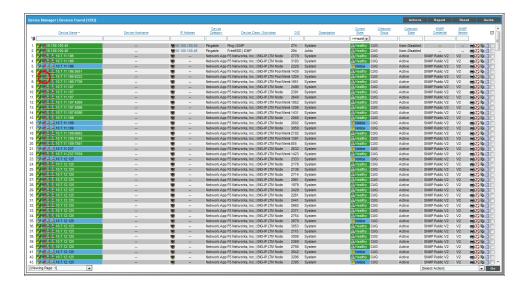
## Viewing Details in the Device Reports Panel

### What is the Device Reports panel?

The **Device Reports** panel allows you to view detailed information that the ScienceLogic platform has gathered from each device and view reports generated from that information. The **Device Reports** panel is for viewing information, rather than for administering the device.

To access the **Device Reports** panel for a device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to view the **Device Reports** panel. Select its bar graph ( icon.







Tab	Description
Summary	The <b>Device Summary</b> page provides a one-stop overview of a device. This page displays one or more Device Dashboards that are aligned with the device. To switch between the dashboards that are available for a device, select a dashboard in the <b>Device Dashboard</b> drop-down list in the upper-left of the page.
Performance	The <b>Device Performance</b> page allows you to view many detailed reports for the selected device, including reports on availability, latency, CPU usage, memory usage, file system usage, network interfaces and bandwidth usage, domain name availability, Email round-trip speed, SOAP/XML transactions, system-process availability, TCP/IP Port availability, web content availability, and custom reports based on data collected from the device by Dynamic Applications.

Tab	Description
Topology	The <b>Device View</b> page displays a map of the device and all of the devices with which the device has relationships. These relationships include: Layer -2 devices and their clients; Layer-3 devices and Layer-2 devices; hypervisors and their virtual machines; network devices that use CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol) or LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol) and devices that are specified as neighbors in CDP tables or LLDP tables; links between network devices that use CDP or LLDP and devices that are specified as neighbors in CDP tables; device relationships created with Dynamic Applications; manually created parent-child relationships that affect event correlation.
Configs	The <b>Configuration Report</b> page displays configuration information collected by Dynamic Applications. All objects of type "config" are included in the <b>Configuration Report</b> page.
	In the <b>Dynamic Applications   Collections Objects</b> page (System > Manage > Applications > Collections), users can define which objects will be grouped together, which table each object will appear in, and whether the ScienceLogic platform will track changes in each object's value.
	For details on Dynamic Applications and configuration objects, see one of the manuals on <i>Dynamic Applications</i> .
Journals	The <b>Journal View</b> page displays journal entry information collected from the device by journal Dynamic Applications.
	For details on the <b>Journal View</b> page, see the <b>Snippet Dynamic Application</b> manual.
Interfaces	The Interfaces Found page displays detailed information about the network interfaces on the device.
Logs	The <b>Device Logs &amp; Messages</b> page displays all the messages The ScienceLogic platform has generated about the device.
Events	The Viewing Active Events page displays a list of all events associated with the device.
	For details on events, see the manual <i>Events</i> .
Tickets	The <b>Ticket History</b> page displays a list of all tickets, both open and resolved, associated with the device.
	For details on tickets and ticket administration, see the manual <i>Ticketing</i> .
Software	The <b>Software Packages</b> page displays a list of all the software installed on the device. If possible, the installation date is also displayed.
Processes	The <b>System Processes</b> page displays information about the processes running on the device.
Services	The Windows Services page displays a list of all Windows services enabled on the device.
TCP Ports	The <b>Port Security</b> page displays a list of all open ports on a device. Every night, the ScienceLogic platform scans all the ports of each managed device. If any new ports are opened, the platform adds the port to the list in the <b>Port Security</b> page.

Tab	Description
Organization	Leads to the <b>Organizational Summary</b> page and the <b>Organization Administration</b> panel, where you can view and edit details about the organization associated with the device.  For details on organizations and organization administration, see the manual <b>Organizations</b> and <b>Users</b> .
Asset	Leads to the <b>Asset Properties</b> page and the <b>Asset Administration</b> panel, where you can view and edit the asset record for the device.  For details on asset records and asset administration, see the manual <b>Asset Management</b> .

## Device Dashboards in the Device Summary Page

The device dashboard that is defined as the "Global Default" is the default dashboard that appears in the in the **Device Summary** page for each device.

The ScienceLogic platform decides what to display in the **Device Summary** page as follows:

- If the device is manually aligned with a device dashboard (in the **Device Properties** page), that dashboard is displayed in the **Device Summary** page for the device.
- If the device is not manually aligned with a device dashboard, the device dashboard that is aligned with the Device Class is displayed.
- If the device class is not aligned with a device dashboard, the device dashboard that is aligned with the Device Category is displayed.
- If the device category is not aligned with a device dashboard, the device dashboard that is defined as the "Global Default" is displayed.

NOTE: If the *Prefer Global Device Summary Dashboard Over Category/Class* checkbox is checked in the **Behavior Settings** page (System > Settings > Behavior) and a device is not manually aligned with a device dashboard, the dashboard that is defined as the "Global Default" is displayed.

**NOTE:** Although you can align a device dashboard with a Dynamic Application, the device dashboards that are aligned with Dynamic Applications are never displayed in the **Device Summary** page as the default display. However, from the **Device Summary** page, a user can select and view any device dashboards that are aligned with Dynamic Applications for the device.

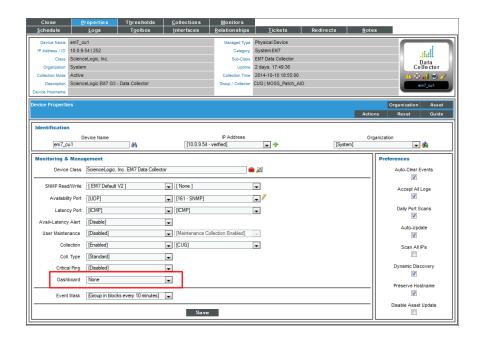
In addition to the default dashboard for a device, you can also view other device dashboards in the **Device Summary** page. The other dashboards that are available for a device are based on the device class and device category assigned to the device and the Dynamic Applications to which the device is subscribed.

To view a device dashboard other than the global default device dashboard:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to view the **Device Summary** page. Select its bar graph (📶) icon.
- 3. The **Device Summary** page appears, displaying either the global default device dashboard or the device dashboard that has been manually assigned to this device.
- 4. To select a different device dashboard, select the drop-down menu in the upper-left corner of the **Device Summary** page:



Device Dashboards are defined in the **Device Dashboards** page (System > Customize > Device Dashboards) and aligned with the device in the **Device Properties** page (Registry > Devices > wrench icon) in the **Dashboard** field:



For information on how to create a device dashboard and how to align it to a device, device class, device category, or a Dynamic Application, see the chapter on **Device Dashboards**.

### The Default Device Summary Page

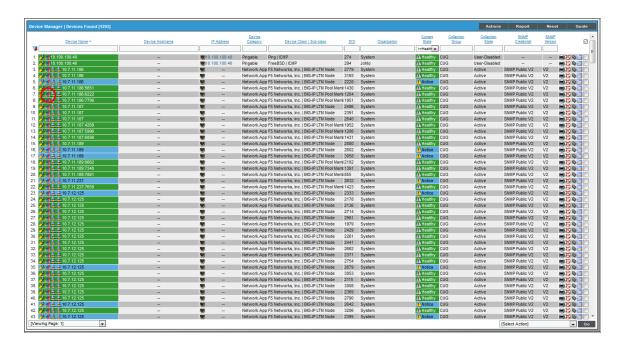
This section describes device dashboard that is configured as the global default when the platform is installed. This default device dashboard provides a one-stop overview of a device.

**NOTE**: The global default dashboard can be changed. The dashboard describes in this section might not be the global default dashboard in your ScienceLogic system.

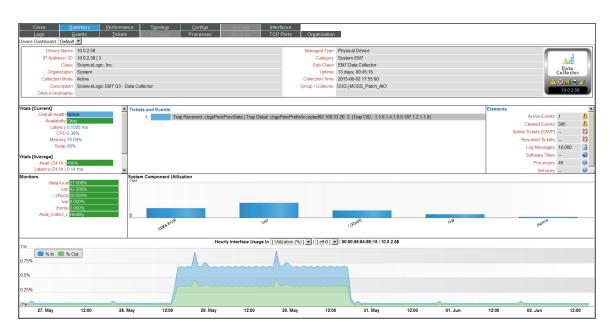
To access the **Device Summary** page for a device:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).

2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to view the **Device Summary** page. Select its bar graph (📶) icon.



3. The **Device Summary** page appears (along with the tabs for the **Device Reports** panel):



- 4. The **Device Summary** page displays the following read-only information about the device:
  - Vitals. Information about the overall health of the device.
  - Tickets and Events. List of active tickets and events associated with the device.

- *Elements*. List of elements associated with the device and links to a page with details on each element.
- Monitors. List of monitoring policies associated with the device.
- System Component Utilization. Overview of CPU, memory, swap, and file system usage.
- Hourly Interface Usage. Overview of the hourly bandwidth usage of the primary interface.
- 5. Each pane is described in detail in the sections below.

**NOTE**: Data can be up to 1 hour old in the **Device Summary** page.

#### Read-Only Information

Each page in the **Device Administration** panel and the **Device Reports** panel displays read-only information about the device.

- Device Name. Name of the device. Clicking on this field displays the Device Properties page for the
  device.
- IP Address /ID. IP address of the device and the device ID of the device. The device ID is a unique numeric identifier, automatically assigned to the device by the ScienceLogic platform. Clicking on this field displays the Device Properties page for the device.
- Class. Device class for the device. A device class usually describes the manufacturer of the device.
- Organization. Organization associated with the device. Clicking on this field leads to the Organizational Summary page for the device's organization.
- Collection Mode. Collection mode. Choices are "active", meaning the ScienceLogic platform is periodically collecting data from the device, or "inactive", meaning the the platform is not currently collecting data from the device. Clicking on this field executes the Remote Port Scanner and displays the Remote Port Scanner modal page.
- **Description**. For SNMP devices, the SysDescr value as reported by the SNMP agent on the device. If a device does not support SNMP, this field appears blank.
- Root Device. For component devices, displays the device name or IP address of the physical device where
  the system that manages the device resides. Clicking on this value displays the Device Properties page for
  the root device.
- **Parent Device**. For component devices, displays the device name or IP address of the parent device. The parent device can be either another component device or a physical device. A parent device is the device between the current component device and the next layer in the component-device hierarchy. Clicking on this value displays the **Device Properties** page for the parent device.
- **Device Hostname**. For devices that are discovered and managed by a hostname (instead of IP address), this field displays the fully qualified hostname for the device.
- Managed Type. Specifies the protocol used to discover the device and whether or not the device is a physical device or a virtual device. Clicking on this field executes an SNMP walk of the device's SNMP file and displays the SNMP Walker modal page.

- Category. The device category associated with the device. The device category usually describes the function of the hardware.
- Sub-Class. The device sub-class associated with the device. The sub-class usually described the model of a device.
- *Uptime*. The number of days, hours, minutes, and seconds that the device has been continuously up and communicating with the ScienceLogic platform. Clicking on this field displays the System Vitals Summary report.
- Collection Time. The date and time that the platform last collected data from the device.
- **Group/Collector**. The Collector Group and specific collector used to last collect data from the device. For All-In-One Appliances, this field will contain the name of the default, built-in Collector Group.

#### Vitals

The Default device dashboard includes the **Vitals** pane. This pane displays information about the overall health of the device. You can view in formation on the following:

• **Device Rating**. The amount of the available monitoring capacity of the ScienceLogic system that is used by this device. The device rating is calculated hourly, based on the license that was used to install the ScienceLogic system and the amount of collection it is performing for this device, among other statistics.

**NOTE**: The **Device Rating** field appears only for users of type "Administrator".

- Overall Health. The condition of the device. This correlates with the condition of the most severe
  outstanding events. Clicking on this field leads to the System Vitals Summary Report, in the Device
  Performance page. Possible values for this field are:
  - Critical. Critical events are those that require immediate attention.
  - Major. Major events are those that require immediate investigation.
  - Minor. Minor events are those that need to be investigated before problems become severe.
  - Notice. Notice events are those that require attention but are not problem-related.
  - Healthy. Healthy events are those that are not urgent.
- Availability. Availability means the device's ability to accept connections and data from the network. The possible values are "okay" and "critical" or "undefined". Clicking on the value leads to System Availability Report, in the **Device Performance** page for the device.
  - A device will have an availability of "undefined" if the ScienceLogic platform is not monitoring
    availability for the device. This applies mostly to Virtual Devices and Component Devices with no
    aligned component identifiers of type "Availability".
- Latency. Latency for the device. Latency means the amount of time it takes the ScienceLogic platform to
  communicate with the device. The value in this field specifies the number of milliseconds it takes to
  communicate with the device. Clicking on the value leads to System Latency Report, in the Device
  Performance page for the device.

- Avail (24 Hr.). The device's average availability for the last 24 hours. Availability will be displayed in percent value. Clicking on this field leads to the System Vitals Summary Report, in the **Device Performance** page.
- Latency (24 Hr.). The device's average latency for the last 24 hours. The value in this field specifies the average number of milliseconds it took to communicate with the device. Clicking on the value leads to System Latency Report, in the **Device Performance** page for the device.
- **CPU Usage**. Displays total CPU usage, in percent. Clicking on the value leads to the Overall CPU Utilization Report, in the **Device Performance** page for the device.
- **Memory Usage**. Displays total memory usage, in percent. Clicking on the value leads to the Overall Memory Utilization report, in the **Device Performance** page for the device.
- **Swap Usage**. Displays total memory usage, in percent. Clicking on the value leads to the Overall Virtual Memory Utilization report, in the **Device Performance** page for the device.

#### Tickets and Events

The Normal device dashboard (the default dashboard) includes the **Tickets and Events** pane. This pane displays a list of active events associated with the device. For each event, the pane displays:

- Date and time. Date and time the event last occurred on the device.
- Message. The event message. The message is color-coded for severity.
  - **Critical**. Critical events are those that require immediate attention.
  - Major. Major events are those that require immediate investigation.
  - Minor. Minor events are those that need to be investigated before problems become severe.
  - Notice. Notice events are those that require attention but are not problem-related.
  - Healthy. Healthy events are those that are not urgent.

Clicking on an event displays the Event Summary modal page, where you can view details about the event.

For details on events, see the manual **Events**.

The **Tickets and Events** pane displays a list of active tickets associated with the device. For each ticket, the pane displays:

- Ticket ID. Unique numeric ID, automatically assigned to the ticket by the ScienceLogic platform.
- Message. The ticket message. The message is color-coded for severity.
  - o Critical. Critical tickets are those that require immediate attention.
  - Major. Major tickets are those that require immediate investigation.
  - Minor. Minor ticket are those that need to be investigated before problems become severe.
  - Notice. Notice ticket are those that require attention but are not problem-related.
  - **Healthy**. Healthy tickets are those that are not urgent.

Clicking on a ticket displays the **Ticket Summary** modal page, where you can view details about the ticket.

For details on tickets, see the manual *Ticketing*.

#### Elements

The Normal device dashboard (the default dashboard) includes the **Elements** pane. This pane displays information about the elements associated with the device. This pane can contain entries for one or more of the following:

- Active Events. Specifies the number of active events associated with the device. Clicking on the events icon (
   or the number of events leads to the Viewing Active Events page, where you can view details about the list of active events associated with the device.
- Cleared Events. Specifies the number of events that have been cleared or automatically resolved. Clicking on the events icon (4) or the number of events leads to the Viewing Cleared Events page, where you can view details about the list of active events associated with the device.
- Active Tickets (OWP). Specifies the number of active tickets associated with the device. Clicking on the lifering icon ( ) or the number of tickets leads to the **Ticket History** page, where you can view details about the active tickets for the device.
- **Resolved Tickets**. Specifies the number of resolved tickets associated with the device. Clicking on the lifering icon ( or the number of tickets leads to the **Ticket History** page, where you can view details about the resolved tickets for the device.
- Log Messages. Specifies the number of log entries associated with the device. Clicking on the page icon ( ) or the number of log entries leads to the **Device Logs & Messages** page, where you can view details about each log entry associated with the device.
- Asset Record. Specifies whether or not an asset record has been created for the device. The possible values are "Yes" and "No". Clicking on the asset icon ( ) or "Yes" or "No" leads to the Asset Properties page, where you can create an asset record or view details of an existing the asset report.
- **Product Services**. Specifies the number of product or service SKUs associated with the device. Clicking on the barcode icon or the number of products displays the **Product Services** modal page. In this page, you can view details about the products associated with the device.
- **Software Titles**. Specifies the number of software titles found on the device. Clicking on the software icon (
  ) or the number of software titles leads to the **Software Packages** page, where you can view details about the software titles on the device.
- **Processes**. Specifies the number of processes running on the device. Clicking on the gear icon (\*\*) or the number of processes leads to the **System Processes** page, where you can view details about the processes running on the device.
- **Services**. Specifies the number of Windows services running on the device. Clicking on the gear icon (\*) or the number of services leads to the **Windows Services** page, where you can view details about the Windows services running on the device.
- *TCP Ports*. Specifies the number of open TCP ports on the device. Clicking on the port icon ( or the number open ports leads to the **Port Security** page, where you can view details about the open ports on the device.

#### Monitors

The Normal device dashboard (the default dashboard) includes the **Monitors** pane. This pane displays information about the monitoring policies associated with the device. This pane can display the following:

- Domain Name. Displays the status of a domain-name, based on the domain-monitoring policy associated
  with the device. Clicking on the policy name or the status leads to the DNS Report, in the Device
  Performance page for the device.
- System Processes. Displays the status of a system process, based on the system-process monitoring policy associated with the device. Clicking on the policy name or the status leads to the Process Report, in the Device Performance page for the device.
- **SOAP/XML Transactions**. Displays the availability of a SOAP/XML server and content, based on the SOAP/XML transaction policy associated with the device. Clicking on the policy name or the status leads to the Data Transaction Report | Availability, in the **Device Performance** page for the device.
- **Web content**. Displays the status of specific web content, based on the web content policy associated with the device. Clicking on the policy name or the status leads to the Content Verification Report | Availability, in the **Device Performance** page for the device.
- *File systems*. For each monitored file system, specifies the percentage current used. Clicking on the name of the file system or its percentage value displays the File System Report, in the **Device Performance** page for the device.

For details on monitoring policies, see *Monitoring Domain Servers and DNS Records*, *Monitoring Email Round-Trips*, *Monitoring SOAP and XML Transactions*, and *Monitoring Web Content*.

### System Component Utilization

The Normal device dashboard (the default dashboard) includes the **System Component Utilization** pane. This pane displays information about hardware usage by the device. The graph displays information about the following hardware components:

- **CPU**. Displays the total amount of CPU currently being used, in percent. Clicking on this bar in the graph leads to the Overall CPU Utilization Report, in the **Device Performance** page for the device.
- *Memory*. Displays total amount of memory currently being used, in percent. Clicking on this bar in the graph leads to the Overall Virtual Memory Utilization Report, in the **Device Performance** page for the device.
- **Swap**. Displays the total amount of swap space currently being used, in percent. Clicking on this bar in the graph leads to the Overall Virtual Memory Utilization Report, in the **Device Performance** page for the device.
- *File Systems*. For each file-system on the device, displays percent of disk-space used. Clicking on this bar in the graph leads to the File System Report in the **Device Performance** page for the device.

**NOTE**: If you hide a file system in the **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware), that file system does not appear in the System Component Utilization pane.

### Hourly Interface Usage

The Normal device dashboard (the default dashboard) includes the **Hourly Interface Usage** pane. This pane displays the bandwidth usage for the a selected interface on the device. The graph uses two distinct colors to display the average incoming and outgoing bandwidth used by the network interface, in hourly increments.

You can select the following parameters for the graph:

- Measurement. Based on your account preferences, this field is set to either Utilization (%) or the unit of
  measure specified in the Measurement field in the Interface Properties page by default. For the current
  login session, you can select a different unit of measure. Choices are: Octets, Utilization (%), Kilobytes,
  Megabytes, Gigabytes, Terabytes, or Petabytes. Until you log out of your current user interface session, the
  Hourly Interface usage graph will use the unit of measure you select in this field.
- Interface. By default, the ScienceLogic platform displays the interface for which you have selected **Display** on Summary in the Interface Properties page. For the current login session, you can select a different interface to display. Until you log out of your current user interface session, the Hourly Interface usage graph will display data about the interface you select in this field.

Mousing over any area of the graph displays the bandwidth values and the date and time associated with the data point.

Highlighting an area on the graph by clicking and dragging zooms in on the selected area. Clicking on the Show-All icon returns the graph to its default display.

## Shortcut Keys for Device Reports panel

When you view information for a device by selecting its bar graph icon (41), you enter the **Device Reports** panel.

When you enter the **Device Reports** panel, you can use the following shortcut keys to navigate the tabbed pages and the entries in the menus on a page.

Page or Tab	Shortcut Keys		
Administer Bookmarks page	Ctrl + Alt + B		
Configuration Report page	Ctrl + Alt +C		
Viewing Active Events page	Ctrl + Alt + E		
Guides page	Ctrl + Alt + G		
Interfaces Found page	Ctrl + Alt + I ("eye")		
Device Logs & Messages page	Ctrl + Alt + L		
Performance Tab ( <b>System Vitals</b> page, by default)	Ctrl + Alt + P		

Page or Tab	Shortcut Keys		
Device Summary page	Ctrl + Alt + S		
Ticket History page	Ctrl + Alt + T		
Exit the <b>Device Report</b> panel	Ctrl + Alt + X		
Device Summary page	Ctrl + Alt + . ("period")		
Ticket Editor page	Ctrl + Alt + <enter></enter>		

# Chapter

6

## **Viewing Performance Graphs**

#### Overview

The **Performance** page in the Device Reports panel displays performance graphs for hardware, monitoring policies, and Dynamic Applications. From the **Performance** page, you can view the one or more of the following types of reports (among others). These reports are described in this chapter.

- System Vitals. Displays the device's availability, latency, overall CPU usage, overall memory usage, and
  overall virtual memory usage, all displayed on separate lines and graphed over time.
- System Availability. Displays the device's availability, graphed over time. Availability means the device's ability to accept connections and data from the network
- System Latency. Availability. Displays the device's latency, graphed over time. Latency means the amount of time it takes the ScienceLogic platform to communicate with the device.
- CPU Utilization. Displays the device's total CPU usage, in percentage. If a device contains multiple CPUs, the report displays the total combined CPU usage, in percent.
- Memory Utilization. This report displays total memory usage over time, in percent.
- Virtual Memory Utilization. This report displays total virtual memory usage over time, in percent.
- File Systems. The File System reports display the amount of disk-space used, in percent, for a device. For each discovered file system on the device, the ScienceLogic platform generates a file system report. This report displays the file system usage, over time, in percent. For devices with multiple file systems, the ScienceLogic platform also generates a Composite report, which displays file system usage, over time, in percent, for each file system, but on a single graph.

**NOTE**: If you hide a file system in the **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware), that file system does not appear in the File System reports in the **Device Performance** page.

- Network Interfaces. For each discovered network interface on the device, the ScienceLogic platform generates five reports:
  - Utilization, Bandwidth Usage, and Bandwidth Usage (Stacked), which display bandwidth usage over time
  - Errors and Discards and Errors and Discards %, which display errors and discards over time

If an interface is configured for CBQoS and you have enabled the field **Enable CBQoS Collection** in the **Behavior Settings** page (System > Settings > Behavior), the ScienceLogic platform will display the collected CBQoS data in reports. For each CBQoS Policy and each class map under that policy, the platform can generate reports on the following based on the CBQoS configuration:

- Class Maps
- Policing
- Sets
- Match Statements
- Queuing
- Sets
- Traffic Shaping
- WRED
- Domain Name Monitors. Displays the availability of the domain-name server and the specified record on that domain server over time, in percent. The report also displays the lookup time for each request (each time the ScienceLogic platform contacts the server).
- *Email Round-Trip Monitors*. Displays the number of milliseconds it takes to send a message to an external mail server and then receive a response message back from that external mail server.
- SOAP/XML Transaction Monitors. For each SOAP/XML transaction monitoring policy, displays multiple
  reports, including a report on the availability of the SOAP or XML server and specific content on the server.
  Also displays reports on page size, download speed, lookup time, connection time, and transaction time.
- System Process Monitors. The System Process reports displays availability of system processes. For each
  monitored system process, the ScienceLogic platform generates a process report. This report displays
  availability of that process, in percent. For devices with multiple monitored processes, the ScienceLogic
  platform also generates a Composite report, which displays availability of multiple processes over time, but
  on a single graph.
- TCP/IP Port Monitors. For each monitored port, displays availability of that port, in percent. Availability means the port's ability to accept connections and data from the network.
- Web Content Monitors. For each web content monitoring policy, displays multiple reports, including a report on the availability of the web server and specific content on the server. Also displays reports on page size, download speed, lookup time, connection time, and transaction time.

- Windows Service Monitors. For each monitored Windows Service, displays availability of that Windows service, in percent. Availability means whether the service is enabled and running.
- Collection Groups and Collection Labels. For each Collection Label assigned to a Dynamic Application to
  which the device subscribes, displays collected values for the aligned presentation object, over time. For
  more information on Collection Labels, see the chapter Graphing Data from Multiple Dynamic
  Applications in a Single Dashboard Widget.

The list of links in the Navigation Bar can also include links to reports (presentation objects) defined in the Dynamic Applications to which the device subscribes.

**NOTE**: Component devices that were discovered using component mapping in Dynamic Applications might display *only* reports defined in a Dynamic Application.

### Viewing System Vitals for a Device

The System Vitals Summary Report displays multiple device-parameters in a single graph. The System Vitals Summary Report trends the following parameters:

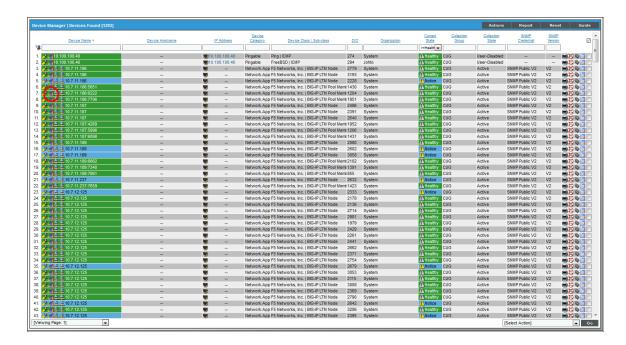
- System Availability (Availability means the device's ability to accept connections and data from the network.)
- System Latency (Latency means the amount of time it takes the ScienceLogic platform to communicate with the device.)
- Overall CPU Usage
- Overall Physical Memory Usage
- Overall Swap Usage

The graph displays system availability, system latency, memory usage, virtual-memory usage, and CPU usage for the selected duration.

To view the System Vitals report for a device:

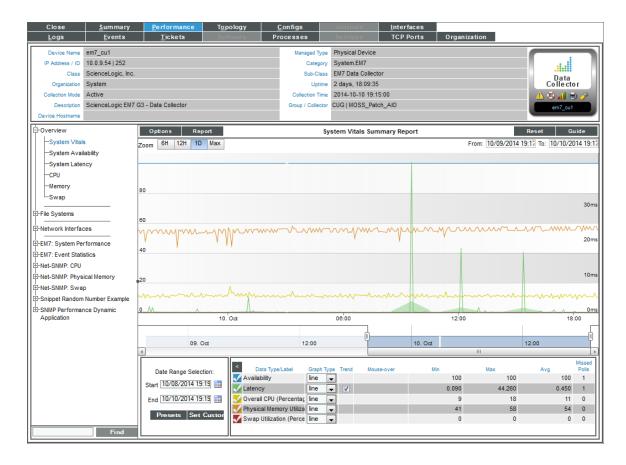
1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).

2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to view the vitals report. Select its bar graph icon (##).



3. In the **Device Reports** panel, select the **[Performance]** tab.

4. In the [Performance] tab, go to the NavBar (list of links in the left pane), expand the Overview link, and select System Vitals.



- 5. The System Vitals report displays multiple device-parameters for the selected date and time range.
  - The y-axis displays usage, in percent, to the left and actual value to the right.
  - The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the [Options] menu) and the date range (from the Date Range Selection pane).
  - Each parameter is represented by a color-coded line.
  - Mousing over any point in any line displays the high, low, and average value at that time-point in the **Data Table** pane.
  - You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.
  - In a graph of normalized data, clicking on a data point zooms in on that time period and shows the non-normalized data.
- 6. The **[Options]** menu in the upper left of the report displays a menu of options you can apply to data in the current report.
- 7. The [Reports] menu in the upper left of the report allows you to export and save the current data and graph as a report. Displays a list of formats for saving the report.

- 8. The **Data Table** at the bottom of each report allows you to view details about each data point and view information about the entire report. The data table includes the following:
  - Data Type/Label. For graphs that include multiple types of data on a single graph (for example, availability and latency), each data type has its own row in this table. This column displays the type of data and how it is color coded in the report. Clicking on the check mark toggles on and off the data in the report.
  - **Graph Type**. For selected reports, allows you to specify how you want the data type to be represented in the report. Choices include candlestick, line, stepline, column, area, or stacked. For some reports, the graph type is static and you cannot select a graph type.
  - **Trend**. Toggles on and off a trendline. The trendline shows a bi-directional weighted average, which "smooths" the data for easier consumption. This trending appears as a shaded area superimposed over the graph.
  - **Mouseover**. When you mouseover the graph, this column displays the exact value for each data type at that time point on the graph.
  - Min. The column displays the minimum value for the data type in the report.
  - Max. This column displays the maximum value for the data type in the report.
  - Avg. This column displays the average value for the data type in the report.
  - Missed Polls. This column displays the number of times the ScienceLogic platform was unable to
    collect the data within the time span of the report.

## Viewing Availability Reports for a Device

The System Availability report displays information about the device's availability. Availability means the device's ability to accept connections and data from the network.

During polling, a device has two possibly availability values:

- 100%. Device is up and running.
- 0%. Device is not accepting connections and data from the network.

By default, the method of discovery determines how the the platform monitors availability for a device:

- If the agent is installed and creates a device record before the device is discovered as an SNMP or pingable device, availability is measured based on uptime data collected by the agent.
- If the device is discovered as an SNMP or pingable device before the agent is installed, availability is monitored with the method specified in the discovery session (SNMP, ICMP, or TCP).

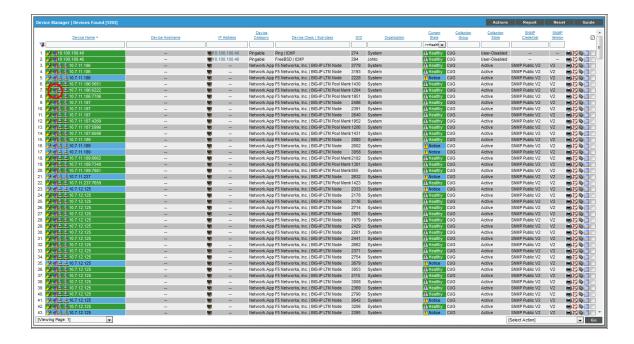
For devices that the ScienceLogic platform discovers with the discovery tool (System > Manage > Discovery), the ScienceLogic platform determines availability by checking the status of the port specified in the **Availability Port** field in the **Device Properties** page. The ScienceLogic platform collects device-availability data every five minutes, as specified in the process "Data Collection: Availability" (in the **Process Manager** page).

For component devices that the ScienceLogic platform discovers with component mapping Dynamic Applications, the ScienceLogic platform determines availability by checking the status of a collection object.

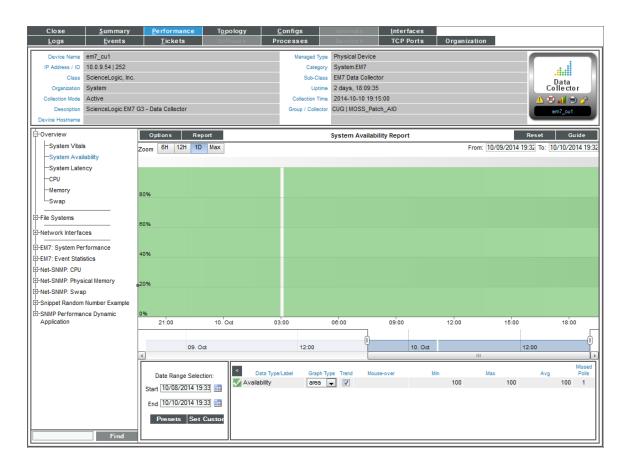
For devices that the ScienceLogic platform discovers with the agent, the ScienceLogic platform collects uptime data from the agent every 5 minutes, and uses this value to determine device availability.

To view the System Availability report for a device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to view the availability report. Select its bar graph icon (1111).



3. In the **Device Reports** panel, select the Performance tab.



- 4. In the Performance tab, go to the NavBar (list of links in the left pane), expand the **Overview** link, and select **System Availability**.
- 5. The System Availability report displays system availability for the selected date and time range.
  - The y-axis displays usage, in percent to the left.
  - The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
  - Mousing over any point in any line displays (in the **Data Table** pane) the high, low, and average value at the selected time-point.
  - You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.
  - In a graph of normalized data, clicking on a data point zooms in on that time period and shows the non-normalized data.
- 6. The [Options] menu in the upper left of the report displays a menu of options you can apply to data in the current report.
- 7. The [Reports] menu in the upper left of the report allows you to export and save the current data and graph as a report. Displays a list of formats for saving the report.

- 8. The **Data Table** at the bottom of each report allows you to view details about each data point and view information about the entire report. The data table includes the following:
  - Data Type/Label. For graphs that include multiple types of data on a single graph (for example, availability and latency), each data type has its own row in this table. This column displays the type of data and how it is color coded in the report. Clicking on the check mark toggles on and off the data in the report.
  - **Graph Type**. For selected reports, allows you to specify how you want the data type to be represented in the report. Choices include candlestick, line, stepline, column, area, or stacked. For some reports, the graph type is static and you cannot select a graph type.
  - **Trend**. Toggles on and off a trendline. The trendline shows a bi-directional weighted average, which "smooths" the data for easier consumption. This trending appears as a shaded area superimposed over the graph.
  - **Mouseover**. When you mouseover the graph, this column displays the exact value for each data type at that time point on the graph.
  - Min. The column displays the minimum value for the data type in the report.
  - Max. This column displays the maximum value for the data type in the report.
  - Avg. This column displays the average value for the data type in the report.
  - Missed Polls. This column displays the number of times the ScienceLogic platform was unable to collect the data within the time span of the report.

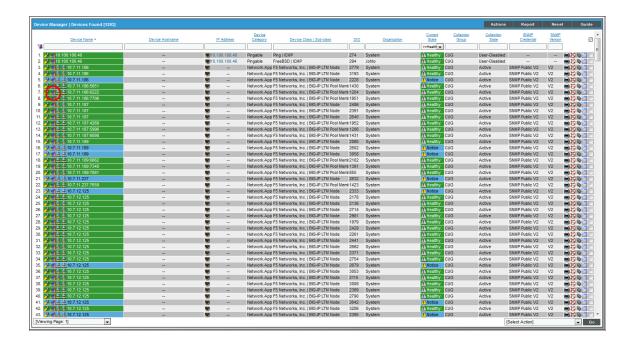
# Viewing Latency Reports for a Device

The System Latency report displays a graph with information about a single device's latency over time.

To view the System Latency report for a device:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).

2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to view the latency report. Select its bar graph icon (411).



3. In the **Device Reports** panel, select the Performance tab.



- 4. In the Performance tab, go to the NavBar (list of links in the left pane), expand the **Overview** link, and select **System Latency**.
- 5. The System Latency report displays system latency for the selected date and time range.
  - The y-axis displays latency, in milliseconds, to the left.
  - The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
  - Mousing over any point in any line displays the high, low, and average value at that time-point in the Data Table pane.
  - You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.
  - In a graph of normalized data, clicking on a data point zooms in on that time period and shows the non-normalized data.
- 6. The **[Options]** menu in the upper left of the report displays a menu of options you can apply to data in the current report.
- 7. The [Reports] menu in the upper left of the report allows you to export and save the current data and graph as a report. Displays a list of formats for saving the report.

- 8. The Data Table at the bottom of each report allows you to view details about each data point and view information about the entire report. The data table includes the following:
  - Data Type/Label. For graphs that include multiple types of data on a single graph (for example, availability and latency), each data type has its own row in this table. This column displays the type of data and how it is color coded in the report. Clicking on the check mark toggles on and off the data in the report.
  - **Graph Type**. For selected reports, allows you to specify how you want the data type to be represented in the report. Choices include candlestick, line, stepline, column, area, or stacked. For some reports, the graph type is static and you cannot select a graph type.
  - **Trend**. Toggles on and off a trendline. The trendline shows a bi-directional weighted average, which "smooths" the data for easier consumption. This trending appears as a shaded area superimposed over the graph.
  - **Mouseover**. When you mouseover the graph, this column displays the exact value for each data type at that time point on the graph.
  - Min. The column displays the minimum value for the data type in the report.
  - Max. This column displays the maximum value for the data type in the report.
  - Avg. This column displays the average value for the data type in the report.
  - Missed Polls. This column displays the number of times the ScienceLogic platform was unable to collect the data within the time span of the report.

# Viewing a Report on CPU Usage for a Device

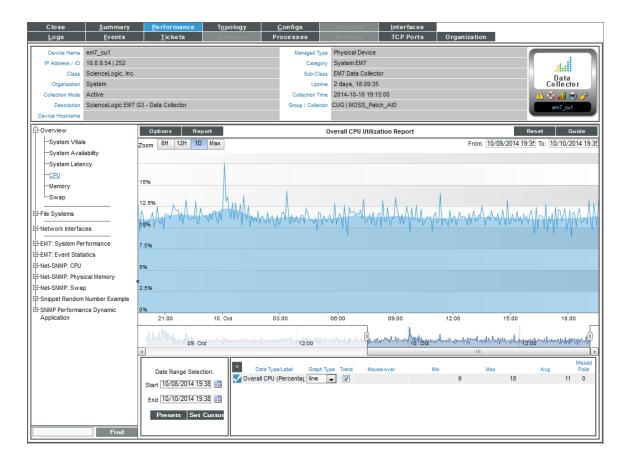
For each device for which the ScienceLogic platform discovered a CPU, you can view a CPU Utilization report.

The CPU Utilization report displays the device's total CPU usage, in percentage. If a device contains multiple CPUs, the report displays the total combined CPU usage, in percent.

To view the CPU Utilization report for a device:

- 1. You can access the CPU Utilization report from two places:
  - Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager), find the device where the CPU resides, and select its bar graph icon (41).
  - Go to the **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware), filter by CPU, find the device where the CPU resides, and select its bar graph icon (\*\*\*).
- 2. When the **Device Reports** panel appears, select the Performance tab.

3. In the **Device Performance** page, go to the NavBar (list of links in the left pane), expand the **Overview** link, and select **CPU Utilization**.



- 4. The Overall CPU Utilization report displays total CPU usage and average CPU usage over time. If a device contains multiple CPUs, the report displays the total combined CPU usage, in percent, and the combined average CPU usage, in percent. The graph displays CPU usage for the selected date and time range.
  - The y-axis displays usage, in percent to the left.
  - The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the [Options] menu) and the date range (from the Date Range Selection pane).
  - Mousing over any point in any line displays (in the Data Table pane) the high, low, and average value at the select time-point.
  - You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.
  - In a graph of normalized data, clicking on a data point zooms in on that time period and shows the non-normalized data.
- 5. The [Options] menu in the upper left of the report displays a menu of options you can apply to data in the current report.
- 6. The [Reports] menu in the upper left of the report allows you to export and save the current data and graph as a report, and displays a list of formats for saving the report.

- 7. The Data Table at the bottom of each report allows you to view details about each data point and view information about the entire report. The data table includes the following:
  - Data Type/Label. For graphs that include multiple types of data on a single graph (for example, availability and latency), each data type has its own row in this table. This column displays the type of data and how it is color coded in the report. Clicking on the checkmark toggles on and off the data in the report.
  - **Graph Type**. For selected reports, allows you to specify how you want the data type to be represented in the report. Choices include candlestick, line, stepline, column, area, or stacked. For some reports, the graph type is static and you cannot select a graph type.
  - **Trend**. Toggles on and off a trendline. The trendline shows a bi-directional weighted average, which "smooths" the data for easier consumption. This trending appears as a shaded area superimposed over the graph.
  - **Mouseover**. When you mouseover the graph, this column displays the exact value for each data type at that time point on the graph.
  - Min. This column displays the minimum value for the data type in the report.
  - Max. This column displays the maximum value for the data type in the report.
  - Avg. This column displays the average value for the data type in the report.
  - Missed Polls. This column displays the number of times the ScienceLogic platform was unable to collect the data within the time span of the report.

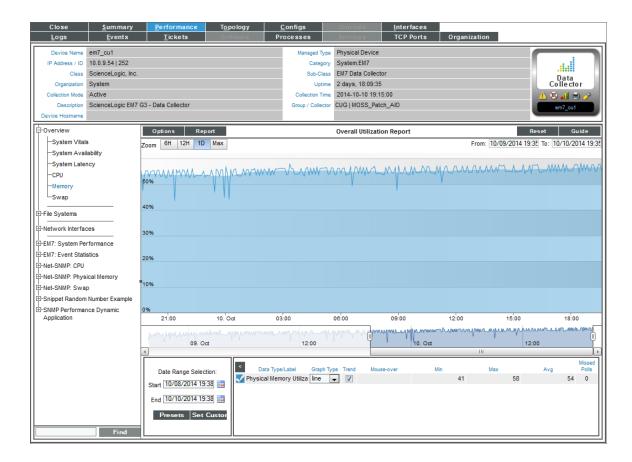
### Viewing a Report on Physical Memory Usage for a Device

You can view an Overall Memory Utilization report for each device for which the ScienceLogic platform has discovered physical memory. The Overall Memory Utilization Report displays total memory usage and average memory usage over time.

To view the Overall Memory Utilization report for a device:

- 1. You can access the Memory Utilization report from two places:
  - Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager), find the device where the memory resides, and select its bar graph icon (411).
  - Go to the **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware), filter by CPU, find the device where the memory resides, and select its bar graph icon (111).

- 2. When the **Device Reports** panel appears, select the Performance tab.
- 3. In the **Device Performance** page, go to the NavBar (list of links in the left pane), expand the **Overview** link, and select **Memory Utilization**



- 4. The Overall Memory Utilization report displays total memory usage and average memory usage over time. The graph displays memory usage for the selected date and time range.
  - The y-axis displays memory usage, in percent, to the left.
  - The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
  - If the report includes both physical memory and virtual memory, each is represented by a color-coded stack and color-coded line on the graph.
  - The line graph represents actual usage and the stack represents average usage.
  - Mousing over any point in any line (in the Data Table pane) displays the high, low, and average value at the selected time-point.
  - You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.
  - In a graph of normalized data, clicking on a data point zooms in on that time period and shows the non-normalized data.

- 5. The **[Options]** menu in the upper left of the report displays a menu of options you can apply to data in the current report.
- 6. The [Reports] menu in the upper left of the report allows you to export and save the current data and graph as a report, and displays a list of formats for saving the report.
- 7. The Data Table at the bottom of each report allows you to view details about each data point and view information about the entire report. The data table includes the following:
  - Data Type/Label. For graphs that include multiple types of data on a single graph (for example, availability and latency), each data type has its own row in this table. This column displays the type of data and how it is color coded in the report. Clicking on the checkmark toggles on and off the data in the report.
  - **Graph Type**. For selected reports, allows you to specify how you want the data type to be represented in the report. Choices include candlestick, line, stepline, column, area, or stacked. For some reports, the graph type is static and you cannot select a graph type.
  - Trend. Toggles on and off a trendline. The trendline shows a bi-directional weighted average, which
    "smooths" the data for easier consumption. This trending appears as a shaded area superimposed
    over the graph.
  - **Mouseover**. When you mouseover the graph, this column displays the exact value for each data type at that time point on the graph.
  - Min. The column displays the minimum value for the data type in the report.
  - Max. This column displays the maximum value for the data type in the report.
  - Avg. This column displays the average value for the data type in the report.
  - Missed Polls. This column displays the number of times the ScienceLogic platform was unable to collect the data within the time span of the report.

### Viewing a Report on Virtual Memory Usage for a Device

The Overall Virtual Memory Utilization Report displays total virtual memory usage and average virtual memory usage over time.

To view the Overall Virtual Memory Utilization report for a device:

- 1. You can access the Overall Virtual Memory Utilization report from two places:
  - Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager), find the device where the virtual memory resides, and select its bar graph icon (11).
  - Go to the **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware), filter by CPU, find the device where the virtual memory resides, and select its bar graph icon (41).
- 2. When the **Device Reports** panel appears, select the **[Performance]** tab.
- 3. In the **Device Performance** page, go to the NavBar (list of links in the left pane), expand the **Overview** link, and select **Virtual Memory Utilization**.

- 4. The Overall Virtual Memory Utilization report displays total memory usage and average memory usage over time. The graph displays memory usage for the selected date and time range.
  - The y-axis displays virtual memory usage, in percent, to the left.
  - The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the [Options] menu) and the date range (from the Date Range Selection pane).
  - Mousing over any point in any line displays the high, low, and average value at that time-point in the Data Table pane.
  - You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.
  - In a graph of normalized data, clicking on a data point zooms in on that time period and shows the non-normalized data.
- 5. The [Options] menu in the upper left of the report displays a menu of options you can apply to data in the current report.
- 6. The [Reports] menu in the upper left of the report allows you to export and save the current data and graph as a report, and displays a list of formats for saving the report.
- 7. The Data Table at the bottom of each report allows you to view details about each data point and view information about the entire report. The data table includes the following:
  - Data Type/Label. For graphs that include multiple types of data on a single graph (for example, availability and latency), each data type has its own row in this table. This column displays the type of data and how it is color coded in the report. Clicking on the checkmark toggles on and off the data in the report.
  - **Graph Type**. For selected reports, allows you to specify how you want the data type to be represented in the report. Choices include candlestick, line, stepline, column, area, or stacked. For some reports, the graph type is static and you cannot select a graph type.
  - **Trend**. Toggles on and off a trendline. The trendline shows a bi-directional weighted average, which "smooths" the data for easier consumption. This trending appears as a shaded area superimposed over the graph.
  - **Mouseover**. When you mouseover the graph, this column displays the exact value for each data type at that time point on the graph.
  - Min. The column displays the minimum value for the data type in the report.
  - Max. This column displays the maximum value for the data type in the report.
  - Avg. This column displays the average value for the data type in the report.
  - Missed Polls. This column displays the number of times the ScienceLogic platform was unable to collect the data within the time span of the report.

## Viewing a Report on File System Usage for a Device

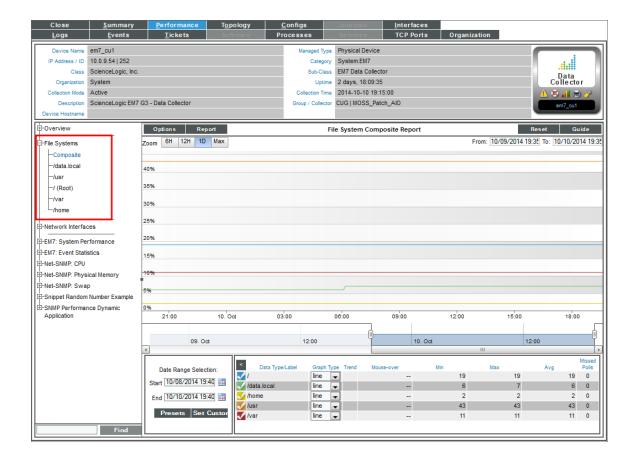
The File System reports display the amount of disk-space used, in percent, for a device. For each discovered file system on the device, the ScienceLogic platform generates a file system report. This report displays the file system usage, over time, in percent. For devices with multiple file systems, the ScienceLogic platform also generates a Composite report, which displays file system usage, over time, in percent, for each file system, but on a single graph.

**NOTE**: If you hide a file system in the **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware), the ScienceLogic platform does not generate a File System Report for that file system.

To view the file-system reports for a device:

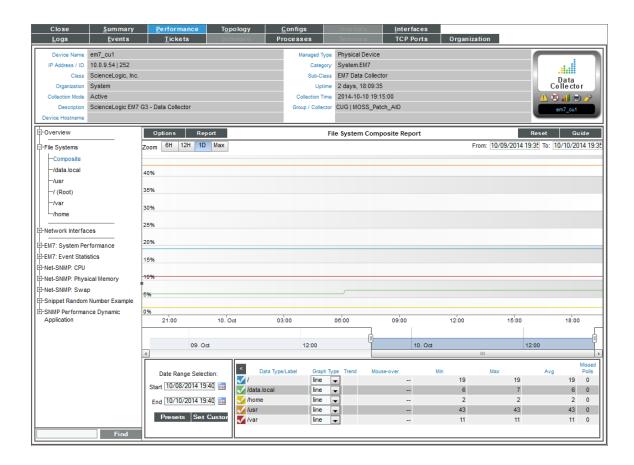
- 1. You can access the File System reports from two places:
  - Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager), find the device where the file system resides, and select its bar graph icon (41).
  - Go to the **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware), filter by CPU, find the device where the file system resides, and select its bar graph icon (1111).

- 2. When the **Device Reports** panel appears, select the Performance tab.
- 3. In the **Device Performance** page, go to the NavBar (list of links in the left pane), and expand the **File System Overview** link.



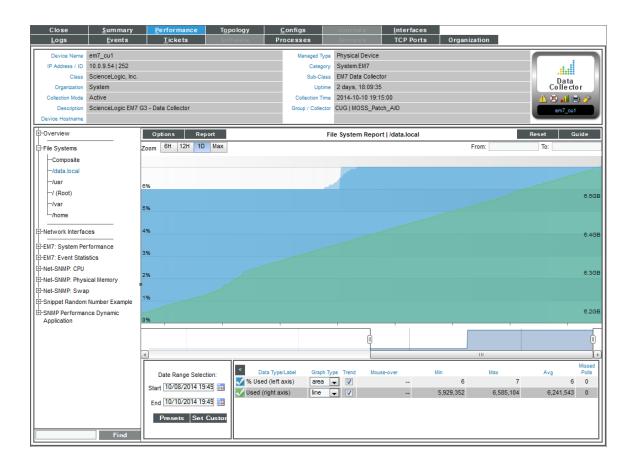
- 4. If a device has multiple file systems, you can select from two types of reports:
  - **Composite**. Leads to the File System Composite Report, where you can view percent of disk-space used for all file systems on the device. Each file system is represented by a color-coded line.
  - *File System Name*. For a selected file system, the File system Report displays file system usage, over time, in percent.

5. The File System Composite Report displays percent of disk-space used for all file systems on the device.



- 6. The File System Composite Report displays the following:
  - The File System Composite Report displays percent of disk-space used on the y-axis and time of day on the x-axis. The report displays data from the last 24 hours.
  - The y-axis displays usage, in percent.
  - The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the [Options] menu) and the date range (from the Date Range Selection pane).
  - Each file system is represented by a color-coded line.
  - Mousing over any point in any line displays (in the Data Table pane) the high, low, and average value on each file system at the selected time-point.
  - You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.
  - In a graph of normalized data, clicking on a data point zooms in on that time period and shows the non-normalized data.

7. The File System Report displays file system usage, for a single file system, over time, in percent.



- 8. The File System Report displays the following:
  - The graph displays a color-coded line for percent usage and a color-coded line for amount used (in MBs).
  - The y-axis displays usage, in percent to the left and actual amount used, in MB, to the right.
  - The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the [Options] menu) and the date range (from the Date Range Selection pane).
  - Each parameter is represented by a color-coded line.
  - Mousing over any point in any line displays (in the Data Table pane) the high, low, and average value at the selected time-point.
  - You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.
  - In a graph of normalized data, clicking on a data point zooms in on that time period and shows the non-normalized data.
- 9. In both types of file-system reports, the **[Options]** menu in the upper left of the report displays a menu of options you can apply to data in the current report.
- 10. In both types of file-system reports, the **[Reports]** menu in the upper left of the report allows you to export and save the current data and graph as a report, and displays a list of formats for saving the report.

- 11. In both types of file-system reports, the Data Table at the bottom of each report allows you to view details about each data point and view overview information about the entire report. The data table includes the following:
  - Data Type/Label. For graphs that include multiple types of data on a single graph (for example, availability and latency), each data type has its own row in this table. This column displays the type of data and how it is color coded in the report. Clicking on the checkmark toggles on and off the data in the report.
  - **Graph Type**. For selected reports, allows you to specify how you want the data type to be represented in the report. Choices include candlestick, line, stepline, column, area, or stacked. For some reports, the graph type is static and you cannot select a graph type.
  - Trend. Toggles on and off a trendline. The trendline shows a bi-directional weighted average, which
    "smooths" the data for easier consumption. This trending appears as a shaded area superimposed
    over the graph.
  - **Mouseover**. When you mouseover the graph, this column displays the exact value for each data type at that time point on the graph.
  - Min. The column displays the minimum value for the data type in the report.
  - Max. This column displays the maximum value for the data type in the report.
  - Avg. This column displays the average value for the data type in the report.
  - Missed Polls. This column displays the number of times the ScienceLogic platform was unable to
    collect the data within the time span of the report.

## Viewing Reports on Network Interfaces

For each discovered network interface on a device, the ScienceLogic platform generates five network interface reports. These five reports display:

- Utilization
- Bandwidth Usage
- Bandwidth Usage (Stacked)
- Errors and Discards
- Errors and Discards %

If an interface is configured for CBQoS and you have enabled the field *Enable CBQoS Collection* in the **Behavior Settings** page (System > Settings > Behavior), the ScienceLogic platform will display the collected CBQoS data in reports. For each CBQoS Policy and each class map under that policy, the platform can generate reports on the following based on the CBQoS configuration:

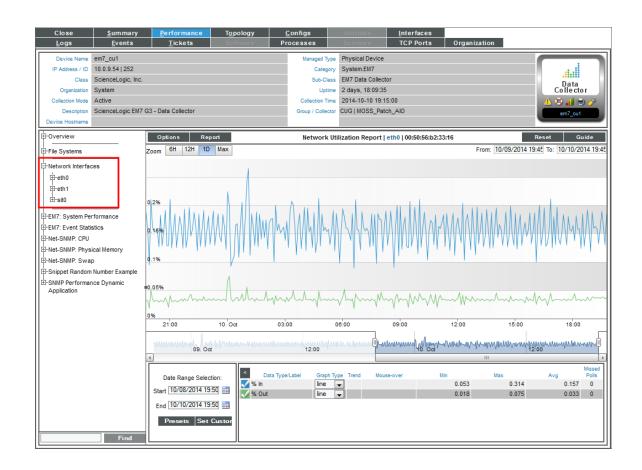
- Class Maps
- Policing
- Sets
- Match Statements

- Queuing
- Sets
- Traffic Shaping
- WRED

## Default Reports for Network Interfaces

To view the five default network interface reports for a device:

- 1. You can access the network interface reports from two places:
  - Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager), find the device with the desired network interface, and click its bar graph icon (411).
  - Go to the **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware), find the device with the desired network interface, and click its bar graph icon (411).
- 2. When the **Device Reports** panel appears, click the **Performance** tab.
- 3. In the **Device Performance** page, go to the NavBar (the list of links in the left pane), and expand the **Network Interfaces** link.



- 4. When you expand a network interface, links to each network interface report appear under that interface. Each reports is described below.
- 5. In all of the network interface reports, the **[Options]** menu in the upper left of the report displays a menu of options you can apply to data in the current report.
- 6. In all of the network interface reports, the [Reports] menu in the upper left of the report enables you to export and save the current data and graph as a report, and displays a list of formats for saving the report.
- 7. In all of the network interface reports, the **Data Table** at the bottom of each report enables you to view details about each data point and view overview information about the entire report. The data table includes the following:
  - Data Type/Label. For graphs that include multiple types of data on a single graph (for example, availability and latency), each data type has its own row in this table. This column displays the type of data and how it is color-coded in the report. Clicking on the check mark toggles on and off the data in the report.
  - **Graph Type**. For selected reports, allows you to specify how you want the data type to be represented in the report. Choices include candlestick, line, stepline, column, area, or stacked. For some reports, the graph type is static and you cannot select a graph type.
  - **Trend**. Toggles on and off a trendline. The trendline shows a bi-directional weighted average, which "smooths" the data for easier consumption. This trending appears as a shaded area superimposed over the graph.
  - **Mouseover**. When you mouse over the graph, this column displays the exact value for each data type at that time point on the graph.
  - Min. The column displays the minimum value for the data type in the report.
  - Max. This column displays the maximum value for the data type in the report.
  - Avg. This column displays the average value for the data type in the report.
  - Missed Polls. This column displays the number of times the ScienceLogic platform was unable to collect the data within the time span of the report.

#### Network Utilization Report

The **Network Utilization Report** displays trends for the following parameters:

- · Percentage of bandwidth used by inbound traffic to the device through the selected network interface
- · Percentage of bandwidth used by outbound traffic from the device through the selected network interface



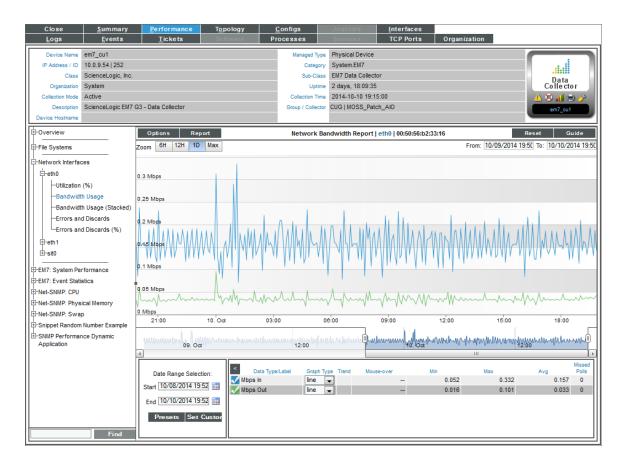
The **Network Utilization Report** displays a color-coded line for percentage in and a color-coded line for percentage out.

- The y-axis displays usage, in percent, to the left.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- Mousing over any point in any line displays the high, low, and average value at that time point in the Data Table pane.
- You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.
- In a graph of normalized data, clicking on a data point zooms in on that time period and shows the non-normalized data.

#### Network Bandwidth Usage Report

The Network Bandwidth Usage Report displays trends for the following parameters:

- Number of octets of data traveling into the device through the selected network interface
- Number of octets of data traveling out from the device through the selected network interface



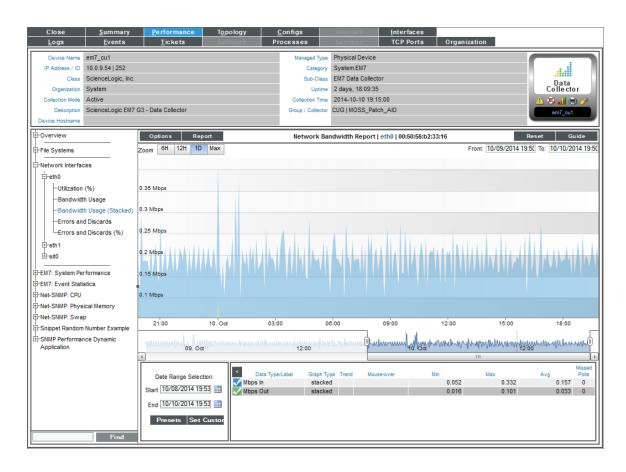
The **Network Bandwidth Usage Report** graph displays a color-coded line for octets in and a color-coded line for octets out.

- The y-axis displays bandwidth usage, in octets.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- Each parameter is represented by a color-coded line.
- Mousing over any point in any line displays the high, low, and average value at that time point in the **Data Table** pane.
- You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.
- In a graph of normalized data, clicking on a data point zooms in on that time period and shows the non-normalized data.

### Network Bandwidth Usage Report (Stacked)

The Network Bandwidth Report (Stacked) displays trends for the following parameters:

- Number of octets of data traveling into the device through the selected network interface
- Number of octets of data traveling out from the device through the selected network interface



The **Network Bandwidth Report (Stacked)** graph displays a color-coded stack for octets in and a color-coded stack for octets out.

- The y-axis displays bandwidth usage, over time.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- Each parameter is represented by a color-coded stack (similar to an area graph).
- Mousing over any point in a stack displays the high, low, and average value at that time point in the Data Table pane.
- You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.

• In a graph of normalized data, clicking on a data point zooms in on that time period and shows the non-normalized data.

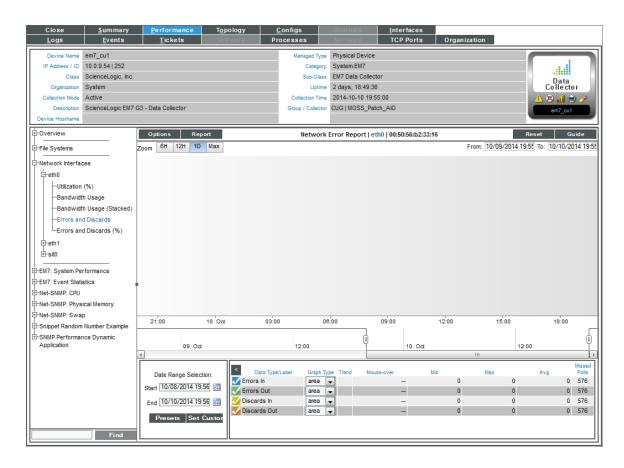
### **Network Error Report**

The **Network Error Report** displays trends for the following parameters:

- Number of errors that occurred in data traveling into the device through the selected network interface
- Number of errors that occurred in data traveling out from the device through the selected network interface
- Number of discards that occurred in data traveling into the device through the selected network interface
- Number of discards that occurred in data traveling out from the device through the selected network interface

**Packet errors** occur when packets are lost due to hardware problems such as breaks in the network or faulty adapter hardware.

**Discards** occur when an interface receives more traffic than it can handle (either a very large message or many messages simultaneously). Discards can also occur when an interface has been specifically configured to discard. For example, a user might configure a router's interface to discard packets from a non-authorized IP.



The **Network Error Report** graph displays a color-coded line for errors in, errors out, discards in, and discards out.

- The y-axis displays number of errors and discards.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- Each parameter is represented by a color-coded line.
- Mousing over any point in any line displays the high, low, and average value at that time point in the Data Table pane.
- You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.
- In a graph of normalized data, clicking on a data point zooms in on that time period and shows the non-normalized data.

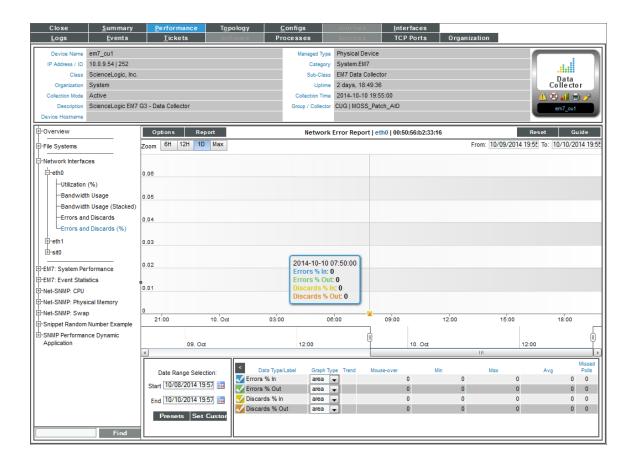
### Network Error Report (Percent)

The **Network Error Report (%)** displays trends for the following parameters:

- Percentage of errors that occurred in data traveling into the device through the selected network interface
- Percentage of errors that occurred in data traveling out from the device through the selected network interface
- · Percentage of discards that occurred in data traveling into the device through the selected network interface
- Percentage of discards that occurred in data traveling out from the device through the selected network interface

**Packet Errors** occur when packets are lost due to hardware problems such as breaks in the network or faulty adapter hardware.

**Discards** occur when an interface receives more traffic than it can handle (either a very large message or many messages simultaneously). Discards can also occur when an interface has been specifically configured to discard. For example, a user might configure a router's interface to discard packets from a non-authorized IP.



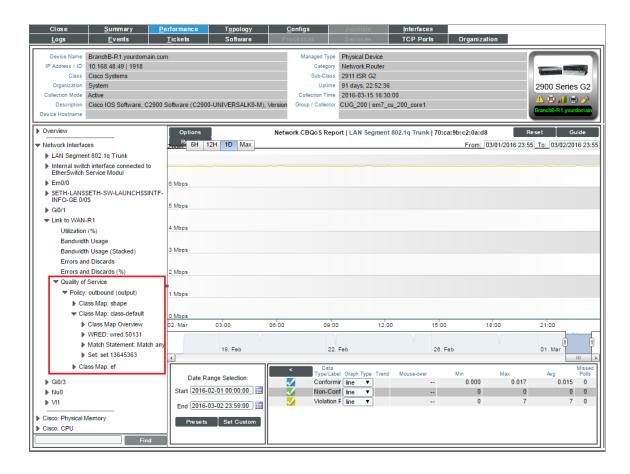
The **Network Error Report (%)** graph displays a color-coded line for errors % in, errors % out, discards % in, and discards % out.

- The y-axis displays percentage of errors and discards.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- Each parameter is represented by a color-coded line.
- Mousing over any point in any line displays the high, low, and average value at that time point in the Data Table pane.
- You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.
- In a graph of normalized data, clicking on a data point zooms in on that time period and shows the non-normalized data.

## CBQoS Reports for Network Interfaces

To view the CBQoS reports for a network interface:

- 1. You can access the network interface reports from two places:
  - Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager), find the device with the desired network interface, and click its bar graph icon (411).
  - Go to the **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware), find the device with the desired network interface, and click its bar graph icon ().
- 2. When the **Device Reports** panel appears, click the **Performance** tab.
- 3. In the **Device Performance** page, go to the NavBar (the list of links in the left pane), and expand the **Network Interfaces** link.



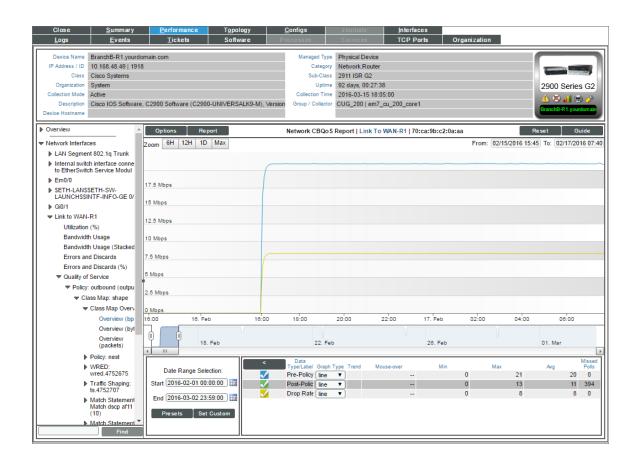
4. When you expand a network interface for which CBQoS has been enabled, you will see an entry for Quality of Services. When you expand the **Quality of Service** link, you will see entries for the CBQoS report with a link to each CBQoS report. Each reports is described below.

- 5. In all of the network interface reports, the **[Options]** menu in the upper left of the report displays a menu of options you can apply to data in the current report.
- 6. In all of the network interface reports, the [Reports] menu in the upper left of the report enables you to export and save the current data and graph as a report, and displays a list of formats for saving the report.
- 7. In all of the network interface reports, the **Data Table** at the bottom of each report enables you to view details about each data point and view overview information about the entire report. The data table includes the following:
  - Data Type/Label. For graphs that include multiple types of data on a single graph (for example, availability and latency), each data type has its own row in this table. This column displays the type of data and how it is color coded in the report. Clicking on the check mark toggles on and off the data in the report.
  - **Graph Type**. For selected reports, allows you to specify how you want the data type to be represented in the report. Choices include candlestick, line, stepline, column, area, or stacked. For some reports, the graph type is static and you cannot select a graph type.
  - **Trend**. Toggles on and off a trendline. The trendline shows a bi-directional weighted average, which "smooths" the data for easier consumption. This trending appears as a shaded area superimposed over the graph.
  - **Mouseover**. When you mouse over the graph, this column displays the exact value for each data type at that time point on the graph.
  - Min. The column displays the minimum value for the data type in the report.
  - Max. This column displays the maximum value for the data type in the report.
  - Avg. This column displays the average value for the data type in the report.
  - *Missed Polls*. This column displays the number of times the ScienceLogic platform was unable to collect the data within the time span of the report.

#### Class Map Overview

For the selected interface, the Class Map Overview Report displays trends for the following parameters:

- total interface utilization, in either % used (versus total available), bytes, bps, or packets, over time before applying the CBQoS policy
- total interface utilization, in either % used (versus total available), bytes, bps, or packets, over time after applying the CBQoS policy
- total dropped traffic, in either % used (versus total available), bytes, bps, or packets, over time for the class map



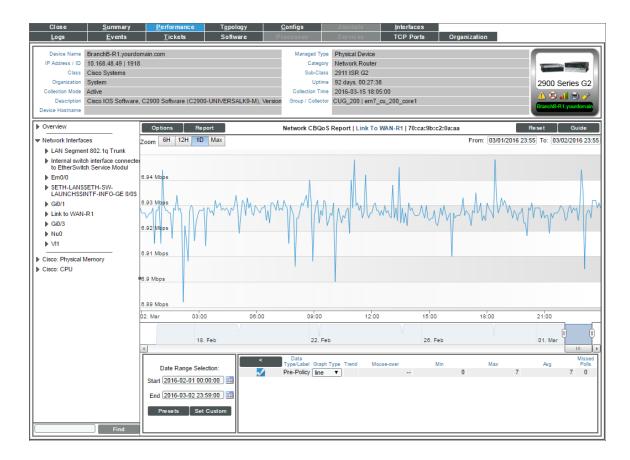
The graph displays a color-coded line for Pre-Policy, Post-Policy, and Dropped.

- The y-axis displays volume in either Mbytes, bps, or packets.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- Mousing over any point in any line displays the Pre-Policy, Post-Policy, and Dropped value at that time point.
- You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.

### Match Statements Overview

For the selected interface, the Match Statements Overview Report displays trends for the following parameters:

- total packets (in either bps, bytes, or packets) over time that match the U32 filter before the Match Statement is applied
- total packets (in either bps, bytes, or packets) over time that match the L32 filter before the Match Statement is applied
- total packets (in either bps, bytes, or packets) over time before the Match Statement is applied



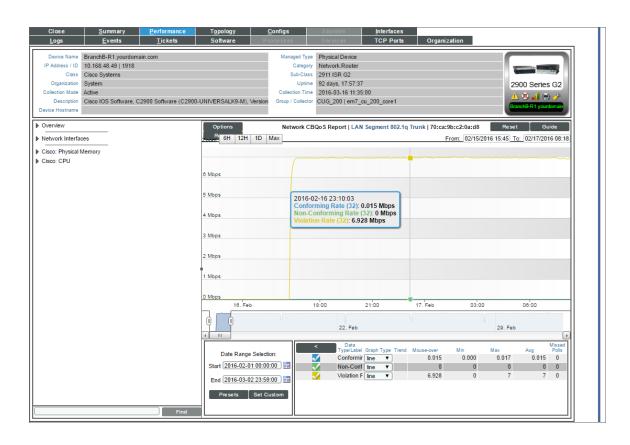
The graph displays a color-coded line for Pre-Policy Inbound (U32), Pre-Policy Inbound (L32), and Pre-Policy Inbound.

- The y-axis displays volume in either Mbytes, bps, or packets.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- Mousing over any point in any line displays the Conforming, Non-Conforming, and Violations values at that time-point.
- You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.

#### Policing Overview

For the selected interface, the Policing Overview Report displays trends for the following parameters:

- total traffic (in either bytes, bps, or packets) over time that conform to the policing policy
- total traffic (in either bytes, bps, or packets) over time that do not conform to the policing policy
- total traffic (in either bytes, bps, or packets) over time that violate the policing policy



The graph displays a color-coded line for Conforming, Non-Conforming, and Violations.

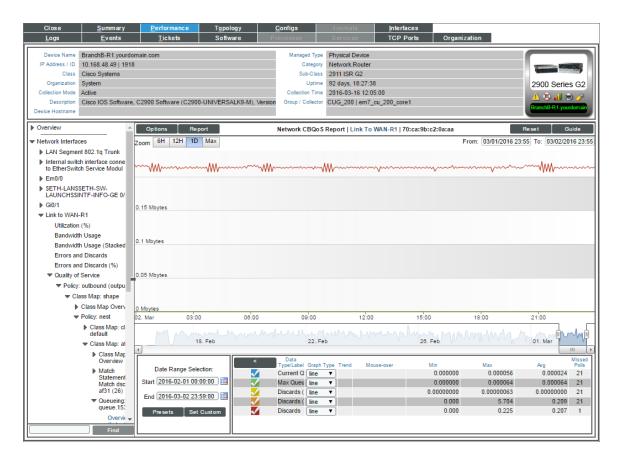
- The y-axis displays volume in either Mbytes, bps, or packets.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- Mousing over any point in any line displays the Conforming, Non-Conforming, and Violations values at that time-point.
- You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.

#### Queueing Overview

For the selected interface, the Queuing Overview Report displays trends for the following parameters:

- total discarded traffic (in either bytes or bps) over time for the queuing policy
- queue depth (in either bytes or bps) over time for the queuing policy

**NOTE**: If a queue is marked as "priority" in CBQoS, the text **Priority** appears in parentheses next to the entry in the navbar.



The graph displays a line for total discarded traffic:

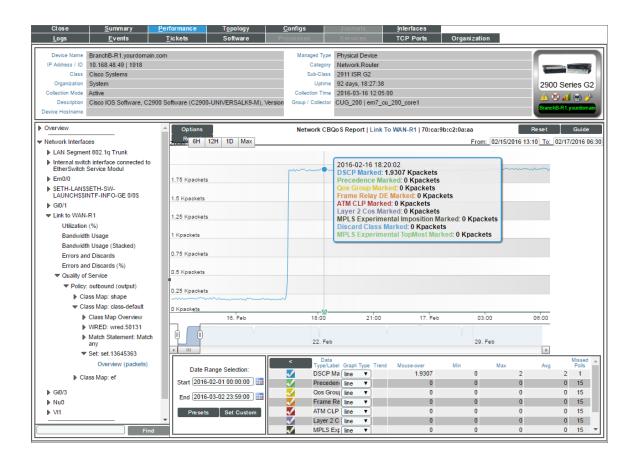
- The y-axis displays volume in either bytes or bps.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- Mousing over any point in any line displays the number or discards at that time-point.
- You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.

#### Set Overview

For the selected interface, the **Set Overview Report** displays trends for the following parameters:

- total traffic (in either bps, bytes, or packets) over time where the Discard Class field is marked by the Set policy
- total traffic (in either bps, bytes, or packets) over time where the **DSCP** field is marked by the Set policy
- total traffic (in either bps, bytes, or packets) over time where the DSCP Tunnel field is marked by the Set policy
- total traffic (in either bps, bytes, or packets) over time where the Frame Relay DE bit is marked by the Set policy
- total traffic (in either bps, bytes, or packets) over time where the Frame Relay FECN BECN bit is marked by the Set policy
- total traffic (in either bps, bytes, or packets) over time where the MPLS Experimental Implosion field is marked by the Set policy
- total traffic (in either bps, bytes, or packets) over time where the **MPLS Experimental TopMost** field is marked by the Set policy
- total traffic (in either bps, bytes, or packets) over time where the *Precedence* field is marked by the Set policy
- total traffic (in either bps, bytes, or packets) over time where the QoS Group field is marked by the Set policy

• total traffic (in either bps, bytes, or packets) over time where the SRP Priority field is marked by the Set policy



The graph displays a color-coded line for each of the metrics described above.

- The y-axis displays volume in either Mbytes, bps, or packets.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- Mousing over any point in any line displays the values for each metric at that time-point.
- You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.

### Traffic Shaping Overview

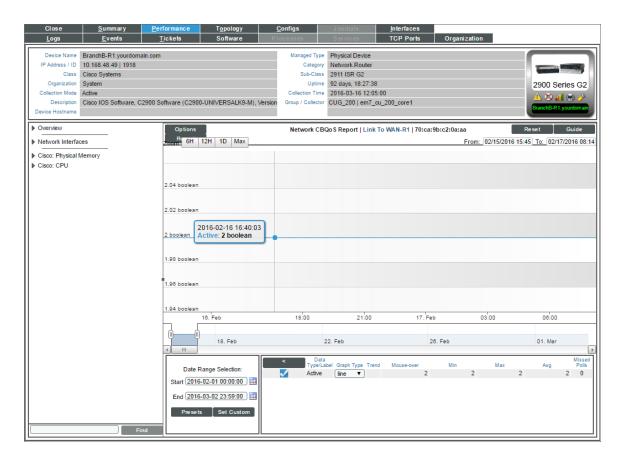
For the selected interface, the **Traffic Shaping Overview Report** for each traffic shaping policy includes two reports:

- Overview (boolean)
- Overview (in either byes or packets)

#### Overview (boolean)

For the selected interface, the Overview (boolean) report displays trends for the following parameters:

• Active. Specifies whether the traffic shaper is active over time for the traffic shaping policy. Possible values are "0" for "Not active" and "1" for "active". However, you might see values other than 1 or 0 in this report. If a report contains any other value, it is an average of multiple readings. For example, if during a five-minute interval, the ScienceLogic platform gathered five readings and during one of those readings, there was no traffic, so the traffic shaper was not active, the average would be 0.8 (1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 0 = 4; 4/5 = 0.8).



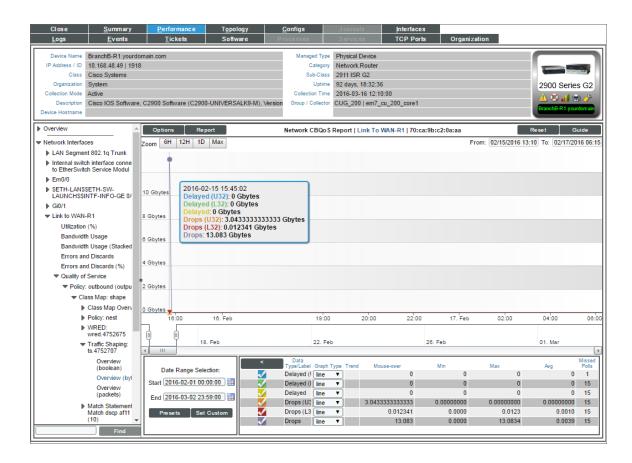
The graph displays a color-coded line for each of the metrics (described previously):

- The y-axis displays volume in either Mbytes or packets.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- Mousing over any point in any line displays a value for the metric described above at that time-point.
- You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.

#### Overview (in either bytes or packets)

For the selected interface, the **Overview (bytes)** and **Overview (packets)** reports display trends for the following parameters:

- Delayed packets (in either bytes or packets) over time that match the U32 filter for the traffic shaping policy
- Delayed packets (in either bytes or packets) over time that match the L32 filter for the traffic shaping policy
- Delayed packets (in either bytes or packets) over time for the traffic shaping policy
- Dropped packets (in either bytes or packets) over time that match the U32 filter for the traffic shaping policy
- Dropped packets (in either bytes or packets) over time that match the L32 filter for the traffic shaping policy
- Dropped packets (in either bytes or packets) over time for the traffic shaping policy



The graph displays a color-coded line for each of the metrics (described previously):

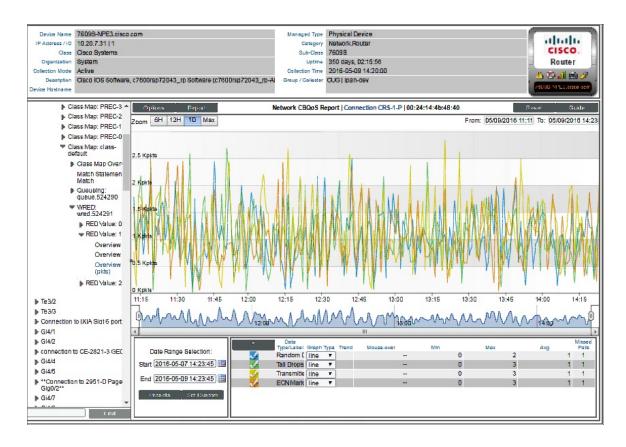
- The y-axis displays volume in either Mbytes or packets.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- Mousing over any point in any line displays a value for each of the metrics described above at that time-point.
- You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.

#### WRED Overview

For the selected interface, the **RED Overview** report for each WRED policy includes two reports:

- Overview (in either bytes or packets)
- Overview (items)

#### Overview (in either bytes or packets)



For the selected interface, the **Overview (bytes)** and **Overview (packets)** reports display trends for the following parameters:

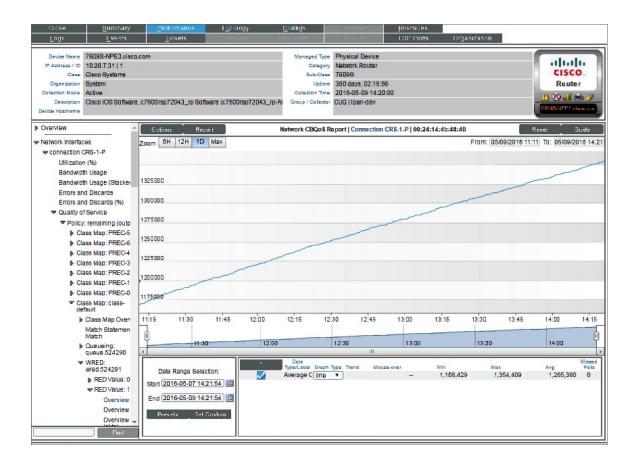
- Random drops (in either bytes or packets) over time for the RED policy
- Random drops (in either bytes or packets) over time that match the U32 filter for the RED policy
- Random drops (in either bytes or packets) over time that match the L32 filter for the RED policy
- Tail drops (in either bytes or packets) over time for the RED policy
- Tail drops (in either bytes or packets) over time that match the U32 filter for the RED policy
- Tail drops (in either bytes or packets) over time that match the L32 filter for the RED policy
- Transmitted traffic (in either bytes or packets) over time that match the L32 filter for the RED policy

- Total packets (in either bytes or packets) over time where the ECN bit is marked by the RED policy
- Total packets (in either bytes or packets) over time that match the U32 filter and where the ECN bit is marked by the RED policy

The graph displays a color-coded line for each of the metrics described above:

- The y-axis displays volume in either Mbytes or packets.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- Mousing over any point in any line displays a value for each of the metrics described above at that time-point.
- You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.

#### Overview (items)



For the selected interface, the **Overview (items)** report displays trends for the following parameters:

• Average Queue Size (in items) over time for each queue aligned with the RED policy.

The graph displays a color-coded line for each queue:

• The y-axis displays volume in items.

- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- Mousing over any point in any line displays a value for average queue size at that time-point.
- You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.

# Viewing Reports about DNS Servers and DNS Records for a Device

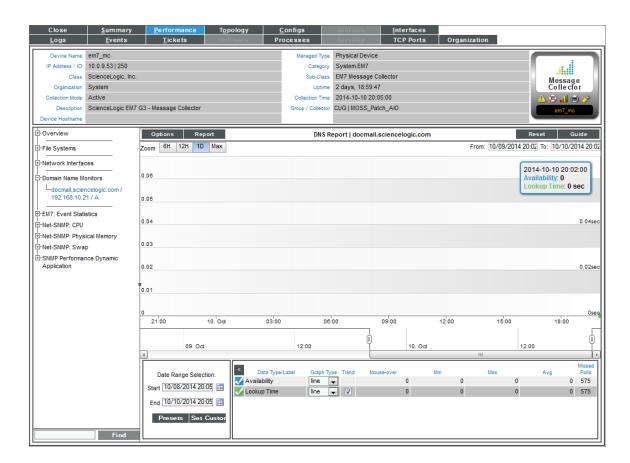
When you define a domain-name monitoring policy, the ScienceLogic platform automatically collects data associated with the policy. The ScienceLogic platform graphs that data in the **Performance** tab for the device associated with the policy.

There are two ways to navigate to the report for domain-name monitoring:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that is associated with the monitoring policy. Select the bar-graph icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the Device Reports panel, select the **Performance** tab.
  - In the left NavBar, expand Domain Name Monitors and select the policy for which you want to view the report.

- 2. From the **Domain Name Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Domain Name):
  - In the Domain Name Monitoring page, find the domain-name policy for which you want to see a
    report.
  - Select the bar graph icon in the Domain/Zone field(411).

3. The **Device Performance** page appears, with the DNS Report displayed.



- 4. The DNS Report displays multiple parameters in a single graph. The DNS Report trends the following parameters:
  - Availability. Availability of the specified name server and of a specific record and specific content in that record. Availability is 100% for a poll if the name server responded, the lookup returned a record, and the result match specified in the policy did not generate an event. If availability is not 100% for a poll, availability is 0% for that poll.
  - **Lookup Time**. The amount of time it took the DNS server to access the specified DNS record, search it, and return a result to the ScienceLogic platform.

The graph displays a color-coded line for availability and for latency, for the selected duration.

- The y-axis displays availability, in percent to the left, and latency time, in milliseconds to the right.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the [Options] menu) and the date range (from the Date Range Selection pane).
- Mousing over any point in any line displays the high, low, and average value at that time-point in the Data Table pane.
- You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.

• In a graph of normalized data, clicking on a data point zooms in on that time period and shows the non-normalized data.

## Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy

When you define a policy to monitor Email round-trips, the ScienceLogic platform automatically collects data associated with the policy. The ScienceLogic platform graphs that data in the **Performance** tab for the device associated with the policy.

There are two ways to navigate to the report for Email round-trip monitoring:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that is associated with the monitoring policy. Select the bar graph icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the **Device Reports** panel, select the **Performance** tab.
  - In the NavBar, expand Email Round-Trip Monitors and select the policy for which you want to view the report.

- 2. From the **Email Round-Trip Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Email Round-Trip):
  - In the **Email Round-Trip Monitoring** page, find the Email round-trip policy for which you want to see a report.
  - Select its bar graph icon in the Policy Name field (411).

3. The **Device Performance** page appears, with the Email Round-Trip Report displayed.



- 4. The Email Round-Trip Report displays results from an Email round-trip policy. The report trends the following parameters:
  - Availability. The availability of an Email server. Availability means whether the ScienceLogic platform
    received a reply Email from the Email server.
  - **Round-Trip Time**. The amount of time it takes to send an Email message from the ScienceLogic platform to an external mail server and then back to the platform.

The graph displays the total time for the entire Email transaction from the ScienceLogic platform to the external server and back to the platform.

- The y-axis displays the speed of the entire Email transaction from the ScienceLogic platform to the external server and back to the platform, in seconds.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- Mousing over any point in any line displays the high, low, and average value at that time-point in the Data Table pane.
- You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.

• In a graph of normalized data, clicking on a data point zooms in on that time period and shows the non-normalized data.

## Viewing Reports on an SOAP or XML Transaction Policy

The **Data Transaction Reports** page display results from a SOAP/XML transaction policy. Each of these policies monitors a server-to-server transaction that uses HTTP and can post files or forms (for example, SOAP/XML, Email, or RSS feeds). The ScienceLogic platform sends a request and some data and then examines the result of the transaction and compares it to a specified expression match.

There are two ways to navigate to the reports for SOAP/XML Transactions policies:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that is associated with the monitoring policy. Select the bar graph icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the **Device Reports** panel, select the **Performance** tab.
  - In the NavBar, expand SOAP/XML Transaction Monitors and select the policy for which you want to view the report.

- 2. From the **SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > SOAP-XML Transactions):
  - In the **SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring** page, find the SOAP/XML transaction policy for which you want to see a report.
  - Select its bar graph icon in the Policy Name field(

3. The **Device Performance** page appears, with the Data Transaction Report | Availability report displayed.



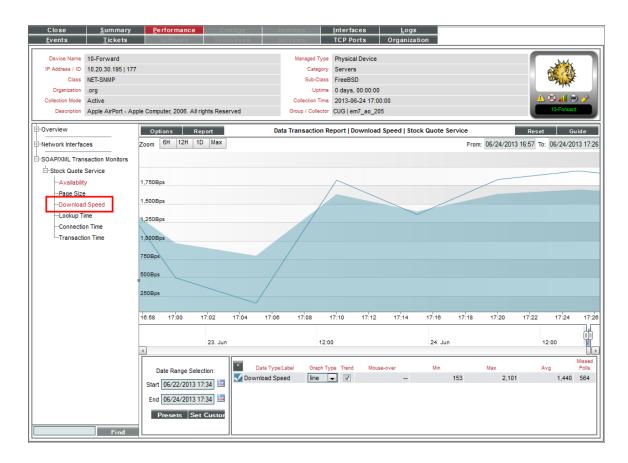
- 4. The Data Transaction Report | Availability report displays results from a SOAP/XML Transaction policy. The report trends the parameters described below. The Data Transaction Report | Availability report displays the availability of the external server and the availability of the specified data.
  - The y-axis displays availability, in percent to the left.
  - The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
  - Mousing over any point in any line displays the high, low, and average value at that time-point in the Data Table pane.
  - You can use your mouse to scroll the report to the left and right.
  - In a graph of normalized data, clicking on a data point zooms in on that time period and shows the non-normalized data.

- 5. For each SOAP/XML Transaction policy, you can also view the following additional reports. To view them, select the appropriate entries in the NavBar:
  - **Page Size**. The Data Transaction Report | Page Size report displays information about the size of the page specified in the URL of the policy. The graph displays the page size of the specified URL for the selected duration.



- The y-axis displays size in kilobytes per second (Kb).
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).

• **Download Speed**. The Data Transaction Report | Download Speed report displays the speed at which data was downloaded from the server (specified in the server policy) to the ScienceLogic platform. The graph displays the speed at which data was downloaded from the specified server to the ScienceLogic platform for the selected duration.



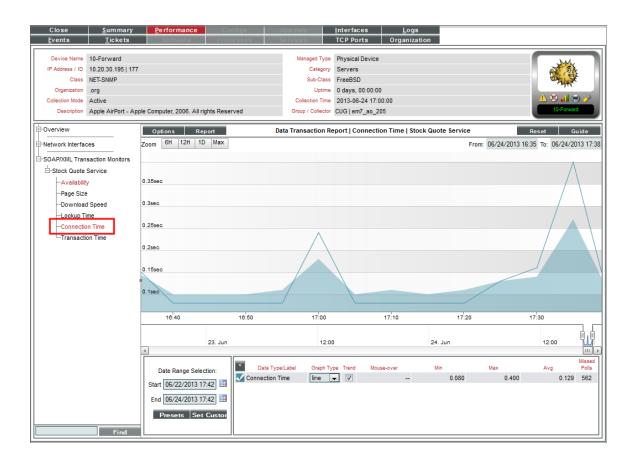
- The y-axis displays the speed at which data was downloaded from the server to the ScienceLogic platform, in (bits per second) Bps.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).

• Lookup Time. The Data Transaction Report | Domain Lookup Time report displays the speed at which your DNS system was able to resolve the name of the server in the server policy. The graph displays the speed at which your DNS system was able to resolve the name of the server in the policy for the specified duration.



- The y-axis displays the speed at which your DNS system was able to resolve the name of the server, in seconds.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).

• Connection Time. The Data Transaction Report | Connection Time report displays the time it takes for the ScienceLogic platform to establish communication with the external server. In other words, the time it takes from the beginning of the HTTP request to the TCP/IP connection. The graph displays the speed at which the ScienceLogic platform was able to make a TCP/IP connection to the external server in the policy for the specified duration.



- The y-axis displays the speed at which the ScienceLogic platform was able to make a TCP/IP connection to the external server, in seconds.
- The y-axis displays the speed at which the ScienceLogic platform was able to make a TCP/IP connection to the external server, in seconds.

• Transaction Time. The Data Transaction Report | Transaction Time report displays the total time it took to make a connection to the external server, send the HTTP request, wait for the server to parse the request, receive the requested data from the server, and close the connection. The graph displays the total time for the entire transaction from the ScienceLogic platform to the external server and back to the platform for the specified duration.



- The y-axis displays the speed of the entire transaction from the ScienceLogic platform to the external server and back to the platform, in seconds.
- The x-axis displays the speed of the entire transaction from the ScienceLogic platform to the external server and back to the platform, in seconds.

# Viewing Availability Reports for a Single System Process on a Device

When you define a process monitoring policy, the ScienceLogic platform automatically collects data associated with the policy. The ScienceLogic platform graphs that data in the **Performance** tab for the device associated with the policy.

If the ScienceLogic agent is installed on a device, data collected by the agent is used by default for process monitoring policies on that device. For more information about monitoring processes with the agent, see the *Monitoring Using the ScienceLogic agent* manual.

For policies that monitor system processes, the ScienceLogic platform generates one or more of the following reports:

- The **Process Report** displays the availability of a single monitored process on the device and also displays the number of instances of that process running on the device.
- The **Process Availability Composite Report** displays the availability of all monitored processes on the device.

Availability means the process is running.

During polling, a process has two possible availability values:

- 100%. Process is up and running.
- 0%. Process is not up and running.

However, you might see values other than 100 or 0 in an availability report. If a report contains any other percentage, it is an average of multiple readings. For example, if the ScienceLogic platform gathered five readings and during one of those readings, a process was unavailable, the average would be 80% (100 + 100 +

There are two ways to navigate to the reports for process monitoring:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that is associated with the monitoring policy. Select the bar graph icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the **Device Reports** panel, select the **Performance** tab.
  - In the NavBar, expand System Process Monitors and select the policy for which you want to view the report.

- 2. From the **System Process Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > System Processes):
  - In the **System Process Monitoring** page, find the system process policy for which you want to see a report.
  - Select its bar graph icon in the Process Name field(

3. The **Device Performance** page appears, with the Process Report displayed.



- 4. The Process Report displays a color-coded line for the availability of the monitored process over time and another color-coded line that represents the number of instances of the process running on the device.
  - The y-axis displays the availability of the process, in percent to the left and the number of processes to the right.
  - The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- 5. If you have defined monitoring polices for multiple processes on a single device, you can also view the Process Availability Composite Report.
- 6. The Process Availability Composite Report displays the availability of all monitored processes on the device.
  - The graph displays the availability of each monitored process. Each monitored process is represented with a color-coded line.
  - The y-axis displays the availability of the process, in percent.
  - The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).

## Viewing Port Availability Reports for a Single Device

When you define a policy to monitor port availability, the ScienceLogic platform automatically collects data associated with the policy. The ScienceLogic platform graphs that data in the **Performance** tab for the device associated with the policy.

If the ScienceLogic agent is installed on a device, data collected by the agent is used by default for policies that monitor port availability on that device. For more information about monitoring ports with the agent, see the *Monitoring Using the ScienceLogic agent* manual.

The Port Availability Report displays the availability of a monitored port.

Availability means the port's ability to accept connections and data from the network. During polling, a port has two possible availability values:

- 100%. Port is up and running.
- 0%. Port is not accepting connections and data from the network.

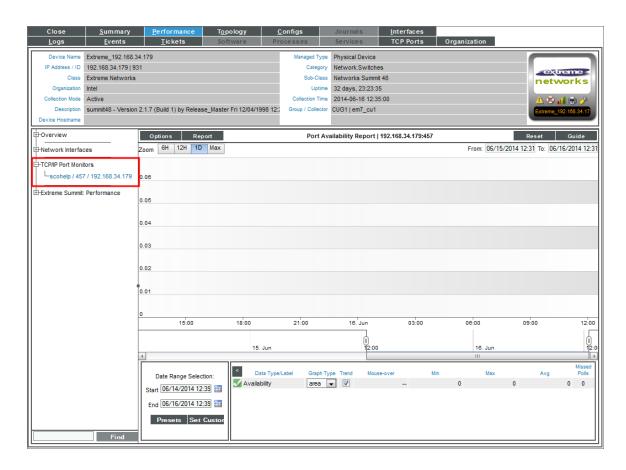
However, you might see values other than 100 or 0 in an availability report. If a report contains any other percentage, it is an average of multiple readings. For example, if the ScienceLogic platform gathered five readings and during one of those readings, a port was unavailable, the average would be 80% (100 + 100 + 100 + 100 + 0 = 400; 400/5 = 80).

There are two ways to navigate to the reports for process monitoring:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that is associated with the monitoring policy. Select the bar graph icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the **Device Reports** panel, select the **Performance** tab.
  - In the NavBar, expand TCP/IP Port Monitors and select the policy for which you want to view the report.

- 2. From the **TCP/IP Port Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > TCP-IP Ports):
  - In the TCP/IP Port Monitoring page, find the port policy for which you want to see a report.
  - Select its bar graph icon in the Port Number field(1111).

3. The **Device Performance** page appears, with the Port Availability Report displayed.



- 4. The Port Availability Report displays the availability of a single monitored port over time.
  - The y-axis displays the availability of the port, in percent.
  - The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).

## Viewing Reports for a Web Content Policy

The Content Verification Reports display results from a Web Content policy. These reports display availability and other statistics about the website and its content.

Availability means whether or not the specified content was found on the website. During polling, a webserver has two possible availability values:

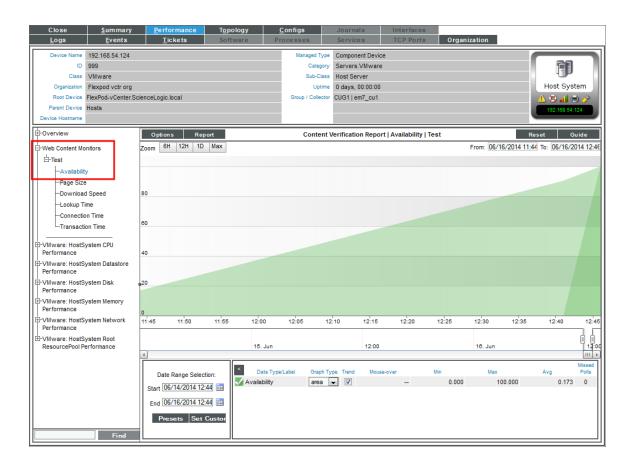
- 100%. Content was found.
- 0%. Content was not found.

However, you might see values other than 100 or 0 in the report. If a report contains any other percentage, it is an average of multiple readings. For example, if the ScienceLogic platform gathered five readings and during one of those readings, the specified content was not found, the average would be 80% (100 + 100 + 100 + 100 + 0 = 400; 400/5 = 80).

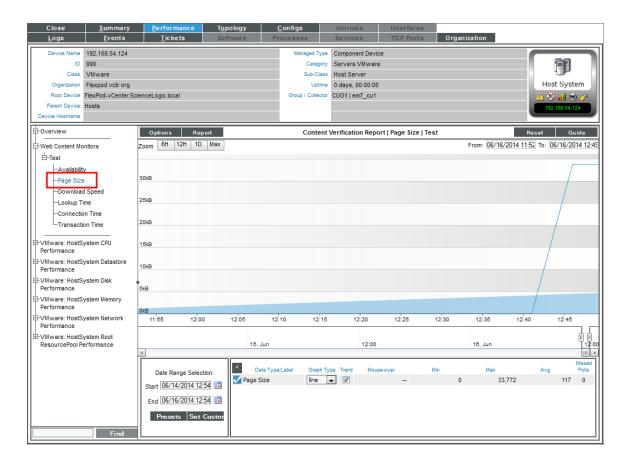
There are two ways to navigate to the reports for a web content policy:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that is associated with the monitoring policy. Select the bar graph icon (**dd**) for the device.
  - In the Device Reports panel, select the **Performance** tab.
  - In the NavBar, expand Web Content Monitors and select the policy for which you want to view the report.

- 2. From the **Web Content Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Web Content):
  - In the Web Content Monitoring page, find the policy for which you want to see a report.
  - Select its bar graph icon in the Policy Name field (411).
- 3. The **Device Performance** page appears, with the Content Verification Report | Availability report displayed.

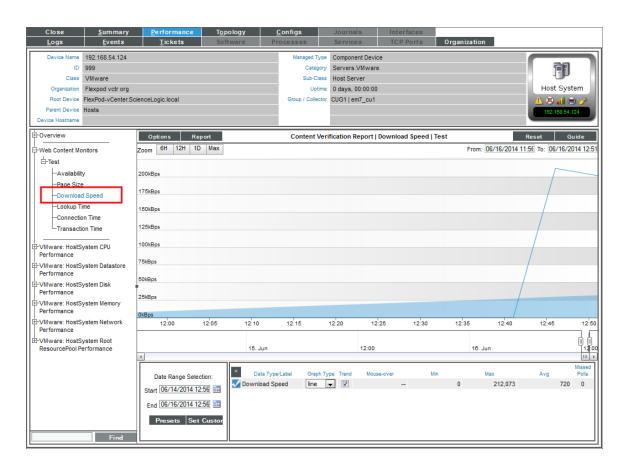


- 4. The Content Verification Report | Availability report displays the availability of the specified content on the specified web-server for the selected duration.
  - The y-axis displays availability, in percent to the left.
  - The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).
- 5. For each Web Content policy, you can also view the following additional reports. To view them select the entries in the NavBar:
  - **Page Size**. The Content Verification Report | Page Size report displays information about the size of the page specified in the URL of the policy. The graph displays the page size of the specified URL for the selected duration.



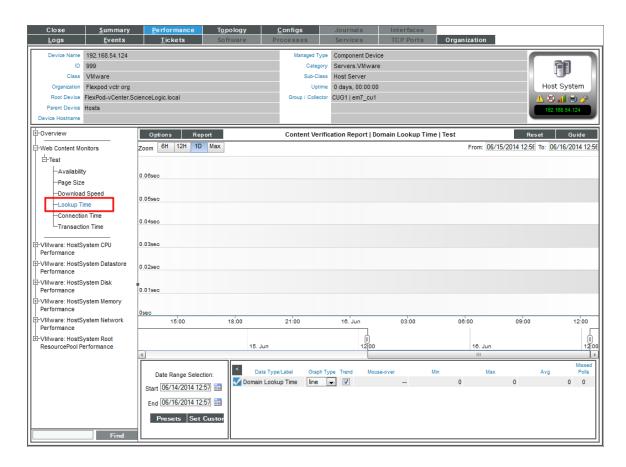
- The y-axis displays size in kilobytes (Kb).
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).

• **Download Speed**. The Content Verification Report | Download Speed report displays the speed at which data was downloaded from the website (specified in the policy) to the ScienceLogic platform. The graph displays the speed at which data was downloaded from the specified website to the ScienceLogic platform for the selected duration.



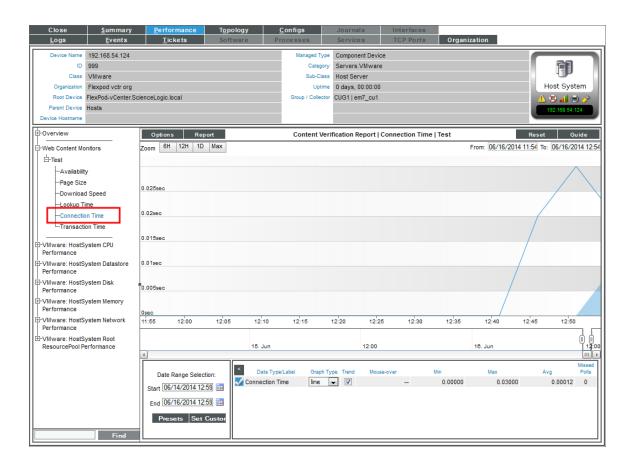
- The y-axis displays the speed at which data was downloaded from the website to the ScienceLogic platform, in bits per second (Bps).
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).

• Lookup Time. The Content Verification Report | Domain Lookup Time report displays the speed at which your DNS system was able to resolve the name of the website specified in the policy. The graph displays the speed at which your DNS system was able to resolve the name of the website for the specified duration.



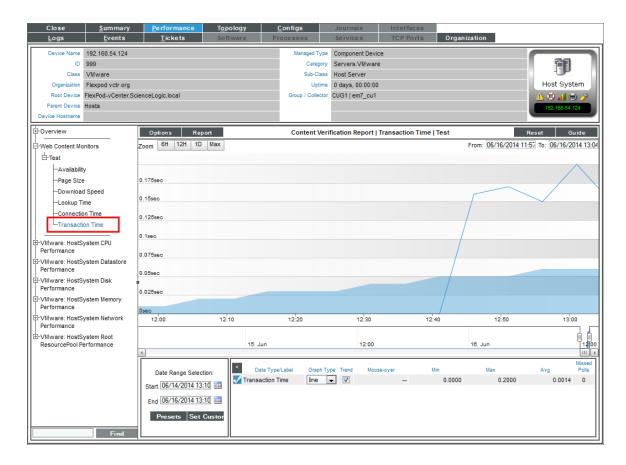
- The y-axis displays the speed at which your DNS system was able to resolve the name of the website, in seconds.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).

• Connection Time. The Content Verification Report | Connection Time report displays the time it takes for the ScienceLogic platform to establish communication with the external website. In other words, the time it takes from the beginning of the HTTP request to the TCP/IP connection. The graph displays the speed at which the ScienceLogic platform was able to make a TCP/IP connection to the external website for the specified duration.



- The y-axis displays the speed at which the ScienceLogic platform was able to make a TCP/IP connection to the external website, in seconds.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).

• Transaction Time. The Content Verification Report | Transaction Time report displays the total time it took to make a connection to the external website, send the HTTP request, wait for the website to parse the request, receive the requested data from the website, and close the connection. The graph displays the total time for the entire transaction from the ScienceLogic platform to the external website and back to the ScienceLogic platform for the specified duration.



- The y-axis displays the speed of the entire transaction from the ScienceLogic platform to the external website and back to the platform, in seconds.
- The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).

# Viewing Availability Reports for a Single Windows Service on a Device

When you define a Windows service -monitoring policy, the ScienceLogic platform automatically collects data associated with the policy. The ScienceLogic platform graphs that data in the **Performance** tab for the device associated with the policy.

For policies that monitor Windows service, the ScienceLogic platform generates the following report:

• The Service Report displays the availability of a single monitored Windows Service on the device

During polling, a service has two possible availability values:

- 100%. Service is up and running.
- 0%. Service is not up and running

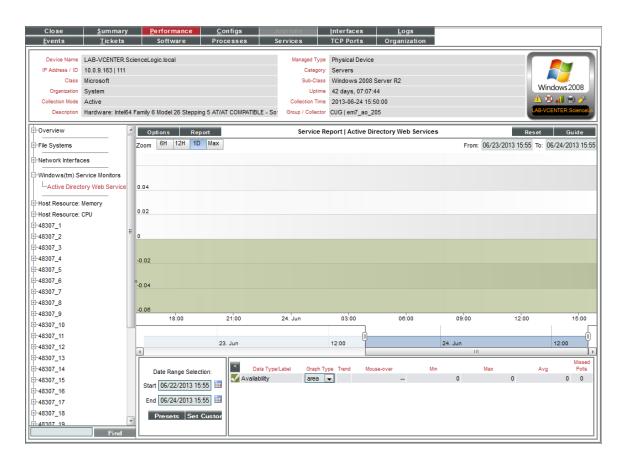
However, you might see values other than 100 or 0 in an availability report. If a report contains any other percentage, it is an average of multiple readings. For example, if the ScienceLogic platform gathered five readings and during one of those readings, a service was unavailable, the average would be 80% (100 + 100 +

There are two ways to navigate to the reports for Windows Service monitoring:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that is associated with the monitoring policy. Select the bar graph icon (**dd**) for the device.
  - In the **Device Reports** panel, select the **Performance** tab.
  - In the NavBar, expand Windows Service Monitors and select the policy for which you want to view the report.

- 2. From the **Windows Service Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Windows Services):
  - In the Windows Service Monitoring page, find the policy for which you want to see a report.
  - Select its bar graph icon in the Windows Service name field(111).

3. The **Device Performance** page appears, with the Service Report displayed.



- 4. The Service Report displays a color-coded line for the availability of the monitored Windows service over time.
  - The y-axis displays the availability of the service in percent to the left.
  - The x-axis displays time. The increments vary, depending upon the selected data type (from the **[Options]** menu) and the date range (from the **Date Range Selection** pane).

# Chapter

7

## **Viewing Configuration & Journal Data**

#### Overview

This chapter describes how to view data collected by Dynamic Applications that collect configuration and journal data.

## Configuration Dynamic Applications

The **Configuration Report** page displays data collected from the device by configuration Dynamic Applications. Usually, configuration data contains static information about hardware and configuration settings, such as serial numbers, version numbers, and hardware status.

NOTE: If you select the *Hide Object* checkbox for an object in the **Collection Objects** page (System > Manage > Applications > Create/Edit), the object will not be included in the **Configuration Report** page.

For objects of type "enum," you can mouseover the object and view all the possible values for the object.

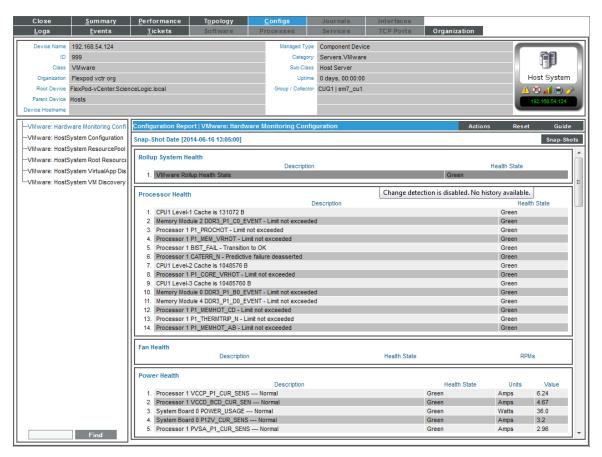
NOTE: The Configuration Report page does not display Dynamic Applications that have Cache Results selected in the Caching field in the Dynamic Applications Properties Editor page. Dynamic Applications that cache results are designed to collect data only for other Dynamic Applications and cannot be used to display data.

To view Configuration Dynamic Application information:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).

- 2. Find the device for which you want to view configuration Dynamic Application data. Select its bar graph icon (

  . In the Device Administration panel, select the [Configs] tab.
- 3. The **Device Configuration** page is displayed:



#### Selecting Data to View

If one or more Dynamic Applications of type "configuration" are associated with the device, the **Configuration Report** page will display that list of Dynamic Applications in the left NavBar.

**NOTE**: The left navigation bar does not display Dynamic Applications that have *Cache Results* selected in the *Caching* field in the **Dynamic Applications Properties Editor** page. Dynamic Applications that cache results are designed to collect data only for other Dynamic Applications and cannot be used to display data.

#### Viewing Data

When you select a Dynamic Application in the left NavBar, the right pane displays data collected from the device by the Dynamic Application.

- Some objects may appear in a list at the top of the right pane. These are objects that are not grouped into a
  table. For each of these values, no values were specified in the Group field and the Table Alignment field,
  in the Collection Objects page. These are usually objects for which there is only one, non-changing value
  (like model number, for example).
- Some objects may appear in tables. Tables work best for objects with multiple values, like RAM location. Each row represents one value from each collection object in the group, which all have the same index.
  - Each column heading is the name of an object. Mousing over the column heading displays a
    description of the object. To edit the description, click on the column heading. The Collection
    Objects page appears, populated with values from the appropriate object. You can edit the value in
    the Description field, and that value will appear when you mouseover the column heading in the
    Configuration Report page.
- Mousing over a value can display the following:
  - If the object is of type "enum", the mouseover text displays the list of all possible values for the object. For example, "O unknown, 1 disabled, 2 enabled".
  - If change detection has not been enabled, displays the text "Change detection is disabled. No history available".
  - If change detection has been enabled, displays "Click to view change history". If you click, the
    ScienceLogic platform displays the Change History modal page, where you can view all the values
    collected from the device for the selected object.

#### Generating a Report of the Data

You can generate a report about the data in the Configuration Report page. To do so:

- 1. In the **Configuration Report** page, in the Navigation Bar (left pane), select the Dynamic Application you want to generate a report from.
- 2. In the Configuration Report page, select the [Actions] menu. Select Print a Report.
- 3. The ScienceLogic platform generates an HTML report that contains all the data from the **Configuration Report** page. You can view, print, or save the report.

#### Viewing Historical Data

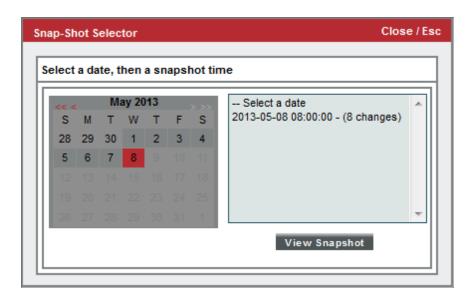
By default, the **Configuration Report** page displays data from the latest polling session. However, you can use the **Snap-Shot Selector** page to display data from a previous polling session in the **Configuration Report** page.

The **Snap-Shot Selector** page displays a list of polling sessions where a change was discovered in the configuration data. If none of the data in a Dynamic Application changes from one polling session to the next, then the ScienceLogic platform does not include an entry in the **Snap-Shot Selector** page.

To display data from a previous polling session in the Configuration Report page:

- 1. In the **Configuration Report** page, in the Navigation Bar (left pane), select the Dynamic Application for which you want to view historical data.
- 2. When the data is displayed in the right pane, select the [Snap-Shots] button.

3. The **Snap-Shot Selector** modal page appears. This page displays a calendar interface, in which you can select a date for which you want to view a list of Snap-Shots.



- 4. To select a date for a Snap-Shot, scroll through the calendar until you find the month that you are interested in. Click on the date you are interested in.
- 5. The pane to the right will display a list of all available Snap-Shots for the selected date. Each Snap-Shot is labeled with a date and time stamp and specifies how many objects had changed values. To select a Snap-Shot, click on it and select the [View Snapshot] button.

**NOTE**: If the pane to the right does not display one or more available Snap-Shots, this means that the ScienceLogic platform did not detect any changes to the objects on the selected date.

6. The data from the selected Snap-Shot is loaded and displayed in the Configuration Report page.

### Editing the Application

From the **Configuration Report** page, you can edit the properties of a Dynamic Application. When you do so, you change the behavior of the Dynamic Application for all subscriber devices, not just the current device.

To edit a Dynamic Application from the Configuration Report page:

- 1. In the **Configuration Report** page, in the Navigation Bar (left pane), select the Dynamic Application you want to view and edit.
- 2. When the data from the Dynamic Application is displayed in the right pane, select the [Actions] menu and choose Edit This Application.
- 3. The **Collection Objects** page appears. In this page, you can edit how the ScienceLogic platform retrieves values for an object and how those values are displayed in the **Configuration Report** page. You can also access all the other tabs in the Dynamic Applications panel for the Dynamic Application.

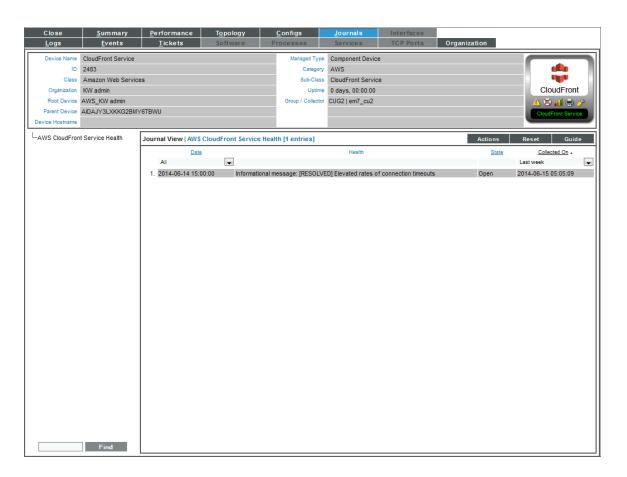
For information about editing Dynamic Applications, see the **Dynamic Application Development** manual.

## Journal Dynamic Applications

The **Journal View** page displays journal entry information collected from the device by Dynamic Applications. All information from Dynamic Applications of type journal is included in the **Journal View** page. Journal Dynamic Applications store information in log format; for example, telephone call records or access logs.

To view journal Dynamic Application information:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Find the device for which you want to view journal Dynamic Application data. Select its bar graph icon (411). In the **Device Reports** panel, select the **[Journals]** tab.
- 3. The **Journal View** page is displayed:



### Selecting Data to View

If one or more Dynamic Applications of type "journal" are associated with the device, the **Journal View** page will display that list of Dynamic Applications in the left NavBar.

When you select a Dynamic Application in the left NavBar, the right pane displays data collected from the device by the Dynamic Application.

### Viewing Data

The Journal View page arranges collected journal entries in tabular format.

- The table contains a row for each journal entry.
- The table contains a column for each presentation object, plus the State and Collected On columns.
   Presentation objects define the text to display in each row in the column, including which collection values will be displayed.
   Presentation objects are defined in the Presentation Objects page for the Dynamic Application.

The Journal View page displays the following about each journal entry:

TIP: To sort by descending order, click the column heading again. To sort a column that contains presentation objects, sorting must be enabled in the **Presentation Objects** page (System > Manage > Applications > Create/Edit). Date and time column sorts by descending order on the first click; to sort by ascending order, click the column heading again.

- **Presentation Objects**. One or more columns in the table of journal entries will be presentation objects defined in the Dynamic Application. The values in this column can be based on one or more collection objects, and can be a text string, a number, or a time and date value.
- State. Specifies the current state of the journal entry. Journal entries can have one of the following states:
  - Open
  - Closed
  - Abandoned
  - Error
  - Reopened
- Collected On. Specifies the last time the journal entry was updated.

#### Searching & Filtering the List of Data

You can filter the list on the **Journal View** page by one or more parameters. Only journal entries that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **Journal View** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Journal View** page searches for journal entries that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use special characters to filter each parameter.

Filter the list by one or more of the following parameters:

- Presentation Objects. Each presentation object column has a filter. For columns that contain a text string or a numeric value, you can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Journal View page will display only journal entries that have a matching value for that presentation object. For each journal entry, the value that is matched for a presentation object is the value of the first collection object that appears in the presentation object text. For columns that contain a time and date, you can select a time span, and the Journal View page will display only journal entries that have a time and date value within the selected time span. Choices are:
  - o All. Display all journal entries that match the other filters.
  - Last Minute. Display only journal entries that have been created within the last minute.
  - · Last Hour. Display only journal entries that have been created within the last hour.
  - o Last Day. Display only journal entries that have been created within the last day.
  - o Last Week. Display only journal entries that have been created within the last week.
  - o Last Month. Display only journal entries that have been created within the last month.
  - Last Year. Display only journal entries that have been created within the last year.
- **State**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Journal View** page will display only journal entries that have a matching state. Journal entries can have one of the following states:
  - o Open
  - Closed
  - Abandoned
  - o Error
  - Reopened
- Collected On. You can select a time span, and the **Journal View** page will display only journal entries that have been updated within that time period. Choices are:
  - o All. Display all journal entries that match the other filters.
  - Last Minute. Display only journal entries that have been created within the last minute.
  - o Last Hour. Display only journal entries that have been created within the last hour.
  - o Last Day. Display only journal entries that have been created within the last day.
  - Last Week. Display only journal entries that have been created within the last week.
  - Last Month. Display only journal entries that have been created within the last month.
  - Last Year. Display only journal entries that have been created within the last year.

#### Special Characters

You can include the following special characters to filter by each column except those that display date and time:

NOTE: When searching for a string, the ScienceLogic platform will match substrings by default, even if you do not include any special characters. For example, searching for "hel" will match both "hello" and "helicopter". When searching for a numeric value, the ScienceLogic platform will not match a substring unless you use a special character.

#### String and Numeric

- , (comma). Specifies an "OR" operation. Works for string and numeric values. For example:
  - "dell, micro" matches all values that contain the string "dell" OR the string "micro".
- & (ampersand). Specifies an "AND" operation. Works for string and numeric values. For example:
  - "dell & micro" matches all values that contain both the string "dell" AND the string "micro", in any order.
- ! (exclamation point). Specifies a "not" operation. Works for string and numeric values. For example:
  - "!dell" matches all values that do not contain the string "dell".
  - "! ^ micro" would match all values that do not start with "micro".
  - "!fer\$" would match all values that do not end with "fer".
  - "! ^ \$" would match all values that are not null.
  - "! ^ " would match null values.
  - "!\$" would match null values.
  - "!\*" would match null values.

**NOTE**: You can also use the "!" character in combination with the arithmetic special characters (min-max, >, <, >=, <=, =) described below.

<sup>&</sup>quot;happy, !dell" would match values that contain "happy" OR values that do not contain "dell".

- \* (asterisk). Specifies a "match zero or more" operation. Works for string and numeric values. For a string, matches any string that matches the text before and after the asterisk. For a number, matches any number that contains the text. For example:
  - "hel\*er" would match "helpers" and "helicopter" but not "hello".
  - "325\*" would match "325", "32561", and "325000".
  - "\*000" would match "1000", "25000", and "10500000".
- ? (question mark). Specifies "match any one character". Works for string and numeric values. For example:
  - "I?ver" would match the strings "oliver", "levers", and "lover", but not "believer".
  - "135?" would match the numbers "1350", "1354", and "1359", but not "135" or "13502"

#### String

- ^ (caret). For strings only. Specifies "match the beginning". Matches any string that begins with the specified string. For example:
  - "^sci" would match "scientific" and "sciencelogic", but not "conscious".
  - "happy\$" would match only the string "happy", with no characters before or after.
  - "! ^ micro" would match all values that do not start with "micro".
  - "! ^ \$" would match all values that are not null.
  - "! ^ " would match null values.
- \$ (dollar sign). For strings only. Specifies "match the ending". Matches any string that ends with the specified string. For example:
  - "ter\$" would match the string "renter" but not the string "terrific".
  - "^happy\$" would match only the string "happy", with no characters before or after.
  - "!fer\$" would match all values that do not end with "fer".
  - "!^\$" would match all values that are not null.
  - "!\$" would match null values.

NOTE: You can use both ^ and \$ if you want to match an entire string and only that string. For example,
 " ^ tern\$" would match the strings "tern" or "TERN"; it would not match the strings "terne" or
 "cistern".

#### Numeric

- min-max. Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value between the minimum value and the maximum value, including the minimum and the maximum. For example:
  - "1-5 "would match 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5.
- - (dash). Matches numeric values only. A "half open" range. Specifies values including the minimum and greater or including the maximum and lesser. For example:
  - "1-" matches 1 and greater. So would match 1, 2, 6, 345, etc.
  - "-5" matches 5 and less. So would match 5, 3, 1, 0, etc.
- > (greater than). Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value "greater than". For example:
  - ">7" would match all values greater than 7.
- < (less than). Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value "less than". For example:
  - "<12" would match all values less than 12.
- >= (greater than or equal to). Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value "greater than or equal to". For example:
  - "=>7" would match all values 7 and greater.
- <= (less than or equal to). Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value "less than or equal to". For example:
  - "=<12" would match all values 12 and less.
- = (equal). Matches numeric values only. For numeric values, allows you to match a negative value. For example:
  - "=-5" would match "-5" instead of being evaluated as the "half open range" as described above.

#### Additional Examples

- "aio\$". Matches only text that ends with "aio".
- "^shu". Matches only text that begins with "shu".
- "^silo\$". Matches only the text "silo", with no characters before or after.
- "!silo". Matches only text that does not contains the characters "silo".
- "!^silo". Matches only text that does not start with "silo".
- "!0\$". Matches only text that does not end with "0".
- "! ^ silo\$". Matches only text that is not the exact text "silo", with no characters before or after.
- "!^". Matches null values, typically represented as "--" in most pages.
- "!\$". Matches null values, typically represented as "--" in most pages.

- "!^\$". Matches all text that is not null.
- silo, laggr". Matches text that contains the characters "silo" and also text that does not contain "aggr".
- "silo, 02, !aggr". Matches text that contains "silo" and also text that contains "02" and also text that does not contain "aggr".
- "silo, 02, laggr, !01". Matches text that contains "silo" and also text that contains "02" and also text that does not contain "aggr" and also text that does not contain "01".
- "^s\*i\*l\*o\$". Matches text that contains the letter "s", "i", "l", "o", in that order. Other letters might lie between these letters. For example "sXiXIXo" would match.
- "!^s\*i\*l\*o\$". Matches all text that does not that contains the letter "s", "i", "l", "o", in that order. Other letters might lie between these letters. For example "sXiXIXo" would not match.
- "!vol&!silo". Matches text that does not contain "vol" AND also does not contain "silo". For example, "volume" would match, because it contains "vol" but not "silo".
- "!vol&02". Matches text that does not contain "vol" AND also contains "02". For example, "happy02" would match, because it does not contain "vol" and it does contain "02".
- "aggr,!vol&02". Matches text that contains "aggr" OR text that does not contain "vol" AND also contains "02".
- "aggr,!vol&!infra". Matches text that contains "aggr" OR text that does not contain "vol" AND does not contain "infra".
- "\*". Matches all text.
- "!\*". Matches null values, typically represented as "--" in most pages.
- "silo". Matches text that contains "silo".
- "!silo". Matches text that does not contain "silo".
- "!^silo\$". Matches all text except the text "silo", with no characters before or after.
- "-3,7-8,11,24,50-". Matches numbers 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 11, 24, 50, and all numbers greater than 50.
- "-3,7-8,11,24,50-,a". Matches numbers 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 11, 24, 50, and all numbers greater than 50, and text that includes "a".
- "?n". Matches text that contains any single character and the character "n". For example, this string would match "an", "bn", "cn", "1 n", and "2n".
- "n\*SAN". Matches text the contains "n", zero or any number of any characters and then "SAN". For example, the string would match "nSAN", and "nhamburgerSAN".
- "^?n\*SAN\$". Matches text that begins with any single character, is following by "n", and then zero or any number of any characters, and ends in "SAN".

#### Generating a Report of the Data

You can generate a report about the data in the Journal View page.

To generate a report about the data in the Journal View page:

1. Go to Registry > Devices > Device Manager. Find the device for which you want to generate a report. Select its bar graph icon (\*\*\*). Select the [Journals] tab.

- 2. In the **Journal View** page, in the left NavBar, select the Dynamic Application you want to generate a report from.
- You can filter the journal entries to include in the report. Using the search filters at the top of the table of
  journal entries, filter the list of journal entries so that only the journal entries you want to include on the report
  are displayed.
- 4. In the **Journal View** page, select the **[Actions]** menu. Select **Generate Report**.
- 5. The **Export current view as a report** page is displayed. Select the output format for the report, optionally select if the ScienceLogic platform must force the browser to save the file to disk, and then select the **[Generate]** button.

#### Editing the Application

From the **Journal View** page, you can edit the properties of a Dynamic Application. When you do so, you change the behavior of the Dynamic Application for all subscriber devices, not just the current device.

To edit a Dynamic Application from the **Journal View** page:

- 1. Go to Registry > Devices > Device Manager. Find the device for which you want to view data. Select its bar graph icon (11). Select the [Journals] tab.
- 2. In the Journal View page, in the left NavBar, select the Dynamic Application you want to view and edit.
- 3. When the data from the Dynamic Application is displayed in the right pane, select the [Actions] menu and choose *Edit This Application*.
- 4. The **Collection Objects** page appears. In this page, you can edit how the ScienceLogic platform retrieves values for an object. You can also access all the other tabs in the Dynamic Applications panel for the Dynamic Application.

For information about editing Dynamic Applications, see the **Dynamic Application Development** manual.

## **Network Interfaces**

#### Overview

During discovery, the ScienceLogic platform discovers all interfaces on each discovered device. The list of all interfaces is displayed in the **Network Interfaces** page.

The ScienceLogic platform applies a default monitoring policy to every discovered interface (excluding loopback interfaces). The default policy collects inbound and outbound bandwidth statistics every 5 minutes.

The **Network Interfaces** page allows you to view a list of all interfaces, view details on each interface, edit the monitoring policy for an interface, and view bandwidth reports on each interface.

This chapter describes:

- Class-Based Quality of Service (CBQoS)
- Viewing All Interfaces Discovered by the ScienceLogic Platform
- Viewing Interfaces for a Single Device
- Generating a Report for Multiple Network Interfaces
- Generating a Report for a Single Network Interface
- Monitoring Interfaces
- Defining a Detailed Monitoring Policy for a Single Interface
- Defining Monitoring Settings for Multiple Interfaces
- Defining Thresholds for Interfaces
- Viewing the List of Discovered CBQoS Objects
- Editing Thresholds for a Quality of Service (QoS) Object

- Viewing Reports About Interfaces and Bandwidth
- Global Settings that Affect Interfaces

### Class-Based Quality of Service (CBQoS)

Class-Based Quality of Service (CBQoS) is a Cisco technology, available on Cisco devices. CBQoS allows you to manage and prioritize network traffic. The ScienceLogic platform can retrieve configuration information about CBQoS from Cisco devices that are configured to use CBQoS.

To collect CBQoS data about an interface, you must enable CBQoS monitoring in two places in the platform:

- In the Behavior Settings page (System > Settings > Behavior), enable the field Enable CBQoS Collection.
   This setting allows the ScienceLogic platform to collect configuration data from interfaces that are configured for CBQoS. The ScienceLogic platform will check for new CBQoS interfaces during initial discovery, during manual discovery, and once a day when the process Data Collection: CBQoS Inventory runs.
- In the **Network Interfaces** page (Registry > Networks > Interfaces) or the **Interface Properties** page (Registry > Networks > Interfaces > interface wrench icon, enable CBQoS reporting for each interface for which you want to view CBQoS data. This setting allows the ScienceLogic platform to collect performance data for interfaces that are configured for CBQoS and generate performance graphs for those interfaces.

You must enable CBQoS for the ScienceLogic system and also for each interface.

If both settings are enabled, the ScienceLogic system will display the collected CBQoS configuration data in the reports in the **Device Performance** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > bar-graph icon > Performance) for the device that contains this interface.

# Viewing All Interfaces Discovered by the ScienceLogic Platform

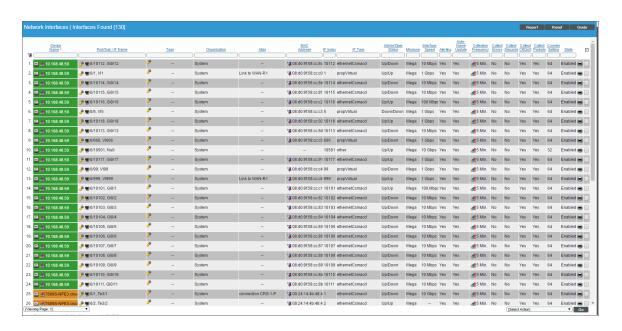
During discovery, the ScienceLogic platform discovers all interfaces on each discovered device. The list of all interfaces is displayed in the **Network Interfaces** page.

The **Network Interfaces** page allows you to view a list of all interfaces, view details on each interface, define a monitoring policy for an interface, and view bandwidth reports on each interface.

To view a list of all interfaces discovered by the platform:

1. Go to the **Network Interfaces** page (Registry > Networks > Interfaces).

2. The **Network Interfaces** page displays a list of all network interfaces discovered by the platform.



3. The **Network Interfaces** page displays the following for each interface:

**TIP**: To sort the list of interfaces, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort the list by descending order, click the column heading again.

- Device Name. Name of the device where the interface resides.
- Port/Sub. Port and sub-port (if applicable) of the interface.
- IF Name. The name of the network interface. The auto-name, generated by the ScienceLogic platform, is device\_name:interface\_number. Users can define a different name in the Interface Properties page.
- Tags. Displays a comma-delimited list of descriptive tags that have been manually defined for the interface. Interface tags are used to group interfaces in an IT service policy. To add or edit the tags for an interface, click its wrench icon ( ). In the Edit Network Interface Tags modal page that appears, supply a comma-delimited list of tags in the Tags field, and then click the [Save] button.
- **Organization**. Organization associated with the network interface. This can be the organization associated with the device where the interface resides, or it can be an organization that has emissary rights to the interface.
- Alias. User-defined name assigned to the interface.
- MAC Address. Short for Media Access Control Address. A unique number that identifies the interface. MAC Addresses are defined by the hardware manufacturer.
- *IF Index*. A unique number (greater than zero) that identifies each interface on a device. These numbers are defined within the device.

- *IF Type*. A string that describes the type of interface, as defined by the standards group Internet Assigned Numbers Authority.
- Status. Two-part status:
  - Administration Status. Specifies how the network interface has been configured on the device. Can be one of the following:
    - Up. Network interface has been enabled (configured to be up and running).
    - Down. Network interface has been purposefully disabled.
  - o Operation Status. Specifies current state of the network interface. Can be one of the following:
    - Up. Network interface is transmitting and receiving data.
    - Down, Network interface cannot transmit and receive data.

**NOTE**: The ScienceLogic platform generates an event when a network interface has an administrative status of "up" and an operation status of "down".

- Measure. Unit of measurement for bandwidth reports for the interface. The choices are:
  - Mega
  - Giga
  - Kilo
  - Tera
  - Peta
- Interface Speed. The number of megabits per second that can pass through the network interface.
- Alerting. Specifies whether or not events will be generated for the selected interfaces.
  - Yes. The ScienceLogic platform monitors the network interface and generates events when the required conditions are met.
  - No. The ScienceLogic platform monitors the network interface, but events are not generated for the interface.
- Auto-Name Update. Specifies whether or not the platform will update and/or over-write the
  interface name during auto-discovery.
  - Yes. The platform can update and/or over-write the interface name during auto-discovery.
  - No. The platform will not update and/or over-write the interface name during auto-discovery.

- Collection Frequency. When you define a monitoring policy for an interface, you must specify how frequently you want the ScienceLogic platform to collect data from the interface. Your choices are every:
  - o 1 Minute
  - 5 Minutes
  - 10 Minutes
  - o 15 Minutes
  - 30 Minutes
  - 60 Minutes
  - o 120 Minutes
- Collect Errors. Specifies whether or not the ScienceLogic platform will collect data on packet errors on the interface. Packet errors occur when packets are lost due to hardware problems such as breaks in the network or faulty adapter hardware. Your choices are:
  - Yes. The platform will collect data on packet errors that occur on the interface.
  - No. The platform will not collect data on packet errors that occur on the interface.
- Collect Discards. Specifies whether or not the ScienceLogic platform will collect data on interface discards. Discards occur when an interface receives more traffic than it can handle (either very large message or many messages simultaneously). Discards can also occur when an interface has been specifically configured to discard. For example, a user might configure a router's interface to discard packets from a non-authorized IP. Your choices are:
  - Yes. The platform will collect data on packet discards that occur on the interface.
  - No. The platform will not collect data on packet discards that occur on the interface.
- Collect CBQoS. Specifies whether the ScienceLogic platform will collect CBQoS (Class-Based Quality-of-Service) data for this interface. This column appears only if you have enabled the field Enable CBQoS Collection in the Behavior Settings page (System > Settings > Behavior). If Collect CBQoS is enabled for an interface, the platform will display the collected CBQoS data in Device Performance reports associated with the device that contains this interface. Choices are:
  - Yes. The platform will collect CBQoS data for this interface.
  - No. The platform will not collect CBQoS data for this interface.
- Collect Packets. Specifies whether the ScienceLogic platform will collect data for unicast, multicast, and broadcast traffic, in packets, for this interface. If Collect Packets is enabled for an interface, the platform will display the collected data in Device Performance reports associated with the device that contains this interface. Choices are:
  - Yes. The platform will collect packet data for this interface.
  - No. The platform will not collect packet data for this interface.

• **Counter Setting**. Specifies whether the interface uses a 32-bit counter or a 64-bit counter to measure bandwidth on the interface.

**NOTE**: If an interface has a status of "down" during initial discovery, the ScienceLogic platform will discover the interface but assign the interface the default Counter Setting of "32". During re-discovery or nightly auto-discovery, the ScienceLogic platform will update Counter Setting to "64" if applicable.

- State. This field can have one of two values:
  - Enabled. The platform monitors the network interface and collects data on the network interface for reports.
  - Disabled. The platform does not monitor the network interface or collect data on the network interface for reports.
- *Edit Date*. Date and time the monitoring policy for the interface was created or last edited. If the interface is using the default monitoring policy, the edit date reflects the date that the interface was discovered by the ScienceLogic platform.

#### Viewing Interfaces for a Single Device

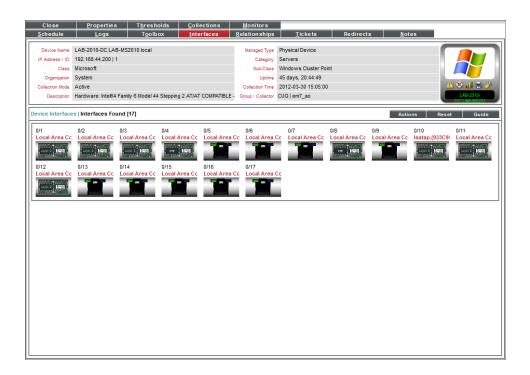
In the **Device Administration** panel for a device, you can view the **Device Interfaces** page. The **Device Interfaces** page displays detailed information about each network interface on the device and allows you to define monitoring policies for interfaces on the device. When you define a monitoring policy for an interface, the ScienceLogic platform will monitor the interface and gather usage data from the interface. The ScienceLogic platform uses the data retrieved from the interface to generate bandwidth reports for the interface.

In the **Device Reports** panel for a device, you can view the **Interfaces Found** page. The **Interfaces Found** page displays detailed information about each network interface on the device. The **Interfaces Found** page allows you to view a list of all interfaces on the device, view details about each interface, and view bandwidth usage reports for each interface.

To view details about the network interfaces on a device:

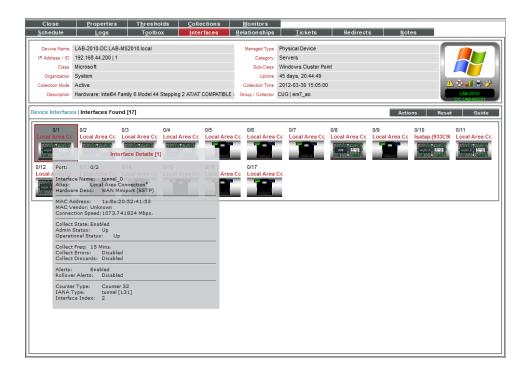
- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Find the device for which you want to view the list of network interfaces, then do one of the following:
  - Click its wrench icon ( ), followed by the [Interfaces] tab, to view the Device Interfaces page.
  - Click the bar graph icon (411), followed by the [Interfaces] tab, to view the Interfaces Found page.

3. Both pages display icons to represent the interfaces on the device:



- 4. The page displays an icon for each interface on the device. Each icon provides a visual overview of the interface.
- 5. For details on interface icons, click the **[Legend]** button, or in the **[Actions]** menu, select *Interface Legend*. The **Interface Legend** modal page displays each type of interface icon with explanatory callouts.

6. When you mouse over the icon for that interface, the **Interface Details** modal page appears. This page displays details about the interface and its current monitoring policy.



- 7. The Interface Details modal page displays the following about an interface:
  - Port / Sub. Port and sub-port (if applicable) of the interface.
  - Interface Name. The name of the network interface. The auto-name, generated by the platform, is device name:interface number.
  - Alias. Easy-to-remember, human-readable name for the network interface.
  - Hardware Desc. Description of the network interface. Usually a description of a network-interface card.
  - MAC Address. Short for Media Access Control Address. A unique number that identifies network hardware. MAC Addresses are defined by the hardware manufacturer.
  - MAC Vendor. Manufacturer of the network interface.
  - Connection Speed. The amount of data per second that can pass through the network interface.
  - **Collect State**. Specifies whether or not the platform monitors the network interface and collects data from the network interface for reports.
  - Admin Status. Specifies how the network interface has been configured on the device. Can be one of the following:
    - Up. Network interface has been configured to be up and running.
    - Down. Network interface has been purposefully disabled.

- Operational Status. Specifies current state of the network interface. Can be one of the following:
  - Up. Network interface is transmitting and receiving data.
  - o Down. Network interface cannot transmit and receive data.
- **Collect Freq**. Frequency at which the platform will poll the interface to collect data. Choices are 1 minute, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 30 minutes, 60 minutes, and 120 minutes.
- **Collect Errors**. Specifies whether or not the platform will collect data on packet errors on the interface. Packet errors occur when packets are lost due to hardware problems such as breaks in the network or faulty adapter hardware.
- Collect Discards. Specifies whether or not the platform will collect data on interface discards. Discards
  occur when an interface receives more traffic than it can handle (either a very large message or many
  messages simultaneously). Discards can also occur when an interface has been specifically configured
  to discard. For example, a user might configure a router's interface to discard packets from a nonauthorized IP address.
- **Alerts**. Specifies whether or not the platform will generate events for the interface. When disabled, the interface is monitored, but events are not generated for the interface.
- Rollover Alerts. Specifies whether or not the platform will generate an event when the counter for the
  interface rolls over.

NOTE: Rollovers and Rollover Alerts apply only to 32-bit counters and not to 64-bit counters.

- IP. IP address and network mask assigned to the interface.
- **Counter Type**. Specifies whether the interface uses a 32-bit counter or a 64-bit counter to measure bandwidth on the interface.

**NOTE**: If an interface has a status of "down" during initial discovery, the ScienceLogic platform will discover the interface but assign the interface the default **Counter Type** of "32". During re-discovery or nightly auto-discovery, the ScienceLogic platform will update the **Counter Type** to "64" if applicable.

- IANA Type. A string that describes the type of interface, as defined by the standards group Internet Assigned Numbers Authority.
- Interface Index. A unique number (greater than zero) that identifies each interface on a device. These numbers are defined by the device.
- 8. In the **Device Interfaces** page, clicking on an interface icon leads to the **Interface Properties** page, where you can define a monitoring policy for an interface.
- 9. In the **Interfaces Found** page, clicking on an interface icon leads to the Network Bandwidth Usage report in the **Device Performance** page.

# Generating a Report for Multiple Network Interfaces

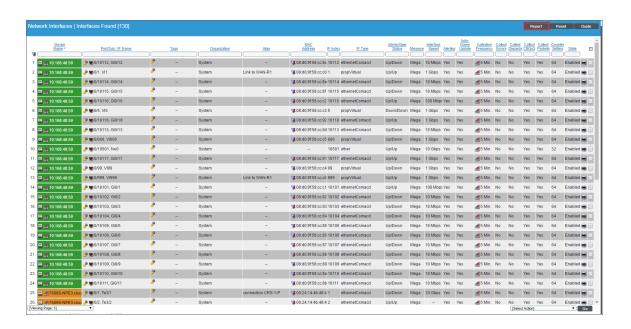
The Registry tab includes the **Network Interfaces** page. From the **Network Interfaces** page you can generate a report on all, multiple, or a single interface in the ScienceLogic platform. The report will contain all the information displayed in the **Network Interfaces** page. The **Network Interfaces** page is located at Registry > Networks > Interfaces.

Device Name	Port/Sub   IF Name	Alias	MAC Address	IF Index	IF Type	IF Status	Measure	Speed	Alertina	Name Update	Collect Rate	Errors	iscards C	Counter	Stat
10.168.48.59	0/10112, Gi0/12		08:d0:9f:58:cc:8c	10112	ethernetCsmacd	/	Mega	10 Mbps	Yes	Yes	5 Min.	No N	0 6	4 bits	Enable
10.168.48.59	0/1, VI1	Link to WAN-R1	08:d0:9f:58:cc:c0	1	propVirtual	/	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes			No N		4 bits	Enable
10.168.48.59	0/10114, Gi0/14		08:d0:9f:58:cc:8e		ethernetCsmacd	/		10 Mbps	Yes			No N		4 bits	Enable
10.168.48.59	0/10115, Gi0/15		08:d0:9f:58:cc:8f		ethernetCsmacd	/	Mega	10 Mbps	Yes					4 bits	Enable
10.168.48.59	0/10116, Gi0/16		08:d0:9f:58:cc:c2		ethernetCsmacd	/	Mega	100 Mbps	Yes					4 bits	Enable
10.168.48.59	0/5, VI5		08:d0:9f:58:cc:c3		propVirtual	/	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Enabl
10.168.48.59	0/10118, Gi0/18		08:d0:9f:58:cc:92		ethernetCsmacd	/	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Enabl
10.168.48.59	0/10113, Gi0/13		08:d0:9f:58:cc:8d		ethernetCsmacd	/		10 Mbps	Yes					4 bits	Enabl
10.168.48.59	0/666, VI666		08:d0:9f:58:cc:c5	666	propVirtual	/	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Enabl
10.168.48.59	0/10501, Nu0				other	/	Mega	10 Gbps	Yes					2 bits	Enabl
10.168.48.59	0/10117, Gi0/17		08:d0:9f:58:cc:91		ethernetCsmacd	/	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Enab
10.168.48.59	0/99, VI99		08:d0:9f:58:cc:c4	99	propVirtual	/	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes	Yes	5 Min.	No N	0 6	4 bits	Enab
10.168.48.59	0/999, VI999	Link to WAN-R1	08:d0:9f:58:cc:c6		propVirtual	/	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes	Yes	5 Min.	No N		4 bits	Enabl
10.168.48.59	0/10101, Gi0/1		08:d0:9f:58:cc:c1	10101	ethernetCsmacd	/	Mega	100 Mbps	Yes					4 bits	Enab
10.168.48.59	0/10102, Gi0/2		08:d0:9f:58:cc:82	10102	ethernetCsmacd	/	Mega	10 Mbps	Yes	Yes	5 Min.	No N	o 6	4 bits	Enab
10.168.48.59	0/10103, Gi0/3		08:d0:9f:58:cc:83	10103	ethernetCsmacd	/	Mega	10 Mbps	Yes	Yes !	5 Min.	No N	o 6	4 bits	Enab
10.168.48.59	0/10104, Gi0/4		08:d0:9f:58:cc:84	10104	ethernetCsmacd	/	Mega	10 Mbps	Yes	Yes	5 Min.	No N	o 6	4 bits	Enab
10.168.48.59	0/10105, Gi0/5		08:d0:9f:58:cc:85	10105	ethernetCsmacd	/	Mega	10 Mbps	Yes	Yes	5 Min.	No N	0 6	4 bits	Enab
10.168.48.59	0/10106, Gi0/6		08:d0:9f:58:cc:86	10106	ethernetCsmacd	/	Mega	10 Mbps	Yes	Yes	5 Min.	No N	0 6	4 bits	Enab
10.168.48.59	0/10107, Gi0/7		08:d0:9f:58:cc:87	10107	ethernetCsmacd		Mega	10 Mbps	Yes	Yes	5 Min.	No N	0 6	4 bits	Enab
10.168.48.59	0/10108, Gi0/8		08:d0:9f:58:cc:88	10108	ethernetCsmacd		Mega	10 Mbps	Yes	Yes	5 Min.	No N	0 6	4 bits	Enab
10.168.48.59	0/10109, Gi0/9		08:d0:9f:58:cc:89	10109	ethernetCsmacd		Mega	10 Mbps	Yes	Yes	5 Min.	No N	0 6	4 bits	Enab
10.168.48.59	0/10110, Gi0/10				ethernetCsmacd	/		10 Mbps	Yes			No N		4 bits	Enal
10.168.48.59	0/10111, Gi0/11		08:d0:9f:58:cc:8b		ethernetCsmacd	/		10 Mbps				No N		4 bits	Enab
7609S-NPE3.cisco	0/1. Te3/1	connection CRS-1-P			ethernetCsmacd	/		10 Gbps			5 Min.	No N	0 6	4 bits	Enab
7609S-NPE3.cisco	0/2, Te3/2		00:24:14:4b:48:40	2	ethernetCsmacd	1	Mega		Yes	Yes	5 Min.	No N	0 6	4 bits	Enab
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	,		10 Gbps			5 Min.	No N	0 6	4 bits	Enab
7609S-NPE3.cisco		Connection to IXIA SI			ethernetCsmacd	,		10 Gbps				No N		4 bits	Enab
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	,		1 Gbps	Yes			No N		4 bits	Enal
7609S-NPE3.cisco		_	00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	,	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Enal
7609S-NPE3.cisco		connection to CE-282			ethernetCsmacd	,	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Enal
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	,	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 hits	Enal
7609S-NPE3.cisco		_	00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	,	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Enal
7609S-NPE3.cisco		"Connection to 2951			ethernetCsmacd		Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Enal
7609S-NPE3.cisco		Connection to 2331	00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	,	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Enal
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	,	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Ena
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	,	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Ena
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	,	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Enal
7609S-NPE3.cisco		connected to ASA555			ethernetCsmacd	,	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Enal
7609S-NPE3.cisco		connected to ASASSS	00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	,	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Enal
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	,	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Enal
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	,	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Enal
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	,	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes			No N		4 bits	Enal
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd		Mega	1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Enal
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	1	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes			No N		4 bits	Enak
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40 00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd ethernetCsmacd	1	Mega	1 Gbps 1 Gbps	Yes					4 bits	Enat
						,						No N		4 bits	Enat
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	,	Mega	1 Gbps							
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	,	Mega	1 Gbps						4 bits	Enal
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	<u>'</u>	Mega	1 Gbps						4 bits	Enal
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd	<u>'</u>	Mega	1 Gbps				No N		4 bits	Ena
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40	27	ethernetCsmacd	/	Mega	1 Gbps	Yes	Yes	5 Min.	No N	o 6	4 bits	Ena
7609S-NPE3.cisco			00:24:14:4b:48:40		ethernetCsmacd		Mega	1 Gbps	Yes	Yes	5 Min.	No N	0 6	4 bits	Enal

To view a report on all or multiple discovered interfaces:

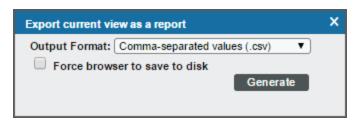
1. Go to the **Network Interfaces** page (Registry > Networks > Interfaces).

2. In the **Network Interfaces** page, click the **[Report]** button.



NOTE: If you want to include only certain interfaces in the report, use the "search as you type" fields at the top of each column. You can filter the list by one or more column headings. You can then click the [Report] button, and only the interfaces displayed in the Network Interfaces page will appear in the report.

3. The **Export current view as a report** modal page appears.

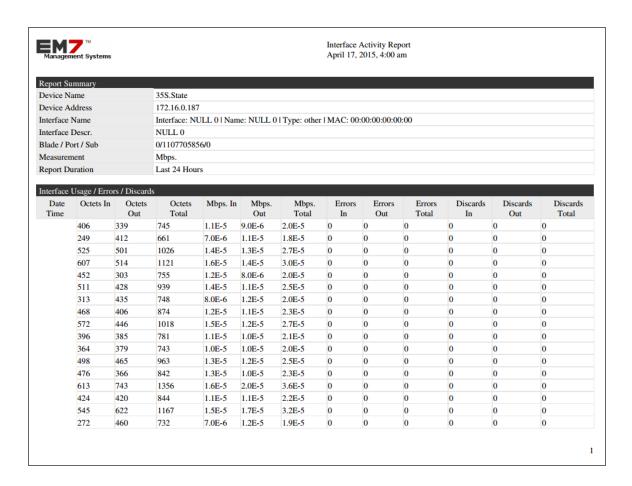


- 4. In the **Export current view as a report** modal page, you must select the format in which the ScienceLogic platform will generate the report. Your choices are:
  - Comma-separated values (.csv)
  - Web page (.html)
  - OpenDocument Spreadsheet (.ods)
  - Excel spreadsheet (.xlsx)
  - Acrobat document (.pdf)

5. Click the **[Generate]** button. The report will contain all the information displayed in the **Network Interfaces** page. You can immediately view the report or save it to a file for later viewing.

# Generating a Report for a Single Network Interface

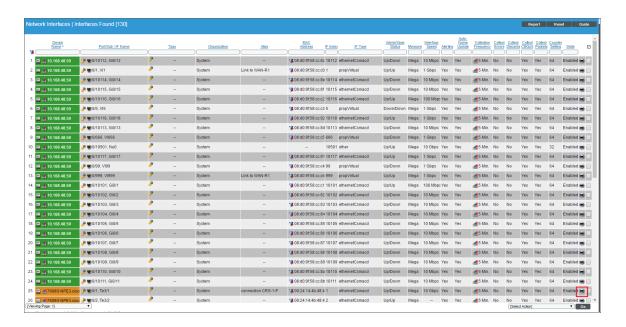
From the **Network Interfaces** page, you can generate a text-based, bandwidth-usage report for a single interface. You can choose to generate a report on outbound traffic, inbound traffic, all traffic, errors, discards, or all.



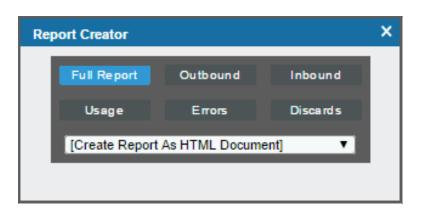
To generate the report:

1. Go to **Network Interfaces** (Registry > Networks > Interfaces).

2. In the **Network Interfaces** page, find the interface for which you want to generate a bandwidth report. Click its printer icon (18).



3. The **Report Creator** modal page is displayed.



- 4. Select from the following list of formats to select a format in which to generate the report:
  - Create Report as HTML Document
  - Create Report as PDF Document
  - Create Report as MS Word Document
  - Create Report as MS Excel Document
  - CSV Comma Separated Values

- 5. Select one of the following buttons to specify the information to include in the device report:
  - [Full Report]. Include all information about outbound data through the interface, inbound data through the interface, combined bandwidth through the interface, errors on the interface, and discards on the interface.
  - [Outbound]. Include all information about outbound data through the interface.
  - [Inbound]. Include all information about inbound data through the interface.
  - [Usage]. Include all information about inbound data and outbound data through the interface.
  - [Errors]. Include all information about errors on the interface.
  - [Discards]. Include all information about discards on the interface.
- 6. The ScienceLogic platform will generate the report. You can immediately view the report or save it to your local computer.

## Monitoring Interfaces

A monitoring policy for an interface tells the ScienceLogic platform how frequently to poll the interface for data and which data to collect. The platform uses this collected data to generate bandwidth reports and trigger events.

NOTE: By default, the ScienceLogic platform monitors each discovered interface. By default, the platform will poll the interface every 15 minutes, will not collect data on errors, will not collect data on discards, enables alerting, and allows the platform to update the interface name during discovery.

There are two ways to define monitoring policies for interfaces:

- Define a detailed policy for a single interface at a time.
- Define a single policy setting for multiple interfaces at a time.

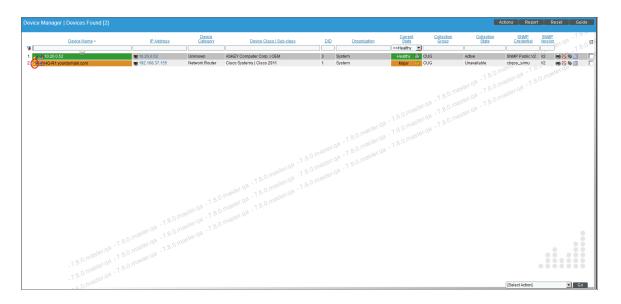
The following sections describe both methods.

# Defining a Detailed Monitoring Policy for a Single Interface

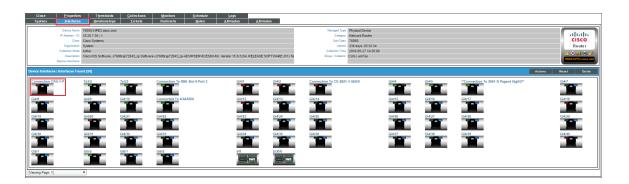
To define a monitoring policy for one or more interfaces on a single device:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).

2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to define interface monitoring. Click its wrench icon ().

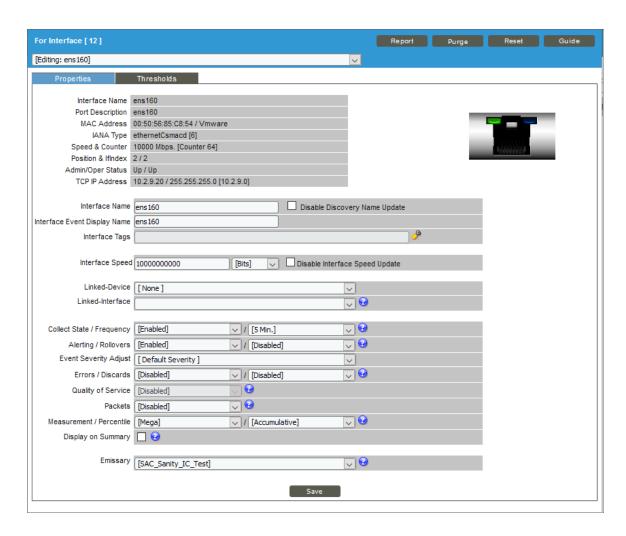


3. In the **Device Administration** panel, click the **[Interfaces]** tab.



4. In the **Device Interfaces** page, find the icon for the interface you want to monitor. Click on the icon.

5. The **Interface Properties** page appears. In this page, you can define a detailed monitoring policy for the selected interface.



6. To define a monitoring policy in the **Interface Properties** page, supply a value in each of the following fields in the **Monitoring Options** pane:

NOTE: For the ScienceLogic platform to monitor an interface, you must define Collect State as Enabled.

- Interface Name. The name of the network interface. The auto-name, generated by the ScienceLogic platform, is "device\_name". You can supply a different name in this field.
- **Disable Discovery Name Update**. When selected, prevents the platform from updating and/or overwriting the interface name during auto-discovery.
- Interface Event Display Name. The name of the network interface that you want to appear in events.

NOTE: If *Disable Discovery Name Update* is selected for an interface in its *Interface Properties* page, the ScienceLogic platform cannot change the interface name during nightly auto-discovery and during re-discovery, regardless of the settings in the *Interface Event Display Name* field. To apply a new naming convention to interfaces, you must first ensure that *Disable Discovery Name Update* is not selected for those interfaces. You can do this in the *Network Interfaces* page (Registry > Networks > Interfaces): select the interfaces you want to rename, select the *Select Actions* field (in the lower right), and choose *Auto-Name Update* > *Enable*.

- Interface Tags. Displays a comma-delimited list of descriptive tags that have been manually defined for this interface. Interface tags are used to group interfaces in an IT service policy. To add or edit the tags for this interface, click the wrench icon ( ). In the Edit Network Interface Tags modal page that appears, supply a comma-delimited list of tags in the Tags field, and then click the [Save] button.
- Interface Speed. The speed of the network interface reported by the device. If the device reported an incorrect speed, you can supply a different speed in this field. In the drop-down list to the right of this field, you can select the unit of measurement for the speed you specified.
- **Disable Interface Speed Update**. When selected, prevents the ScienceLogic platform from updating and/or overwriting the interface speed during nightly auto-discovery.
- Linked Device. Device to associate with this interface. You can select from the drop-down list of all devices in the ScienceLogic platform.
- Linked Interface. Interface to be associated with this interface. You can select from a drop-down list of interfaces on the selected device (specified in the Linked Device field).

**NOTE**: The *Linked Device* and *Linked Interface* fields allow you to manually create relationships that will be reflected in the topology maps in the [Views] tab.

- Collect State. This field can have one of two values:
  - Enabled: The ScienceLogic platform monitors the network interface and collects data on the network interface for reports.
  - Disabled: The ScienceLogic platform does not monitor the network interface and collect data on the network interface for reports.
- **Frequency**. When you enable monitoring (collection) for an interface, you must specify how frequently you want the platform to collect data from the interface. Your choices are every:
  - ∘ 1 Minute
  - 5 Minutes
  - 10 Minutes
  - o 15 Minutes
  - 30 Minutes

- o 60 Minutes
- o 120 Minutes

The Network Interface reports will display the average incoming and outgoing bandwidth-usage for the current day in the time-intervals specified in the *Frequency* field.

- **Alerting**. Alerting for this interface can be enabled or disabled. When disabled, the interface is monitored, but events are not generated for the interface.
- Rollovers. Specifies whether or not the platform will generate an event when the counter for the interface rolls over. This field does not affect the Network Usage graphs. This field is most helpful for interfaces that are busy and require frequent monitoring, but for which the device supports only 32-bit counters (instead of 64-bit counters). The counters on such interfaces roll over frequently.

NOTE: Rollovers and alerting for *Rollovers* apply only to 32-bit counters and not to 64-bit counters.

- Event Severity Adjust. Allows you to specify a severity for this interface. You can then configure one or more interface events to use this custom severity when creating events for this interface. For example, if this interface is part of a mission-critical operation, you might want all events associated with this interface to have a severity of "critical". Choices are:
  - Sev -3. Reduces the severity by 3.
  - Sev -2. Reduces the severity by 2.
  - Sev -1. Reduces the severity by 1.
  - Default Severity. Uses the default severity for each event.
  - $\circ$  Sev +1. Increases the severity by 1.
  - $\circ$  Sev +2. Increases the severity by 2.
  - $\circ$  Sev +3. Increases the severity by 3. The highest possible severity is "Critical".

**NOTE**: Event severities have the following numeric values:

- 5 = Healthy
- 4 = Notice
- 3 = Minor
- 2 = Major
- 1 = Critical

In the **Event Severity Adjust** field, you cannot change a severity of "Notice" or higher to a severity of "Healthy".

In the **Event Severity Adjust** field, you also cannot change the severity of a "Healthy" event.

• *Errors*. Specifies whether or not the ScienceLogic platform will collect data on packet errors on the interface. Packet errors occur when packets are lost due to hardware problems such as breaks in the network or faulty adapter hardware. Choices are:

- Enabled. If Errors is enabled for an interface, the Thresholds tab for the interface will display
  thresholds for errors in and errors out. If Errors is enabled for an interface, the platform will display
  the collected data in the Device Performancepage (Registry > Devices > Device Manager >
  bar-graph icon > Performance) associated with the device that contains this interface.
- o Disabled. The platform will not collect data about errors for this interface.
- Discards. Specifies whether or not the ScienceLogic platform will collect data on interface discards. Discards occur when an interface receives more traffic than it can handle (either a very large message or many messages simultaneously). Discards can also occur when an interface has been specifically configured to discard. For example, a user might configure a router's interface to discard packets from a non-authorized IP. Choices are:
  - Enabled. If **Discards** is enabled for an interface, the **Thresholds** tab for the interface will display
    thresholds for discards in and discards out. If **Discards** enabled for an interface, the platform will
    display the collected data in the **Device Performance**page (Registry > Devices > Device
    Manager > bar-graph icon > Performance) associated with the device that contains this interface.
  - o Disabled. The platform will not collect data about discards this interface. Disabled.
- Quality of Service. Specifies whether the ScienceLogic platform will collect CBQoS (Class-Based Quality-of-Service) configuration data for this interface. This option appears only if you have enabled the field Enable CBQoS Collection in the Behavior Settings page (System > Settings > Behavior).
   If Collect CBQoS is enabled for an interface, the platform will display the collected CBQoS data in the Device Performance page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > bar-graph icon > Performance) associated with the device that contains this interface. Choices are:
  - Enable. The platform will collect CBQoS configuration data for this interface.
  - Disable. The platform will not collect CBQoS configuration data for this interface.

**NOTE**: If you set **Collect CBQoS** to *Enable* for an interface that is not configured for CBQoS, the platform will display an error message.

- *Packets*. Specifies whether the ScienceLogic platform will collect data for unicast, multicast, and broadcast traffic in packets, for this interface. Choices are:
  - Enabled. If Packets is enabled for an interface, the Thresholds tab for the interface will display thresholds for unicast, multicast, and broadcast traffic. If Packets is enabled for an interface, the platform will display the collected data in the Device Performancepage (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > bar-graph icon > Performance) associated with the device that contains this interface.
  - Disabled. The platform will not collect data for unicast, multicast, and broadcast traffic, in packets, for this interface.
- Measurement. Unit of measurement for bandwidth reports for the interface. The choices are:

- Mega
- Giga
- Kilo
- Tera
- Peta
- Percentile. The basis for bandwidth billing for this interface. The choices are:
  - Accumulative. Customer is billed for total inbound and outbound bandwidth for all applicable interfaces. Billing is at the specified percentile point.
  - Inbound. Customer is billed for the total inbound bandwidth for all applicable interfaces. Billing is at the specified percentile point.
  - Outbound. Customer is billed for the total outbound bandwidth for all applicable interfaces. Billing
    is at the specified percentile point.
  - Highest Poll. Customer is billed for either the total inbound or total outbound, whichever is highest, for each applicable interface. Billing is at the specified percentile point.
- Display on Summary. If selected, a usage graph for this interface will appear in the Device Summary page.

NOTE: Only one interface per device can be displayed on the Device Summary page.

- 7. In the **Emissary** pane, you can allow all users in another organization to view reports about the current interface and view bandwidth billing policies associated with the interface.
  - *Emissary*. This field allows a user to define an emissary interface. Select an organization to allow the users in that organization to view this interface. When you click the [Save] button, the members of the selected organization will be able to view reports about the interface, include the interface in dashboards, and view bandwidth billing policies associated with the interface.

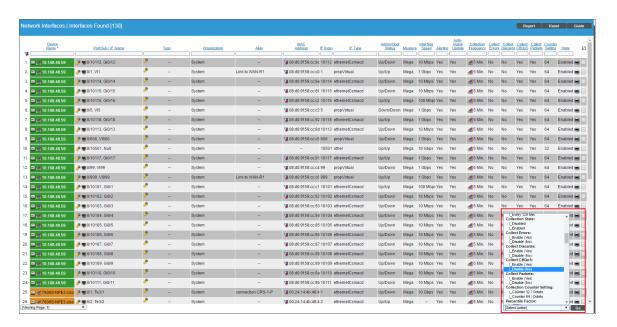
## Defining Monitoring Settings for Multiple Interfaces

In the **Network Interfaces** page, the **Select Actions** drop-down menu (in the lower right corner of the page) allows you to apply or change the monitoring settings for one, multiple, or all interfaces in the **Network Interfaces** page.

To apply a monitoring option to one or more interfaces:

- 1. Go to the **Network Interfaces** page (Registry > Networks > Interfaces).
- 2. In the **Network Interfaces** page, find each interface to which you want to apply a monitoring option and select its checkbox.

3. To select all checkboxes, select the red checkbox icon ( $\square$ ) in the column heading.



- 4. In the **Select Action** drop-down, select the option you want to apply to the checked interfaces. Your choices are:
  - Report Measurement. Unit of measurement for bandwidth reports for the interface. The choices are:
    - Mega
    - o Giga
    - o Kilo
    - Tera
    - Peta
  - Interface Alerting. Specifies whether or not events should be generated for the selected interfaces. Choices are:
    - Enabled. The ScienceLogic platform monitors the network interface and generates events when the required conditions are met.
    - Disabled. The ScienceLogic platform monitors the network interface, but events are not generated for the interface.

- Rollover Alerting. This checkbox is for interfaces that are busy and require frequent monitoring, but for which the device supports only 32-bit counters (instead of 64-bit counters). The counters on such interfaces roll over frequently. If enabled, each time the counter rolls over (is set back to zero), the ScienceLogic platform will generate an event. Choices are:
  - Enabled. The platform monitors the network interface and generates an event when the counter rolls over and is reset to zero.
  - Disabled. The platform monitors the network interface, but does not generate an event when the counter rolls over and is reset to zero.

NOTE: Rollovers and Rollover Alerting apply only to 32-bit counters and not to 64-bit counters.

- Auto-Name Update. Specifies whether or not events should be generated for the selected interfaces. Choices are:
  - Enabled. The platform can update and/or overwrite the interface name during auto-discovery.
  - Disabled. The platform will not update and/or overwrite the interface name during auto-discovery.
- *Tags*. For each interface in the ScienceLogic platform, you can manually define a comma-delimited list of descriptive tags. Interface tags are used to group interfaces in an IT service policy. The following options allow you to manage interface tags:
  - o Clear all Tags. Removes all existing tags from the selected interfaces.
  - Remove Tags. Displays the Bulk Remove Network Interface Tags modal page, where you can remove one or more tags from the selected interfaces. In the Bulk Remove Network Interface Tags modal page, select the checkbox for each tag that you want to remove, and then click the [Remove] button.
  - Add Tags. Displays the Bulk Add Network Interface Tags modal page, where you can add one
    or more tags to the selected interfaces. In the Bulk Add Network Interface Tags modal page,
    select the checkbox for each existing tag that you want to add and/or supply a comma-delimited list
    of new tags, and then click the [Save] button.
- **Collection Frequency**. When you define a monitoring policy for an interface, you must specify how frequently you want the platform to collect data from the interface. Your choices are every:
  - ∘ 1 Minute
  - o 5 Minutes
  - o 10 Minutes
  - o 15 Minutes
  - o 30 Minutes
  - o 60 Minutes
  - o 120 Minutes

- Collection State. Specifies whether collection should be active or disabled. Choices are:
  - Enabled. The ScienceLogic platform monitors the network interface and collects data on the network interface for reports.
  - Disabled. The ScienceLogic platform does not monitor the network interface and collect data on the network interface for reports.

NOTE: For the ScienceLogic platform to monitor an interface, you must define Collect State as enabled.

- Collection Errors. Specifies whether or not the platform will collect data on packet errors on the interface. Packet errors occur when packets are lost due to hardware problems such as breaks in the network or faulty adapter hardware. Choices are:
  - Enabled. The platform will collect data on packet errors that occur on the interface.
  - o Disabled. The platform will not collect data on packet errors that occur on the interface.
- Collection Discards. Specifies whether or not the platform will collect data on interface discards. Discards occur when an interface receives more traffic than it can handle (either a very large message or many messages simultaneously). Discards can also occur when an interface has been specifically configured to discard. For example, a user might configure a router's interface to discard packets from a non-authorized IP. Choices are:
  - Enabled. The platform will collect data on packet discards that occur on the interface.
  - Disabled. The platform will not collect data on packet discards that occur on the interface.
- Collect CBQoS. Specifies whether the ScienceLogic platform will collect CBQoS (Class-Based Quality-of-Service) data for this interface. This option appears only you have enabled the field Enable CBQoS Collection in the Behavior Settings page (System > Settings > Behavior). If Collect CBQoS is enabled for an interface, the platform will display the collected CBQoS data in the Device Performance page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > bar-graph icon > Performance) for the device that contains this interface. Choices are:
  - Enable. The ScienceLogic platform will collect CBQoS data for this interface.
  - Disable. The ScienceLogic platform will not collect CBQoS data for this interface.

**NOTE**: If you set **Collect CBQoS** to *Enable* for an interface that is not configured for CBQoS, the ScienceLogic platform will display an error message.

- Packets. Specifies whether the ScienceLogic platform will collect data for unicast, multicast, and broadcast traffic, in packets, for this interface. If Collect Packets is enabled for an interface, the platform will display the collected data in the Device Performancepage (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > bar-graph icon > Performance) associated with the device that contains this interface. Choices are:
  - Enabled . The platform will collect data for unicast, multicast, and broadcast traffic, in packets, for this interface
  - Disabled. The platform will not collect data for unicast, multicast, and broadcast traffic, in packets, for this interface.
- Collection Counter Setting. Specifies whether the interface uses a 32-bit counter or a 64-bit counter to measure bandwidth on the interface. During auto-discovery, the platform automatically discovers which type of counter is associated with each interface. A 32-bit counter will roll-over (restart at 0) after about four billion octets (bytes) have passed through the interface. A 64-bit counter will roll-over after 1.85 x 1016 octets (bytes) have passed through the interface. Most high-speed interfaces use a 64-bit counter to measure bandwidth on the interface. If a 64-bit counter is available, the ScienceLogic platform will use it by default. Choices are:
  - o Counter 32. Specify that the interface uses a 32-bit counter.
  - o Counter 64. Specify that the interface uses a 64-bit counter.
- **Percentile Factor**. Many service providers use a percentile bandwidth measure when billing customers for bandwidth usage. In this field, you can select the percentile factor, and the platform will perform the calculations for you at billing time. For example, if a provider chose the percentile factor "95", the platform would collect bandwidth data every 5 minutes for an entire month. At billing time, the highest 5% of readings are dropped. The customer is charged for the 95% highest reading. This prevents customers from being billed for unusual spikes. Choices are:
  - 100% 1%, in increments of 1%.
- Event Severity Adjust. Allows you to specify a severity for this interface. You can then configure one or more interface events to use this custom severity when creating events for this interface. For example, if this interface is part of a mission critical operation, you might want all events associated with this interface to have a severity of "critical". Choices are:
  - Sev -3. Reduces the severity by 3.
  - Sev -2. Reduces the severity by 2.
  - Sev -1. Reduces the severity by 1.
  - Default Severity. Uses the default severity for each event.
  - $\circ$  Sev +1. Increases the severity by 1.
  - $\circ$  Sev +2. Increases the severity by 2.
  - Sev +3. Increases the severity by 3. The highest possible severity is "Critical".

**NOTE**: Event severities have the following numeric values:

- 5 = Healthy
- 4 = Notice
- 3 = Minor
- 2 = Major
- 1 = Critical

In the **Event Severity Adjust** field, you cannot change a severity of "Notice" or higher to a severity of "Healthy".

In the **Event Severity Adjust** field, you also cannot change the severity of a "Healthy" event.

- 5. Click the [Go] button.
- 6. You can repeat these steps to change another monitoring option for the selected interface or for a different group of interfaces.

# Defining Thresholds for an Interface

The **Thresholds** tab on the **Interface Properties** page (Registry > Networks > Interfaces > interface wrench icon) allows you to define custom thresholds for the monitored interface. If you have specified that the ScienceLogic platform should monitor an interface, the platform will collect data about the interface and also monitor performance thresholds for the interface. The platform will use either the global thresholds defined in the **Interface Thresholds Defaults** page (System > Settings > Thresholds > Interface or the custom threshold you define for a specific interface in the **Thresholds** tab. When the values for an interface exceed one or more thresholds, the ScienceLogic platform will generate an event.

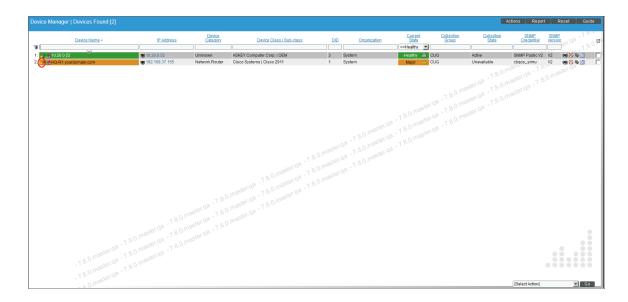
**NOTE**: The thresholds defined in the **Interface Thresholds Defaults** page (System > Settings > Thresholds > Interface) determine which thresholds will appear in this page. For a list of all possible thresholds that can appear in this page, see the section on **Global Settings that Affect Interfaces**.

NOTE: The thresholds defined for a specific interface in the Thresholds tab on the Interface Properties page (Registry > Networks > Interfaces > interface wrench icon) override the global thresholds defined in the Interface Thresholds Defaults page (System > Settings > Thresholds > Interface.

To define custom thresholds for an interface:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).

2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to define custom interface thresholds. Click its wrench icon ().

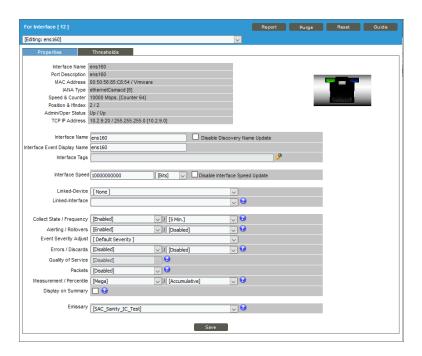


3. In the **Device Administration** panel, click the **[Interfaces]** tab.

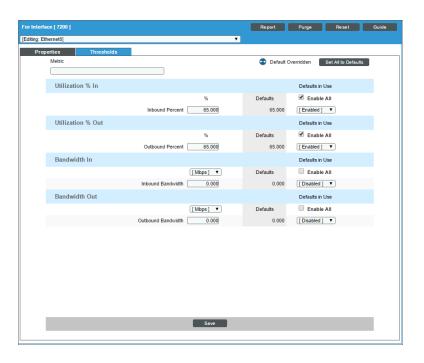


4. In the **Device Interfaces** page, find the icon for the interface you want to monitor. Click on the icon.

#### 5. The Interface Properties page appears.



#### 6. Click the **Thresholds** tab.



7. The following global thresholds are defined in the **Interface Thresholds Defaults** page (System > Settings > Thresholds > Interface) and also appear in the **Thresholds** tab:

**NOTE**: You can specify the unit of measure for all the metrics in **Bandwidth In** and **Bandwidth Out**. You can select *bps*, *kbps*, *Mbps* (the default), or *Gbps*.

Threshold	Default Value	Default Status		
Utilization % In > Inbound Percent	65.000	Enabled		
Utilization % Out > Outbound Percent	65.000	Enabled		
Bandwidth In > Inbound Bandwidth	0.000	Disabled		
Bandwidth Out > Outbound Bandwidth	0.000	Disabled		
Errors % In > Inbound Error Percent	1.000	Enabled		
Errors % Out > Outbound Error Percent	1.000	Enabled		
Errors In > Inbound Errors	1000.000	Enabled		
Errors Out > Outbound Errors	1000.000	Enabled		
Discard % In > Inbound Discard Percent	1.000	Enabled		
Discards % Out > Outbound Discard Percent	1.000	Enabled		
Discards In > Inbound Discards	1000.000	Enabled		
Discards Out > Outbound Discards	1000.000	Enabled		
Multicast % In > Rising Medium	30.000	Disabled		
Multicast % In > Rising Low	20.000	Disabled		
Broadcast % Out > Rising Medium	30.000	Disabled		
Broadcast % Out > Rising Low	20.000	Disabled		

NOTE: To edit thresholds for errors in and errors out, you must enable *Errors* in *the Properties tab* for the interface. To edit thresholds for discards, you must enable *Discards* in *the Properties tab* for the interface. To edit thresholds for unicast, multicast, and broadcast traffic, you must enable *Packets* in *in the Properties tab* for the interface.

- 8. For each threshold in the **Thresholds** tab, you can edit the following:
  - Value. The value at which the threshold will trigger an event.

- For thresholds that include the word *Rising*, when a value exceeds the specified value, the ScienceLogic platform triggers an event.
- For thresholds that include the word Falling, when a value falls below the specified value, the ScienceLogic platform triggers an event.
- For thresholds that do not include the word *Rising* or *Falling*, when a value exceeds the specified value, the ScienceLogic platform triggers an event.
- **Status**. Specifies whether the threshold is active and whether the threshold will appear in the **Thresholds** tab of the **Interface Properties** page (Registry > Networks > Interfaces > interface wrench icon). Choices are:
  - Enabled. The threshold is applied to the interface and is monitored by the ScienceLogic platform.
  - Disabled. The threshold appears in the **Thresholds** tab but it not monitored by the ScienceLogic platform.
- Unit of Measure. For all the metrics under Bandwidth In and Bandwidth Out, you can edit the unit of measure. Choices are:
  - bps
  - kbps
  - Mbps
  - Gbps

# Viewing the List of Discovered CBQoS Objects

The **Quality of Service (QoS) page** displays a list of all Class-Based Quality of Service (CBQoS) classes and policies that are aligned with devices and interfaces discovered by the ScienceLogic platform.

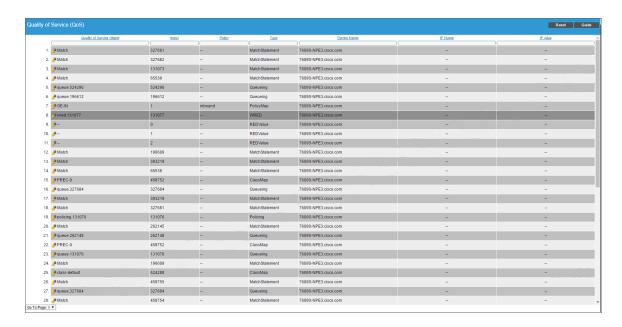
The ScienceLogic platform collects CBQoS data only if you have enabled the field *Enable CBQoS Collection* in the **Behavior Settings** page (System > Settings > Behavior).

If **Quality of Service** is enabled for an interface in the **Interface Properties** page (Registry > Networks > Interfaces > interface wrench icon), the ScienceLogic platform will display:

- graphs about the collected CBQoS data in the **Device Performance** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > bar-graph icon > Performance) associated with the device that contains this interface.
- a list all CBQoS classes and policies that are aligned with the interface in the **Quality of Service (QoS)** page (Registry > Networks > Quality of Service).

To view the list of all CBQoS classes and policies that are aligned with devices and interfaces discovered by the ScienceLogic platform:

1. Go to the **Quality of Service (QoS)** page (Registry > Networks > Quality of Service).



2. The Quality of Service (QoS) page displays the following for each QoS object:

**TIP**: To sort the list of QoS objects, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort by descending order, click the column heading again.

- Quality of Service Object. Name of the CBQoS class or policy. Can be the name of a class map,
  policing policy, sets policy, match statement, queuing policy, traffic shaping policy, WRED policy, or
  RED value.
- Index. Index value for the CBQoS object on a specific device. This value is generated by the CISCO-CLASS-BASED-QOS-MIB.
- Policy. Name of the parent CBQoS policy.
- Type. CBQoS object type. Possible values are:
  - ClassMap
  - MatchStatement
  - Policing
  - PolicyMap
  - Queuing
  - REDValue

- Set
- TrafficShaping
- WRED
- Device Name. Name of the device where the ScienceLogic platform found the CBQoS object.
- IF Name. If applicable, name of the interface where the ScienceLogic platform found the CBQoS object.
- *IF Alias*. If applicable, alias for the interface where the ScienceLogic platform found the CBQoS object.

#### Filtering the List of Quality of Service (QoS) Objects

You can filter the list on the **Quality of Service (QoS)** page by one or more parameters. Only CBQoS objects that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **Quality of Service (QoS)** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Quality of Service (QoS)** page searches for CBQoS objects that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use **special characters** to filter each parameter.

Filter the list by one or more of the following parameters:

- Quality of Service Object. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Quality of Service (QoS) page will display only CBQoS objects with a matching name.
- Index. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Quality of Service (QoS) page will display only CBQoS objects with a matching index value.
- *Policy*. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Quality of Service (QoS)** page will display only CBQoS objects aligned with a matching policy.
- Type. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Quality of Service (QoS) page will display only CBQoS objects of the specified type.
- Device Name. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Quality of Service (QoS) page will display only CBQoS objects aligned with the specified device.
- IF Name. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Quality of Service (QoS) page will display only CBQoS objects aligned with the specified interface name.
- IF Alias. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Quality of Service (QoS) page will display only CBQoS objects aligned with the specified interface alias.

# Editing Thresholds for a Quality of Service (QoS) Object

From the **Quality of Service (QoS)** page (Registry > Networks > Quality of Service), you can access the **Quality of Service Object Thresholds** page (Registry > Network > Quality of Service (QoS) > wrench icon) and edit the thresholds for a CBQoS object. The threshold will apply to that specific CBQoS object on a specific device and specific interface.

If you have specified that the ScienceLogic platform should monitor an interface, the platform will collect data about the interface and also monitor performance thresholds for the interface. For interfaces that are part of a CBQoS class, the ScienceLogic platform will use either the global CBQoS thresholds defined in the **Quality of Service Threshold Defaults**page (System > Settings > Thresholds > Quality of Service) or the custom threshold you define in the **Quality of Service Object Thresholds**page (Registry > Network > Quality of Service (QoS) > wrench icon). When the values for an interface exceed one or more thresholds, the ScienceLogic platform will generate an event.

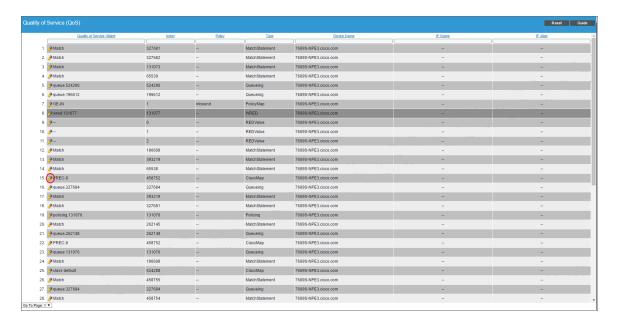
NOTE: The thresholds defined in the Quality of Service Threshold Defaultspage (System > Settings > Thresholds > Quality of Service) determine which thresholds will appear in Quality of Service

Object Thresholdspage (Registry > Network > Quality of Service (QoS) > wrench icon. For a list of all possible thresholds that can appear in this page, see the section on Global Settings that Affect Interfaces.

NOTE: The thresholds defined in the Quality of Service Object Thresholdspage (Registry > Network > Quality of Service (QoS) > wrench icon) for a specific interface override the global thresholds defined in the Quality of Service Threshold Defaultspage (System > Settings > Thresholds > Quality of Service).

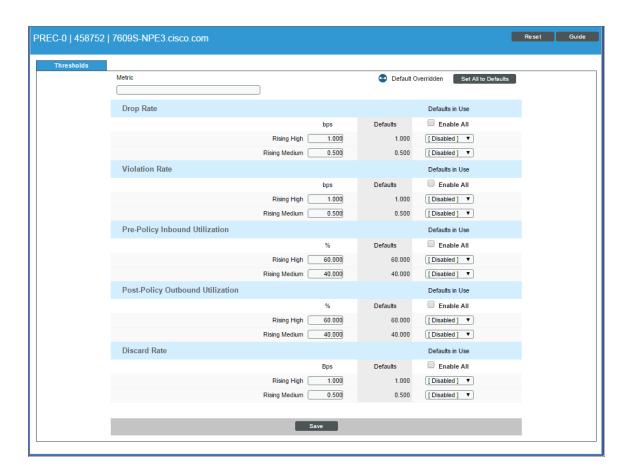
To edit the interface thresholds for a CBQoS object on a specific device and specific interface:

1. Go to the **Quality of Service (QoS)** page (Registry > Networks > Quality of Service).



2. Find the CBQoS object for which you want to edit interface thresholds.

3. Click the wrench icon ( ).



4. The Quality of Service Object Thresholdspage (Registry > Network > Quality of Service (QoS) > wrench icon) appears. On this page, you can edit one or more thresholds, which are applied to the interfaces aligned with the CBQoS object. The ScienceLogic platform examines the thresholds in the Quality of Service Object Thresholds page and generates events when the thresholds are exceeded.

NOTE: The thresholds defined in the Quality of Service Object Thresholds page (System > Settings > Thresholds > Quality of Service) determine which thresholds will appear in this page. For a list of all possible thresholds that can appear in this page, see the section on Global Settings that Affect Interfaces.

5. The following global thresholds are defined in the Quality of Service Object Thresholds page (System > Settings > Thresholds > Quality of Service and also appear in the Quality of Service Object Thresholdspage (Registry > Network > Quality of Service (QoS) > wrench icon):

Threshold	Default Value	Default Status
Drop Rate > Rising High	1.000	Disabled

Threshold	Default Value	Default Status
Drop Rate > Rising Medium	0.500	Disabled
Violation Rate > Rising High	1.000	Disabled
Violation Rate > Rising Medium	0.500	Disabled
Pre-Policy Inbound Utilization % > Rising High	60.000	Disabled
Pre-Policy Inbound Utilization % > Rising Medium	40.000	Disabled
Pre-Policy Outbound Utilization % > Rising High	60.000	Disabled
Pre-Policy Outbound Utilization % > Rising Medium	40.000	Disabled
Discard Rate > Rising High	1.000	Disabled
Discard Rate > Rising Medium	0.500	Disabled

- 6. For each threshold in the **Thresholds** tab, you can edit the following:
  - Value. The value at which the threshold will trigger an event.
    - For thresholds that include the word *Rising*, when a value exceeds the specified value, the ScienceLogic platform triggers an event.
    - For thresholds that include the word Falling, when a value falls below the specified value, the ScienceLogic platform triggers an event.
    - For thresholds that do not include the word *Rising* or *Falling*, when a value exceeds the specified value, the ScienceLogic platform triggers an event.
  - Status. Specifies whether the threshold is active. Choices are:
    - Enabled. The threshold is applied to the interface and is monitored by the ScienceLogic platform.
    - Disabled. The threshold appears in the Quality of Service Object Thresholdspage (Registry > Network > Quality of Service (QoS) > wrench icon) but it not monitored by the ScienceLogic platform.

### Viewing Reports About Interfaces and Bandwidth

See the chapter on *Viewing Performance Graphs* for information about and examples of reports about interfaces and bandwidth.

### Global Settings that Affect Interfaces

The following pages contain settings that affect interfaces:

#### **Behavior Settings**

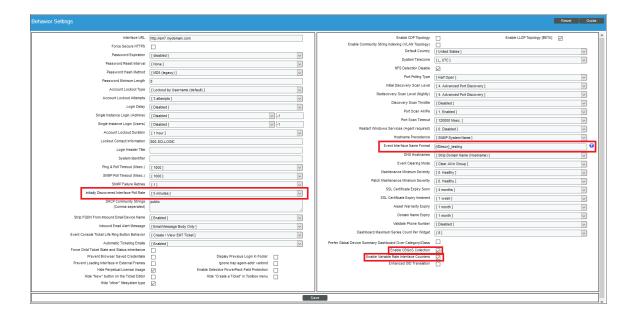
The Behavior Settings page (System > Settings > Behavior) allows you to define global parameters that affect:

- User Logins
- Discovery
- Data collection
- Settings that affect the display and behavior of the user interface
- Expiration warnings for asset warranties and SSL certificates

The parameters in the **Behavior Settings** page affect all pages, devices, and discovery functionality in the platform. For most settings, you can define a one-time, manual override in the affected page. You can also override many of these settings per device. For example, you can define global parameters for nightly discovery in this page, but in a device's **Device Properties** page (Registry > Devices > wrench icon), you can override these settings for a specific device.

To define or edit the settings in the **Behavior Settings** page:

1. Go to the **Behavior Settings** page (System > Settings > Behavior).



- 2. In the **Behavior Settings** page, the following fields affect how the ScienceLogic platform manages interfaces:
  - Initially Discovered Interface Poll Rate. This field specifies the frequency with which the
    ScienceLogic platform will poll newly discovered interfaces. This setting does not affect interfaces that
    have been previously discovered with a different value in this field or interfaces for which the
    Frequency field has been manually edited in the Interface Properties page. Choices in this field
    are:
    - o 1 min. The platform will poll the newly discovered interfaces every minute.
    - 5 mins. The platform will poll the newly discovered interfaces every five minutes. This is the default value for this field.
    - 10 mins. The platform will poll the newly discovered interfaces every 10 minutes.
    - 15 mins. The platform will poll the newly discovered interfaces every 15 minutes.
    - o 30 mins. The platform will poll the newly discovered interfaces every 30 minutes.
    - o 60 mins. The platform will poll the newly discovered interfaces every 60 minutes.
    - o 120 mins. The platform will poll the newly discovered interfaces every 120 minutes.
  - Event Interface Name Format. Specifies the format of the network interface name that you want to appear in events. If you selected Interface Alias for the deprecated Interface Name Precedence field in a previous release of the ScienceLogic platform, the format for existing interfaces is set to {alias}. If you selected "Interface Name" for the deprecated Interface Name Precedence field in a previous release of the ScienceLogic platform, the format for existing interfaces is set to {name}. The default format is {name}.
  - Enable CBQoS Collection. If selected, the ScienceLogic platform will collect configuration data about Class-Based Quality-of-Service (CBQoS) from interfaces that are configured for CBQoS. If selected, you can enable collection of CBQoS metrics per-interface. The collected CBQoS metrics are displayed in Device Performance reports associated with the device that contains those interfaces. This setting is disabled by default. (For more information about Device Performance reports, see the chapter in the Device Management manual.)
  - Enable Variable Rate Interface Counters. If selected, enables more accurate collection of data from interfaces. If enabled, when the ScienceLogic platform retrieves data from an interface, that data is stored in the ScienceLogic database along with the timestamp associated with the exact collection time. Before normalization occurs, the platform applies an interpolation function that spaces the data at regular time intervals. For example, suppose you have specified that the platform should collect interface data every five minutes. However, due to network traffic across the Data Collectors, the platform might collect data from an interface at 13:01 and then 13:05. Because the ScienceLogic normalization process expects data that has been collected every five minutes, the platform first applies an interpolation to the data to prepare the data for normalization.
- 3. Click the [Save] button to save any changes in this page.

#### Interface Threshold Defaults

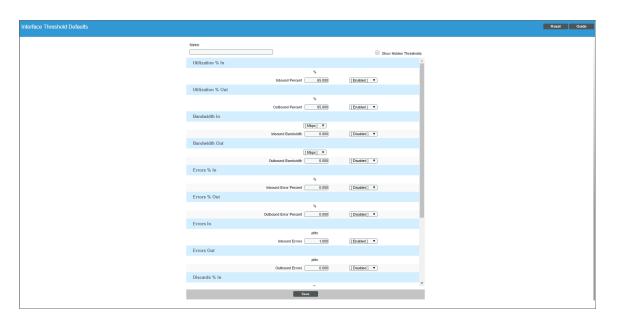
The Interface Thresholds Defaults page (System > Settings > Thresholds > Interface) allows you to define global thresholds for interfaces.

The settings in the Interface Thresholds Defaults page apply to all interfaces. However, you can override these system settings on a case-by-case basis for each interface in the Thresholds tab on the Interface Properties page (Registry > Networks > Interfaces > interface wrench icon).

If you have specified that the ScienceLogic platform should monitor an interface, the platform will collect data about the interface and also monitor performance thresholds for the interface. The platform will use either the default thresholds defined in the Interface Thresholds Defaults page (System > Settings > Thresholds > Interface or the custom threshold you define in the Thresholds tab on the Interface Properties page (Registry > Networks > Interfaces > interface wrench icon). When the values for an interface exceed one or more thresholds, the ScienceLogic platform will generate an event.

To define global thresholds for interfaces:

1. Go to Interface Thresholds Defaults page (System > Settings > Thresholds > Interface.



2. The following global thresholds are defined by default in the Interface Thresholds Defaults page:

**NOTE**: You can specify the unit of measure for all the metrics in **Bandwidth In** and **Bandwidth Out**. You can select **bps**, **kbps**, **Mbps** (the default), or **Gbps**.

Threshold	Default Value	Default Status
Utilization % In > Inbound Percent	65.000	Enabled
Utilization % Out > Outbound Percent	65.000	Enabled
Bandwidth In > Inbound Bandwidth	0.000	Disabled
Bandwidth Out > Outbound Bandwidth	0.000	Disabled
Errors % In > Inbound Error Percent	1.000	Enabled
Errors % Out > Outbound Error Percent	1.000	Enabled
Errors In > Inbound Errors	1000.000	Enabled
Errors Out > Outbound Errors	1000.000	Enabled
Discard % In > Inbound Discard Percent	1.000	Enabled
Discards % Out > Outbound Discard Percent	1.000	Enabled
Discards In > Inbound Discards	1000.000	Enabled
Discards Out > Outbound Discards	1000.000	Enabled
Multicast % In > Rising Medium	30.000	Disabled
Multicast % In > Rising Low	20.000	Disabled
Broadcast % Out > Rising Medium	30.000	Disabled
Broadcast % Out > Rising Low	20.000	Disabled

3. Selecting the **Show Hidden Thresholds** checkbox displays the following default thresholds:

**NOTE**: You can specify the unit of measure for all the metrics in **Bandwidth In** and **Bandwidth Out**. You can select **bps**, **kbps**, **Mbps** (the default), or **Gbps**.

Threshold	Default Value	Default Status
Utilization % In > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Utilization % In > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Utilization % In > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Utilization % In > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Utilization % In > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Utilization % In > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Utilization % In > Inbound Percent	65.000	Enabled

Threshold	Default Value	Default Status
Utilization % Out> Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Utilization % Out > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Utilization % Out > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Utilization % Out > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Utilization % Out > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Utilization % Out > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Utilization % Out > Outbound Percent	65.000	Enabled
Bandwidth In > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Bandwidth In > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Bandwidth In > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Bandwidth In > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Bandwidth In > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Bandwidth In > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Bandwidth In > Inbound Bandwidth	0.000	Disabled
Bandwidth Out > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Bandwidth Out > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Bandwidth Out > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Bandwidth Out > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Bandwidth Out > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Bandwidth Out > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Bandwidth Out > Outbound Bandwidth	0.000	Disabled
Errors % In > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Errors % In > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Errors % In > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Errors % In > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Errors % In > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Errors % In > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Errors % In > Inbound Error Percent	1.000	Enabled
Errors % Out > Rising High	0.000	Hidden

Threshold	Default Value	Default Status
Errors % Out > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Errors % Out > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Errors % Out > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Errors % Out > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Errors % Out > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Errors % Out > Outbound Error Percent	1.000	Enabled
Errors In > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Errors In > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Errors In > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Errors In > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Errors In > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Errors In > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Errors In > InboundErrors	1000.000	Enabled
Errors Out > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Errors Out > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Errors Out > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Errors Out > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Errors Out > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Errors Out > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Errors Out > Outbound Errors	1000.000	Enabled
Discards % In > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Discards % In > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Discards % In > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Discards % In > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Discards % In > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Discards % In > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Discards % In > Inbound Discard Percent	1.000	Enabled
Discards % Out > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Discards % Out > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden

Threshold	Default Value	Default Status
Discards % Out > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Discards % Out > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Discards % Out > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Discards % Out > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Discards % Out > Outbound Discard Percent	1.000	Enabled
Discards In > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Discards In > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Discards In > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Discards In > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Discards In > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Discards In > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Discards In > Inbound Discards	1000.000	Enabled
Discards Out > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Discards Out > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Discards Out > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Discards Out > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Discards Out > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Discards Out > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Discards Out > Outbound Discards	1000.000	Enabled
Broadcast % In > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast % In > Rising Medium	30.000	Disabled
Broadcast % In > Rising Low	20.000	Disabled
Broadcast % In > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast % In > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast % In > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast % Out > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast % Out > Rising Medium	30.000	Disabled
Broadcast % Out > Rising Low	20.000	Disabled
Broadcast % Out > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden

Threshold	Default Value	Default Status
Broadcast % Out > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast % Out > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast In > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast In > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast In > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast In > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast In > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast In > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast Out > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast Out > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast Out > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast Out > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast Out > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Broadcast Out > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Multicast % In > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Multicast % In > Rising Medium	00.000	Hidden
Multicast % In > Rising Low	00.000	Hidden
Multicast % In > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Multicast % In > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Multicast % In > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Multicast % Out > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Multicast % Out > Rising Medium	00.000	Hidden
Multicast % Out > Rising Low	00.000	Hidden
Multicast % Out > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Multicast % Out > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Multicast % Out > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Multicast In > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Multicast In > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Multicast In > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden

Threshold	Default Value	Default Status
Multicast In > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Multicast In > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Multicast In > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Multicast Out > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Multicast Out > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Multicast Out > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Multicast Out > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Multicast Out > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Multicast Out > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Unicast % In > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Unicast % In > Rising Medium	00.000	Hidden
Unicast % In > Rising Low	00.000	Hidden
Unicast % In > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Unicast % In > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Unicast % In > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Unicast % Out > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Unicast % Out > Rising Medium	00.000	Hidden
Unicast % Out > Rising Low	00.000	Hidden
Unicast % Out > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Unicast % Out > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Unicast % Out > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Unicast In > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Unicast In > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Unicast In > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Unicast In > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Unicast In > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Unicast In > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Unicast Out > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Unicast Out > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden

Threshold	Default Value	Default Status
Unicast Out > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Unicast Out > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Unicast Out > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Unicast Out > Falling High	0.000	Hidden

- 4. For each threshold, you can edit the following:
  - Value. The value at which the threshold will trigger an event.
    - For thresholds that include the word *Rising*, when a value exceeds the specified value, the ScienceLogic platform triggers an event.
    - For thresholds that include the word *Falling*, when a value falls below the specified value, the platform triggers an event.
    - For thresholds that do not include the word *Rising* or *Falling*, when a value exceeds the specified value, the platform triggers an event.
  - *Status*. Specifies whether the threshold is active and whether the threshold will appear in the **Thresholds** tab on the **Interface Properties** page (Registry > Networks > Interfaces > interface wrench icon). Choices are:
    - Enabled. The threshold is applied to all interfaces and is monitored by the ScienceLogic platform.
       The threshold appears in the Thresholds tab on the Interface Properties page (Registry > Networks > Interfaces > interface wrench icon). Users can edit the Value and Status of the threshold.
    - Disabled. The threshold is applied to all interfaces but is not monitored by the platform. The
      threshold appears in the Thresholds tab on the Interface Properties page (Registry > Networks
      > Interfaces > interface wrench icon) with a status of Disabled. In the Thresholds tab on the
      Interface Properties page, users can edit the Value and Status of the threshold.
    - Hidden. The threshold is not applied to all interfaces, and is not monitored by the platform. The
      threshold does not appear in the Thresholds tab on the Interface Properties page (Registry >
      Networks > Interfaces > interface wrench icon).
  - Unit of Measure. For all the metrics under Bandwidth In and Bandwidth Out, you can select the unit of measure. Choices are:
    - bps
    - kbps
    - Mbps
    - Gbps

#### Quality of Service Threshold Defaults

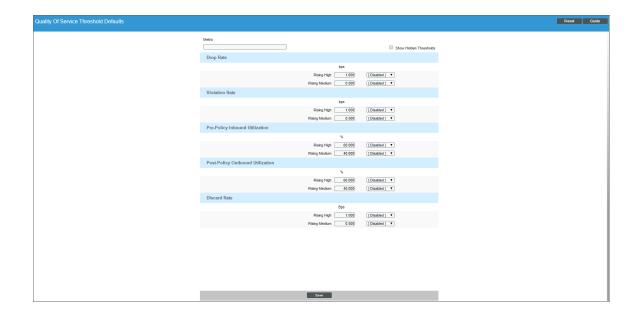
The **Quality of Service Threshold Defaults** page (System > Settings > Thresholds > Quality of Service) allows you to define global thresholds for CBQoS objects.

The settings in the **Quality of Service Threshold Defaults** page (System > Settings > Thresholds > Quality of Service) apply to all CBQoS objects. However, you can override these system settings on a case-by-case basis for each interface in the **Quality of Service (QoS)** page (Registry > Networks > Quality of Service).

If you have specified that the ScienceLogic platform should monitor an interface, the platform will collect data about the interface and also monitor performance thresholds for the interface. For interfaces that are part of a CBQoS class, the ScienceLogic platform will use either the global CBQoS thresholds defined in the **Quality of Service Threshold Defaults** page (System > Settings > Thresholds > Quality of Service) or the custom threshold you define in the **Quality of Service Object Thresholds** page (Registry > Network > Quality of Service (QoS) > wrench icon). When the values for an interface exceed one or more thresholds, the ScienceLogic platform will generate an event.

To edit the global thresholds for a CBQoS object:

 Go to the Quality of Service Threshold Defaults page (System > Settings > Thresholds > Quality of Service.



#### 2. The following global thresholds are defined by default in **Quality of Service Threshold Defaults** page:

Threshold	Default Value	Default Status
Drop Rate > Rising High	1.000	Disabled
Drop Rate > Rising Medium	0.500	Disabled
Violation Rate > Rising High	1.000	Disabled
Violation Rate > Rising Medium	0.500	Disabled
Pre-Policy Inbound Utilization % > Rising High	60.000	Disabled
Pre-Policy Inbound Utilization % > Rising Medium	40.000	Disabled
Pre-Policy Outbound Utilization % > Rising High	60.000	Disabled
Pre-Policy Outbound Utilization % > Rising Medium	40.000	Disabled
Discard Rate > Rising High	1.000	Disabled
Discard Rate > Rising Medium	0.500	Disabled

#### 3. Selecting the **Show Hidden Thresholds** checkbox displays the following default thresholds:

Threshold	Default Value	Default Status
Pre-Policy Rate > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Pre-Policy Rate > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Pre-Policy Rate > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Pre-Policy Rate > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Pre-Policy Rate > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Pre-Policy Rate > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
PostPolicy Rate > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Post-Policy Rate > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Post-Policy Rate > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Post-Policy Rate > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Post-Policy Rate > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Post-Policy Rate > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Drop Rate > Rising High	1.000	Disabled
Drop Rate > Rising Medium	0.500	Disabled
Drop Rate > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Drop Rate > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Drop Rate > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Drop Rate > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Conforming Rate > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Conforming Rate > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Conforming Rate > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Conforming Rate > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Conforming Rate > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Conforming Rate > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Non-Conforming Rate > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Non-Conforming Rate > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Non-Conforming Rate > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Non-Conforming Rate > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden

Threshold	Default Value	Default Status
Non-Conforming Rate > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Non-Conforming Rate > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Violation Rate > Rising High	1.000	Disabled
Violation Rate > Rising Medium	0.500	Disabled
Violation Rate > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Violation Rate > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Violation Rate > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Violation Rate > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Current Queue Depth > Rising High	0.000	Hidden
Current Queue Depth > Rising Medium	0.000	Hidden
Current Queue Depth Current Queue Depth > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Current Queue Depth > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Current Queue Depth > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Current Queue Depth > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Pre-Policy Inbound Utilization > Rising High	60.000	Disabled
Pre-Policy Inbound Utilization > Rising Medium	40.000	Disabled
Pre-Policy Inbound Utilization > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Pre-Policy Inbound Utilization > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Pre-Policy Inbound Utilization > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Pre-Policy Inbound Utilization > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Post-Policy Inbound Utilization > Rising High	60.000	Disabled
Post-Policy Inbound Utilization > Rising Medium	40.000	Disabled
Post-Policy Inbound Utilization > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden
Post-Policy Inbound Utilization > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden
Post-Policy Inbound Utilization > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden
Post-Policy Inbound Utilization > Falling High	0.000	Hidden
Discard Rate > Rising High	1.000	Disabled
Discard Rate > Rising Medium	0.500	Disabled
Discard Rate Discard Rate > Rising Low	0.000	Hidden

Threshold	Default Value	Default Status		
Discard Rate > Falling Low	0.000	Hidden		
Discard Rate > Falling Medium	0.000	Hidden		
Discard Rate > Falling High	0.000	Hidden		

- 4. For each threshold, you can edit the following:
  - Value. The value at which the threshold will trigger an event.
    - For thresholds that include the word *Rising*, when a value exceeds the specified value, the ScienceLogic platform7 triggers an event.
    - For thresholds that include the word Falling, when a value falls below the specified value, the platform triggers an event.
    - For thresholds that do not include the word *Rising* or *Falling*, when a value exceeds the specified value, the platform triggers an event.
  - Status. Specifies whether the threshold is active and whether the threshold will appear in the Quality of Service (QoS) page (Registry > Networks > Quality of Service) page. Choices are:
    - Enabled. The threshold is applied to all CBQoS-enabled interfaces and is monitored by the
      platform. The threshold appears in the Quality of Service (QoS) page (Registry > Networks >
      Quality of Service). Users can edit the Value and Status of the threshold.
    - Disabled. The threshold is applied to all CBQoS-enabled interfaces but is not monitored by the
      platform. The threshold appears in the Quality of Service (QoS) page (Registry > Networks >
      Quality of Service) with a status of Disabled. In the Quality of Service (QoS) page), users can edit
      the Value and Status of the threshold.
    - Hidden. The threshold is not applied to all interfaces, and is not monitored by the platform. The
      threshold does not appear in the Quality of Service (QoS) page (Registry > Networks > Quality
      of Service).

# Chapter

9

## **Monitoring Networks**

#### Overview

During discovery, the ScienceLogic platform discovers all IP networks. The list of all networks is displayed in the IPv4 Networks page.

The **IPv4 Networks** page allows you to view a list of all networks, manage networks and IPs, view devices and interfaces in each network, and view maps and reports for each network.

This chapter describes:

- IPv4 Networks
- Viewing the List of IPv4 Networks
- Browsing a Network
- Viewing Used and Unused IP Addresses in a Network
- Viewing Devices Aligned with a Network
- Viewing Interfaces Aligned with a Network
- Viewing a Map of a Network
- Generating a Report for a Network
- Defining a New Network
- Merging One or More Networks
- Synchronizing One or More Networks
- Editing a Network's Properties
- Performing Dynamic Discovery for a Network

- Creating a Ticket About a Network
- Deleting One or More IPv4 Networks

#### **IPv4** Networks

The **IPv4 Networks** page (Registry > Networks > IPv4 Networks) lists all networks and subnets detected by ScienceLogic auto-discovery and all manually defined (new) networks.

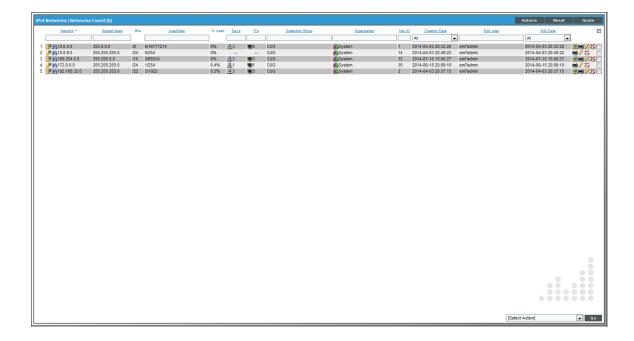
The **IPv4 Networks** page allows you to easily manage networks and IP addresses. From the **IPv4 Networks** page, you can view detailed data about the network, keep records of subnets, and determine which IP addresses are in use and which IP addresses are available.

**NOTE**: Users of type "user" can view only IPv4 networks that are aligned with the same organization(s) to which the user is aligned. Users of type "administrator" can view all IPv4 networks.

### Viewing the List of IPv4 Networks

The table in the **IPv4 Networks** page (Registry > Networks > IPv4 Networks) contains an entry for each network managed by the ScienceLogic platform:

**NOTE**: Users of type "user" can view only IPv4 networks that are aligned with the same organization(s) to which the user is aligned. Users of type "administrator" can view all IPv4 networks.



**TIP**: To sort the list of networks, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort by descending order, click the column heading again. The **Edit Date** column sorts by descending order on the first click; to sort by ascending order, click the column heading again.

- **Network**. IP address of the entire network.
- Subnet Mask. Subnet mask for the subnet.
- Bits. The number of bits used for the network address.
- **Used/Max**. Number of IP addresses discovered and monitored by the platform and the maximum number of IP addresses allowed in the subnet.
- **% Used**. Percentage of total addresses in the network that have been discovered and monitored by the platform. In the **Account Preferences** page, you can specify whether or not you want to include empty networks (networks with no devices or interfaces) in the list of networks. These networks will have 0% in the % Used column.
- Devs. Number of devices in the subnet.
- IFs. Number of interfaces in the subnet.
- **Collection Group**. The collector group associated with the network. For All-In-One Appliances, this field displays only the built-in Collector Group (and any virtual Collector Groups).
- Organization. Organization associated with the network.
- Net ID. Unique network ID, assigned by the platform.
- Creation Date. Date the network was discovered or manually defined.
- Edit User. User who created or last edited the network's properties.
- Edit Date. Date the network was created or last edited, whichever is later.
- Tools. For each network in the table, the following tools are available:
  - View/Edit Network Properties ( ). Displays the **Network Properties** modal page, where you can view and edit the basic properties of an IPv4 network.
  - Browse Network ( ). Leads to the **Network Browser** page. From this page, you can view a list of IP addresses (used and unused) included in a network, a list of devices included in a network, and a list of interfaces included in a network.
  - View/Edit Aligned Devices ( ). Leads to the **Network Browser** page, where you can view a list of devices associated with a network.
  - View/Edit Aligned Interfaces (W). Leads to the Network Browser page, where you can view a list of
    interfaces associated with a network.
  - View/Edit Organization (). Leads to the **Organizational Summary** page, where you can view and edit information associated with the organization.

- View Network Map ( ). Leads to the **Layer-2 Maps** page, where you can view and edit a graphical representation of a layer-2 network.
- View a Network Report ( ). Opens the **Report Creator** modal page, where you can specify information to include in the report and the format in which to generate the report.
- Add Network to Dynamic Discovery ( ). Adds the network to the dynamic-discovery queue. The ScienceLogic platform will perform dynamic-discovery on all of the IP addresses in the network and gather information about any devices and interfaces in the network. Leads to the **Discovery Control Panel** page, with the selected network as the value in the discovery list.
- Create a Ticket (\*\*). Leads to the **Ticket Editor** page, where you can create a ticket that will be associated with the selected network.
- Delete ( $\square$ ). To delete the network, select this checkbox and then click the [**Delete**] button. To select all the checkboxes, click the large red check icon.

#### Filtering the List of Networks

You can filter the list on the **IPv4 Networks** page by one or more parameters. Only IPv4 subnets that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **IPv4 Networks** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **IPv4 Networks** page searches for IPv4 subnets that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use special characters to filter each parameter.

- **Network**. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **IPv4 Networks** page will display only subnets that have a matching network IP.
- **Subnet Mask**. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **IPv4 Networks** page will display only subnets that have a matching subnet mask.
- *Bits*. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the *IPv4 Networks* page will display only subnets that have a matching number of bits in the network address.
- **Used/Max**. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **IPv4 Networks** page will display only subnets that have a matching number of monitored IP addresses and/or a matching number of maximum allowed IP addresses.
- % used. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation
  mark), and the IPv4 Networks page will display only subnets that have a matching percentage of monitored
  IP addresses in the subnet.
- Devs. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation
  mark), and the IPv4 Networks page will display only subnets that have a matching number of discovered
  devices in the subnet.
- IFs. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark),
  and the IPv4 Networks page will display only subnets that have a matching number of discovered network
  interfaces in the subnet.
- **Collection Group**. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **IPv4 Networks** page will display only subnets that have a matching collector group.
- Organization. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the IPv4 Networks page will display only subnets that are associated with a matching organization.
- Net ID. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the IPv4 Networks page will display only subnets that have a matching network ID.
- **Creation Date**. Only those subnets that match all of the previously selected fields and have the specified creation date will be displayed. The choices are:
  - All. Display all subnets that match the other filters.
  - Last Minute. Display only subnets that have been created within the last minute.
  - o Last Hour. Display only subnets that have been created within the last hour.
  - · Last Day. Display only subnets that have been created within the last day.
  - Last Week. Display only subnets that have been created within the last week.
  - Last Month. Display only subnets that have been created within the last month.
  - o Last Year. Display only subnets that have been created within the last year.

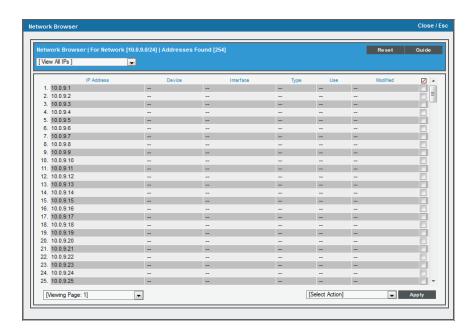
- Edit User. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the IPv4 Networks page will display only subnets that have a matching username in the Edit User field.
- *Edit Date*. Only those subnets that match all of the previously selected fields and have the specified last-edited date will be displayed. The choices are:
  - All. Display all subnets that match the other filters.
  - Last Minute. Display only subnets that have been edited within the last minute.
  - o Last Hour. Display only subnets that have been edited within the last hour.
  - Last Day. Display only subnets that have been edited within the last day.
  - Last Week. Display only subnets that have been edited within the last week.
  - o Last Month. Display only subnets that have been edited within the last month.
  - o Last Year. Display only subnets that have been edited the last year.

### Browsing a Network

From the **IPv4 Networks** page, you can browse a network and view the IPs, devices, and interfaces within the network. To do this:

**NOTE**: Users of type "user" can view only devices that are aligned with the same organization(s) to which the user is aligned. Users of type "administrator" can view all devices. Users of type "user" can view only interfaces that are aligned with the same organization(s) to which the user is aligned or have been emissaried to the user's organization(s). Users of type "administrator" can view all interfaces.

- 1. Go to the **IPv4 Networks** page (Registry > Networks > IPv4 Networks).
- 2. In the IPv4 Networks page, find the network you want to browse.
- 3. Click the binocular icon ( ) for that network.
- 4. The Network Browser page appears.



5. In the drop-down menu in the upper left, you can choose to view all IP addresses in the network, all devices in the network, or all interfaces in the network.

### Viewing Used and Unused IP Addresses in a Network

From the IPv4 Networks page, you can view a list of all IP addresses, used and unused, in a network. To do this:

- 1. Go to the **IPv4 Networks** page (Registry > Networks > IPv4 Networks).
- 2. In the IPv4 Networks page, find the network you want to view.
- 3. Click the binocular icon ( ) for that network.
- 4. The **Network Browser** page appears.
- 5. In the drop-down menu in the upper left, you can choose to view all IP addresses in the network, all devices in the network, or all interfaces in the network.

### Viewing Devices Aligned with a Network

From the IPv4 Networks page, you can view a list of all devices in a network To do this:

- 1. Go to the **IPv4 Networks** page (Registry > Networks > IPv4 Networks).
- 2. In the IPv4 Networks page, find the network you want to view.
- 3. Click the devices icon (4) for that network.
- 4. The **Network Browser** page appears and displays the list of devices in the network.
- 5. In the drop-down menu in the upper left, you can choose to view all IP addresses in the network, all devices in the network, or all interfaces in the network.

#### Viewing Interfaces Aligned with a Network

From the IPv4 Networks page, you can view a list of all interfaces in a network To do this:

- 1. Go to the **IPv4 Networks** page (Registry > Networks > IPv4 Networks).
- 2. In the IPv4 Networks page, find the network you want to view.
- 3. Click the interface icon ( ) for that network.
- 4. The **Network Browser** page appears and displays the list of interface in the network.
- 5. In the drop-down menu in the upper left, you can choose to view all IP addresses in the network, all devices in the network, or all interfaces in the network.

### Viewing a Map of a Network

From the **IPv4 Networks** page, you can view a layer-2 topology map of the network. To view a network map for a particular network:

- 1. Go to the **IPv4 Networks** page (Registry > Networks > IPv4 Networks).
- 2. In the IPv4 Networks page, find the network for which you want to view a map.
- 3. Click the map icon (55) for that network.

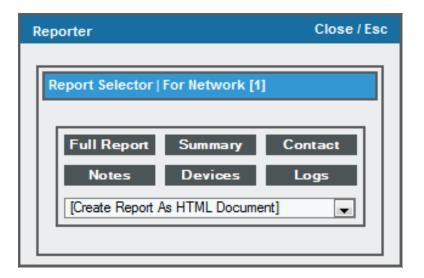


# Generating a Report for a Network

To generate a report for a network:

- 1. Go to the **IPv4 Networks** page (Registry > Networks > IPv4 Networks).
- 2. In the IPv4 Networks page, find the network for which you want to view a map.
- 3. Click the printer icon ( ) for that network.

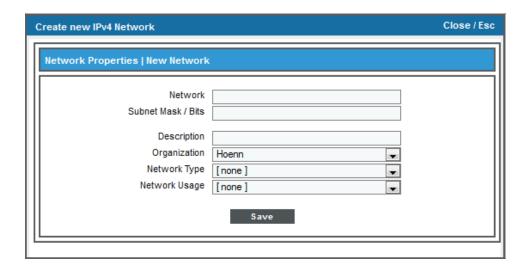
4. The **Report Creator** modal page appears. In this page, you can specify information to include in the report and the format in which to generate the report.



#### Defining a New Network

In the IPv4 Networks page, you can manually define a network. To do this:

- 1. Go to the **IPv4 Networks** page (Registry > Networks > IPv4 Networks).
- 2. In the IPv4 Networks page, click the [Actions] button and select Create.
- 3. The Network Properties modal page appears.
- 4. In the Network Properties modal page, supply values in the following fields:



• Network. IP address of the entire network (first IP). This field is read-only.

- **Subnet Mask**. The subnet mask for the network, in use standard dotted-decimal format and the number of bits used for the network address.
- **Organization**. Select from the drop-down list. The drop-down contains a list of all organizations in the ScienceLogic platform.
- Network Type. Description of the network type. Choices are:
  - ARIN Registered Public
  - o Private Admin Network
  - o Private Backup Network
  - Private NAT to ARIN Public
  - Provider Leased Public
- Network Usage. Description of how the network will be used. The entries in this drop-down can be
  edited in the Select Objects Editor page (System > Customize > Select Objects). The default values
  are:
  - o DHCP Block
  - DNS Servers
  - Email/Messaging Servers
  - o File Server
  - Firewalls
  - Printers
  - Web Servers
- 5. Click the [Save] button to save the new network.

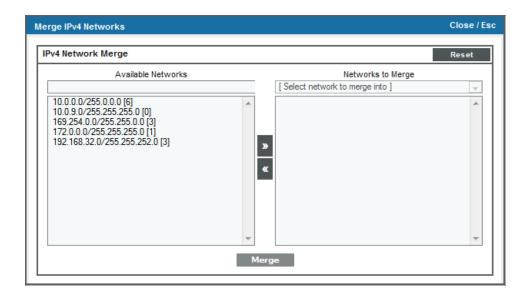
#### Merging One or More Networks

From the **IPv4 Networks** page, you can merge two or more networks. To merge networks, select a network to merge into and then select networks to add to the "merge into" network. When you merge networks, all devices in each selected network will become part of the "merge into" network. In the future, the ScienceLogic platform will automatically move any devices from the selected networks to the "merge into" network.

To merge networks:

- 1. Go to the **IPv4 Networks** page (Registry > Networks > IPv4 Networks).
- 2. In the IPv4 Networks page, click the [Actions] button and select Merge.
- 3. The IPv4 Network Merge modal page appears.

4. In the IPv4 Network Merge modal page, supply a value in the following fields:



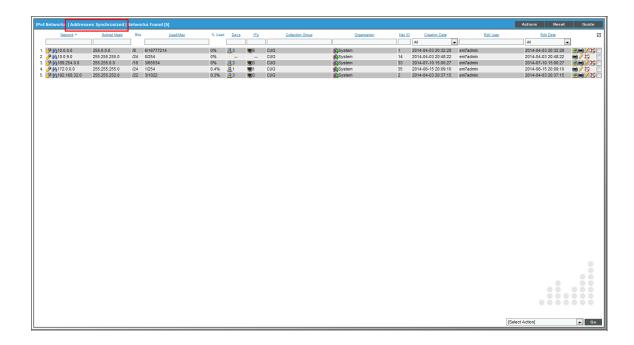
- Available Networks. Select one or more networks that you want to merge. Use the arrow button
   | to add each network to the list of Networks to Merge.
- Select network to merge into. From the list of networks in the Networks to Merge list, you must select one network to be the "merge into" network. The other networks in the Networks to Merge list will be added to the "merge into" network.
- 5. Click the [Merge] button to save the newly merged network.

### Synchronizing One or More Networks

When you synchronize a network, you remove any duplicate IPs from the network. The synchronize tool will remove only duplicate IPs from a single subnet where all the devices use the same Data Collector or Collector Group. To remove duplicate IPs:

- 1. Go to the **IPv4 Networks** page (Registry > Networks > IPv4 Networks).
- 2. In the **IPv4 Networks** page, click the **[Actions]** button and select *Synchronize*.

3. Text appears in the upper left of the page detailing how many networks were searched and how many addresses were synchronized.



### Editing a Network's Properties

In the IPv4 Networks page, you can edit the basic properties of a network. To do this:

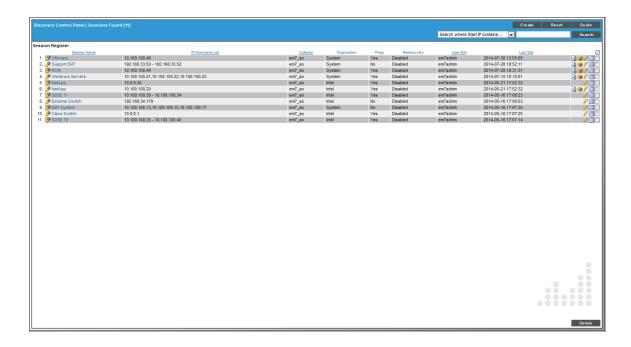
- 1. Go to the **IPv4 Networks** page (Registry > Networks > IPv4 Networks).
- 2. In the IPv4 Networks page, find the network you want to edit.
- 3. Click the wrench icon ( ) for that network. The **Network Properties** modal page appears.
- 4. In the Network Properties modal page, you can edit the values for one or more parameters.
- 5. To save your changes to the network, click the [Save] button.

### Performing Dynamic Discovery for a Network

You can perform dynamic discovery for a selected network. The ScienceLogic platform will then use Dynamic Applications to retrieve information about each device and application in the network. To manually trigger dynamic discovery for a network:

- 1. Go to the **IPv4 Networks** page (Registry > Networks > IPv4 Networks).
- 2. In the **IPv4 Networks** page, find the network for which you want to perform dynamic discovery. Click the lightning bolt icon ( ) for that network.

3. The **Discovery Control Panel** page appears, with the field IP Address Discovery List already populated with the IP range from the selected network.

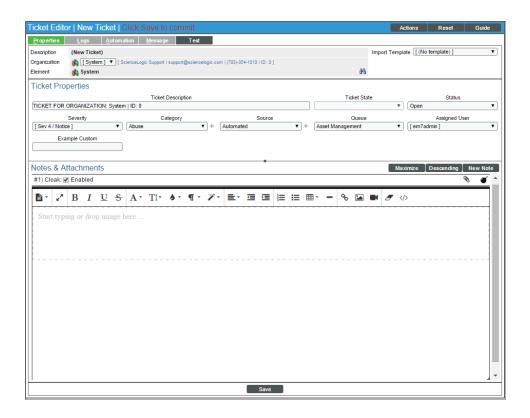


### Creating a Ticket About a Network

From the **IPv4 Networks** page, you can create a ticket about a network (the ticket's element will be the selected network). To do this:

- 1. Go to the **IPv4 Networks** page (Registry > Networks > IPv4 Networks).
- 2. In the IPv4 Networks page, find the network for which you want to create a ticket.
- 3. Click the ticket icon ( ) for that network.
- 4. The **Ticket Editor** page appears.

5. To create a ticket, supply a value in each field. Click the [Save] button to save the new ticket.



### Deleting One or More IPv4 Networks

You can delete one or more networks from the **IPv4 Networks** page. When you delete a network, the devices and interfaces associated with the network still remain in the ScienceLogic platform and are unchanged. When you delete a network from the **IPv4 Networks** page, only the information in the **IPv4 Networks** page and related pages is deleted; the network itself and the devices and interfaces are not affected.

To delete one or more networks from the **IPv4 Networks** page:

- 1. Go to the **IPv4 Networks** page (Registry > Networks > IPv4 Networks).
- 2. In the IPv4 Networks page, find the network you want to delete from the page.
- 3. Select the checkbox (☑) for the network.
- 4. Repeat steps 2-3 for each network you want to delete.
- 5. From the **Select Action** field (in the lower right), choose *Delete Monitors*. Click the **[Go]** button.
- 6. Each selected network will be deleted from the IPv4 Networks page.

# Chapter

10

#### **Hardware and Software**

#### Overview

The **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware) displays a list of all hardware components discovered by the ScienceLogic platform. The list includes hardware components from all devices that have been discovered by the platform. The **Device Hardware** page can display information about the following types of components:

- CPU
- Disk
- File system
- Memory
- Virtual Memory
- Components

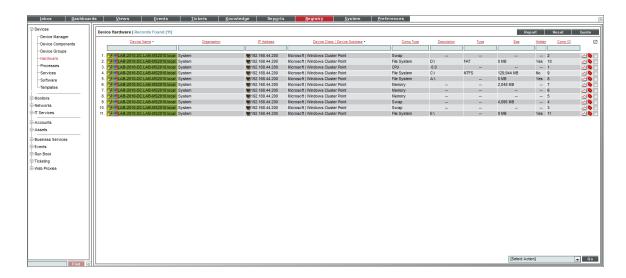
The **Software Titles** page displays a list of all software on all devices discovered by the ScienceLogic platform. From this page, you can view the list of software titles, generate an Excel report on all discovered software, or generate an exclusion report (that is, a report for a single software title that specifies devices where the software is installed and devices where the software is not installed.)

### Viewing the List of All Discovered Hardware Components

The **Device Hardware** page allows you to easily view details on device components and generate reports on device components.

To view a list of hardware components in the **Device Hardware** page:

- 1. Log in to the ScienceLogic platform.
- 2. Go to the **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware).



3. The **Device Hardware** page displays the following for each hardware component:

**TIP**: To sort the list of hardware, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort the list by descending order, click the column heading again.

- Device Name. Name of the device associated with the hardware component.
- Organization. Name of the organization associated with the hardware component.
- IP Address. IP address of the device or of the hardware component, if applicable.
- Device-Class / Device Sub-class. The manufacturer (device class) and type of device (sub-class). The Device-Class/Sub-Class is automatically assigned during auto-discovery, at the same time as the Category.
- Comp Type. Description of the hardware component. The choices are:
  - CPU
  - Disk
  - File system
  - Memory
  - Swap
  - Components

- **Description**. Description of the hardware component.
- Type. Further categorization of the hardware component.
- Size. If applicable, the size of the hardware component.
- **Hidden**. For file systems, specifies whether or not the component is "hidden", meaning "not monitored" by the ScienceLogic platform.
- Comp ID. Unique, numeric ID assigned to the component by the ScienceLogic platform.
- Tools. For each hardware component, one or more of the following tools are available:
  - Report of all hardware inventory for this device (2). Leads to the **Hardware Profile Report** page, where you can view information about all the hardware and components for a selected device.
  - View asset record (\*). This icon appears if an asset record has already been defined for the
    device. This icon leads to the **Asset Properties** page, where you can view the asset record for the
    device.
  - Checkbox (2). Applies the action in the [Select Actions] drop-down to the hardware component. To select all the checkboxes, select the check icon above the list of hardware components.

#### Filtering the List of Hardware Components

You can filter the list on the **Device Hardware** page by one or more parameters. Only hardware components that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **Device Hardware** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Device Hardware** page searches for hardware components that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use *special characters* to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

- **Device Name**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Hardware** page will display only hardware components that have a matching policy name.
- Organization. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Hardware** page will display only hardware components that have a matching organization.
- *IP Address*. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Hardware** page will display only hardware components that have a matching IP address.
- Device-Class / Device Sub-class. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Device Hardware page will display only hardware components from devices that have a matching device class.
- Comp Type. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Hardware** page will display only hardware components that have a matching component type. Choices are: CPU, Disk, File System, Memory, Swap, Components.

- **Description**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Hardware** page will display only hardware components that have a matching description.
- Type. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Hardware** page will display only hardware components that have a matching sub-type.
- Size. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Hardware** page will display only hardware components that have a matching size.
- *Hidden*. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Hardware** page will display only hardware components that have a matching value. This column applies to file systems. Choices are: Yes, No, and null.
- Comp ID. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Hardware** page will display only hardware components that have a matching ID. The ScienceLogic platform automatically assigns this unique, numeric ID to each hardware component.

# Generating a Report for Multiple Hardware Components on Multiple Devices

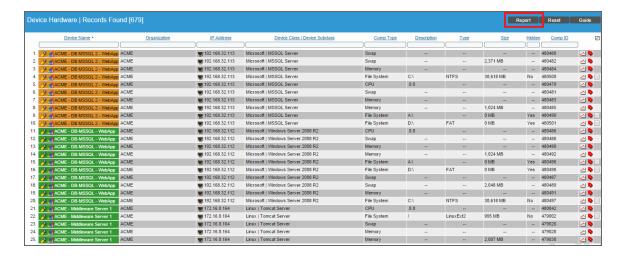
The **Device Hardware** page allows you to generate an Excel report that contains all the information on the **Device Hardware** page. You can immediately view the information or save it to a file for later viewing.

			B							
The linked image cannot be displayed. The file may have been moved.			Device Hardw	are Report						
nave been moved.			April 17, 2015, 3:53	am						
Search Results										
Device	Device ID	IP Address	Device Class	Sub-Class	Component Type	Description	Туре	Size (KB)	Hidden	Component ID
MS-2008-SPFND_0.185	50	172.16.0.185	RHEL	Redhat 5.5		.0.0			No	161576
MS-2008-SPFND_0.185	50	172.16.0.185	RHEL	Redhat 5.5		.0.0			No	161577
MS-2008-SPFND_0.185	50	172.16.0.185	RHEL	Redhat 5.5		.0.0			No	161578
MS-2008-SPFND_0.185	50	172.16.0.185	RHEL	Redhat 5.5		.0.0			No	161579
MS-2008-SPFND_0.185	50	172.16.0.185	RHEL	Redhat 5.5		.0.0			No	478523
EM7 ACME AIO	811	172.16.0.221	ScienceLogic, Inc.	OEM					No	478717
EM7 ACME AIO	811	172.16.0.221	ScienceLogic, Inc.	OEM					No	478718
EM7 ACME AIO	811	172.16.0.221	ScienceLogic, Inc.	OEM				18490772	No	478719
EM7 ACME AIO	811	172.16.0.221	ScienceLogic, Inc.	OEM					No	478720
EM7 ACME AIO	811	172.16.0.221	ScienceLogic, Inc.	OEM					No	478721
EM7 ACME AIO	811	172.16.0.221	ScienceLogic, Inc.	OEM				37046688	No	478722
EM7 ACME AIO	811	172.16.0.221	ScienceLogic, Inc.	OEM		/data.local	Other	89863300	No	478723
EM7 ACME AIO	811	172.16.0.221	ScienceLogic, Inc.	OEM		/usr	LinuxExt2	4061540	No	478724
EM7 ACME AIO	811	172.16.0.221	ScienceLogic, Inc.	OEM		ı	LinuxExt2	2030736	No	478725
EM7 ACME AIO	811	172.16.0.221	ScienceLogic, Inc.	OEM		/var	LinuxExt2	6092388	No	478726
EM7 ACME AIO	811	172.16.0.221	ScienceLogic, Inc.	OEM		/home	LinuxExt2	505604	No	478727
CUCM8	1058	10.168.44.22	Cisco Systems	Cisco MCS 7835 (IBM)		1	LinuxExt2	24914564	No	478784
CUCM8	1058	10.168.44.22	Cisco Systems	Cisco MCS 7835 (IBM)		/proc	Other	0	Yes	478785
CUCM8	1058	10.168.44.22	Cisco Systems	Cisco MCS 7835 (IBM)		/sys	Unknown	0	Yes	478786
CUCM8	1058	10.168.44.22	Cisco Systems	Cisco MCS 7835 (IBM)		/dev/pts	Unknown	0	Yes	478787
CUCM8	1058	10.168.44.22	Cisco Systems	Cisco MCS 7835 (IBM)		/common	LinuxExt2	88093440	No	478788
CUCM8	1058	10.168.44.22	Cisco Systems	Cisco MCS 7835 (IBM)		/dev/shm	Other	2008368	Yes	478789
CUCM8	1058	10.168.44.22	Cisco Systems	Cisco MCS 7835 (IBM)		/grub	LinuxExt2	256665	No	478790
CUCM8	1058	10.168.44.22	Cisco Systems	Cisco MCS 7835 (IBM)		/partB	LinuxExt2	25316476	No	478791
CUCM8	1058	10.168.44.22	Cisco Systems	Cisco MCS 7835 (IBM)		/proc/sys/fs/binfmt_misc	Unknown	0	Yes	478792

To generate a report on all hardware components in the ScienceLogic platform:

1. Log in to the ScienceLogic platform.

2. Go to the **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware).



- 3. In the **Device Hardware** page, select the **[Report]** button.
- 4. When prompted, specify whether you want to save the report to your local computer or open the report immediately.

#### Hiding a File System

When you hide a file system, the ScienceLogic platform stops collecting information about the file system. When you hide a file system:

- The platform does not generate events about the file system.
- The platform does not monitor the file system for thresholds (defined in the **Device Thresholds** and **Global Threshold Settings** pages).
- The platform does not include the file system in the **Device Summary** page.
- The platform does not include the file system in file system reports in the **Device Performance** page.

The following rules are applied during discovery to automatically hide file systems:

- If the NFS Detection Disable checkbox is selected in the Behavior Settings page (System > Settings > Behavior), NFS file systems are automatically hidden during discovery.
- File systems of type "iso9660" are automatically hidden during discovery.
- File systems for which the storage size is not reported or the storage size is less than 1024 KB are automatically hidden during discovery.
- File systems of type "Other" are automatically hidden during discovery.

NOTE: If the type of a discovered file system changes, the auto-hide rules are re-applied to that file system. For example, suppose a Windows drive letter is initially discovered as a removable disk and auto-hidden. If that drive-letter is later re-used for a fixed drive, this change will cause the file system to be automatically un-hidden.

To manually hide one or more file systems:

- 1. Go to the **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware).
- 2. Filter the list to display only Comp Type of "file system".
- 3. Select the checkbox for one or more file systems you would like to hide.
- 4. From the **Select Actions** field (in the lower right), select Hide File Systems.
- 5. Click the [Go] button.
- 6. Each selected file system will be hidden in the ScienceLogic platform.

To manually unhide one or more file systems:

- 1. Go to the **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware).).
- 2. Filter the list to display only Comp Type of "file system".
- 3. Select the checkbox for one or more file systems you would like to unhide.
- 4. From the **Select Actions** field (in the lower right), select *Unhide File Systems*.
- 5. Click the [Go] button.
- 6. The ScienceLogic platform will resume collection for each selected file system and will include each selected file system in the **Device Summary** and **Device Performance** pages.

#### Changing Thresholds for One or More File Systems

From the **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware), you can change the **Major** and **Critical** thresholds for one or more file systems. These thresholds appear on the **Device Thresholds** (RRegistry > Devices > Device Manager > wrench icon > Thresholds) page. Changes made to file system thresholds from the **Device Hardware** page update the settings in the **Device Thresholds** page. Changes made to file system thresholds in the **Device Thresholds** page override thresholds defined in the **Global Threshold Settings** page (System > Settings > Thresholds).

- Major Threshold. This threshold will trigger a "low disk space" event. The default threshold is 85%. When a file system has used more disk-space than the specified percentage, the platform will generate a "file system usage exceeded threshold" event with a status of "major". To disable this threshold, set the threshold to 0% (zero percent). When you disable a threshold, the platform does not generate an event for the threshold.
- Critical Threshold. This threshold will trigger a "low disk space" event. The default threshold is 95%. When a file system has used more disk-space than the specified percentage, the platform will generate a "file system usage exceeded threshold" event with a status of "critical". To disable this threshold, set the threshold to 0% (zero percent). When you disable a threshold, the platform does not generate an event for the threshold.

To change a *Major* file system threshold:

- 1. Find the file system for which you want to change the Major threshold. Select its checkbox (🗹).
- 2. Select the checkbox for each additional file system for which you want to change the Major threshold.
- 3. In the **Select Action** drop-down list, find Change Major Threshold and select a new threshold (between 0 100).
- 4. Select the [Go] button.
- 5. The platform will change the Major threshold for each selected file system.

To change a *Critical* file system threshold:

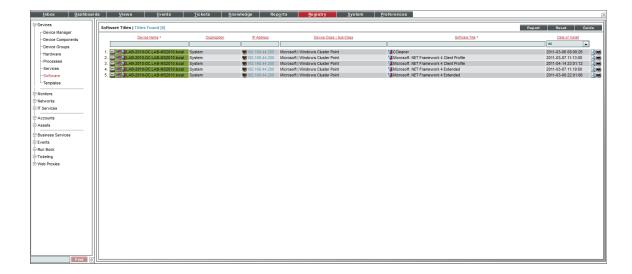
- 1. Find the file system for which you want to change the Critical threshold. Select its checkbox (🗵).
- 2. Select the checkbox for each additional file system for which you want to change the Critical threshold.
- 3. In the **Select Action** drop-down list, find Change Critical Threshold and select a new threshold (between 0 100).
- 4. Select the [Go] button.
- 5. The platform will change the Critical threshold for each selected file system.

#### Viewing the List of All Discovered Software Titles

The **Software Titles** page displays a list of all software on all devices discovered by the ScienceLogic platform. From this page, you can view the list of software titles, generate an Excel report on all discovered software, or generate an exclusion report (that is, a report for a single software title that specifies devices where the software is installed and devices where the software is not installed.)

To view a list of all software discovered on all devices:

1. Go to the **Software Titles** page (Registry > Devices > Software).



2. The **Software Titles** page displays the following about each installed software title:

**TIP**: To sort the list of software, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort the list by descending order, click the column heading again.

- **Device Name**. Name of the device where the software title is installed. For devices running SNMP or with DNS entries, the name is discovered automatically. For devices without SNMP or DNS entries, the device's IP address will appear in this field.
- Organization. Organization associated with the software.
- IP Address. IP address of the device where the software is installed.
- Device Class / Sub-Class. The manufacturer (device class) and type of device (sub-class). The
  Device Class/Sub-Class is automatically assigned during auto-discovery.
- Software Title. Name of the software.
- Date of Install. Date the software was installed.

#### Filtering the List of Software Titles

You can filter the list on the **Software Titles** page by one or more parameters. Only software titles that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **Software Titles** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Software Titles** page searches for software titles that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use special characters to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

- Device Name. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and
  exclamation mark), and the Software Titles page will display only software titles installed on a matching
  device name.
- Organization. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and
  exclamation mark), and the Software Titles page will display only software titles that have a matching
  organization.
- IP Address. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the Software Titles page will display only software titles installed on a device with a matching IP address.
- Device Class. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and
  exclamation mark), and the Software Titles page will display only software titles installed on devices with a
  matching device class.

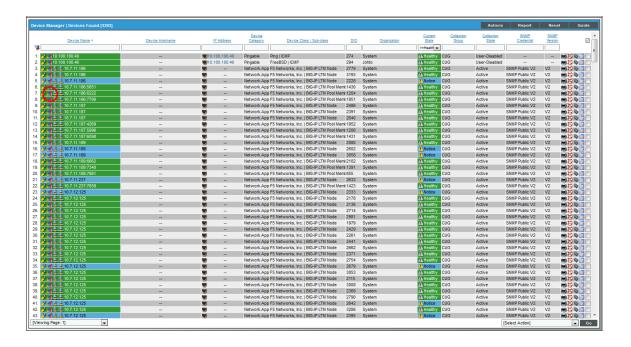
- **Software Title**. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **Software Titles** page will display only software titles that have a matching name.
- **Date of Install**. Only those software titles that match all the previously selected fields and have the specified install date will be displayed. The choices are:
  - o All. Display software titles with all installed dates.
  - Last Minute. Display only software titles that have been installed within the last minute.
  - Last Hour. Display only software titles that have been installed within the last hour.
  - Last Day. Display only software titles that have been installed within the last day.
  - Last Week. Display only software titles that have been installed within the last week.
  - Last Month. Display only software titles that have been installed within the last month.
  - · Last Year. Display only software titles that have been installed within the last year.

### Viewing a List of Software Titles for a Single Device

The **Software Packages** page displays a list of all the software installed on the device. If possible, the installation date is also displayed.

To view the list of software installed on a single device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Find the device for which you want to view the list of installed software. Select the bar graph icon (411) for that device.



3. In the **Device Reports** panel, select the Software tab. The **Software Packages** page appears.



- 4. For each installed software title, the **Software Packages** page displays the following information:
  - Software Package Name. Name of the software.
  - Install Date. Date and time the software was installed on the device.

#### Filtering the List of Software

You can filter the list of software titles in the **Software Packages** page. The list dynamically updates as you enter the regular expression to use as a filter.

- In the *Filter* field, you must enter a regular expression. The ScienceLogic platform will search for software package names that match the regular expression. You can use the following special characters in each filter:
  - \* Match zero or more characters preceding the asterisk. For example:
    - "dell\*" would match "dell", "dell2650", "dell7250" and "dell1700N".
    - "\*dell\*" would match "mydell", "dell", "dell2650", "dell7250" and "dell1700N".

• % Match zero or more characters preceding the percent. This special character behaves in the same way as the asterisk.

#### Generating a Report on All Software on All Devices

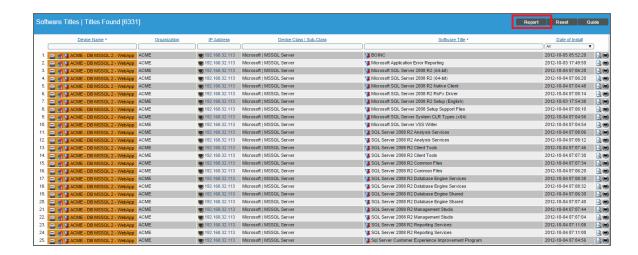
From the **Software Titles** page (Registry > Devices > Software) you can generate a report on all, multiple, or a single software title in the ScienceLogic platform. The report will contain all the information displayed in the **Software Titles** page.

oftw	vare Titles Report generate	d by banderton on 20	15-04-17 03:50:56			
wic	ces that have [Array] installe	od				
VIC	Device Name	Organization	IP Address	Device Class   Sub-Class	Software Title	Date of Install
0.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - WA	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	BOINC	2012-10-05 05:52:2
1.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - WA	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	Microsoft Application Error Reporting	2012-10-03 17:49:
2.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - W A	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 (64-bit)	2012-10-04 07:06:2
3.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - WA	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 (64-bit)	2012-10-04 07:06:
4.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - WA	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Native Client	2012-10-04 07:04:
5.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - WA	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 RsFx Driver	2012-10-04 07:08:
6.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - WA	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Setup (English)	2012-10-03 17:54:
7.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - W A	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Setup Support File	2012-10-04 07:06:
8.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - W A	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	Microsoft SQL Server System CLR Types (x64	2012-10-04 07:04:
9.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - WA	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	Microsoft SQL Server VSS Writer	2012-10-04 07:04:
10.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - WA	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	SQL Server 2008 R2 Analysis Services	2012-10-04 07:08:
11.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - W A	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	SQL Server 2008 R2 Analysis Services	2012-10-04 07:08:
12.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - W A	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	SQL Server 2008 R2 Client Tools	2012-10-04 07:07:
13.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - WA	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	SQL Server 2008 R2 Client Tools	2012-10-04 07:07:
14.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - WA	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	SQL Server 2008 R2 Common Files	2012-10-04 07:07:
15.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - WA	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	SQL Server 2008 R2 Common Files	2012-10-04 07:06:2
16.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - W A	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	SQL Server 2008 R2 Database Engine Service	2012-10-04 07:08:
17.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - W A	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	SQL Server 2008 R2 Database Engine Service	2012-10-04 07:08:
18.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - WA	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	SQL Server 2008 R2 Database Engine Shared	2012-10-04 07:06:
19.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - WA	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	SQL Server 2008 R2 Database Engine Shared	2012-10-04 07:07:
20.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - W A	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	SQL Server 2008 R2 Management Studio	2012-10-04 07:07:
21.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - W A	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	SQL Server 2008 R2 Management Studio	2012-10-04 07:07:
22.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - WA	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	SQL Server 2008 R2 Reporting Services	2012-10-04 07:11:
23.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - WA	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	SQL Server 2008 R2 Reporting Services	2012-10-04 07:11:0
24.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - WA	CME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	Sql Server Customer Experience Improvement	2012-10-04 07:04:
25.	ACME - DB-MSSQL - We A	CME	192.168.32.112	Microsoft   Windows Server 2008 R2	Microsoft Application Error Reporting	2012-10-03 17:49:
26.	ACME - DB-MSSQL - Wel A	CME	192.168.32.112	Microsoft   Windows Server 2008 R2	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 (64-bit)	2012-10-04 07:06:
27.	ACME - DB-MSSQL - Wel A	CME	192.168.32.112	Microsoft   Windows Server 2008 R2	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 (64-bit)	2012-10-04 07:06:
28.	ACME - DB-MSSQL - Wel A	CME	192.168.32.112	Microsoft   Windows Server 2008 R2	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Native Client	2012-10-04 07:04:
29.	ACME - DB-MSSQL - We A	CME	192.168.32.112	Microsoft   Windows Server 2008 R2	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 RsFx Driver	2012-10-04 07:08:
30.	ACME - DB-MSSQL - We A	CME	192.168.32.112	Microsoft   Windows Server 2008 R2	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Setup (English)	2012-10-03 17:54:
31.	ACME - DB-MSSQL - Wel A	CME	192.168.32.112	Microsoft   Windows Server 2008 R2	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Setup Support File	2012-10-04 07:06
2.	ACME - DB-MSSQL - Wel A	CME	192.168.32.112	Microsoft   Windows Server 2008 R2	Microsoft SQL Server System CLR Types (x64	2012-10-04 07:04
	ACME - DB-MSSQL - Wel A		192.168.32.112	Microsoft   Windows Server 2008 R2	Microsoft SQL Server VSS Writer	2012-10-04 07:04
34.	ACME - DB-MSSQL - Wel A	CME	192.168.32.112	Microsoft   Windows Server 2008 R2	SQL Server 2008 R2 Analysis Services	2012-10-04 07:08
35.	ACME - DB-MSSQL - Wel A		192.168.32.112	Microsoft   Windows Server 2008 R2	SQL Server 2008 R2 Analysis Services	2012-10-04 07:08
36.	ACME - DB-MSSQL - Wel A		192.168.32.112	Microsoft   Windows Server 2008 R2	SQL Server 2008 R2 Client Tools	2012-10-04 07:07:

To generate a report on all or multiple software titles in the ScienceLogic platform:

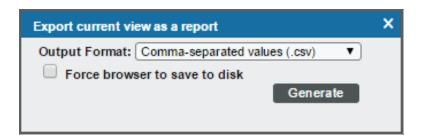
1. Go to the **Software Titles** page (Registry > Devices > Software).

2. In the **Software Titles** page, select the **[Report]** button.



NOTE: If you want to include only certain software titles in the report, use the "find while you type" fields at the top of each column. You can filter the list by one or more column headings. You can then select the [Report] button, and only the software titles displayed in the Software Titles page will appear in the report.

3. The **Export current view as a report** modal page appears.



- 4. In the **Export current view as a report** page, you must select the format in which the ScienceLogic platform will generate the report. Your choices are:
  - Comma-separated values (.csv)
  - Web page (.html)
  - OpenDocument Spreadsheet (.ods)
  - Excel spreadsheet (.xlsx)
  - Acrobat document (.pdf)
- 5. Select the **[Generate]** button. The report will contain all the information displayed in the **Software Titles** page. You can immediately view the report or save it to a file for later viewing.

#### Generating an Exclusion Report for a Single Software Title

From the **Software Titles** page you can generate Software Exclusion Reports. These reports can help administrators manage patches and software versions. Software Exclusions Reports are generated in .XLSX format.

Software Exclusion Report generated by banderton on 2015-04-17 03:45:57						
Report Summary [Microsoft SQL Serv	ver 2008 R2 (64.hit)]					
Total Devices	102					
Unique Device Categories	3					
Unique Device Classes	1					
Titles Found	6					
Titles Not Found	96					

Softwa	Software Exclusion Report generated by banderton on 2015-04-17 03:45:57						
Devices that have [Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 (64-bit)] installed							
	Device Name	Organization	IP Address	Device Class   Sub-Class	Software Title	Date of Install	
0.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - W	ACME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 (64-bit)	2012-10-04 07:06:20	
1.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - W	ACME	192.168.32.113	Microsoft   MSSQL Server	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 (64-bit)	2012-10-04 07:06:20	
2.	ACME - DB-MSSQL - Wel	ACME	192.168.32.112	Microsoft   Windows Server 2008 R2	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 (64-bit)	2012-10-04 07:06:20	
3.	ACME - DB-MSSQL - Wel	ACME	192.168.32.112	Microsoft   Windows Server 2008 R2	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 (64-bit)	2012-10-04 07:06:20	
4.	DEMO-SP-01	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.108	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 (64-bit)	2014-12-17 05:01:44	
5.	DEMO-SP-01	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.108	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 (64-bit)	2014-12-17 05:01:44	

Software Exclusion Report generated by banderton on 2015-04-17 03:45:57						
Devices that do not have [Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 (64-bit)] installed						
Devic	Device Name	Organization	IP Address	Device Class   Sub-Class	Software Title	Date of Install
0.	ACME - WEB IIS 2 - Web	ACME	192.168.32.110	Microsoft   Windows Server 2008 R2	BOINC	2012-10-05 07:01:42
1.	ACME - WEB-IIS-1 - Web	ACME	192.168.32.111	Microsoft   Windows Server 2008 R2	BOINC	2012-10-05 10:06:00
2.	DEMO-AP-01.demo.scien	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.107	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	None	
3.	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	Microsoft Help Viewer 1.1	2014-08-28 14:07:48
4.	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	Microsoft SQL Server 2012 (64-bit)	2014-08-28 14:10:16
5.	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	Microsoft SQL Server 2012 (64-bit)	2014-08-28 14:10:16
6.	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012		2014-08-28 14:10:18
7.	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Transact-SQL Com	2014-08-28 14:10:26
8.	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	Microsoft Visual C++ 2010 x64 Redistributable	2014-08-27 12:48:54
9.	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	Microsoft VSS Writer for SQL Server 2012	2014-08-28 14:10:30
10.	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012		2014-08-28 14:10:02
11.	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	Service Pack 2 for SQL Server 2012 (KB29584)	2014-09-12 10:21:34
12.	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	SQL Server 2012 Common Files	2014-08-28 14:15:50
	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie		192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012		2014-08-28 14:13:10
14.	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	SQL Server 2012 Data quality client	2014-08-28 14:15:54
15.	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	SQL Server 2012 Data quality service	2014-08-28 14:16:44
16.	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	SQL Server 2012 Data quality service	2014-08-28 14:16:46
	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie		192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012		2014-09-12 10:12:04
18.	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie		192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	SQL Server 2012 Database Engine Services	2014-08-28 14:16:30
19.	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie		192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	SQL Server 2012 Database Engine Services	2014-09-12 10:11:22
	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie		192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	SQL Server 2012 Database Engine Shared	2014-08-28 14:16:20
	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie		192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	SQL Server 2012 Distributed Replay	2014-08-28 14:15:48
	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie		192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	SQL Server 2012 Distributed Replay	2014-08-28 14:15:46
	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie		192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	SQL Server 2012 Full text search	2014-08-28 14:16:42
	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie		192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	SQL Server 2012 Integration Services	2014-08-28 14:15:56
	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie		192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	SQL Server 2012 Integration Services	2014-08-28 14:15:30
26.	DEMO-SQL-01.demo.scie	HQ Data Center	192.168.41.109	Microsoft   Windows Server 2012	SQL Server 2012 Management Studio	2014-08-28 14:19:58

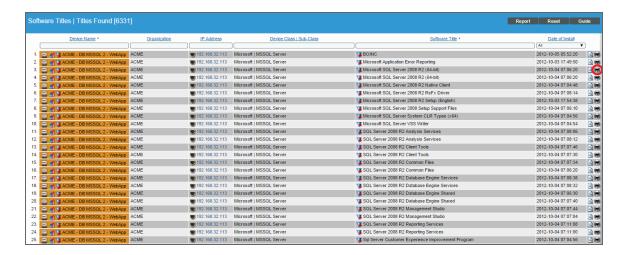
A Software Exclusions Report displays the following:

- Name of the software title and the date the report was generated.
- List of all devices in the ScienceLogic platform that have the software installed.
- List of all devices in the ScienceLogic platform that don't have the software installed. The ScienceLogic platform includes only appropriate servers in this report. For example, Solaris servers would not appear in a report for a Windows 2000 patch.

- The last row in the report displays:
  - Total number of devices in report.
  - Total number of device categories included in the report.
  - Total number of device classes included in the report.
  - Number of devices where software is installed.
  - Number of devices where software is not installed.

To generate a software exclusion report:

1. Go to the **Device Software** page (Registry > Devices > Software).



- 2. In the **Software Titles** page, find an instance of the software title you want to generate an exclusion report for. Select its printer icon ()
- 3. You will be prompted to save or view the generated report.

## Chapter

11

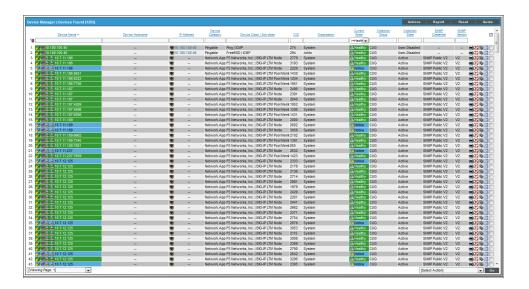
## **Device Logs**

#### Viewing Logs for a Device

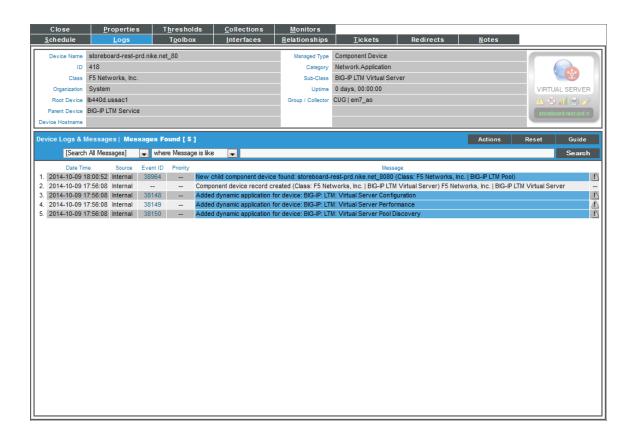
In the **Device Administration** panel, the **Device Logs & Messages** page displays all the messages the ScienceLogic platform and the ScienceLogic agent, if applicable, have collected from the device. You might find it helpful to view these log entries during troubleshooting or to manually check on the status of a device.

To access the **Device Logs & Messages** page for a device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to view the device logs. Select its wrench icon ().



3. In the **Device Administration** panel, select the Logs tab.



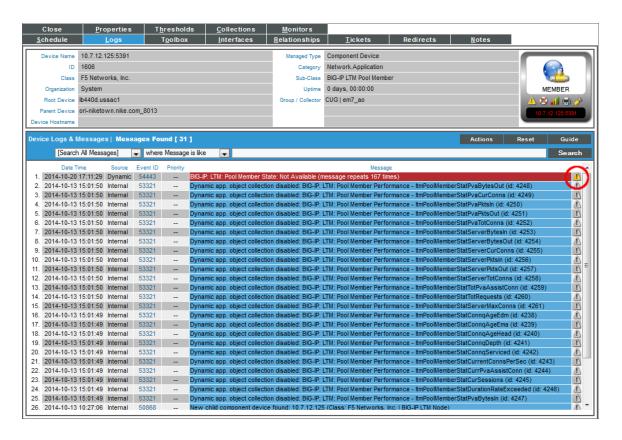
- 4. The **Device Logs & Messages** page displays the following about each log entry:
  - Date Time. The date and time the entry was made in the log.
  - **Source**. The entity or process that generated the message.
    - Syslog. Entry was generated from standard system log generated by device.
    - Internal. Entry was generated by the ScienceLogic platform.
    - Trap. Entry was generated by an SNMP trap.
    - Dynamic. Entry was generated by a Dynamic Application.
    - API. Entry was generated by another application.
    - Email. Entry was generated by an email message from a third-party application to the ScienceLogic platform.
  - **Event ID**. If an event was created, a unique event ID, generated by the ScienceLogic platform. If the log entry is not associated with an event, no ID appears in this column.
  - **Priority**. If applicable, specifies the priority of the syslog message.
    - Info An error occurred
    - Notice. An error has not occurred. Entry denotes normal system activity.

- N/A. Not applicable. Entry was not generated by syslog.
- Message. Text of the log entry, color coded to match event severity (if applicable).

#### Viewing Events Associated with a Log Entry

From the **Device Logs & Messages** page you can view the event generated by each log entry. To do so:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device whose log you want to view. Select its wrench icon ( ).
- 3. In the **Device Administration** panel, select the Logs tab.



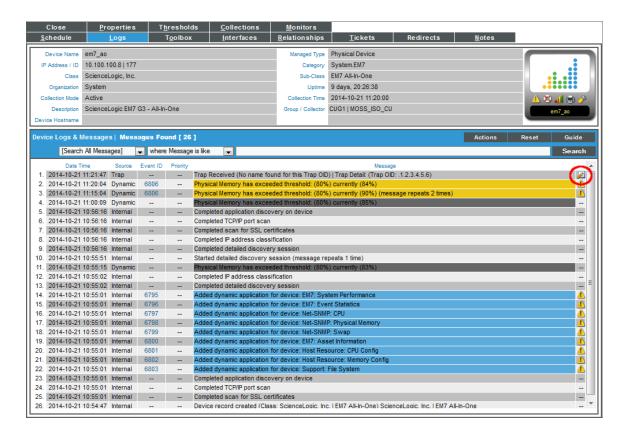
- 4. In the **Device Logs & Messages** page, find the log entry you are interested in. Select its event icon (4).
- The Viewing Events page appears for the device and displays the event associated with the selected log entry. For details on events, see the manual Events.

#### Creating an Event Policy from a Log Entry

From the **Device Logs & Messages** page, you can create a new event policy based on a log entry. If a log entry does not have an event policy already associated with it, the pencil icon ( ) will appear next to the entry. You can click on this icon to create a new event policy. After you create an event policy, each time this log entry is generated for a device, the ScienceLogic platform will trigger an event in the **Event Console** page.

To create an event policy from a log entry:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device whose log you want to view. Select its wrench icon ( ).
- 3. In the **Device Administration** panel, select the Logs tab.



- 4. In the **Device Logs & Messages** page, find the log entry from which you want to create an event policy. Select its pencil icon (🚄).
- 5. The **Event Policy Editor** page appears, with some of the fields automatically populated with values from the selected log entry. For details on defining event policies, see the manual **Events**.

## Viewing Logs for All Devices

The Audit Logs page (System > Monitor > Audit Logs) displays a list of all actions that have occurred on all devices.

For details on the Audit Logs page, see the manual System Administration.

## Chapter

**12** 

## **Device Relationships**

#### Overview of Device Relationships

The ScienceLogic platform automatically defines parent and child relationships for certain devices. Users can also manually define some types of relationships. Devices can have the following types of relationships:

- Layer-2 devices and their clients. Layer-2 relationships are automatically discovered by the platform and can be created in the **Subnet Map (L2)** page (Views > Topology Maps > Layer-2).
- Layer-3 devices and layer-2 devices. Layer-3 relationships are automatically discovered by the platform and can be created in the **Layer 3 Map** page (Views > Topology Maps > Layer-3).
- Network devices that use CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol) and devices that are specified as neighbors in the CDP tables. CDP relationships are automatically discovered by the platform and can be created in the Subnet Map (CDP) page (Views > Topology Maps > CDP).
- Network devices that use LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol) and devices that are specified as neighbors in the LLDP tables. LLDP relationships are automatically discovered by the platform and can be created in the Views > Topology Maps > LLDP page (Views > Topology Maps > LLDP).
- Component devices and their parent devices using Dynamic Application data. For example, virtual machines and their hypervisors.
- Device relationships between root devices, parent devices, and component devices (Component Mapping).
- Device relationships created using Dynamic Application data. For example, the Dynamic Applications in the VMware vSphere and NetApp PowerPacks are configured to create relationships between VMware Datastore component devices and their associated NetApp Volume component devices.
- Generic parent-child relationships, sometimes referred to as Event Correlation relationships or Ad-Hoc relationships, can be manually created. These relationships can be created in the **Device Children** page for the parent device.

NOTE: The platform also automatically discovers relationships between VMWare hypervisors and VMWare virtual machines using SNMP data, but *only for legacy versions VMWare ESX 3.5 and VMWare ESX 4.x.* 

All device relationships are displayed as child and parent relationships. For example:

- A layer-2 switch is a parent device and a firewall attached to the switch is a child device.
- A layer-3 router is a parent device and a layer-2 switch attached to the router is a child device.
- A VMware ESX server is a parent device and a Linux VM on that server is a child device.

#### Viewing the List of Device Relationships

The **Device Relationships** page displays information about every parent-child relationship that has been automatically created by the platform or manually defined by a user.

For each child device, the **Device Relationships** page displays at least the MAC address of the child interface and, if possible, the device name of the child device, the IP address associated with the child interface, the name of the child interface, and the manufacturer of the child interface.

For each parent device, the **Device Relationships** page displays the device name, the name of the parent interface, the MAC address of the parent interface, and the manufacturer of the parent interface.

For example, suppose a switch has been discovered by the platform. Suppose that 12 interfaces on that switch are in use. Suppose that only three of those 12 interfaces are connected to child interfaces that have been discovered by the platform. The **Device Relationships** page will display whatever ARP information the platform can retrieve about the remaining nine child interfaces. In most cases, the platform can retrieve the MAC address and manufacturer associated with the child interface, even if the child interface has not been discovered by the platform.

The relationships in the **Device Relationships** page are dynamically updated. If the platform discovers a new relationship, the platform updates the **Device Relationships** page.

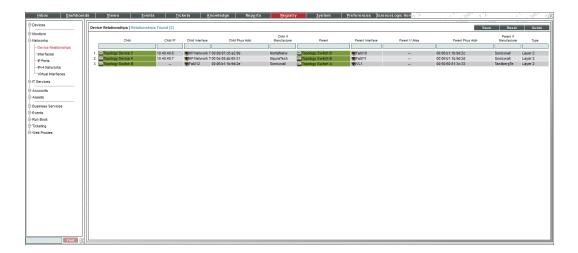
You can view information for each parent-child relationship between two devices managed by the ScienceLogic platform or for a single parent device managed by the platform and an unknown child device. To view information on **Device Relationships**:

1. Go to the **Device Relationships** page (Registry > Networks > Device Relationships).

2. The **Device Relationships** page displays the following information:

**TIP**: You can sort the list of user device relationships by column. To sort by ascending column value, click on a column heading. To sort by descending column value, click on the same column heading a second time.

**NOTE**: The **Device Relationships** page respects multi-tenancy rules. This means that you can view relationships in this page only if both devices are aligned with an organization of which you are a member.



- **Child**. If the child device has been discovered by the ScienceLogic platform, this column contains the name of the device and a link to the **Device Relationships** page for the child device.
- **Child IP**. If the child device has been discovered by the platform, this column contains the IP address through which the child communicates with the parent device.
- **Child Interface**. If the child device has been discovered by the platform, this column contains the name of the interface through which the child device communicates with the parent device and a link to the **Interfaces Found** page for the child interface.
- Child Phys Addr. The physical address (MAC address) for the interface through which the child device communicates with the parent device.
- Child IF Manufacturer. If included in the MAC address, the manufacturer of the child interface.
- Parent. The name of the parent device and a link to the Device Relationships page for the parent device.
- **Parent Interface**. The name of the interface through which the parent device communicates with the child device and a link to the **Interfaces Found** page for the parent interface.
- Parent IF Alias. Easy-to-remember, human-readable name for the interface on the parent device.
- Parent Phys Addr. The physical address (MAC address) for the interface through which the parent

device communicates with the child device.

- Parent IF Manufacturer. If included in the MAC address, the manufacturer of the parent interface.
- Type. Describes the relationship between the parent device and child device. Possible values are:
  - CDP
  - LLDP
  - Component Mapping
  - Component Relationship
  - Event Correlation
  - ∘ Layer-2
  - ∘ Layer-3
  - VMware

#### Filtering the List of Device Relationships

You can filter the list on the **Device Relationships** page by one or more parameters. Only device relationships that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **Device Relationships** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Device Relationships** page searches for device relationships that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use special characters to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

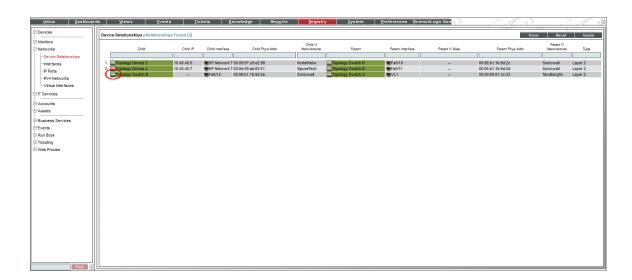
- **Child**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Relationships** page will display only device relationships that have a matching device name on the child device.
- **Child IP**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Relationships** page will display only device relationships that have a matching IP address on the child interface.
- **Child Interface**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Relationships** page will display only device relationships that have a matching name on the child interface.
- *Child Phys Addr*. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Relationships** page will display only device relationships that have a matching MAC address on the child interface.
- Child IF Manufacturer. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Device
  Relationships page will display only device relationships that have a matching manufacturer for the child
  interface.
- *Parent*. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Relationships** page will display only device relationships that have a device name on the parent device.

- **Parent Interface**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Relationships** page will display only device relationships that have a matching name on the parent interface.
- **Parent IF Alias**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Relationships** page will display only device relationships that have a matching IF alias on the parent interface.
- **Parent Phys Addr**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Relationships** page will display only device relationships that have a matching MAC address on the parent interface.
- Parent IF Manufacturer. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Device
  Relationships page will display only device relationships that have a matching manufacturer for the parent
  interface.
- **Type**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Relationships** page will display only device relationships that have a matching type.

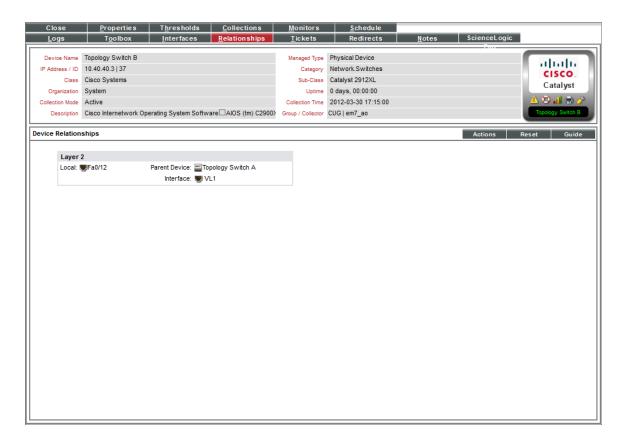
#### Viewing the Relationships for a Single Device

You can view all links for a single device in the **Device Relationships** page, in the **Device Properties** panel. To view all links for a single device:

Go to the **Device Relationships** page (Registry > Networks > Device Relationships) and click the Device Properties icon () for the device you want to see relationships. If a link has been defined on a device, you can also go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager), click the wrench icon for a device () and click the [Relationships] tab in the **Device Properties** pane.



2. The **Device Relationships** page appears. The left pane of the **Device Relationships** page displays links to parent devices. The right pane of the **Device Relationships** page displays links to child devices. For each relationship, the **Device Relationships** page displays the following information:



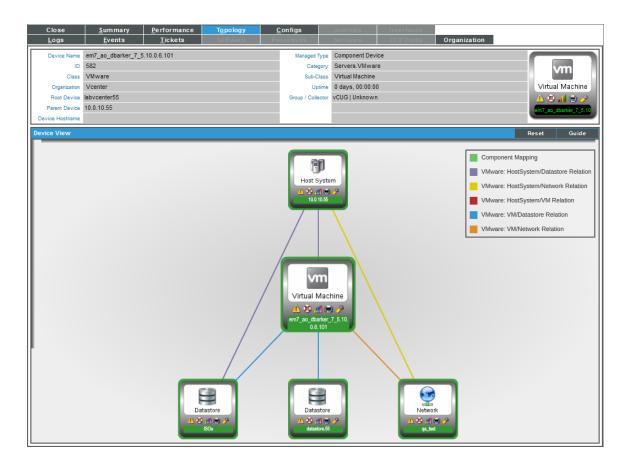
- Type of relationship. Possible values are:
  - Layer 2. Layer-2 devices and their clients.
  - Layer 3. Layer-3 devices and layer-2 devices.
  - VMware. Hypervisors and their virtual machines.
  - CDP. Network devices that use CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol) and devices that are specified as neighbors in CDP tables.
  - LLDP. Network devices that use LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol) and devices that are specified as neighbors in LLDP tables.
  - Event Correlation. Relationships defined manually by users through the user interface.
  - o Component Mapping. Relationships defined using Dynamic Applications.
- **Child Interface**. Name of the interface through which the child device communicates with the parent device and a link to the **Interfaces Found** page for the child interface.
- **Parent Device**. The name of the parent device and a link to the **Device Properties** page for the parent device.

• **Parent Interface**. The name of the interface through which the parent device communicates with the child device and a link to the **Interfaces Found** page for the parent interface.

**NOTE**: Clicking on a device reloads the **Device Relationships** page and makes the selected device the primary device.

### The Device View Page

The **Device View** page appears when a user clicks the **Topology** tab in the Device Reports panel. The **Device View** page displays a map of the device and all of the devices with which the device has relationships.



These relationships include:

- Layer-2 devices and their clients
- Layer-3 devices and Layer-2 devices
- Component devices and their parent devices. For example, virtual machines and their hypervisors and their virtual machines.

- Network devices that use CDP (Cisco Delivery Protocol) and devices that are specified as neighbors in CDP tables
- Links between network devices that use CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol) and devices that are specified as neighbors in CDP tables
- Network devices that use LLDP (Link Layer Delivery Protocol) and devices that are specified as neighbors in LLDP tables
- Links between network devices that use LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol) and devices that are specified as neighbors in LLDP tables
- Device relationships between root devices, parent devices, and component devices (Component Mapping)
- Device relationships created with Dynamic Applications
- Manually created parent-child relationships that affect event correlation

**NOTE**: Double-clicking on a device reloads the **Device View** page and makes the selected device the primary device.

For details on the toolbars that appear in this page, see the Views manual.

#### **Event Correlation**

In the ScienceLogic platform, event correlation means the ability to build parent-child relationships between devices and their events. When events are correlated, only the parent event is displayed in the **Event Console** page.

- In the **Event Console** page, the child events are rolled up and nested under the parent event and are displayed only if you click on the magnifying-glass icon ( $\P$ ).
- For the parent event, the **Count** column will be incremented to indicate the number of correlated child events.

For details on event correlation, see the manual titled *Events*.

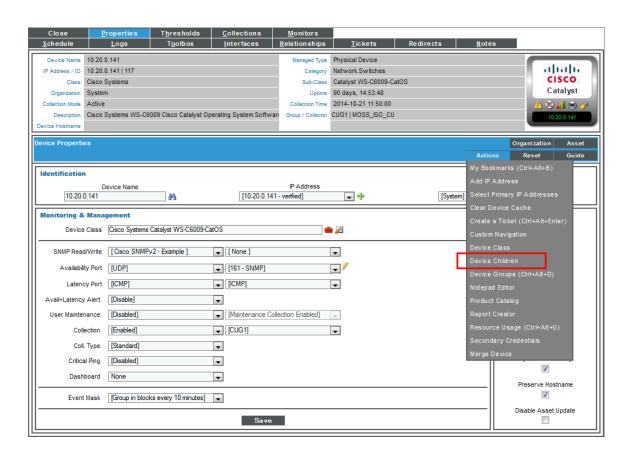
#### **Defining Device Relationships**

The **Device Children** modal page allows users to select one or more devices to become children of the currently selected device.

To add children to a device:

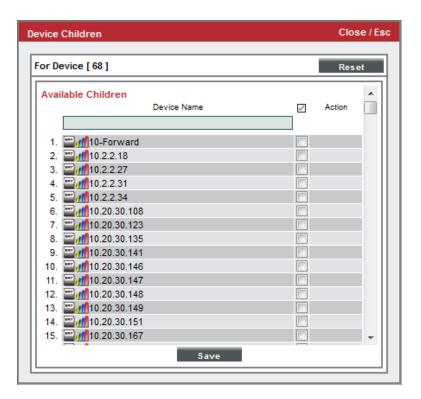
- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to add children devices. Select the wrench icon (🎤) for that device.
- 3. The **Device Properties** page appears:

NOTE: You cannot create parent-child relationships for devices with a Device Category of Virtual.



4. In the Device Properties page, select the [Actions] menu. From the list of options, select Device Children.

5. The **Device Children** modal page appears.



- 6. In the **Device Children** page, select one or more devices to be children of the current device.
- 7. Select the [Save] button.

#### Device Categories that Don't Support Parent-Child Devices

A device category is a logical categorization of a device by primary function. The ScienceLogic platform uses device categories to group related devices in reports and views.

Device categories are paired with device classes to organize and describe discovered devices. The device class usually describes the manufacturer and model of a device. The device category describes the function of the hardware.

Devices that are members of the following device categories cannot be assigned children devices:

- Office Printers, Device Category #4
- Workstations, Device Category #6
- Environmental. Utility, Device Category #8
- Environmental.HVAC, Device Category #9
- Environmental.Security, Device Category #10
- System. Tape, Device Category #17

- Office.Copiers, Device Category #22
- Office.Facsimiles, Device Category #23
- Telephony. Phone, Device Category #36
- Office.Plotter, Device Category #40
- Pingable, Device Category #98
- Virtual, Device Category #97

To determine a device's device category, look in the Category field in any page in the **Device Administration** or **Device Management** pages.

#### Events that May Not Be Displayed in the Event Console

In the ScienceLogic platform, there are four types of events that might not be displayed in the Event Console:

- Rolled-up events. Multiple occurrences of the same event on the same device. When the same event
  occurs multiple times on a single device, the ScienceLogic platform does not display each occurrence in the
  Event Console. Instead, the ScienceLogic platform displays a single entry and notes the number of
  occurrences in the Count column.
- Suppressed Events. Suppressed events do not appear in the Event Console.
- Topology Events. In the ScienceLogic platform, event correlation or topology suppression means the ability to build parent-child relationships between devices and between events. When events are correlated, only the parent event is displayed in the Event Console page. The magnifying-glass icon ( ) appears to the left of the parent event. When you click on the magnifying-glass icon, the list of child events is displayed. The child events are rolled up under the parent event and are not displayed in the Event Console page. For the parent event, the count column will be incremented to indicate the number of correlated child events. Optionally, you can define event categories that allow the ScienceLogic platform to more efficiently align suppressing events with suppressible events. When you align an event category to a suppressing or suppressible event, that event will be correlated with only events that are aligned with the same event category.
- Event Masks. In the Device Properties page for each device, you can define an Event Mask. When a device uses the Event Mask setting, events that occur on a single device within a specified span of time are grouped together. In the Event Console, masked events are displayed under a single event, the one with the highest severity. The magnifying-glass icon ( ) appears to the left of the event. When you click on the magnifying-glass icon, the list of all events that are masked under event is displayed.

#### **Defining Event Correlation**

To manually configure event correlation, you must define two types of events:

• Suppressing events. If this event occurs on a parent device, the ScienceLogic platform will search all related children devices for suppressible events. On the children devices, all suppressible events will be suppressed. Only the suppressing event will appear in the Event Console. The suppressible events will not

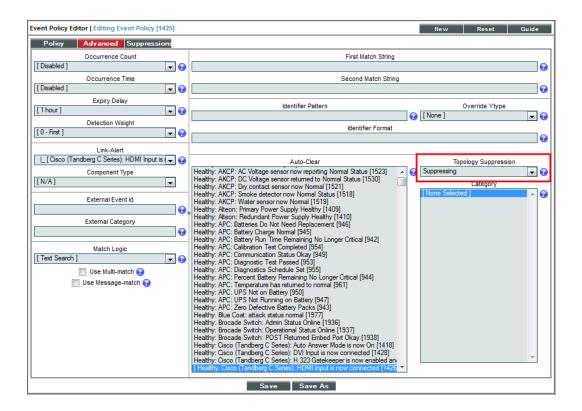
appear in the **Event Console** page.

• Suppressible events. This type of event is suppressed on a child device only when a suppressing event occurs on the parent device.

**NOTE**: If you configure event categories, the suppressing and suppressible events must be associated with the same category for correlation to occur. If you do not configure event categories, each and every suppressing event that occurs on a parent device will cause the ScienceLogic platform to suppress **all suppressible** events on the associated children devices.

To define an event as a suppressing event:

- 1. Go to the **Event Policy Manager** page (Registry > Events > Event Manager).
- 2. In the **Event Policy Manager** page, select the wrench icon ( ) of the event that you want to define as the **suppressing** event. .
- 3. The **Event Policy Editor** page appears.
- 4. In the Event Policy Editor page, select the [Advanced] tab.

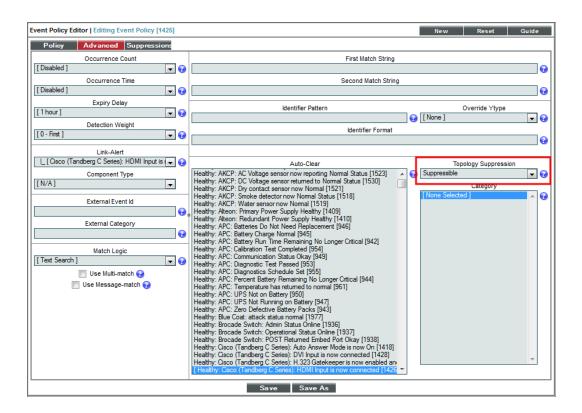


- 5. In the **Topology Suppression** field, select Suppressing.
- 6. Click [Save].

In the future, when this event occurs on a device, the ScienceLogic platform will check if the device is a parent device. If the device is a parent device, specified events (suppressible events) with the same category will be suppressed on the children devices.

To define an event as a suppressible event:

- 1. Go to the **Event Policy Manager** page (Registry > Events > Event Manager).
- 2. In the **Event Policy Manager** page, select the wrench icon ( ) of the event that you want to define as the **Suppressible** event.
- 3. The Event Policy Editor page appears.
- 4. In the **Event Policy Editor** page, select the **[Advanced]** tab.



- 5. In the **Topology Suppression** field, select Suppressible.
- 6. Click [Save].

In the future, when this event occurs on a device, the ScienceLogic platform will check if the device is a child device. If the device is a child device, the platform will check to see if a suppressing event with the same category has occurred on the parent device. If a suppressing event has occurred on the parent device, the specified event will be suppressed on the child device.

#### For example:

• Suppose you have a device named Boise-DMZ. Suppose this device is a Cisco Catalyst switch. Suppose we define this switch as a parent device.

- Suppose we have a device named HQ-W2K3-VC01. Suppose this device is a server. Suppose we define this server as a child device to Boise-DMZ.
- Suppose we define the event "Poller: Interface operationally down" as a suppressing event.
- Suppose we define the event "Poller: Device not responding" as a suppressible event.
- Suppose we associate both events with the same event category.
- If an interface goes down on the switch Boise-DMZ, the platform will not be able to communicate with the server, HQ-W2K3-VC01, attached to the switch.
- So if the event "Poller: Interface operationally down" occurs on *Boise-DMZ*, the event "Poller: Device not responding" will be suppressed on the server *HQ-W2K3-VC01*. In the **Event Console** page, only the event "Poller: Interface operationally down" on the device *Boise-DMZ* will appear.

#### Layer-2 Topology Collection

A layer-2 topology record describes a direct network connection between a parent device (a Network Switch or Network Bridge) and a child device. The child device is either:

- Another bridge device discovered in the platform
- Another type of device that is discovered in the platform
- A device that is not discovered in the platform

Every hour, the platform collects information from the Bridge-MIB from all discovered network switches and bridges. Network switches and bridges that support the Bridge-MIB report information about all MAC addresses for which that network switch or bridge has forwarding information.

During collection, the platform performs the following steps:

- Compiles a list of all devices to poll. The platform polls devices that have a **Device Category** of
  "Network.Switches" (ID 2) or "Network.Bridges" (ID 19). The **Device Category** is defined in the Device Class assigned to the device.
- If the Enable Community String Indexing (VLAN Topology) checkbox is selected in the Behavior
  Settings page (System > Settings > Behavior), the platform compiles a list of vLANs for which data should
  be collected using the CISCO-VTP-MIB. A vLAN is added to the list of vLANs only if the vLAN state is 1
  (operational) and the vLAN type is 1 (ethernet). If the Enable Community String Indexing (VLAN
  Topology) option is disabled, the platform performs collection for vLAN 1 only.
- For each vLAN on each device, the platform polls the Bridge-MIB to collect the list of all MAC addresses for which that network switch or bridge has forwarding information.
- The platform stores a MAC address record if:
  - The status of the record is "3" (learned).
  - An ifIndex value was collected successfully for the associated port index.

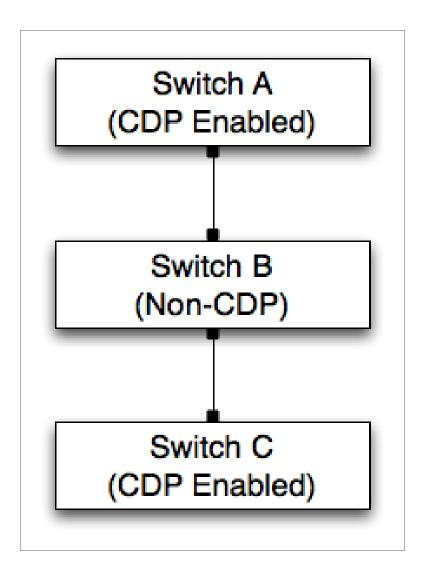
The information collected from the Bridge-MIB does not explicitly indicate which devices are directly connected to a network switch or bridge; switches and bridges will report forwarding information for MAC addresses that are several network hops away from the switch or bridge. A second "crunch" process creates layer-2 topology relationships by evaluating all of the collected MAC address records holistically.

#### **CDP Topology Collection**

A CDP Topology record describes a direct network connection between a parent device (a Network Switch or Network Router) and a child device. CDP stands for "Cisco Discovery Protocol," a proprietary standard that is used by networking devices to communicate configuration information to the other devices in the network. Devices that support CDP store and report information received about their immediate neighbors.

CDP is a proprietary protocol developed by Cisco and is not supported by all network hardware. If your network includes both CDP-enabled and non-CDP network switches and routers, the topology data reported by the CDP-enabled devices might not be accurate.

Suppose a network includes three switches connected in the following way:



- Switch A and Switch C, which are both CDP-enabled, broadcast CDP messages.
- Because Switch B is not CDP-enabled, the broadcast messages from Switch A will reach Switch C. Therefore, Switch C will report that it is directly connected to Switch A.
- Conversely, the broadcast messages from Switch C will reach Switch A. Therefore, Switch A will report that it
  is directly connected to Switch C.

In addition to the CDP data collected from the switches in this example, the platform might also collect layer-2 topology data that can be used to create correct topology links. However, each discovered interface can be associated with only one topology record of *any* type. If a conflict exists between the collected CDP topology data and the collected layer-2 topology data, the CDP topology data takes precedence. In the example above, the CDP topology data will be inaccurate, but the layer-2 data might be accurate. Therefore, if your network includes both CDP-enabled and non-CDP network switches and routers, you might want to disable CDP topology collection in the **Behavior Settings** page (System > Settings > Behavior).

If CDP collection is enabled, the platform collects information from the Cisco-CDP-MIB from all discovered network switches and routers. The platform polls devices that have a **Device Category** of "Network.Switches" (ID 2) or "Network.Routers" (ID 1). The **Device Category** is defined in the Device Class assigned to the device. Network switches and routers that support the Cisco-CDP-MIB report the IP address and interface information for all directly connected devices that are CDP-enabled.

**NOTE**: Although the platform polls all network switches and routers for CDP information, not all network switches and routers support CDP.

Each discovered interface can be associated with only one topology record of *any* type. Therefore, the same "crunch" process that creates layer-2 topology records is also responsible for creating the CDP records based on the collected data. However, unlike layer-2 topology records, the Cisco-CDP-MIB reports only directly connected devices. Therefore, if all associated interfaces are valid and available, there is a 1:1 mapping between collected CDP relationships and the CDP relationships created by the "crunch" process.

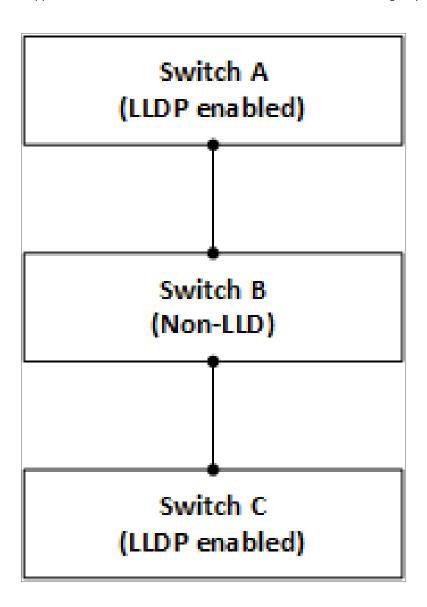
To view CDP maps, go to the **Subnet Map (CDP)** page (Views > Topology Maps > CDP). For details on viewing CDP maps, see the **Views** manual.

#### **LLDP Topology Collection**

An LLDP topology record describes a direct network connection between a parent device (a Network Switch or Network Router) and a child device. LLDP stands for "Link Layer Discovery Protocol," a standard used by networking devices to communicate configuration information to the other devices in the network. Devices that support LLDP store and report information received about their immediate neighbors.

If your network includes both LLDP-enabled and non-LLDP network switches and routers, the topology data reported by the LLDP enabled devices might not be accurate.

Suppose a network includes three switches connected in the following way:



- Switch A and Switch C, which are both LLDP-enabled, broadcast LLDP messages.
- Because Switch B is not LLDP-enabled, the broadcast messages from Switch A will reach Switch C. Therefore, Switch C will report that it is directly connected to Switch A.
- Conversely, the broadcast messages from Switch C will reach Switch A. Therefore, Switch A will report that it is directly connected to Switch C.

In addition to the LLDP data collected from the switches in this example, the platform might also collect Layer-2 topology data that can be used to create correct topology links. However, each discovered interface can be associated with only one topology record of *any* type. If a conflict exists between the collected LLDP topology data and the collected Layer-2 topology data, the LLDP topology data takes precedence. In the example above, the LLDP topology data will be inaccurate, but the Layer-2 data might be accurate. Therefore, if your network includes both LLDP-enabled and non-LLDP network switches and routers, you might want to disable LLDP topology collection in the **Behavior Settings** page (System > Settings > Behavior).

If LLDP collection is enabled, the platform collects information from the LLDP MIB from all discovered network switches and routers. The platform polls devices that have a **Device Category** of "Network.Switches" (ID 2) or "Network.Routers" (ID 1). The **Device Category** is defined in the Device Class assigned to the device. Network switches and routers that support the Cisco-LLDP-MIB report the IP address and interface information for all directly connected devices that are LLDP-enabled.

**NOTE**: Although the platform polls all network switches and routers for LLDP information, not all network switches and routers support LLDP.

Each discovered interface can be associated with only one topology record of *any* type. Therefore, the same "crunch" process that creates Layer-2 topology records is also responsible for creating the LLDP records based on the collected data. However, unlike Layer-2 topology records, the -LLDP MIB reports only directly connected devices. Therefore, if all associated interfaces are valid and available, there is a 1:1 mapping between collected LLDP relationships and the LLDP relationships created by the "crunch" process.

#### Layer-3 Topology Collection

Layer-3 topology records are created by performing a traceroute command from a Data Collector or the All-In-One Appliance to the discovered network hardware every two hours:

- For each "hop" in a traceroute that specifies an IP address associated with a discovered device, the platform creates a layer-3 topology record that connects the device from the previous hop to the device for the current hop.
- Layer-3 topology records are created only when both devices are discovered; layer-3 topology records are not created when one or both of the two devices is unknown.
- If the IP address associated with a hop is associated with an unknown device, the platform does not store that hop or any subsequent hops for that traceroute.
- Layer-3 topology records describe only that two devices are connected; layer-3 topology records do not describe which interfaces on those devices are connected.

For the platform to create layer-3 topology records, the following requirements must be met:

All traceroute commands for layer-3 topology collection originate from Data Collectors or an All-In-One
Appliance. Therefore, the parent node(s) in the layer-3 topology is always a Data Collector or the All-In-One
Appliance. For the platform to create layer-3 topology records, all Data Collectors and All-In-One
Appliances must be discovered.

- The platform performs traceroute commands to devices that have the L3 Topology option enabled. The L3
   Topology option is defined in the device class assigned to a device. For the platform to perform layer-3
   topology collection, at least one device in your system must have the L3 Topology option enabled in the
   device class.
- Your network configuration must allow the traffic generated by the traceroute commands. To test whether
  your network allows this traffic, go to the Device Toolbox page (by clicking the [Toolbox] tab in the Device
  Administration panel) for a device with the L3 Topology option enabled, and then click the Traceroute
  icon.

**NOTE:** A device that has the **L3 Topology** option disabled can still be associated with a layer-3 topology record. If an IP address associated with a device that has the **L3 Topology** option disabled appears as a "hop" in a traceroute command performed for a different device, the device with the **L3 Topology** option disabled will be associated with the layer-3 topology records that represent the hops to and from that device.

# Chapter

13

#### **SSL Certificates**

#### Monitoring SSL Certificates

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is a cryptographic protocol that provide security and data integrity for communications over TCP/IP networks such as the Internet. SSL allows client/server applications to communicate across a network in a way that prevents eavesdropping, tampering, and message forgery.

SSL uses certificates to verify communication and encrypt message. The certificate issuer (also known as the certificate authority or CA) is an organization that issues digital certificates (digital IDs). These digital IDs (called keys) authenticate the identity of people and organizations over a public system such as the Internet. These keys also allow senders and receivers to encrypt messages and un-encrypt replies.

During discovery and nightly auto-discovery, the platform can search for all SSL certificates. If you specify a discovery level and/or a rediscovery level of "3" or greater (in the **Behavior Settings** page), the platform will then collect information about each discovered SSL certificate. You can specify values in the **Asset & SSL Certificate Expiry fields** (also in the **Behavior Settings** page), and the platform will generate the following events to remind you when an SSL certificate is about to expire or has expired:

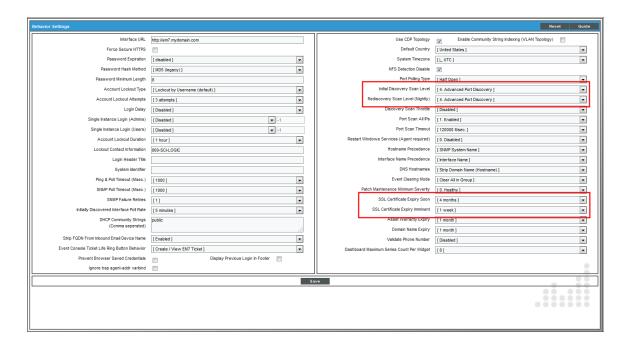
- SSL Certificate due to expire soon. This event will be launched at the time specified in the **Behavior Settings** page, in the **SSL Certificate Expiry Soon** field.
- SSL Certificate due to expire imminently. This event will be launched at the time specified in the **Behavior Settings** page, in the **SSL Certificate Expiry Imminent** field.
- SSL certificate has expired.
- SSL certificate has been renewed. This event will be launched when an SSL certificate has been renewed.

In the **SSL Certificate Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > SSL Certificates) you can view a list of all discovered SSL certificates and their expiration dates.

SSL Certificates 241

# System Settings that Affect SSL Certificates in the ScienceLogic Platform

In the **Behavior Settings** page (System > Settings > Behavior), the following settings affect how the ScienceLogic platform monitors SSL Certificates:



- Initial Discovery Scan Level. Specifies the data to be gathered during the discovery session. The options
  are:
  - 0. Model Device Only. Discovery tool will discover if device is up and running and if so, collect the
    make and model of the device. The platform will then generate a device ID for the device, so it can be
    managed by the platform.
  - 1. Initial Population of Apps. Discovery tool will search for Dynamic Applications to associate with the device. Discovery will also perform "O. Model Device Only" discovery.
  - 2. Discover SSL Certificates. Discovery tool will search for SSL certificates and retrieve SSL data.
     Discovery tool will also perform "1. Initial Population of Apps", and "0. Model Device Only".
  - 3. Discover Open Ports. Discovery tool will search for open ports. Discovery tool will also perform "2. Discover SSL Certificates", "1. Initial Population of Apps", and "0. Model Device Only".

**NOTE**: If your system includes a firewall and you select option 4, discovery may be blocked and/or may be taxing to your network.

- 4. Advanced Port Discovery. Discovery tool will search for open ports, using a faster TCP/IP connection method. Discovery tool will also perform "2. Discover SSL Certificates", "1. Initial Population of Apps", and "0. Model Device Only".
- 5. Deep discovery. Discovery tool will perform advanced OS/service fingerprinting on detected open ports.

**NOTE**: If your system includes a firewall and you select option 4, some auto-discovered devices may remain in a pending state (purple icon) for some time after discovery. These devices will achieve a healthy status, but this might take several hours.

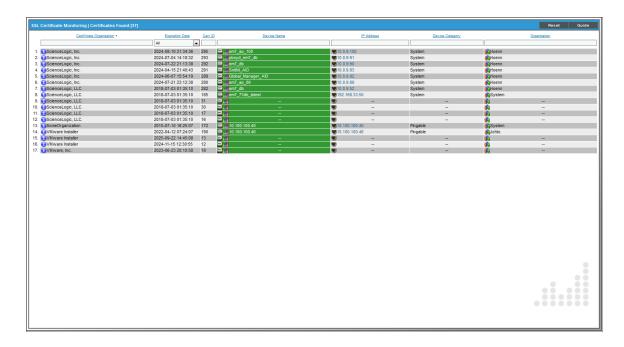
- Rediscovery Scan Level (Nightly). Specifies the data to be gathered/updated each night during the
  rediscovery process. The Rediscovery process will find any changes to previously discovered devices and will
  also find any new devices added to the network. The options are the same as those described for Initial
  Discovery Scan Level.
- SSL Certificate Expiry Soon. Specifies when the platform should notify the user that the SSL Certificate is about to expire soon. The choices range from 1 day to 9 months. When the time between the current date and the expiry date of an SSL Certificate is less than the selected value, the platform will generate an event with a severity of Minor. The event message will say "SSL certificate due to expire soon." When you renew the certificate, the platform will generate a healthy event which will clear the outstanding SSL expiration event(s).
- SSL Certificate Expiry Imminent. Specifies when the platform should send a more urgent notification to the user that the SSL Certificate is about to expire imminently. The choices range from 1 day to 9 months. When the time between the current date and the expiry date of an SSL Certificate is less than the selected value, the platform will generate an event with a severity of Major. The event message will say "SSL certificate due to expire imminently." When you renew the certificate, the platform will generate a healthy event which will clear the outstanding SSL expiration event(s).

#### Viewing the List of SSL Certificates

To view the list of discovered SSL certificates:

1. Go to the **SSL Certificate Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > SSL Certificates).

2. The **SSL Certificate Monitoring** page displays a list of all SSL Certificates discovered by the ScienceLogic platform.



3. For each discovered SSL certificate, the SSL Certificate Monitoring page displays the following information:

**TIP**: To sort the list of SSL certificates, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort by descending order, click the column heading again. The **Expiration Date** column sorts by descending order on the first click; to sort by ascending order, click the column heading again.

- Certificate Organization. Name of the certificate issuer. If the certificate does not include this information, this field will display "Not Specified".
- Expiration Date. Date and time at which the SSL certificate expires. To continue to use the SSL certificate, you must renew it before this date and time.
- Cert ID. Unique, numeric ID, assigned to the monitoring policy automatically by the platform.
- Device Name. Name of the device associated with the SSL certificate.
- IP Address. IP address of the device associated with the SSL certificate. This is the IP address the platform uses to communicate with the device.
- Device Category. Device category of the device associated with the SSL certificate.
- Organization. Organization for the device associated with the SSL certificate.

## Filtering the List of SSL Certificates

You can filter the list on the **SSL Certificate Monitoring** page by one or more parameters. Only SSL certificates that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **SSL Certificate Monitoring** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **SSL Certificate Monitoring** page searches for SSL certificates that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use **special characters** to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

- Certificate Organization. The organization that issued the certificate. This is sometimes called a Certificate Authority.
- Expiration Date. Only those SSL certificates that have the specified expiration date will be displayed. The choices are:
  - All. Display all SSL certificates that match the other filters.
  - Past. Display only SSL certificates that have already expired.
  - Next Week. Display only SSL certificates that will expire within the next week.
  - Next Month. Display only SSL certificates that will expire within the next month.
  - Next Six Months. Display only SSL certificates that will expire within the next six months.
  - Next Year. Display only SSL certificates that will expire within the next year.
- Cert ID. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the SSL Certificate Monitoring page will display only SSL certificates that have a matching cert ID.
- Device Name. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the SSL Certificate

  Monitoring page will display only SSL certificates aligned with a device with a matching device name.
- IP Address. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the SSL Certificate Monitoring page will display only SSL certificates aligned with a device with a matching IP address.
- Device Category. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the SSL Certificate
   Monitoring page will display only SSL certificates aligned with a device with a matching device category.
- Organization. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the SSL Certificate
   Monitoring page will display only SSL certificates that have a matching organization.

# Chapter

14

#### **Device Processes**

#### Overview

A process is a program that is currently running or has been run in the past and is currently idle. Sometimes a process is called a task.

There are two methods for monitoring processes:

- For devices monitored using SNMP, the ScienceLogic platform automatically collects a list of all processes running every two hours.
- For devices monitored using the ScienceLogic agent, the ScienceLogic platform automatically collects a list of all processes running every five minutes.

The ScienceLogic platform allows you to create policies that monitor system processes every five minutes:

- If a device is not monitored using the ScienceLogic agent, the policy collection is performed using SNMP.
- If a device is monitored using the ScienceLogic agent, the policy collection is performed by the agent.

For each monitored process, you can create a policy that specifies:

- Whether or not to generate an event if the process is running.
- How much memory each instance of a process can use.
- How many instances of a process can run simultaneously.
- If policy collection is performed by the agent, how much memory all instances of a process can use in total.
- If policy collection is performed by the agent, how much CPU all instances of a process can use in total.

Device Processes 246

## Viewing the List of Device Processes

The **Device Processes** page displays a list of all processes discovered by the ScienceLogic platform on all devices.

To view the list of all processes running on all discovered devices:

1. Go to the **Device Processes** page (Registry > Devices > Processes).



2. The **Device Processes** page displays the following about each process:

**TIP**: To sort the list of processes, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort the list by descending order, click the column-heading again.

- Device Name. Name of the device where the process resides. For devices running SNMP or with DNS entries, the name is discovered automatically. For devices without SNMP or DNS entries, the device's IP address will appear in this field.
- Organization. Organization associated with the device where the process resides.
- IP Address. IP address of the device where the process resides.
- Device Classification / Sub-Class. The manufacturer (device class) and type of device (sub-class).
   The Device-Class/Sub-Class is automatically assigned during auto-discovery.
- Process. The name of the process. A single process name can have multiple entries.
- PID. A unique ID for the process. The device's operating system assigns this value.
- Memory. The amount of memory currently used/reserved for the process.

- Run State. The current state of the process:
  - Runnable. Process is ready to run as needed.
  - Running. Process is currently running.
  - Not Running. Process is in a "waiting" state.
  - o Invalid. Process is part of an operation that failed. Process was not ended gracefully.

NOTE: Run states are defined by a device's operating system and/or installed agents. Run states may differ between devices.

- Monitored. Specifies whether or not the ScienceLogic platform monitors the process:
  - Yes. The ScienceLogic platform currently monitors this process.
  - No. The ScienceLogic platform does not currently monitor this process.

#### Filtering the List of Device Processes

You can filter the list on the **Device Processes** page by one or more parameters. Only processes that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **Device Processes** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Device Processes** page searches for processes that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use special characters to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

- **Device Name**. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **Device Processes** page will display only processes that have a matching device name.
- Organization. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and
  exclamation mark), and the Device Processes page will display only processes that have a matching
  organization.
- IP Address. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **Device Processes** page will display only processes that have a matching IP address.
- Device Class. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and
  exclamation mark), and the Device Processes page will display only processes that have a matching device
  class.
- **Process**. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **Device Processes** page will display only processes that have a matching process name

Device Processes 248

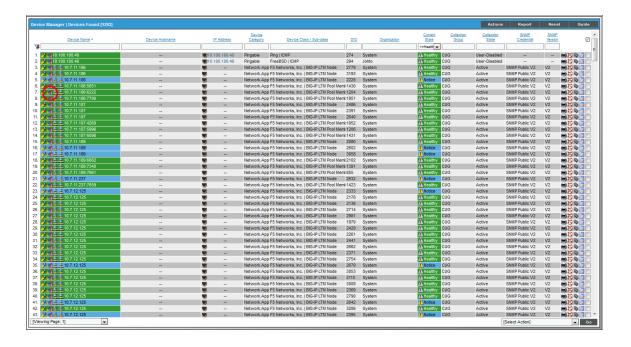
- *PID*. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **Device Processes** page will display only processes that have a matching process ID.
- Memory. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation
  mark), and the Device Processes page will display only processes that have a matching amount of memory
  currently used/reserved for the process.
- **Run State**. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **Device Processes** page will display only processes that have a matching run state.
- *Monitored*. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **Device Processes** page will display only processes that have a matching monitoring status.

## Viewing a List of System Processes on a Single Device

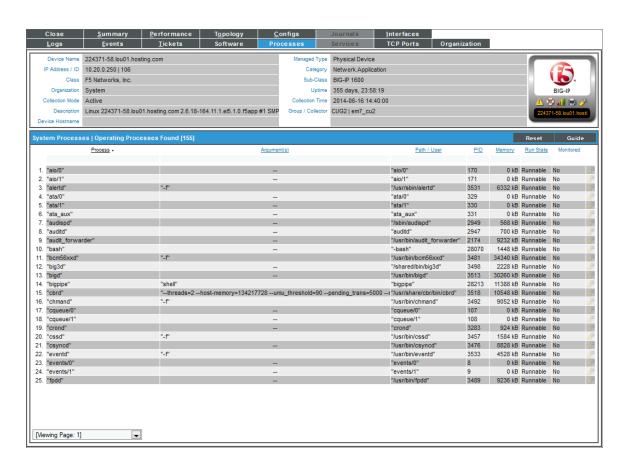
The **System Processes** page displays a list of all of the processes that are running on a single device. The **System Processes** page displays a combined list of processes collected via SNMP and the agent, where applicable.

To view the list of processes on a single device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Find the device where you want to view the list of processes. Select the bar graph icon (📶) for that device.



3. In the **Device Reports** panel, select the Processes tab. The **System Processes** page appears.



4. For each process, the **System Processes** page displays the following information:

**TIP**: To sort the list of processes, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort the list by descending order, click the column heading again.

- Process. The name of the process. A single process name can have multiple entries.
- Argument(s). The arguments with which the process was invoked.
- **Path/User**. The path where the process executable resides. The value in this field varies, depending on the device's operating system and installed agents.
- PID. A unique ID for the process. The device's operating system assigns this value.
- Memory. The amount of memory currently being used/reserved for the process.
- Run State. The current state of the process. This can be one of the following:
  - Runnable. Process is ready to run as needed.
  - Running. Process is currently running.

Device Processes 250

- Not Running. Process is in a "waiting" state.
- o Invalid. Process is part of an operation that failed. Process was not ended gracefully.

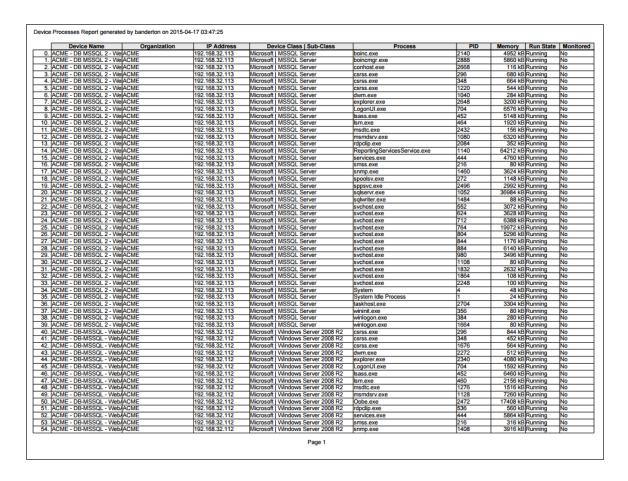
**NOTE**: Run states are defined by a device's operating system and/or installed agents. Run states may differ between devices.

Monitored. Specifies whether or not the ScienceLogic platform is monitoring this process.

#### Generating a Report on Multiple System Processes

From the **Device Processes** page (Registry > Devices > Processes) you can generate a report on all, multiple, or a single process in the ScienceLogic platform.

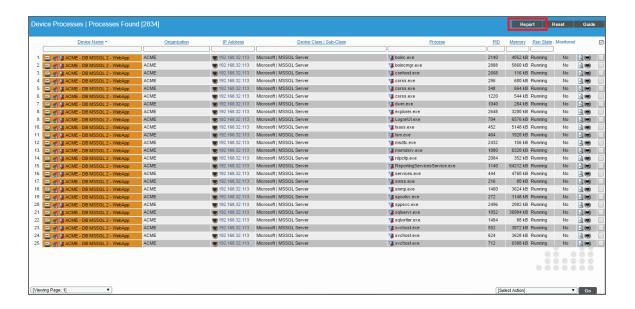
The report will contain all the columns displayed in the **Device Processes** page (Registry > Devices > Processes).



To generate a report on all or multiple device processes in the ScienceLogic platform:

1. Go to the **Device Processes** page (Registry > Devices > Processes).

2. In the **Device Processes** page, select the **[Report]** button.



NOTE: If you want to include only certain processes in the report, use the "search as you type" fields at the top of each column. You can filter the list by one or more column headings. You can then select the [Report] button, and only the processes displayed in the Device Processes page will appear in the report.

3. The **Export current view as a report** modal page appears.

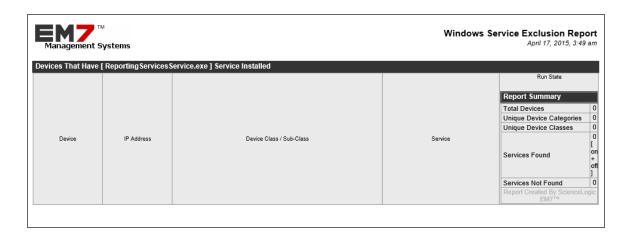


- 4. In the **Export current view as a report** modal page, you must select the format in which the ScienceLogic platform will generate the report. Your choices are:
  - Comma-separated values (.csv)
  - Web page (.html)
  - OpenDocument Spreadsheet (.ods)
  - Excel spreadsheet (.xlsx)
  - Acrobat document (.pdf)

5. Click [Generate]. The report will contain all the information displayed in the Device Processes page. You can immediately view the report or save it to a file for later viewing.

#### Generating an Exclusion Report for a Single System Process

From the **Device Processes** page (Registry > Devices > Processes), you can generate an exclusion report for a process. The ScienceLogic platform will generate the report in MS Word format. An exclusion report specifies all devices where the selected process is running and all devices where the selected process is not running. The ScienceLogic platform lists only appropriate servers in this report. For example, Linux servers would not appear in a report for Windows-based processes.

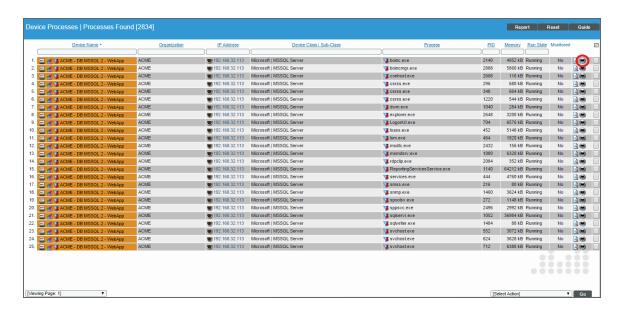


A Process Exclusion Report displays the following:

- Name of the process.
- List of all devices in the ScienceLogic platform where the process is running.
- List of all devices in the ScienceLogic platform where the process is not running. The ScienceLogic platform
  includes only appropriate servers in this report. For example, Solaris servers would not appear in a report for
  a Windows 2000 patch.
- The last row in the report displays:
  - Total number of devices in report.
  - Total number of device categories included in the report.
  - Total number of device classes included in the report.
  - Total number of devices where process is running
  - Total number of devices where process is not running.

To generate an exclusion report about a process:

1. Go to the **Device Processes** page (Registry > Devices > Processes).

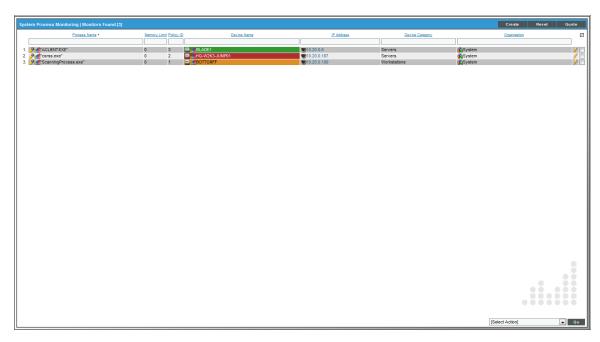


- 2. In the **Device Processes** page, find an instance of the process you want to generate an exclusion report for. Select its printer icon (🗐).
- 3. You will be prompted to save or view the generated report.

**Device Processes** 

## Viewing the System Process Monitoring Policies

You can view a list of system process monitoring policies from the **System Process Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > System Processes). The **System Process Monitoring** page displays the following information about each system process:



- Process Name. Name of the policy.
- **Memory Limit**. The maximum amount of memory that can be used or reserved by a single instance of the process, as specified in the process policy.
- Policy ID. Unique, numeric ID, assigned to the policy automatically by the ScienceLogic platform.
- Device Name. Name of the device associated with the policy.
- IP Address. IP address of the device associated with the policy. This is the IP address the ScienceLogic platform uses to communicate with the device.
- Device Category. Device category of the device associated with the policy.
- Organization. Organization for the device associated with the policy.

#### Filtering the List of System Process Monitoring Policies

You can filter the list on the **System Process Monitoring** page by one or more parameters. Only policies that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **System Process Monitoring** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **System Process Monitoring** page searches for policies that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use special characters to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

- Process Name. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the System Process
   Monitoring page will display only policies that monitor a process that has a matching process name.
- Memory Limit. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the System Process Monitoring page will display only policies that contain a matching per-process memory limit.
- *Policy ID*. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **System Process**Monitoring page will display only policies that have a matching policy ID.
- **Device Name**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **System Process**Monitoring page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching device name.
- *IP Address*. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **System Process**Monitoring page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching IP address.
- Device Category. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the System Process Monitoring page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching device category.
- Organization. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the System Process Monitoring page will display only policies that have a matching organization.

## Defining a Monitoring Policy for a System Process

You can define a process monitoring policy in the **System Process Policy** modal page. You can access the **System Process Policy** page either from the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager) or from the **System Process Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > System Processes).

To access the **System Process Policy** modal page from the **Device Manager** page:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager)
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that you want to associate with the monitoring policy. Select wrench icon () for the device.
- 3. In the **Device Administration** panel for the device, select the **[Monitors]** tab.
- 4. From the [Create] menu in the upper right, select Create System Process Policy.
- 5. The **System Process Policy** modal page appears.

To access the System Process Policy modal page from he System Process Monitoring page:

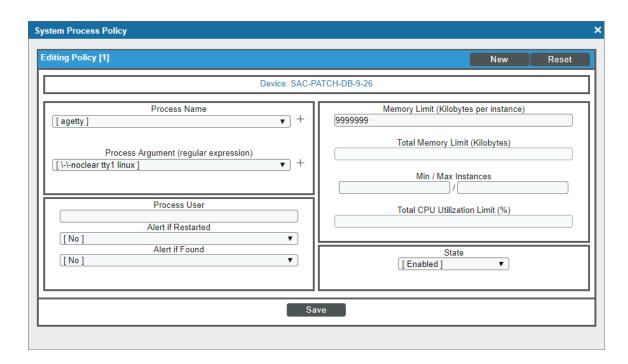
- 1. Go to the **System Process Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > System Processes).
- 2. Select the [Create] button.

Device Processes 256

- 3. Click the device icon ( ) for the device you want to align to policy with.
- 4. The **System Process Policy** modal page appears.

To define a process monitoring policy in the **System Process Policy** modal page:

1. In the **System Process Policy** modal page, supply a value in each of the following fields:



- Process Name. The name of the process. You can either:
  - Select from a list of all processes running on this device.
  - Click on the "+" icon and manually enter the name of a process.
- Process Argument (regular expression). The arguments with which the process is invoked. This field includes a drop-down list of all arguments currently in use by the current device for the specified process (specified in the Process Name field). If you don't want to use an argument from the drop-down, you can manually enter a valid regular expression in this field. If you want to include special characters in this regular expression, be sure to escape those special characters. The Create System Process Policy modal page will display an error message if the regular expression is not valid. The ScienceLogic platform will match the policy to a process if the value in this field appears anywhere in the argument string for that process. For example "win" would match arguments for "windows" and "win2k".
- **Process User**. Search for the following process user or process owner when the process is running. This field is helpful for finding processes running as root or su which should not be.

NOTE: Some hardware includes information about a process user or owner for each process in the SNMP data; some does not. Do not specify a value in the *Process User* field if the device does not include process user or process owner information in its SNMP data. If you specify a process user, and a device does not include process user in its SNMP data, the ScienceLogic platform will not generate an alert, even if it finds this process running

- Alert if Restarted. You can use this field to generate an alert in the Device Log if a system process restarts. Your choices are:
  - Yes. Use this setting to check for system processes that have restarted. The ScienceLogic platform
    checks every 5 minutes to determine if a system process has restarted. If the platform finds a restarted
    system process, it will generate an alert in the Device Log.
  - No. Use this setting if you do not want the platform to check for system processes that have restarted.

**NOTE**: When a system process has been restarted, it receives a new process ID number. It might take up to 2 hours for this new ID to appear on the **Process Manager** page (System > Settings > Processes).

**NOTE**: In some cases, this alert might appear if a device is restarted.

- Alert if Found. You can use this field in one of two ways: generate an event when a required system process is not running or generate an event when an illicit system process is running. Your choices are:
  - Yes. Use this setting to look for illicit processes.
    - If the ScienceLogic platform finds the illicit process (specified in the *Process Name* field), the platform will generate an event.
    - If the platform does not find the illicit process running, the platform will not generate an event.
  - No. Use this setting to ensure that a required process is running.
    - If the platform finds the required (specified in the *Process Name* field) running, the platform does not generate an event.
    - If the platform does not find the required process running, the platform generates an event.
- Memory Limit (Kilobytes per instance). The amount of memory, in kilobytes, you will allow each instance of
  the process to use. This is an optional field.
- Total Memory Limit (Kilobytes). This setting is available only if the ScienceLogic agent is installed on the selected device. The amount of memory, in kilobytes, you will all instances of the process to use in total. This is an optional field.

Device Processes 258

- Min Instances. The minimum number of instances of the process that should be running. If the minimum instances are not running, the ScienceLogic platform generates an event. The event will be of severity "major" and will say "too few processes running."
- Max Instances. The maximum number of instances of the process you will allow to run. If the maximum
  number of instances is exceeded, the platform generates an event. The event will be of severity "major" and
  will say "too many processes process running."
- Total CPU Utilization Limit (%). This setting is available only if the ScienceLogic agent is installed on the
  selected device. The amount of overall CPU you will allow all instances of the process to use in total. This is
  an optional field.
- **State**. Specifies whether the ScienceLogic platform should start collecting data specified in this policy from the device. Choices are:
  - Enabled. The ScienceLogic platform will collect the data specified in this policy, from the device, at the frequency specified in the **Process Manager** page (System > Settings > Processes) for the **Data** Collection: OS Process Check process.
  - Disabled. The ScienceLogic platform will not collect the data specified in this policy, from the device, until the **State** field is set to *Enabled*.
- 2. Click [Save].

**NOTE**: If you want to change the aligned device, click on the link for **Change Selected Device** before you clicked **[Save]**. After you clicked **[Save]**, you cannot edit the aligned device.

#### Editing a Monitoring Policy for a System Process

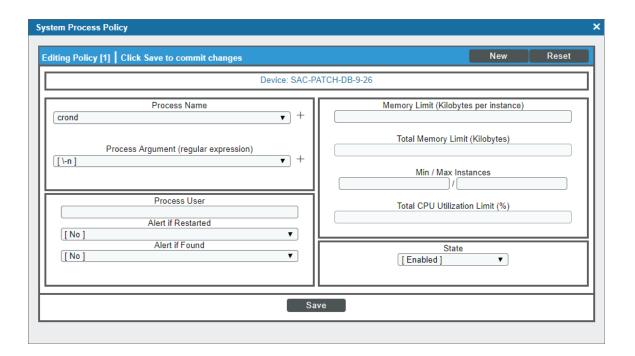
There are two places in the ScienceLogic platform from which you can edit a monitoring policy for a system process:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that you want to associate with the monitoring policy. Select the wrench icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the Device Administration panel, select the [Monitors] tab.
  - In the Monitoring Policies page, find the policy you want to edit and select its wrench icon ( ).

Or:

- 2. From the **System Process Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > System Processes):
  - In the System Process Monitoring page, find the policy you want to edit and select its wrench icon (

3. The **System Process Policy** modal page appears.



- 4. In the **System Process Policy** modal page, you can change the values in one or more of the fields described in the section on **Defining a Monitoring Policy for System Processes**.
- 5. To save your changes to the policy, select the [Save] button.

## Executing a System Process Monitoring Policy

After creating or editing a system process monitoring policy, you can manually execute the policy and view detailed logs of each step during the execution.

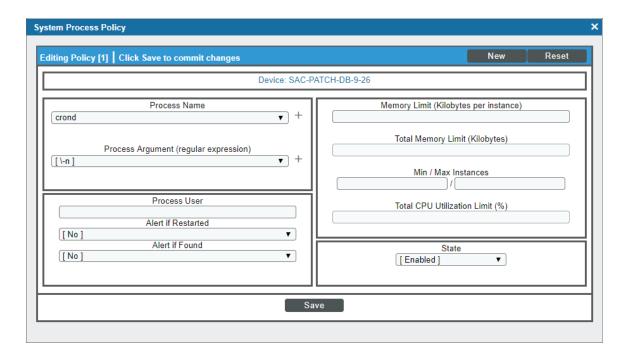
**NOTE**: After you define a system process monitoring policy and enable the policy, the ScienceLogic platform will automatically execute the policy every five minutes. However, you can use the steps in this section to execute the policy immediately and see debug information about the execution of the policy.

To execute a system process monitoring policy:

- 1. In the **System Process Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > System Processes), find the policy you want to run manually.
- 2. Select the lightning bolt icon ( $\nearrow$ ) to manually execute the policy.
- While the policy is executing, the ScienceLogic platform spawns a modal page called Session Logs. The Session Logs page provides detailed descriptions of each step during the execution. This is very helpful for diagnosing possible problems with a policy.

Device Processes 260

## **Example Policy for System Process**



- This policy monitors a system process on the device "em7ao".
- The policy looks for the process "crond".
- If the process is not found running on the device, the ScienceLogic platform generates an event.

## Viewing Reports for a System Process Policy

See the chapter on *Viewing Performance Graphs* in the *Discovery and Credentials* manual for information and examples of reports for system processes.

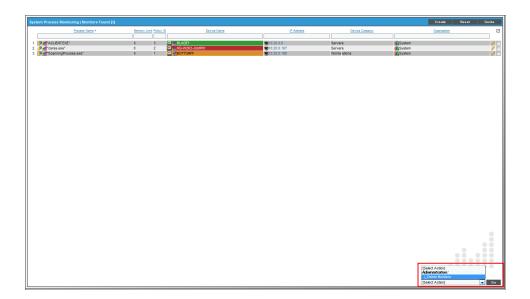
## Deleting a System Process Monitoring Policy

You can delete a system process monitoring policy from the **System Process Monitoring** page. You can delete individual, multiple, or all existing policies. When you delete a system process monitoring policy, the ScienceLogic platform no longer uses the policy to collect data from the aligned device.

To delete a system process policy:

- 1. Go to the **System Process Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > System Processes).
- 2. In the **System Process Monitoring** page, select the checkbox(es) for each system process policy you want to delete. Click the checkmark icon ( ) to select all of the system process policies.

3. In the [Select Action] menu in the bottom right of the page, select Delete Monitors.



- 4. Click **[Go]**.
- 5. The policy is deleted from the ScienceLogic platform. The associated reports (from the Device Reports > **[Performance]** tab) are also deleted.

## Chapter

**15** 

#### **Windows Services**

#### Overview

Windows Services are long-running applications. These applications typically do not have a user interface or produce any visual output. Any messages associated with the service are typically written to the Windows Event Log. Services can be configured to start automatically when the computer is booted. Services do not require a logged in user in order to execute.

During discovery, the ScienceLogic platform retrieves information about Windows Services from discovered devices. When the ScienceLogic platform assigns a device class to a discovered device, the platform examines the definition of that device class to determine how to retrieve information about Windows Services. The platform looks at the **Service Collection** field in the definition of the device class. The **Service Collection** field specifies one of the following:

- This is not a Windows device class.
- Use the Windows MIB to gather information about Windows services.
- Use the WMI Informant MIB to gather information about Windows services.

The ScienceLogic platform allows you to create policies that monitor Windows Services. A service policy tells the platform to monitor the device and look for the service. You can define a service policy so that:

- The platform generates an event if the service is not running or the platform generates an event if the service is running.
- Optionally, the platform starts, pauses, or restarts the service.
- Optionally, the platform reboots or shuts down the device.
- Optionally, the platform triggers the execution of a script (script must reside on the device).

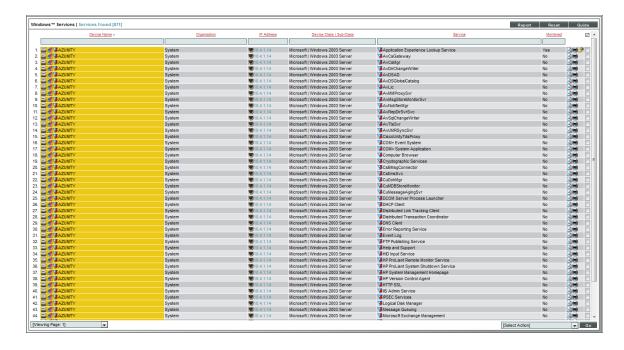
NOTE: In addition to using a Windows Service policy, the ScienceLogic platform includes a PowerPack called "Windows Restart Automatic Services". This PowerPack includes a Dynamic Application that monitors Windows Services with a mode of "Automatic". This PowerPack also includes two events and a Run Book policy. If the Dynamic Application reports that a Windows Service with a mode of "Automatic" has stopped running, the ScienceLogic platform generates an event and the Run Book policy automatically restarts the Windows Service.

#### Viewing the List of Windows Services

The **Windows Services** page displays a list of all services discovered by the ScienceLogic platform. These services are running on devices that have been discovered by the platform. The **Windows Services** page also allows you to define service monitoring for multiple services running on multiple devices and to generate reports on services.

To view the list of all Windows services running on all devices:

1. Go to the **Windows Services** page (Registry > Devices > Services).



2. The Windows Services page displays the following about each process:

**TIP**: To sort the list of services, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort the list by descending order, click the column heading again.

- Device Name. Name of the device where the service resides. For devices running SNMP or with DNS entries, the named device is discovered automatically. For devices without SNMP or DNS entries, the device's IP address will appear in this field.
- Organization. Organization associated with the device.
- IP Address. IP address of the device where the service is located.
- Device Class | Sub-Class. The manufacturer (device class) and type of device (sub-class). The
   Device Class | Sub-Class is automatically assigned during auto-discovery, at the same time as the
   Category.
- Service. The name of the service. A single service name can have multiple entries.
- Monitored. Specifies whether or not the ScienceLogic platform is monitoring the service. The choices
  are:
  - Yes. The ScienceLogic platform is currently monitoring this service.
  - No. The ScienceLogic platform is not currently monitoring this service.
- Tools. For each service, the following tools are available:
  - Locate all services on device (). Leads to the **Services Found** page, where you can view a list of all services that reside on the device.
  - Print exclusion report (). Generates a detailed service report, in MS Word format. This report
    specifies all devices where the selected service is running and all devices where the selected
    service is not running. The ScienceLogic platform lists only appropriate devices in this report. For
    example, Solaris servers would not appear in a report for a Microsoft service.
  - Edit monitoring of this service ( ). Leads to the **Monitoring Policies** page, where you can edit the properties of the monitoring policy.
  - Checkbox (🖾). The checkbox applies the action from the **Select Action** drop-down list to the service. To select all the checkboxes, select the large red check icon.

## Filtering the List of Windows Services

You can filter the list on the **Windows Services** page by one or more parameters. Only services that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **Windows Services** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Windows Services** page searches for services that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use special characters to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

- Device Name. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and
  exclamation mark), and the Windows Services page will display only services that have a matching device
  name.
- Organization. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the Windows Services page will display only services that have a matching organization.
- IP Address. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the Windows Services page will display only services that have a matching IP address.
- Device Class. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and
  exclamation mark), and the Windows Services page will display only services that have a matching device
  class.
- **Service**. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **Windows Services** page will display only services that have a matching service name
- Monitored. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and
  exclamation mark), and the Windows Services page will display only services that have a matching
  monitoring status.

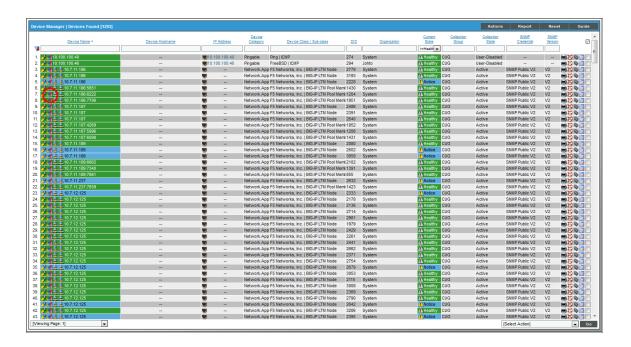
#### Viewing a List of Windows Services on a Single Device

The Windows Services page displays a list of all of the Windows services that are running on a single device.

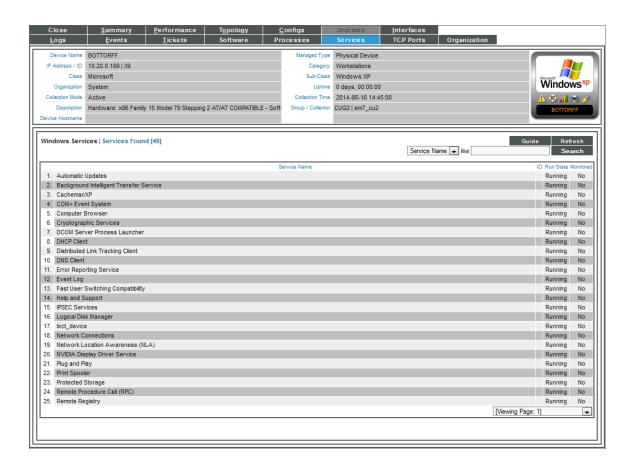
To view the list of Windows services on a single device:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).

2. Find the device where you want to view the list of Windows services. Select the bar graph icon (411) for that device.



3. In the **Device Reports** panel, select the Services tab. The **Windows Services** page appears.



- 4. For each Windows service, the **Windows Services** page displays the following information:
- **TIP**: To sort the list of Windows services, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort the list by descending order, click the column heading again.
  - Service Name. Name of the Windows service.
  - *ID*. If you have defined a monitoring policy for the Windows service, the ScienceLogic platform generates a unique numeric ID for the service.
  - Run State. The current state of the process. This can be one of the following:
    - Runnable. Service is ready to run as needed.
    - Running. Service is currently running.
    - Not Running. Service is in a "waiting" state.
    - o Invalid. Service is part of an operation that failed. Service was not ended gracefully.

**NOTE**: Run states are defined by a device's operating system and/or installed agents. Run states may differ between devices.

• Monitored. Specifies whether or not the ScienceLogic platform is monitoring this Windows service.

## Generating a Report on Multiple Windows Services

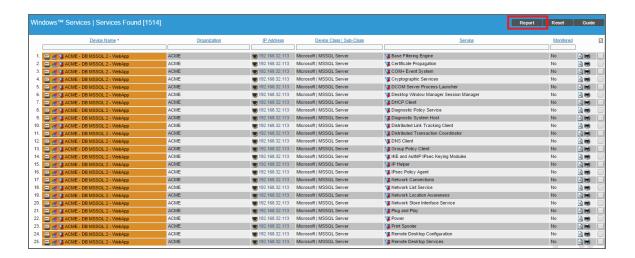
From the **Windows Services** page (Registry > Devices > Services) you can generate a report on all, multiple, or a single service in the ScienceLogic platform. The **Windows Services** page allows you to generate a report that contains all the information displayed in the **Windows Services** page.

	Device Name ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We	Organization	IP Address	Device Class   Sub-Class		Sanda	Monito
_						Service	Monito
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113 192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Base Filtering Engine	No No
						Certificate Propagation	
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	COM+ Event System	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Cryptographic Services	No No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	DCOM Server Process Launcher  Desktop Window Manager Session Manager M	
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server		
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	DHCP Client	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server		No No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server		
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113 192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Distributed Link Tracking Client Distributed Transaction Coordinator	No No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We						
_	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	DNS Client	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server		No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server		No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	IP Helper	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113 192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	IPsec Policy Agent Network Connections	No No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We						
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Network List Service	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Network Location Awareness	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Network Store Interface Service	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Plug and Play	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Power	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Print Spooler	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Remote Desktop Configuration	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Remote Desktop Services	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Remote Desktop Services UserMode Po	
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Remote Procedure Call (RPC)	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Remote Registry	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	RPC Endpoint Mapper	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Security Accounts Manager	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Server	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Shell Hardware Detection	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	SNMP Service	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Software Protection	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	SPP Notification Service	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	SQL Server (MSSQLSERVER)	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	SQL Server Analysis Services (MSSQLS	
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	SQL Server Reporting Services (MSSQL	
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	SQL Server VSS Writer	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	System Event Notification Service	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server		No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	TCP/IP NetBIOS Helper	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	User Profile Service	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Windows Event Log	No
4.			192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Windows Firewall	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Windows Font Cache Service	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Windows Installer	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server		No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Windows Modules Installer	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Windows Remote Management (WS-Ma	
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server		No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	Windows Update	No
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server	WinHTTP Web Proxy Auto-Discovery Se	
	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We		192.168.32.113		MSSQL Server		No
4.	ACME - DB MSSQL 2 - We	IACMÉ	192.168.32.113	Microsoft	MSSQL Server	Workstation	No

To generate a report on all or multiple Windows services in the ScienceLogic platform:

1. Go to the **Windows Services** page (Registry > Devices > Services).

2. In the Windows Services page, select the [Report] button.



NOTE: If you want to include only certain services in the report, use the "search as you type" fields at the top of each column. You can filter the list by one or more column headings. You can then select the [Report] button, and only the services displayed in the Windows Services page will appear in the report.

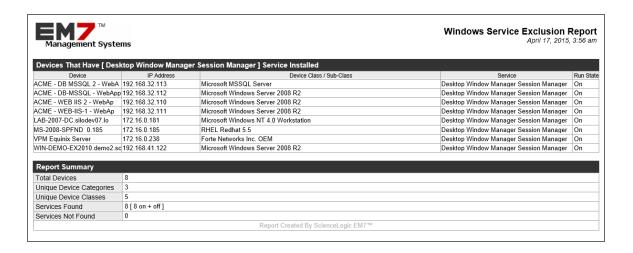
3. The **Export current view as a report** modal page appears.



- 4. In the **Export current view as a report** modal page, you must select the format in which the ScienceLogic platform will generate the report. Your choices are:
  - Comma-separated values (.csv)
  - Web page (.html)
  - OpenDocument Spreadsheet (.ods)
  - Excel spreadsheet (.xlsx)
  - Acrobat document (.pdf)
- 5. Select the **[Generate]** button. The report will contain all the information displayed in the **Windows Services** page. You can immediately view the report or save it to a file for later viewing.

#### Generating an Exclusion Report for a Single Windows Service

From the **Windows Services** page, you can generate an exclusion report for a service. The ScienceLogic platform will generate the report in MS Word format. An exclusion report specifies all devices where the selected Windows service is running and all devices where the selected Windows service is not running. The ScienceLogic platform lists only appropriate devices in this report. For example, Solaris servers would not appear in a report for Windows services.

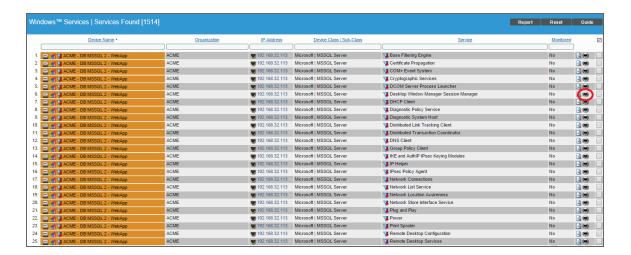


A Windows Services Exclusion Report displays the following:

- Name of the Windows service.
- List of all devices in the ScienceLogic platform where the Windows service is running.
- List of all devices in the ScienceLogic platform where the Windows service is not running. The ScienceLogic platform includes only appropriate servers in this report. For example, Solaris servers would not appear in a report for Windows services.
- The last row in the report displays:
  - o Total number of devices in report.
  - Total number of device categories included in the report.
  - o Total number of device classes included in the report.
  - Total number of devices where Windows service is running.
  - Total number of devices where Windows service is not running.

To generate an exclusion report about a Windows service:

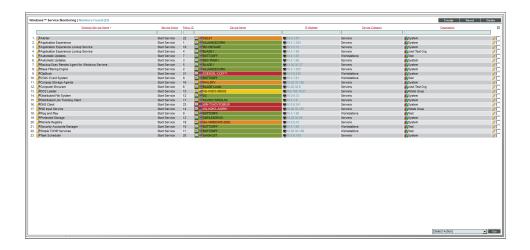
1. Go to the **Windows Services** page (Registry > Devices > Services).



- 2. In the **Windows Services** page, find an instance of the Windows service you want to generate an exclusion report for. Select its printer icon ().
- 3. You will be prompted to save or view the generated report.

## Viewing the Windows Service Monitoring Policies

You can view the list of windows service monitoring policies from the **Windows Service Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Windows Services). The **Windows Service Monitoring** page displays the following information about each windows service monitoring policy:



- Windows Service Name. Name of the service that is monitored by the policy.
- Service Action. On their local devices, Windows services can be defined with a startup-type of "automatic."

  This means that the service is started automatically when the local device is booted. Generally, critical services are defined with a startup-type of "automatic" to ensure that the service is always available. If a service with a startup-type of "automatic" fails on a device, the ScienceLogic platform can automatically restart the service. If an unwanted service is running on a device, the platform can automatically stop the service. For a Windows service-policy, the platform can perform one or more of the following service actions:
  - Stop Service. The platform stops the service.
  - Start Service. The platform starts the service.
  - Pause Service. The platform pauses the service.
  - Restart Service. The platform restarts the service.
  - o Reboot System. The platform reboots the computer.
  - o Shutdown System. The platform shuts down the computer.
  - Action Script. The platform triggers the execution of a script on the device. The script must reside on
    the managed device, in the directory "c:/program files/snmp informant/operating\_system/spawn". For
    example, you might want to execute a script if a service has crashed; the script could execute the steps
    required to cleanup any problems before restarting the service.
- Policy ID. Unique, numeric ID, assigned to the policy automatically by the platform.
- Device Name. Name of the device associated with the policy.
- IP Address. IP address of the device associated with the policy. This is the IP address the platform uses to communicate with the device.
- Device Category. Device category of the device associated with the policy.
- Organization. Organization for the device associated with the policy.

#### Filtering the List of Windows Service Monitoring Policies

You can filter the list on the **Windows Service Monitoring** page by one or more parameters. Only policies that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed on the Windows Service Monitoring page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Windows Service Monitoring** page searches for policies that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the leftmost filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use special characters to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

Windows Service Name. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Windows
 Service Monitoring page will display only policies with a matching name.

- Service Action. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Windows Service Monitoring page will display only policies that perform actions that match the text.
- *Policy ID*. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Windows Service Monitoring** page will display only policies that have a matching policy ID.
- **Device Name**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Windows Service Monitoring** page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching device name.
- IP Address. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Windows Service Monitoring page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching IP address.
- Device Category. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Windows Service Monitoring page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching device category.
- Organization. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Windows Service Monitoring page will display only policies that have a matching organization.

#### Defining a Policy to Monitor Windows Services

Before you can define a Windows service policy that performs action on the external device, you must perform some required configuration in the ScienceLogic platform and on the external server.

#### Optional Settings in the ScienceLogic Platform

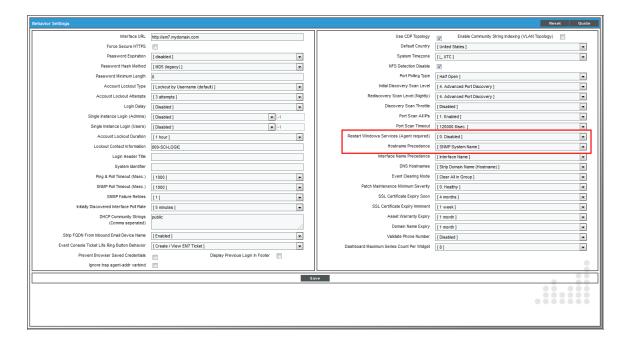
If you do not define a Windows monitoring policy, the platform will still detect the services that are running on Windows devices. You can configure the platform to automatically monitor all services of type "automatic" and restart those services if they fail, without creating a Windows monitoring policy.

You can specify whether the platform will automatically restart failed Windows services in the **Behavior Settings** page (System > Settings > Behavior). In the **Behavior Settings** page, you can define the following options in the *Restart Windows Services* page:

- 0. Disabled. The platform will not automatically restart failed services that have been defined on the device with a startup type of "automatic".
- 1. Enabled. The platform will automatically restart failed services that have been defined on the device with a startup type of "automatic".

NOTE: The following services have a startup type of "automatic", but run only when explicitly called.

Therefore, these services will not be restarted automatically if they are not found running: ATI HotKey Poller, Distributed Transaction Coordinator, Performance Logs and Alerts, Removable Storage, TPM Base Services, Windows Service Pack Installer update service, and VSS. If you would like to include an additional service in this exclusion list, please contact ScienceLogic customer care.

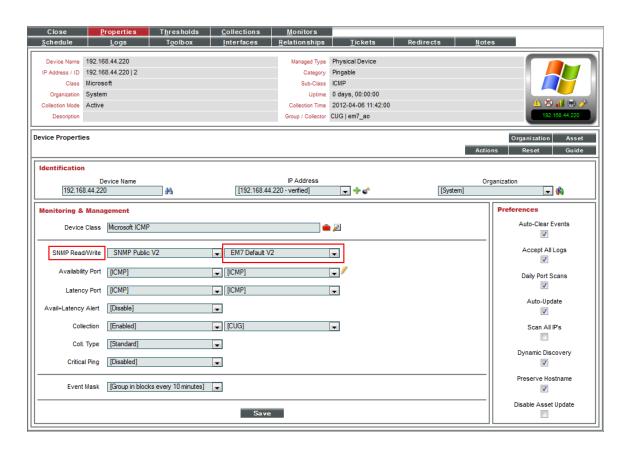


#### Required Configuration

For the platform to automatically monitor services of type "automatic" and/or execute an action for a Windows Service Policy for a device, the device must:

- Be running the SNMP Informant, WMI Edition agent.
- Be aligned to a device class that has "WMI Informant" configured in the Service Collection field.

• Have an SNMP Write credential defined in the **Device Properties** page (Registry > Devices > wrench icon).



Additionally, to configure the platform to execute a script on the external device in response to a Windows Service policy, the script must reside on the external device, in the directory:

c:/program files/snmp informant/operating system/spawn.

#### Required Configuration on External Device

To include any of the optional actions in a Windows service policy, the external device must meet these requirements:

- The external device must be running the WMI agent.
- To execute a script on the external device for monitoring policies, the script must reside on the external device, in the directory:

c:/program files/snmp informant/operating system/spawn.

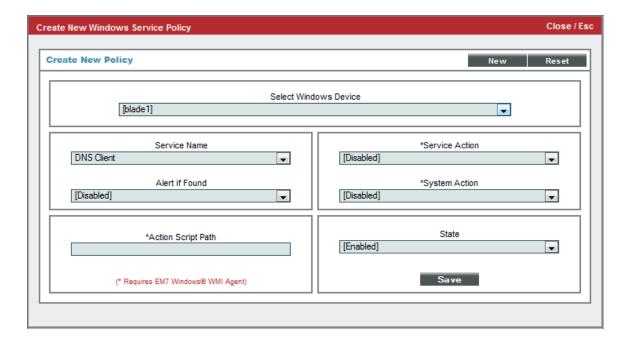
#### Defining the Policy

There are two places in the ScienceLogic platform from which you can define a monitoring policy for a system process:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that you want to associate with the monitoring policy. Select wrench icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the **Device Administration** panel, select the **[Monitors]** tab.
  - From the [Create] menu in the upper right, select Create Windows Services Policy.

Or:

- 2. From the **Windows Service Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Windows Services):
  - In the Windows Service Monitoring page, select the [Create] button.
- 3. The Windows Service Policy modal page appears.



- 4. In the Windows Service Policy modal page, supply a value in each of the following fields:
  - Select Device. Select a device to align with this policy. If you accessed this page through the Device
    Administration panel, the current device is selected in this field by default. This field displays only
    devices that belong to a device class where the Service Collection field contains either Windows
    Basic or WMI Informant.

- **Service Name**. Service to be monitored by the policy. Select from a list of all Windows services discovered in the network by the ScienceLogic platform.
- Alert if Found. You can use this field in one of two ways: Generate an event when a required
  Windows Service is not found or generate an event when an illicit Windows service is found. Your
  choices are:
  - Yes. Use this setting to look for an illicit service.
    - If the platform finds the illicit service (specified in the Service Name field), the platform will generate an event.
    - If the platform does not find the illicit service, the platform will not generate an event.
  - No. Use this setting to ensure that a required service is running.
    - If the platform finds the required service, (specified in the Service Name field, the platform does not generate an event.
    - If the platform does not find the required service, the platform generates an event.
- **Service Action**. If the device is a Windows computer running a WMI agent, you can define some automated actions, based on the condition specified in the **Alert if Found** field.
  - o Disabled. The **Service Action** field is disabled and no automated actions are performed.
  - Stop Service. If the platform has generated an event based on the condition specified in the Alert if
    Found field, stop the service.
  - Start Service. If the platform has generated an event based on the condition specified in the Alert if
    Found field, start the service.
  - Pause Service. If the platform has generated an event based on the condition specified in the **Alert** if **Found** field, pause the service.
  - Restart Service. If the platform has generated an event based on the condition specified in the Alert
    if Found field, restart the service.
- System Action. If the device is a Windows computer running a WMI agent, you can define some
  automated actions, based on the condition specified in the Alert if Found field.
  - o Disabled. The **System Action** field is disabled and no automated actions are performed.
  - Reboot System. If the platform has generated an event based on the condition specified in the Alert
    if Found field, reboot the computer.
  - Shutdown System. If the platform has generated an event based on the condition specified in the Alert if Found field, shut down the computer.
- Action Script Path. If the device is a Windows computer running a WMI agent, you can execute a
  script on the computer. If the platform has generated an event based on the condition specified in the
  Alert if Found field, the platform can then execute the action script. For example, you might want to
  execute a script if a service crashed; the script could execute the steps required to cleanup any

problems before restarting the service. In this field, you can specify the script to execute. The script must reside on the managed device, in the directory "c:/program files/snmp informant/operating\_system/spawn".

- State. Specifies whether the platform should start collecting data specified in this policy from the
  device. Choices are:
  - Enabled. The platform will collect the data specified in this policy, from the device, at the frequency specified in the Process Manager page (System > Settings > Processes) for the Data Collection:
     OS Service Check process.
  - Disabled. The platform will not collect the data specified in this policy, from the device, until the **State** field is set to Enabled.
- 5. To save the new policy, select the [Save] button.

# Executing a Monitoring Policy for a Windows Service

After creating or editing a Windows service monitoring policy, you can manually execute the policy and view detailed logs of each step during the execution. To do so:

**NOTE**: After you define a Windows service monitoring policy and enable the policy, the ScienceLogic platform will automatically execute the policy every five minutes. However, you can use the steps in this section to execute the policy immediately and see debug information about the execution of the policy.

- 1. In the **Windows Service Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Windows Services), find the policy you want to run manually.
- 2. Select the lightning bolt icon ( $\mathcal{I}$ ) to manually execute the policy.
- 3. While the policy is executing, the platform spawns a modal page called **Session Logs**. The **Session Logs** page provides detailed descriptions of each step during the execution. This is very helpful for diagnosing possible problems with a policy.

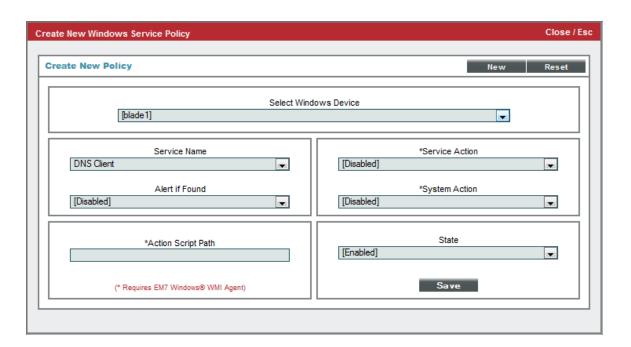
# Editing a Monitoring Policy for a Windows Service

There are two places in the ScienceLogic platform from which you can edit a monitoring policy for a Windows service:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** (Registry > Devices > Device Manager) page:
  - In the Device Manager page, find the device that you want to associate with the monitoring policy.
     Select wrench icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the **Device Administration** panel, select the **[Monitors]** tab.
  - In the Monitoring Policies page, find the policy you want to edit and select its wrench icon ( ).

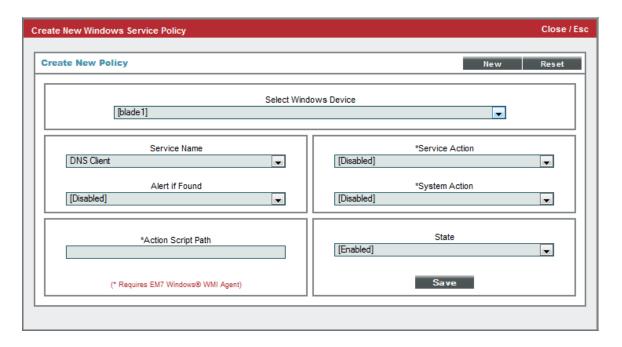
Or:

- 2. From the **Windows Service Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Windows Services):
  - In the **Windows Service Monitoring** page, find the policy you want to edit and select its wrench icon (
- 3. The Windows Service Policy modal page appears.



- 4. In the **Windows Service Policy** modal page, you can change the values in one or more of the fields described in the section on **Defining a Policy to Monitor Windows Services**.
- 5. To save your changes to the policy, select the [Save] button.

# **Example Policy for Windows Service**



- This policy monitors a Windows service on the device "blade1".
- This policy ensures that the Windows service "DNS Client" is running.
- The policy expects that the service "DNS Client" is running. If it is not, the ScienceLogic platform generates an event.

#### Viewing Reports about Windows Services

See the chapter on Viewing Performance Graphs for information and examples of reports for Windows services.

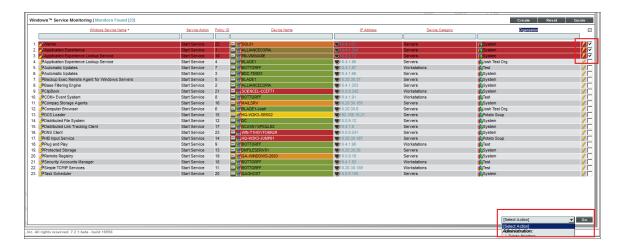
#### Deleting a Windows Service Policy

You can delete a Windows Service monitoring policy from the **Windows Service Monitoring** page. You can delete individual, multiple, or all existing policies. When you delete a Windows Service monitoring policy, the ScienceLogic platform no longer uses the policy to collect data from the aligned device.

To delete a Windows service process policy:

- 1. Go to the **Windows Service Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Windows Services).
- 2. In the **Windows Service Monitoring** page, select the checkbox(es) for each system service policy you want to delete. Click the checkmark icon ( ) to select all of the service policies.

3. In the [Select Action] menu in the bottom right of the page, select Delete Monitors.



- 4. Select the **[Go]** button to delete the Windows service policies.
- 5. The policy is deleted from the ScienceLogic platform. The associated reports (from the Device Reports > **[Performance]** tab) are also deleted.

# Chapter

16

#### **TCP Ports**

#### What is a Port?

Ports are used to route packets on a server to the appropriate application. Ports are like an apartment number in an apartment building; the street address (IP address) gets the message to the right building, and the apartment number (port number) gets the message to the right person. For example, port 80 is the standard port number for HTTP traffic, and port 80 packets are processed by a Web server.

Ports can use the UDP protocol or the TCP protocol. UDP does not include a handshake, does not ensure packets are sent in a particular order, does not return error messages, and will not automatically try to resend or re-receive a packet; TCP will do all these things. Commonly used UDP ports include port 53 for DNS and port 161 for SNMP. Commonly used TCP ports include port 80 for HTTP, port 25 for SMTP, and port 20 for FTP.

Ports 0-1023 are used by common Internet applications such as HTTP, FTP, and SMTP. Ports 1024-49151 can be registered by vendors for proprietary applications.

#### Port Security

The **Port Security** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > bar-graph icon > Performance) displays a list of all open ports on a device.

For SNMP and pingable devices, the ScienceLogic platform scans each device's TCP ports using NMAP.

For devices monitored using the ScienceLogic agent, the agent reports open TCP and UDP ports. By default, the list of discovered ports is then automatically updated in the platform every 5 minutes per agent.

The **Port Security** page displays open port information collected using NMAP and the ScienceLogic agent, where applicable.

For SNMP and pingable devices, the platform scans all the ports of each managed device every day. If any new ports are opened, the platform updates the **Port Security** page and creates an event to notify users. You can explicitly ask that a device not be scanned nightly using NMAP, but if you do, the platform will not notify you of newly opened ports on the device.

#### Port Availability

The ScienceLogic platform can monitor ports for availability. When a port monitor is created, the platform monitors the port for availability every five minutes. You can choose whether a policy is executed by the platform using NMAP or locally on the device by the agent.

During polling, a port has two possible availability values:

- 100%. Port is up and running.
- 0%. Port is not accepting connections and data from the network.

The data gathered by the port monitor is used to create port-availability reports.

If a port is not available, the platform creates an event with the message "port not responding to connection".

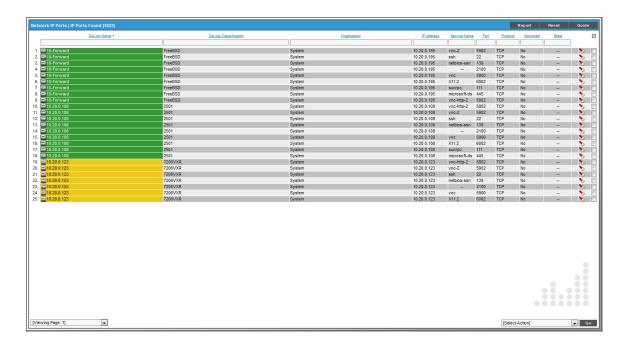
### Viewing a List of All Open Ports on All Devices

The **Network IP Ports** page displays a list of all open ports on all devices discovered by the ScienceLogic platform using NMAP and the ScienceLogic agent.

**NOTE**: Users of type "user" can view only IP ports that are aligned with the same organization(s) to which the user is aligned. This means that the device associated with the port(s) must be aligned with one of the organizations to which the user is aligned. Users of type "administrator" can view all IP ports.

#### To view the **Network IP Ports** page:

1. Go to the **Network IP Ports** page (Registry > Networks > IP Ports).



2. The **Network IP Ports** page displays a list of all discovered ports. For each port, the **Network IP Ports** page displays the following:

**TIP**: To sort the list of ports, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort the list by descending order, click the column heading again.

- **Device Name**. Name of the device where the port resides. For devices running SNMP or with DNS entries, the name is discovered automatically. For devices without SNMP or DNS entries, the device's IP address will appear in this field.
- **Device Classification**. The manufacturer (device class) and type of device (sub-class). The Device-Class/Sub-Class is automatically assigned during auto-discovery, at the same time as the Category.
- Organization. The Organization associated with the device and port.
- IP Address. IP address associated with the open port.
- Service Name. The service accessed through the port.
- **Port**. The port number.
- Protocol. Either TCP or UDP.
- Monitored. Specifies whether the platform is monitoring this port for availability.

- **State**. This column has a value only if a port-monitoring policy has been defined for the port. This field can have one of two values:
  - Enabled. The port-monitoring policy has been activated. The ScienceLogic platform monitors the port and collects availability data about the port.
  - Disabled. The port-monitoring policy has not been activated. The ScienceLogic platform will not monitor the port and does not collect availability data about the port.

#### Filtering the List of IP Ports

You can filter the list of discovered IP ports on the **Network IP Ports** page by one or more parameters. Only IP ports that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **Network IP Ports** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Network IP Ports** page searches for IP ports that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use *special characters* to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

- Device Name. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and
  exclamation mark), and the Network IP Ports page will display only IP ports that are associated with a
  matching device name.
- Device Classification. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and
  exclamation mark), and the Network IP Ports page will display only IP ports that are associated with a
  matching device class.
- Organization. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and
  exclamation mark), and the Network IP Ports page will display only IP ports that are associated with a
  matching organization.
- IP Address. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the Network IP Ports page will display only IP ports that are associated with a matching IP address.
- Service Name. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the Network IP Ports page will display only IP ports that have a matching service name.
- *Port*. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **Network IP Ports** page will display only IP ports that have a matching port number.
- **Protocol**. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **Network IP Ports** page will display only IP ports that have a matching protocol.
- Monitored. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and
  exclamation mark), and the Network IP Ports page will display only IP ports that have a matching value for
  Monitored. Choices are Yes and No.

• **State**. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **Network IP Ports** page will display only IP ports that have a matching value for policy **State**. Choices are *Enabled* and *Disabled*.

## Viewing a List of All Open Ports on a Single Device

**NOTE**: Users of type "user" can view only IP ports that are aligned with the same organization(s) to which the user is aligned. This means that the device associated with the port(s) must be aligned with one of the organizations to which the user is aligned. Users of type "administrator" can view all IP ports.

The **Port Security** page displays a list of all open ports on a single device.

To view the **Port Security** page for a device:

- 1. There are two ways to view the **Port Security** page:
  - Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager). Find the device where you want to view the **Port Security** page. Select the bar graph icon ( ) for that device.
  - Go to the **Network IP Ports** page (Registry > Networks > IP Ports). Find the device for which you want to view the **Port Security** page. Select the flashlight icon (\*) for that device.
- 2. In the Device Reports panel, select the [TCP/UDP Ports] tab. The Port Security page appears.



- 3. For each open port on the device, the **Port Security** page displays the following information:
  - Interface IP. IP address through which the ScienceLogic platform communicates with the device.
  - Port Number. The ID number of the port.
  - Service. The service accessed through the port.
  - Protocol. Either TCP or UDP.
  - Certificate Issuer. If the service on this port uses a certificate, this column contains the name of the certificate authority.

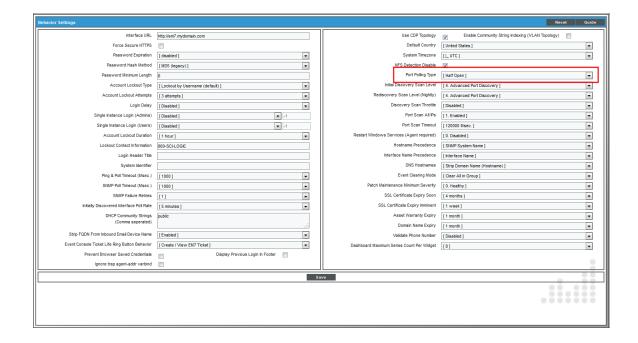
NOTE: Certificates are used by secure services like HTTPS, SSL, SSH, and SFTP to verify communication and encrypt message. The certificate issuer (also known as the certificate authority or CA) is an organization that issues digital certificates (digital IDs). These digital IDs (called keys) authenticate the identity of people and organizations over a public system such as the Internet. These keys also allow senders and receivers to encrypt messages and un-encrypt replies.

• Cert. Expiration. The expiration date of the certificate.

# System Settings for Monitoring Port Availability

Although you are not required to define system settings for port availability, you might find it useful to understand how these settings affect port monitoring.

The **Behavior Settings** page (System > Settings > Behavior) includes the following settings that affect policies for port availability:



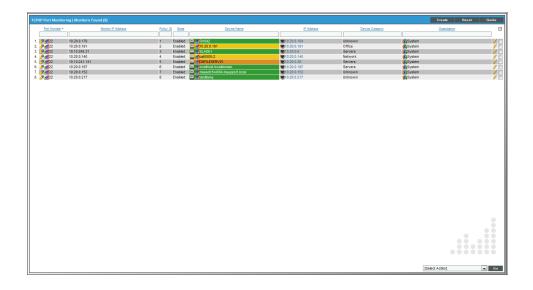
- **Port Polling Type**. Specifies how the ScienceLogic platform should poll ports for availability using NMAP. The choices are:
  - Half Open. Uses a faster TCP/IP connection method (a TCP SYN scan, nmap -sS) and does not appear on device's logs.
  - Full Connect. Uses the standard TCP/IP connection (TCP connect() scan, nmap -sT) to detect open ports.

## Viewing the TCP/IP Port Monitoring Policies

You can view a list of TCP/IP port monitoring policies from the **TCP/IP Port Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > TCP-IP Ports).

The TCP/IP Port Monitoring page displays the following information for each TCP/IP port monitoring policy:

**NOTE**: Users of type "user" can view only IP ports that are aligned with the same organization(s) to which the user is aligned. This means that the device associated with the port(s) must be aligned with one of the organizations to which the user is aligned. Users of type "administrator" can view all IP ports.



- TCP/IP Port Number. Port number of the port to be monitored.
- Monitor IP Address. IP address associated with the port to be monitored. For devices with multiple IP
  addresses, the IP address for the port policy might be different than the IP address used by the ScienceLogic
  platform to communicate with the device.
- Policy ID. Unique, numeric ID, assigned to the policy automatically by the platform.

- Device Name. Name of the device associated with the policy.
- IP Address. IP address of the device associated with the policy. This is the IP address the platform uses to communicate with the device.
- Device Category. Device category of the device associated with the policy.
- Organization. Organization for the device associated with the policy.

## Filtering the List of TCP/IP Port Monitoring Policies

You can filter the list of discovered port monitoring policies on the TCP/IP Port Monitoring page by one or more parameters. Only policies that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the TCP/IP Port Monitoring page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **TCP/IP Port Monitoring** page searches for policies that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use special characters to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

- **Port Number**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **TCP/IP Port Monitoring** page will display only policies that monitor ports with matching port number.
- Monitor IP Address. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the TCP/IP Port
   Monitoring page will display only policies that monitor a port with a matching IP address.
- **Policy ID**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **TCP/IP Port Monitoring** page will display only policies that have a matching policy ID.
- **State**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **TCP/IP Port Monitoring** page will display only policies that have a matching state (enabled or disabled).
- **Device Name**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **TCP/IP Port Monitoring** page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching device name.
- IP Address. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the TCP/IP Port Monitoring page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching IP address.
- **Device Category**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **TCP/IP Port Monitoring** page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching device category.
- Organization. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the TCP/IP Port Monitoring page will display only policies that have a matching organization.

# Defining a Monitoring Policy for Port Availability

**NOTE**: Users of type "user" can view only IP ports that are aligned with the same organization(s) to which the user is aligned. This means that the device associated with the port(s) must be aligned with one of the organizations to which the user is aligned. Users of type "administrator" can view all IP ports.

You can define a port monitoring policy in the TCP/IP Port Policy modal page. You can access the TCP/IP Port Policy page either from the Device Manager page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager) or from the TCP/IP Port Monitoring page (Registry > Monitors > TCP-IP Ports).

To access the TCP/IP Port Policy modal page from the Device Manager page:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager)
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that you want to associate with the monitoring policy. Select wrench icon ( ) for the device.
- 3. In the Device Administration panel for the device, select the [Monitors] tab.
- 4. From the [Create] menu in the upper right, select Create TCP/IP Port Policy.
- 5. The TCP/IP Port Policy modal page appears.

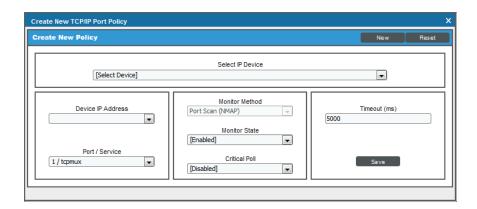
To access the TCP/IP Port Policy modal page from the TCP/IP Port Monitoring page:

- 1. Go to the **TCP/IP Port Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > TCP-IP Ports).
- 2. Select the [Create] button.
- 3. The TCP/IP Port Policy modal page appears.

To define a port monitoring policy:

1. Navigate to the TCP/IP Port Policy modal page. See the procedures above for more information.

2. In the TCP/IP Port Policy modal page, supply a value in each of the following fields:



- **Select Device**. Select a device from this drop-down list to align with this policy. By default, the current device is selected in this field.
- **Device IP Address**. IP address through which the ScienceLogic platform communicates with the device.
- Port/Service. Port number and the corresponding service running on the port.
- Monitor Method. Select whether the policy will be executed using NMAP or using the agent. This option is available only if you selected a device on which the agent is installed.
- **Monitor State**. Specifies whether the platform should start collecting data specified in this policy from the device. Choices are:
  - Enabled. The platform will collect the data specified in this policy, from the device, at the frequency specified in the Process Manager page (System > Settings > Processes) for the Data Collection: TCP Port Monitor process.
  - Disabled. The platform will not collect the data specified in this policy, from the device, until the **State** field is set to Enabled.
- **Critical Poll**. Frequency with which the platform should "ping" the device. If the device does not respond, the platform creates an event. The choices are:
  - Disabled. The platform will not ping the device.
  - Enabled. The platform will ping the device every 15, 30, 60, or 120 seconds, as specified.

**NOTE**: The ScienceLogic platform uses *Critical Poll* data to create events when mission-critical ports are not available. The platform does not use this critical poll data to create port-availability reports. The platform will continue to collect port availability only every five minutes.

3. Click [Save].

# Editing a Monitoring Policy for a TCP/IP Port

You can edit a port monitoring policy on the TCP/IP Port Policy modal page. You can access the TCP/IP Port Policy modal page either from the Device Manager page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager) or from the TCP/IP Port Monitoring page (Registry > Monitors > TCP-IP Ports).

To access the TCP/IP Port Policy modal page from the Device Manager page:

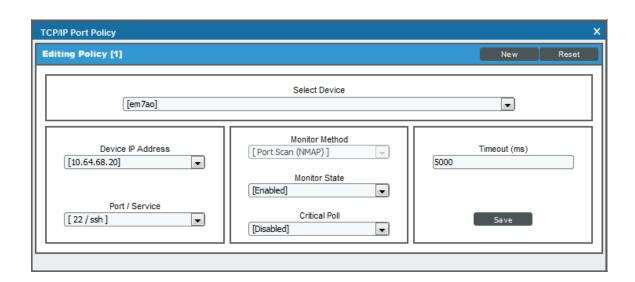
- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager)
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that you want to associate with the monitoring policy. Select the wrench icon ( ) for the device.
- 3. In the **Device Administration** panel, select the **[Monitors]** tab.
- 4. In the Monitoring Policies page, find the port policy you want to edit and select its wrench icon (🏲).
- 5. The TCP/IP Port Policy modal page appears.

To access the TCP/IP Port Policy modal page from the TCP/IP Port Monitoring page:

- 1. Go to the **TCP/IP Port Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > TCP-IP Ports).
- 2. Find the device and port for which you want to edit the monitoring policy. Select the wrench icon ( ) for the port.
- 3. The TCP/IP Port Policy modal page appears.

To edit a port monitoring policy:

- 1. If you have not done so already, navigate to the TCP/IP Port Policy modal page. See the procedures above for more information.
- 2. In the TCP/IP Port Policy modal page, edit the values in one or more of the fields.



3. Click [Save] when done.

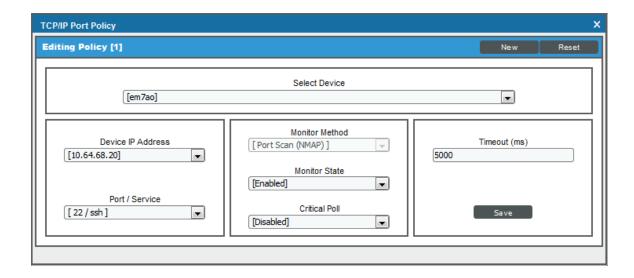
# Executing a TCP-IP Port Monitoring Policy

After creating or editing a TCP-IP port monitoring policy, you can manually execute the policy and view detailed logs of each step during the execution. To do so:

**NOTE**: After you define a TCP-IP port monitoring policy and enable the policy, the ScienceLogic platform or the ScienceLogic agent will automatically execute the policy every five minutes. However, you can use the steps in this section to execute the policy immediately and see debug information about the execution of the policy.

- 1. In the **TCP/IP Port Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > TCP-IP Ports), find the policy you want to run manually.
- 2. Select the lightning bolt icon ( ) to manually execute the policy.
- While the policy is executing, the ScienceLogic platform spawns a modal page called Session Logs. The Session Logs page provides detailed descriptions of each step during the execution. This is helpful for diagnosing possible problems with a policy.

## Example Policy for TCP/IP Port Availability



- This policy monitors a TCP/IP port on the device "cisco\_10.2.1.29", at IP address 10.1.0.205.
- The policy will monitor port 22 for availability.

# Viewing Reports for a Port-Availability Policy

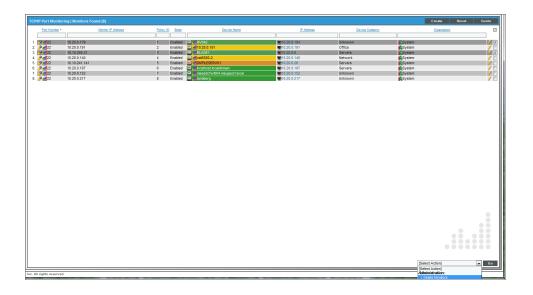
See the chapter Viewing Performance Graphs to view information and examples of reports for port availability.

#### Deleting a TCP/IP Port Monitoring Policy

You can delete a port monitoring policy from the **TCP/IP Port Monitoring** page. You can delete individual, multiple, or all existing port monitoring policies. When you delete a TCP/IP Port Monitoring policy, the ScienceLogic platform no longer uses the policy to collect data from the aligned device.

To delete a port monitoring policy:

- 1. Go to the **TCP/IP Port Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > TCP-IP Ports).
- 2. In the **TCP/IP Port Monitoring** page, select the checkbox(es) for each port monitoring policy you want to delete. Click the checkmark icon ( ) to select all of the system process policies.
- 3. In the [Select Action] menu in the bottom right of the page, select Delete Monitors.



- 4. Click [Go] to delete the port monitoring policy.
- 5. The policy is deleted from the ScienceLogic platform. The associated reports (from the Device Reports > **[Performance]** tab) are also deleted.

# Chapter

# **17**

# The ScienceLogic agent

#### Overview

#### What is the ScienceLogic agent?

A **ScienceLogic agent** is a program that runs on a device or element monitored by SL1. An agent collects data from the device, interface, or other element and pushes that data back to SL1. You can install and use multiple agents, as needed.

Because an agent is always running on a device, an agent can collect more granular data than can be collected by polling the device periodically. You can monitor devices using agents or by SL1 polling the device, or you can use both methods.

#### What Kind of Data Can the ScienceLogic agent Collect?

A ScienceLogic agent collects the following data:

- Device Availability. SL1 can determine the availability state of a device (available or unavailable) and generate trended availability graphs based on uptime data collected by the agent.
- Host Performance Metrics. Using a Dynamic Application, SL1 translates data provided by an ScienceLogic agent to trend the following metrics:
  - o Overall CPU Utilization
  - o Per-Processor CPU Utilization
  - Disk Average Queue Length
  - Disk Utilization
  - Memory Utilization

The ScienceLogic agent 297

- Network Bytes Read
- Network Bytes Written

These metrics can be viewed in the [Performance] tab in the Device Reports panel.

- **Host Configuration**. Using a Dynamic Application, SL1 collects the following configuration data based on data provided by the agent:
  - The number and speed of the installed CPUs
  - o The overall and per-disk storage size
  - The amount of installed memory

The collected configuration data can be viewed in the [Configs] tab in the Device Reports panel.

- **System Processes**. The agent collects a list of all processes running on the device. The list of processes is displayed in the **[Processes]** tab in the **Device Reports** panel. Monitoring policies can be configured to trend and alert on process availability, process CPU usage, and process memory usage.
- Open Ports. The agent collects a list of open TCP and UDP ports on the device. The list of open ports is
  displayed in the [TCP/UDP Ports] tab in the Device Reports panel. Monitoring policies can be configured to
  trend and alert on port availability.
- Logs. The agent can be configured to push logs that match specific criteria from a log file or the Windows
  Event Log to SL1. Logs collected by the agent appear in the Device Logs page for a device and can be
  configured to trigger events.

### Installing the ScienceLogic agent

To install a ScienceLogic agent, you must:

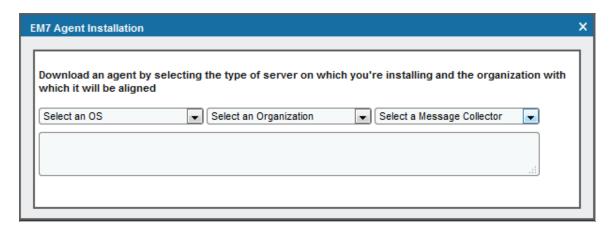
- Gather installation information from the Device Manager page (Registry > Devices > Device
   Manager). For a Linux system, the Device Manager page provides commands that must be executed on the
   Linux system. For a Windows system, the Device Manager page provides an executable file to run on the
   Windows system.
- Install the agent on the Linux or Windows device by running the provided commands or executable.

#### Gathering Installation Information from the Device Manager Page

To gather the necessary commands and/or executable files to install an agent on a device:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).

2. Click [Actions] and select Download/Install Agent. The Agent Installation page appears:



- 3. Complete the following fields:
  - **Select an OS**. Select the operating system running on the device on which you want to install the agent.

**NOTE**: If you require a FIPS-compliant version of the ScienceLogic agent, select RedHat/CentOS 64-bit (OS Libs).

• **Select an Organization**. Select an organization from the list of possible organizations. The list of organizations is dependent on your user account. If the agent discovers a new device, that device will be associated with the organization you select here.

**NOTE**: If you are installing an agent on a device that has already been discovered, you must select the organization that is already aligned with the existing device.

- Select a Message Collector. Select the Message Collector to which the agent will send its collected data.
- 4. If you selected a Linux operating system in the Select an OS field, the Agent Installation page displays a list of commands to execute on the Linux system. Copy the commands for use during the installation on the Linux device.
- 5. If you selected a Windows operating system in the Select an OS field, the Agent Installation page displays a Download Windows Agent link. Click the link and save the executable file for use during the installation on the Windows device.

**TIP**: If you are installing an agent on multiple devices that run the same operating system, are part of the same organization, and connect to the same Message Collector, you can re-use the same commands or executable file on each of those devices.

The ScienceLogic agent 299

#### Installing the Agent on a Linux System

To install an agent on a Linux system:

- 1. Log in to the Linux system via the console or SSH as a user that has sudo administrator permissions.
- 2. Execute the commands that you copied from the **Agent Installation** page in SL1. If the installation was successful, the output will look similar to the following:

```
[em7admin@em7ao ~]$ sudo wget --no-check-certificate
https://10.64.68.16/packages/initial/0/silo-agent-x86 64.rpm
[sudo] password for em7admin:
--2016-11-15 21:10:28-- https://10.64.68.16/packages/initial/0/silo-agent-x86
64.rpm
Connecting to 10.64.68.16:443... connected.
WARNING: cannot verify 10.64.68.16's certificate, issued by
'/C=US/ST=Silo/L=Reston/O=Silo/CN=10.64.68.16':
Self-signed certificate encountered.
HTTP request sent, awaiting response... 200 OK
Length: 2018317 (1.9M) [application/x-rpm]
Saving to: 'silo-agent-x86 64.rpm'
100%[=======] 2,018,317 --.-K/s in 0.01s
2016-11-15 21:10:28 (169 MB/s) - 'silo-agent-x86 64.rpm' saved [2018317/2018317]
[em7admin@em7ao ~]$ sudo rpm -ihv silo-agent-x86_64.rpm
Preparing... ##################### [100%]
Updating / installing...
1:scilogd-0.128-0 ####################### [100%]
Created symlink from /etc/systemd/system/multi-user.target.wants/scilogd.service
to /etc/systemd/system/scilogd.service.
```

#### Checking the Version of the agent on a Linux System

To check the version number of an agent on a Linux system:

- 1. Log in to the Linux system via the console or SSH as a user that has sudo administrator permissions.
- 2. Execute the following command:

```
grep Version /var/log/scilogd.log
```

#### Updating the agent on a Linux System

To update the agent on a Linux system:

- Follow the steps listed in the Gathering Installation Information from the Device Manager Page section.
- 2. Log in to the Linux system via the console or SSH as a user that has sudo administrator permissions.
- 3. Execute the **first** command that you copied from the **Agent Installation** page.
- 4. Do one of the following:
  - For RedHat-based Linux distros, execute the following command:

```
sudo rpm -Uvh silo-agent-x86_64.rpm
```

• For Ubuntu-based Linux distros, execute the following command:

```
sudo dpkg -i silo-agent-x86_64.deb
```

#### Uninstalling the agent on a Linux System

To uninstall an agent on a Linux system:

- 1. Log in to the Linux system via the console or SSH as a user that has sudo administrator permissions.
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - For RedHat-based Linux distros, execute the following command:

```
rpm -e scilogd-0.128-0.[ARCH].rpm where [ARCH] = i386 or x86_64
```

• For Ubuntu-based Linux distros, execute the following command:

```
dpkg --purge silo-agent-[ARCH].deb where [ARCH] = i386 or x86\_6
```

3. Remove the agent configuration directory from the Linux system. The configuration directory can be found at:

```
/etc/scilog
```

#### Installing and Updating the Agent on a Windows System

To install or update an agent on a Windows system:

- 1. Copy the executable file you downloaded from the **Agent Installation** page to the Windows system. You can go to the console of the Windows system or use a utility like WinSCP.
- 2. Run the executable file as an Administrator.
- 3. To verify that the installation was successful, open the Windows Task Manager or enter the TASKLIST command to view running processes. The SiloAgent process will be running on the Windows machine.

#### Checking the Version of the agent on a Windows System

To check the version number of the agent on a Windows System:

- 1. On the Windows system, navigate to C:\Program Files\ScienceLogic\SiloAgent\bin in the File Explorer.
- Right click on the "SiloAgent" file and select Properties. The version number is displayed in the Product Version field.

The ScienceLogic agent 301

#### Uninstalling the agent on a Windows System

To uninstall an agent on a Windows system:

- 1. On the Windows system, open the **Control Panel**.
- 2. Go to the **Programs and Features** page (Control Panel > Programs > Uninstall a program).
- 3. Select the SiloAgent program from the list, and then click [Uninstall].
- 4. When the uninstallation process is complete, remove the agent configuration directory from the Windows system. The configuration directory can be found at:

Program Files\ScienceLogic\SiloAgent\conf

#### Viewing the Discovered Device

If the installation is successful and the agent can communicate with the specified Message Collector over TCP port 443, one of the following automatically happens:

- If the primary IP address of the device is not currently monitored by SL1, then SL1 creates a device record for
  the device and populates the device record with data provided by the agent. The device record is assigned a
  device class based on data reported by the agent.
- If the primary IP address of the device is currently monitored by SL1, the device record for the existing device is updated with data provided by the agent.

## Configuring the Agent

You can control how an agent runs on a device by configuring the following agent settings:

NOTE: To configure agent settings, you must first add the *SL Agent* column to the **Device Manager** page in the classic user interface. For more information about adding the *SL Agent* column, see *Adding the SL Agent Column to the Device Manager Page*.

- **Disk Space**. Controls the amount of disk space that the agent can use to store data. If an agent loses connectivity to SL1, this disk space will be used to store collected data until the connection to SL1 is restored.
- Data Directory. Defines the directory in which the agent will store temporary data.
- Excludes. Defines the list of processes and directories to explicitly exclude from monitoring by the agent.
- *Includes*. Defines the list of processes and directories that must be explicitly monitored by the agent. Use the *Includes* field to ensure that specific processes are monitored.

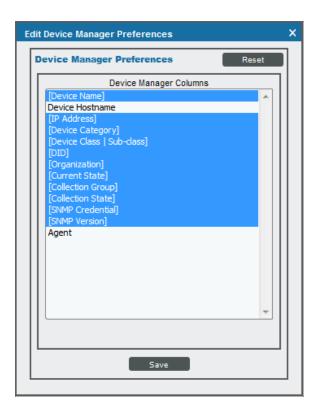
**NOTE**: If a process or directory is included in both the *Excludes* field and the *Includes* field, that process or directory will be monitored by the agent.

#### Adding the "SL Agent" Column to the Device Manager Page

The **SL Agent** column allows you to access the configuration settings for the agent on a device. For more information about agent configuration settings, see **Configuring Agent Settings on a Device**. By default, the **SL Agent** column is not displayed in the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).

To add the **SL Agent** column to the **Device Manager** page:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Click [Actions], and then select Device Manager Preferences. The Edit Device Manager Preferences modal page appears:



- 3. In the **Device Manager Columns** field, control-click Agent.
- 4. Click [Save].

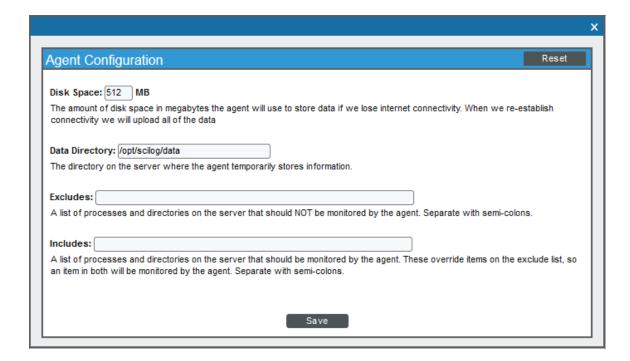
The ScienceLogic agent 303

#### Configuring Agent Settings on a Device

To configure agent settings, you must first add the *SL Agent* column to the *Device Manager* page. For more information about adding the *SL Agent* column, see *Adding the SL Agent Column to the Device Manager Page*.

To configure agent settings on a device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Find the device for which you want to edit agent settings. In the **SL Agent** column, click the gear icon (\*) for the device. The **Agent Configuration** page appears:



- 3. Supply values in the following fields:
  - **Disk Space**. Enter the amount of disk space that the agent can use to store data. If the agent loses connectivity to SL1, this disk space will be used to store collected data until the connection to SL1 is restored.
  - Data Directory. Enter the directory in which the agent will store temporary data.
  - **Excludes**. Enter a semi-colon delimited list of processes and directories to explicitly exclude from monitoring by the agent.
  - *Includes*. Enter a semi-colon delimited list of processes and directories that must be monitored by the agent. Use the *Includes* field to ensure that specific processes are monitored.

**NOTE:** If a process or directory is included in both the *Excludes* field and the *Includes* field, that process or directory will be monitored by the agent.

#### 4. Click [Save].

For more information about monitoring devices with the agent, see the *Monitoring Using the ScienceLogic* agent manual.

The ScienceLogic agent 305

# Chapter

18

# **Monitoring Domain Servers and DNS Records**

## Monitoring Domain Names

Domain-name monitoring policies allow you to monitor the availability and lookup time for a specific domain-name server and a specific record on a domain name server.

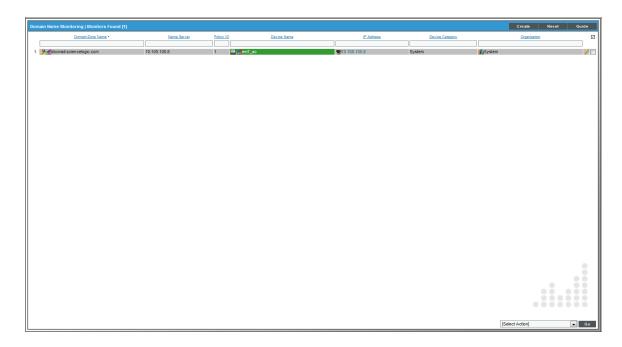
The ScienceLogic platform will send a request to the domain-name server asking the domain-name server to search a specified DNS record for the specified text string. If the domain-name server responds, the platform considers the server as "available".

The ScienceLogic platform also monitors the amount of time it takes for the domain-name server to respond and collects this data to calculate and graph lookup time.

For each domain name policy, the platform will collect data and create trend reports.

# Viewing the List of Domain Name Monitoring Policies

You can view a list of domain name policies from the **Domain Name Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Domain Name). The **Domain Name Monitoring** page displays the following about each domain name monitoring policy:



- Domain/Zone Name. Domain or zone name of the domain being monitored by the policy.
- Name Server. Name server being monitored by the policy.
- Policy ID. Unique, numeric ID, assigned to the policy automatically by the ScienceLogic platform.
- Device Name. Name of the device associated with the policy.
- IP Address. IP address of the device associated with the policy. This is the IP address the platform uses to communicate with the device.
- Device Category. Device category of the device associated with the policy.
- Organization. Organization for the device associated with the policy.

#### Filtering the List of Domain-Name Monitoring Policies

You can filter the list of policies on the Domain Name Monitoring page by one or more parameters. Only policies that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **Domain Name Monitoring** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Domain Name Monitoring** page searches for policies that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use **special characters** to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

- **Domain/Zone Name**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Domain Name Monitoring** page will display only policies that act upon a matching domain name or zone name.
- Name Server. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Domain Name Monitoring page will display only policies that act upon a matching name server.
- *Policy ID*. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Domain Name Monitoring** page will display only policies that have a matching policy ID.
- **Device Name**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Domain Name Monitoring** page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching device name.
- *IP Address*. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Domain Name Monitoring** page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching IP address.
- **Device Class**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Domain Name Monitoring** page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching device class.
- Organization. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Domain Name**Monitoring page will display only policies that have a matching organization.

#### Defining a Monitoring Policy for a Domain Name

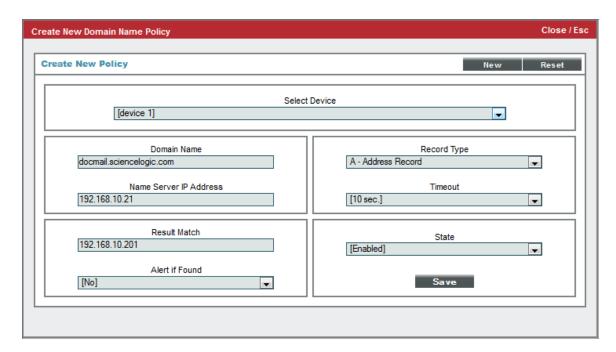
There are two places in the ScienceLogic platform from which you can define a monitoring policy for a domain name:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that you want to associate with the monitoring policy. Select the wrench icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the Device Administration panel, select the [Monitors] tab.
  - From the [Create] menu in the upper right, select Create Domain Name Policy.

Or:

- 2. From the **Domain Name Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Domain Name):
  - Go to the **Domain Name Monitoring** page.
  - Select the [Create] button.

3. The Create Domain Name Policy modal page appears:



- 4. In the Create Domain Name Policy modal page, supply a value in each of the following fields:
  - **Select Device**. Select a device from the drop-down list to align with this policy. By default, the current device is selected in this field.

**NOTE**: Before you can define a domain-name policy, you must decide which managed device you want to associate with the policy. You might want to associate the policy with the domain-name server you will be monitoring with the policy, but you aren't required to do so. The requests to the domain name server will be sent from a ScienceLogic appliance, but you must still associate the policy with a device.

- **Domain Name**. Name of the domain you want to monitor with this policy.
- Name Server IP Address. IP address of the name-server device you want to monitor with this policy. The ScienceLogic platform will use this IP address to communicate with the name-server.
- Record Type. Type of DNS record you want to check for availability and lookup speed.
- **Timeout**. Number of seconds the platform should wait for a response from the domain-name server. If the platform does not receive a response message after the specified number of seconds, the platform generates an event.
- **Result Match**. Text string to search for. The platform will search the selected DNS record for this string. You can enter either a string that should always appear in the specified record or you can enter a string that you do not want to appear in this record (that is, a string that indicates an illicit entry).
- Alert if Found. You can use this field in one of two ways: generate an event when the normal content is not found in a record or generate an event when illicit content is found in a record. The resulting event is of severity "Major" and has the message "DNS expression match failure". Your choices are:

- Yes. Use this setting to look for illicit content in a DNS record.
  - If the platform finds the illicit string (specified in the Result Match field), the platform will generate an event.
  - If the platform does not find the illicit string (specified in the Result Match field), the platform will not generate an event.
- No. Use this setting to ensure that a DNS record contains the expected content.
  - If the platform finds the expected string (specified in the Result Match field), the platform does not generate an event.
  - If the platform does not find the expected string (specified in the Result Match field), the platform generates an event.
- **State**. Specifies whether the platform should start collecting data specified in this policy from the device. Choices are:
  - Enabled. The platform will collect the data specified in this policy, from the device, at the frequency specified in the Process Manager page (System > Settings > Processes) for the Data Collection:
     DNS Policy Monitoring process.
  - Disabled. The platform will not collect the data specified in this policy, from the device, until the **State** field is set to Enabled.
- 5. To save the new policy, select the [Save] button.

# Editing a Monitoring Policy for a Domain Name

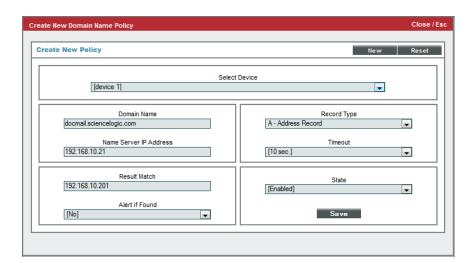
There are two places in the ScienceLogic platform from which you can edit a monitoring policy for a domain name:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the Device Manager page, find the device that you want to associate with the monitoring policy.
     Select the wrench icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the **Device Administration** panel, select the **[Monitors]** tab.
  - In the Monitoring Policies page, find the policy you want to edit and select its wrench icon ( ).

Or:

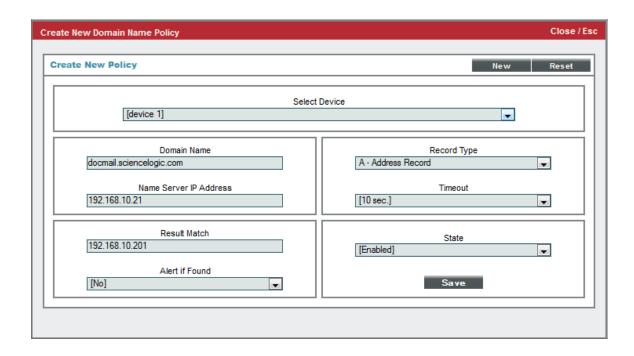
- 2. From the **Domain Name Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Domain Name):
  - 1. In the **Domain Name Monitoring** page, find the policy you want to edit and select that policy's wrench icon ( ).

2. The **Domain Name Policy** modal page appears.



- 3. In the **Domain Name Policy** modal page, you can change the values in one or more of the fields described in the section on **Defining a Monitoring Policy for Domain Name**.
- 4. To save your changes to the policy, select the [Save] button.

# **Example Policy for Domain Name**



- In this policy, we associated the device "device 1" with our policy.
- On the name server 192.168.10.21, we searched for the domain "docmail.sciencelogic.com". Specifically we searched the "A" record for the domain.
- We expect the "A" record to include the IP address "192.168.10.201" (this is the IP address of the device "device 1").
- If the "A" record doesn't exist or doesn't include the specified IP address, the ScienceLogic platform will generate an event.

# Executing the Domain-Name Monitoring Policy

After creating or editing a domain-name monitoring policy, you can manually execute the policy and view detailed logs of each step during the execution. To do so:

**NOTE**: After you define a domain-name monitoring policy and enable the policy, the ScienceLogic platform will automatically execute the policy every five minutes. However, you can use the steps in this section to execute the policy immediately and see debug information about the execution of the policy.

- 1. In the **Domain Name Monitoring** (Registry > Monitors > Domain Name) page, find the policy you want to run manually.
- 2. Select the lightning bolt icon ( $\checkmark$ ) to manually execute the policy.
- While the policy is executing, the ScienceLogic platform opens a modal page called Session Logs. The Session Logs page provides detailed descriptions of each step during the execution. This is helpful for diagnosing possible problems with a policy.

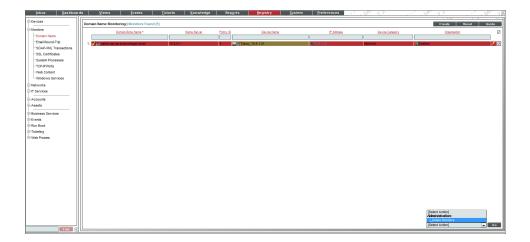
## Viewing Reports for a Domain-Name Monitoring Policy

See the chapter *Viewing Performance Graphs* to view information and examples of reports for domain-name monitoring.

#### Deleting a Domain-Name Policy

You can delete a domain-name policy from the **Domain Name Monitoring** page. Deleting a domain-name monitoring policy will remove all data that was previously collected by the policy. You can delete individual, multiple, or all existing domain-name monitoring policies. To delete a domain-name monitoring policy:

- 1. Go to the **Domain Name Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Domain Name).
- 2. In the **Domain Name Monitoring** page, select the checkbox(es) for each domain name policy you want to delete. Click the checkmark icon ((2)) to select all of the domain-name monitoring policies.
- 3. In the [Select Action] menu in the bottom right of the page, select Delete Monitors.



- 4. Select the **[Go]** button to delete the selected domain-name monitoring policies.
- 5. The policy is deleted from the ScienceLogic platform. The associated reports (from the Device Reports > **[Performance]** tab) are also deleted.

# Chapter

**19** 

## **Monitoring Email Round-Trips**

#### Monitoring Email

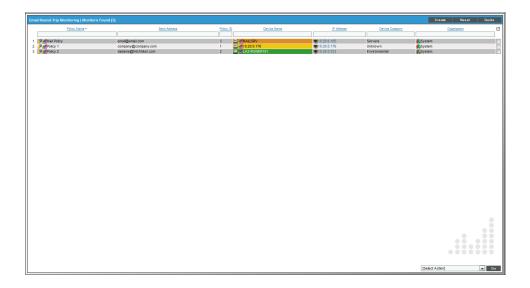
An Email Round-Trip policy monitors the total amount of time it takes to:

- Send an Email message from the ScienceLogic platform to an external Email server.
- Receive a response from the external Email server.

In the policy editor, you specify which mailbox the ScienceLogic platform should send messages to. For each Email policy, the platform will collect data and create trend reports about availability and round-trip time.

## Viewing the Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policies

You can view a list of Email round-trip monitoring policies from the **Email Round-Trip Monitoring** page. The **Email Round-Trip Monitoring** page displays the following about each Email policy:



- Email Round-Trip Policy Name. Name of the policy.
- Send Address. Address to which the policy sends test messages.
- Policy ID. Unique, numeric ID, assigned to the policy automatically by the ScienceLogic platform.
- Device Name. Name of the device associated with the policy.
- IP Address. IP address of the device associated with the policy. This is the IP address the platform uses to communicate with the device.
- Device Category. Device category of the device associated with the policy.
- Organization. Organization for the device associated with the policy.

#### Filtering the List of Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policies

You can filter the list on the **Email Round-Trip Monitoring** page by one or more parameters. Only policies that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **Email Round-Trip Monitoring** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Email Round-Trip Monitoring** page searches for policies that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the leftmost filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use special characters to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

- *Policy Name*. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Email Round-Trip**Monitoring page will display only policies that have a matching name.
- Send Address. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Email Round-Trip
   Monitoring page will display only policies that have a matching send address.
- *Policy ID*. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Email Round-Trip Monitoring** page will display only policies that have a matching policy ID.
- **Device Name**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Email Round-Trip Monitoring** page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching device name.
- IP Address. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Email Round-Trip Monitoring page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching IP address.
- Device Class. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Email Round-Trip Monitoring page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching device class.
- Organization. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Email Round-Trip Monitoring page will display only policies that have a matching organization.

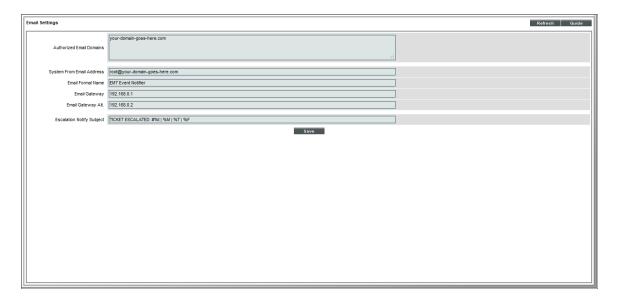
#### Defining an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy

**NOTE**: As soon as you save an Email Round-Trip policy, the ScienceLogic platform will begin sending Email messages to the external Email server. ScienceLogic recommends that you define system settings and configure the external Email system **before** saving the Email Round-Trip policy.

#### Required System Settings in the ScienceLogic Platform

Before you can define a monitoring policy for round-trip Email, you must define the following system settings for the ScienceLogic platform:

1. Go to the **Email Settings** page (System > Settings > Email).



- 2. In the **Email Settings** page, you must define the value of the following fields to use Email round-trip monitoring policies:
  - Authorized Email Domains. The fully qualified domain name of the Database Server or the All-In-One Appliance.
    - A DNS MX record must already exist or be created for each domain specified in this field. Each All-In-One Appliance and each Database Server includes a built-in Email server. When creating the required DNS MX record, you can specify the fully-qualified name of the Database Server or the fully-qualified name of the All-In-One Appliance as the name of the Email server.
  - System From Email Address. Full Email address from which the ScienceLogic platform will sent all
    outbound Email. Specify a mailbox and an Email domain from the list specified in the Authorized
    Email Domains field. For example, if company.com is one of the authorized Email domains, you
    could specify "mailbox@company.com". The ScienceLogic platform would then check this mailbox for
    Email messages associated with Email round-trip policies.
  - *Email Formal Name*. Name that will appear in "from" field in Email messages sent from the ScienceLogic platform.

• *Email Gateway*. IP address or fully-qualified name of the ScienceLogic platform's SMTP Relay server. To use the relay server that is built-in to the platform, enter the IP address or fully-qualified name of the Database Server of the All-In-One Appliance.

If the platform cannot use its built-in SMTP relay server to route Email messages directly to their destination server (for example, due to firewall rules or DNS limitations), the platform can use another relay server. You can specify the IP address or fully-qualified name of the relay server in this field. Make sure you have configured your network to allow the ScienceLogic appliance to access this SMTP Relay server.

- Email Gateway Alt. IP address or fully-qualified name of the secondary SMTP Relay server. If the SMTP Relay server specified in the previous field fails or is unavailable, the platform will use the secondary SMTP Relay server. Make sure you have configured your network to allow the ScienceLogic appliance to access this SMTP Relay server.
- 3. Select the [Save] button to save the settings.

#### Required Configuration on the External Email Client

**NOTE**: As soon as you save the Email Round-Trip policy, the ScienceLogic platform will begin sending Email messages to the external Email server. ScienceLogic recommends that you define system settings and configure the external Email system **before** saving the Email Round-Trip policy.

For an Email round-trip policy to work correctly, the external Email system must automatically send a reply message to the ScienceLogic platform. To make this happen, you must define an auto-forwarding policy or rule on the external Email system that causes the external Email system to send a reply Email message back to the platform.

- You must define an auto-forwarding policy on the external Email system.
- The auto-forwarding policy should look for Email with a "from" address defined in the **Address Masquerade** field of the Email policy.
- If necessary, the auto-forwarding policy can also search for text in the message body. The text will be that defined in the **Message Body** field of the Email policy.
- The auto-forwarding policy should send a return message from the same Email address as that specified in the **Send To Address** field of the Email policy.
- The auto-forwarding policy should *include the subject from the original message and the body from the original message* (from the ScienceLogic platform) in the reply Email. This is easiest to achieve by forwarding the original Email message to the ScienceLogic platform.
- The auto-forwarding policy should send the Email to the following address:

notify@domain-name-of-the ScienceLogic platform

Where "domain-name-of-the ScienceLogic platform" is one of the fully qualified domain names of the Database Server or All-In-One Appliance, i.e., one of the domain names you entered in the **Authorized Email Domains** field in the **Email Settings** page.

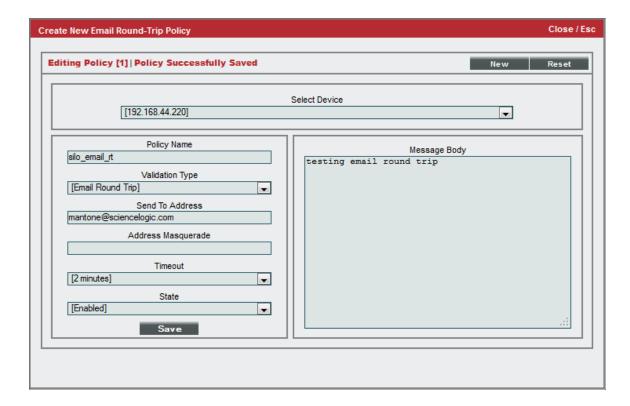
#### Defining the Policy

There are two places in the ScienceLogic platform from which you can define a monitoring policy for round-trip Email:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that you want to associate with the monitoring policy. Select the wrench icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the **Device Administration** panel, select the **[Monitors]** tab.
  - From the [Create] menu in the upper right, select Create Email Round-Trip Policy.

Or:

- 2. From the **Email Round-Trip Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Email Round-Trip):
  - In the **Email Round-Trip Monitoring** page select the **[Create]** button.
- 3. The **Email Round-Trip Policy** modal page appears.



- 4. In the **Email Round-Trip Policy** modal page, supply a value in each of the following fields:
  - **Select Device**. Select a device from this drop-down list to align with this policy. By default, the current device is selected in this field.

NOTE: Before you can define an Email round-trip policy, you must decide which managed device you want to associate with the policy. You might want to associate the policy with the device to which the ScienceLogic platform will send test messages, but you aren't required to do so. Alternately, you might want to create a virtual device to associate with a Email round-trip policy. Although the platform will use only the Send To Address to execute the policy, the reports that result from the Email round-trip policy will be aligned with the device you specify in the Select Device field.

- Policy Name. Name of the Email round-trip policy. Can be any combination of letters and numbers.
- Validation Type. Can select only Email Round Trip.
- **Send To Address**. Email address for the external Email server. Must be a valid Email address. This mailbox must be configured to auto-respond to messages from the Email round-trip policy.
- Address Masquerade. Email address to use as the "From" address. Must be a valid Email address.
  You should choose an address that allows the external Email client to easily identify the incoming
  Email as one from the Email round-trip policy.
- *Timeout*. Number of seconds the platform should wait for a response Email message. If the platform does not receive a response message after the specified number of seconds, the platform generates an event.
- State. Specifies whether the platform should start collecting data specified in this policy from the
  device. Choices are:
  - Enabled. The platform will collect the data specified in this policy, from the device, at the frequency specified in the Process Manager page (System > Settings > Processes) for the Data Collection:
     E-Mail round-Trip process.
  - Disabled. The platform will not collect the data specified in this policy, from the device, until the
     State field is set to Enabled
- Message Body. Body of the Email message to be sent. In some cases, the auto-responder on the
  external Email server may search this message body. Therefore, you should choose a message body
  that allows the external Email client to easily identify the incoming Email as one from the Email roundtrip policy.
- 5. Select the **[Save]** button to save the new policy. The ScienceLogic platform will immediately begin sending Email messages to the **Send To Address**.

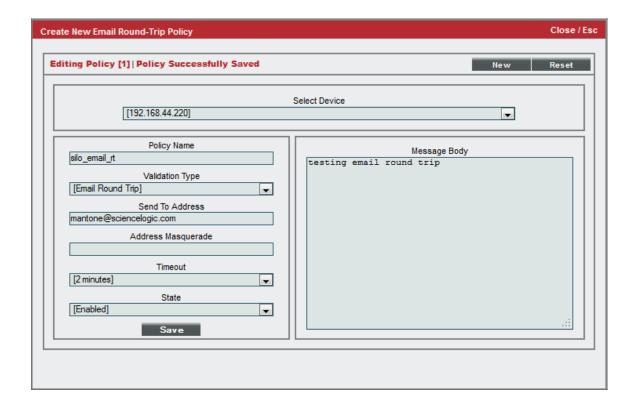
#### Editing an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy

There are two places in the ScienceLogic platform from which you can edit a monitoring policy for a round-trip Email:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that you want to associate with the monitoring policy. Select wrench icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the **Device Administration** panel, select the **[Monitors]** tab.
  - In the Monitoring Policies page, find the policy you want to edit and select its wrench icon ( ).

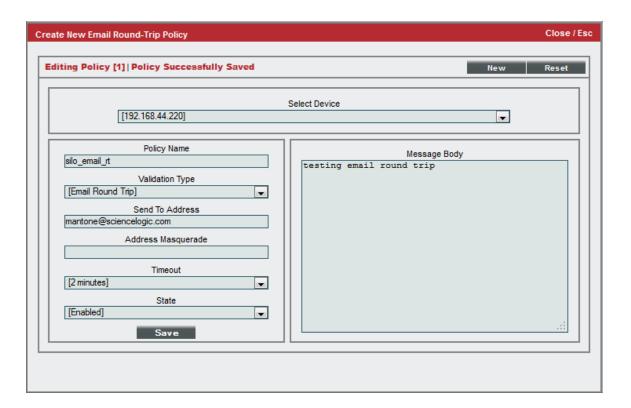
Or

- 2. From the **Email Round-Trip Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Email Round-Trip):
  - In the **Email Round-Trip Monitoring** page, find the policy you want to edit and select its wrench icon ( ).
- 3. The **Email Round-Trip Policy** modal page appears.



- 4. In the **Email Round-Trip Policy** modal page, you can change the values in one or more of the fields described in the section on **Defining an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy**.
- 5. Select the [Save] button to save your changes to the policy.

## Example Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy



- In this example, we associated the policy with the device "192.168.44.220".
- The policy sent an Email message to "mantone@sciencelogic.com". The message contained the body "testing Email round trip".
- The mailbox for mantone@sciencelogic.com included a rule to automatically forward the message back to the original sender.

# How the ScienceLogic Platform Collects and Calculates Round-Trip Time

After an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy has been configured, the ScienceLogic platform will send one Email every five minutes to the **Send To Address** defined in the policy. The platform keeps a record of every sent Email. The same process also checks to see if a response has been received from previously sent Emails.

The response Email that the platform receives must contain the body of the Email that was sent by the platform, which contains a unique ID number. The platform compares the unique ID in the response Email to the record of Emails that the platform sent. By matching the response to the original Email using the unique ID, the platform can handle cases where the response Emails are received out of order.

After the platform has matched the response Email to the corresponding sent Email, the platform calculates the round-trip time. To calculate the round-trip time, the platform subtracts the time the original Email was sent from the time the response was received. The time the response was received is determined by the timestamp in the "Received" header of the response Email.

NOTE: The smallest unit of time recorded in the "Received" header of a response Email is seconds; therefore, Email round-trip times are accurate only to the nearest second. If the response Email is received in the same second the original Email was sent, the ScienceLogic platform will record a round-trip time of zero seconds.

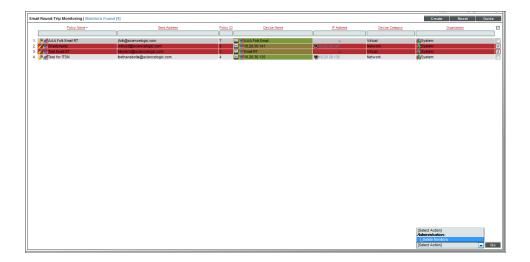
### Viewing Reports on an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy

See the chapter *Viewing Performance Graphs* to view information and examples of reports for Email round-trip monitoring.

#### Deleting an Email Round-Trip Monitoring Policy

You can delete one or more Email round-trip policies. When you delete a Email round-trip policy, the ScienceLogic platform no longer uses the policy to collect data from the aligned device. The ScienceLogic platform also deletes the reports associated with the policy. To delete an Email round-trip monitoring policy:

- 1. Go to the **Email Round-Trip Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Email Round-Trip).
- 2. In the **Email Round-Trip Monitoring** page, select the checkbox(es) for each Email round-trip monitoring policy you want to delete. Click the checkmark icon ( ) to select all of the Email round-trip monitoring policies.



- 3. In the [Select Action] menu in the bottom right of the page, select Delete Monitors.
- 4. Select the [Go] button to delete the selected Email round-trip monitoring policies.
- 5. The policy is deleted from the ScienceLogic platform. The associated reports (from the Device Reports > **[Performance]** tab) are also deleted.

# **Events for Email Round-Trip Policies**

If the Email Round-Trip policy encounters problems, the ScienceLogic platform will trigger events. You can view these events in the **Event Console**.

An Email Round-Trip policy can generate one or more of the following events:

Event Message	Severity	Description	Cause	Clears Event(s)
Mail arrived late - round trip time: %V (%V is replaced with the value returned by the ScienceLogic platform)	Notice	External Email system sent an email back to the ScienceLogic platform, but not within the <i>Timeout</i> period for the policy.	A delay occurred at some point in the path from the external Email system to the ScienceLogic platform.	N/A
Mail did not arrive within threshold time	Major	External Email system did not send an Email back to the ScienceLogic platform.	A block occurred at some point in the path from the external Email system to the ScienceLogic platform.	N/A

Event Message	Severity	Description	Cause	Clears Event(s)
Email Round Trip Outage Ended	Healthy	Round-trip Email policy is working again as expected.	Previous problem was solved.	Mail arrived late - round trip time: %V Mail did not arrive within threshold time
Mail returned to sender - reason: %V %V is replaced with the value returned by the ScienceLogic platform)	Major	The ScienceLogic platform was unable to successfully send an Email to the external Email system.	There is a problem with the destination mailbox, or rules on the destination server prevent mail from being delivered from the ScienceLogic platform.	N/A

# Chapter

**20** 

# **Monitoring SOAP and XML Transactions**

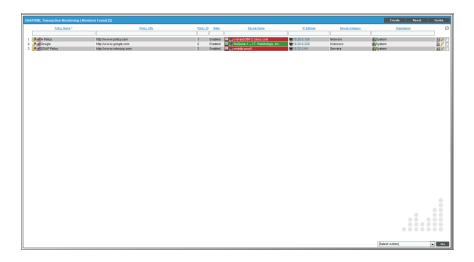
#### Monitoring SOAP or XML Transactions

A SOAP/XML transaction policy can monitor any server-to-server transaction that uses HTTP and can post files or forms (most commonly SOAP or XML but also Email or RSS feeds). The ScienceLogic platform sends a request and some data and then examines the result of the transaction and compares it to a specified expression match.

For each SOAP/XML policy, the platform will collect data and create trend reports about availability, page size, download speed, lookup time, connection time, and transaction time.

#### Viewing the SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring Policies

You can view a list of SOAP/XML transaction monitoring policies from the **SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring** page. The **SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring** page displays the following information on each policy:



- SOAP/XML Policy Name. Name of the policy.
- Policy URL. URL to which the policy sends test transactions.
- Policy ID. Unique, numeric ID, assigned to the policy automatically by the ScienceLogic platform.
- Device Name. Name of the device associated with the policy.
- IP Address. IP address of the device associated with the policy. This is the IP address the platform uses to communicate with the device.
- Device Category. Device category of the device associated with the policy.
- Organization. Organization for the device associated with the policy.

#### Filtering the List of SOAP/XSL Transaction Policies

You can filter the list of policies on the **SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring** page by one or more parameters. Only policies that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring** page searches for policies that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use **special characters** to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

- Policy Name. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the SOAP/XML Transaction
   Monitoring page will display only policies that have a matching name.
- Policy URL. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the SOAP/XML Transaction
   Monitoring page will display only policies that act on a matching URL.
- *Policy ID*. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **SOAP/XML Transaction**Monitoring page will display only policies that have a matching policy ID.
- **Device Name**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring** page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching device name.
- IP Address. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching IP address.
- Device Category. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the SOAP/XML
   Transaction Monitoring page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching device category.
- Organization. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring page will display only policies that have a matching organization.

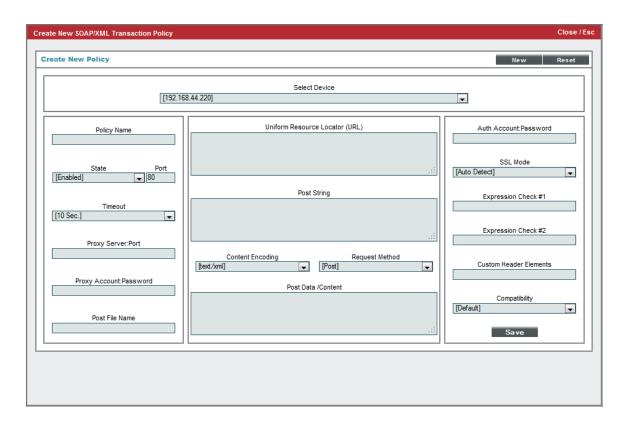
#### Defining a SOAP/XML Transaction Policy

There are two places in the ScienceLogic platform from which you can define a monitoring policy for SOAP/XML transactions:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that you want to associate with the monitoring policy. Select wrench icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the **Device Administration** panel, select the **[Monitors]** tab.
  - From the [Create] menu in the upper right, select Create SOAP/XML Transaction Policy.

Or:

- 2. From the **SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > SOAP-XML Transactions):
  - In the SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring page, select the [Create] button.
- 3. The SOAP/XML Transaction Policy modal page appears.



- 4. In the SOAP/XML Transaction Policy modal page, supply a value in each of the following fields:
  - **Select Device**. Select a device from this drop-down list to align with this policy. By default, the current device is selected in this field.

NOTE: Before you can define a SOAP/XML policy, you must decide which managed device you want to associate with the policy. You might want to associate the policy with the device where the SOAP server or XML datastore resides, but you aren't required to do so. Alternately, you might want to create a virtual device to associate with a SOAP/XML transaction policy. Although the ScienceLogic platform will not use the device name to determine where to send the policy data, the reports that result from the policy will be aligned with the device you specify in the **Select Device** field.

- Policy Name. Name of the new policy. Can be any combination of letters and numbers.
- **State**. Specifies whether the platform should start collecting data specified in this policy from the device. Choices are:

- Enabled. The platform will collect the data specified in this policy, from the device, at the frequency specified in the Process Manager page (System > Settings > Processes) for the Data Collection:
   Web Transaction Verifier process.
- Disabled. The platform will not collect the data specified in this policy, from the device, until the **State** field is set to Enabled.
- Port. Port on web-server to which the platform will send queries. This is usually port 80 (the HTTP port), or port 443 (the HTTPS port).
- **Timeout**. After the specified number of seconds, the platform should stop trying to connect to the server. If the timeout period elapses before the platform can connect to the server, an event is generated.
- **Proxy Server:Port**. For companies or organizations that use proxy servers, enter the URL and port for the proxy server in this field. Use the format:

URL:port number.

• **Proxy Account: Password**. For companies or organizations that use proxy servers, enter the username and password for the proxy server in this field. Use the format:

username:password.

- **Post File Name**. Some server-to-server transactions require data to be uploaded or sent as a Post File. For example, such a file may contain an XML or RSS feed. To send a Post File, specify a name, such as "myrss.xml" in this field. Supply the deliverable data in the **Post Data Content** field.
- Uniform Resource Locator (URL). URL or URI of the server to send the transaction to.
- **Post String**. If the URL is very long or requires data that cannot be transferred with a standard "GET" request (that is, data that cannot be included in the URL), you can enter a POST string in this field. The format is:

```
var1=val1&var2=val2&var3=val3
```

If you are going to include more than one variable/value pair, separate each pair with an ampersand (&).

For example, suppose you want to send values for the following fields:

Birthyear

Value

You could enter the following in the **Post String** field:

Birthyear=1980%Value=OK

**NOTE**: If you want to include non-alphanumeric characters in the **Post String** field, make sure you encode the characters using appropriate URL encoding.

- Content Encoding. Specifies the encoding method used for the request. Choices are:
  - text/xml
  - application/x-www-form-urlencoded
  - multipart/form-data
  - application/soap+xml
  - text/xml;charset=utf-8
- Request Method. Specifies whether the request will be sent as an HTTP POST or an HTTP GET request.
- Post Data / Content. Data to send to the remote server, such as the body of a SOAP request. If you entered a value in the **Post File Name** field, enter the deliverable data in this field.
- Auth Account: Password. For websites that pop-up a dialog box asking for user name and password, use this field. Enter the username and password in this field. Use the format username:password.
- SSL Mode. Specifies whether the platform should use SSL when communicating with the httpd
- Expression Check #1. Regular expression to search for. Can be any alphanumeric value, up to 128 characters in length.
- Expression Check #2. Another regular expression to search for. Can be any alphanumeric value, up to 128 characters in length.
- Custom Header Elements. Allows you to include a custom header with your transaction. Enter the header in this field.
- Compatibility. Specifies the type of application the platform will be communicating with on the server. Choices are:
  - Default. Standard HTTP/HTTPS.
  - SOAP. SOAP-based requests.
  - · Cisco AXL. Cisco AXL interface.
- 5. Select the [Save] button to save the new policy.

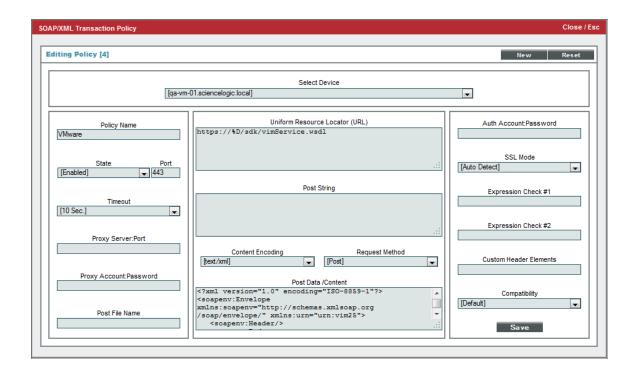
#### Editing a SOAP/XML Transaction Policy

There are two places in the ScienceLogic platform from which you can edit a monitoring policy for SOAP/XML transactions:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the Device Manager page, find the device that you want to associate with the monitoring policy. Select wrench icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the **Device Administration** panel, select the [Monitors] tab.
  - In the Monitoring Policies page, find the policy you want to edit and select its wrench icon (\*).

#### Or:

- 2. From the **SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > SOAP-XML Transactions):
  - In the **SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring** page, find the policy you want to edit and select its wrench icon ( ).
- 3. The SOAP/XML Transaction Policy modal page appears.



- 4. In the **SOAP/XML Transaction Policy** modal page, you can change the values in one or more of the fields described in the section on **Defining a Policy for Monitoring SOAP/XML Transactions**.
- 5. Select the [Save] button to save your changes to the policy.

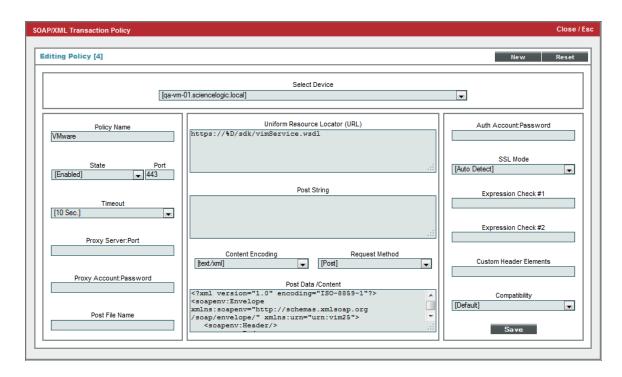
#### Executing a SOAP/XML Transaction Policy

After creating or editing a SOAP/XML transaction policy, you can manually execute the policy and view detailed logs of each step during the execution. To do so:

**NOTE**: After you define a SOAP/XML transaction monitoring policy and enable the policy, the ScienceLogic platform will automatically execute the policy every five minutes. However, you can use the steps in this section to execute the policy immediately and see debug information about the execution of the policy.

- 1. In the SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring page, find the policy you want to run manually.
- 2. Select the lightning bolt icon ( ) to manually execute the policy.
- 3. While the policy is executing, the ScienceLogic platform spawns a modal page called **Session Logs**. The **Session Logs** page provides detailed descriptions of each step during the execution. This is very helpful for diagnosing possible problems with a policy.

#### Example SOAP/XML Transaction Policy



 In this example, the policy monitors SOAP transaction to a VMware ESX server at "https://%D/sdk/vimService.wsdl". VMWare ESX servers accept SOAP requests.

- The policy uses cURL to send a SOAP request to the ESX server.
- The SOAP request includes a SOAP API "RetrieveServiceContent". This API ensures the the ScienceLogic
  platform can communicate with the VMware server and returns information about the services available on
  the VMware server.

#### Viewing Reports on a SOAP/XML Transaction Policy

See the chapter *Viewing Performance Graphs* to view information and examples of reports for monitoring port availability.

#### Viewing Raw Data from a SOAP/XML Policy

You can view the raw data sent from the ScienceLogic platform to the external URL and the raw data returned to the platform. This feature can be helpful when troubleshooting a policy.

To view raw data from a SOAP/XML policy:

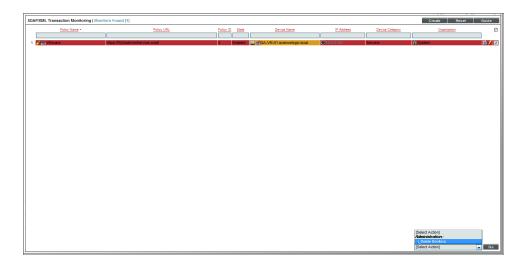
- 1. In the SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring page, find the policy you want to view raw data for.
- 2. Select the page icon ( ) to the far left in the table.
- 3. The **Results Page Dump** modal page appears. This page displays the raw data sent to the external URL and the raw data returned to the ScienceLogic platform.

#### Deleting a SOAP/XML Policy

You can delete individual, multiple, or all existing SOAP/XML policies. When you delete a SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring policy, the ScienceLogic platform no longer uses the policy to collect data from the aligned device.

To delete a SOAP/XML policy:

- 1. Go to the **SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > SOAP-XML Transactions).
- 2. In the **SOAP/XML Transaction Monitoring** page, select the checkbox(es) for each SOAP/XML policy you want to delete. Click the checkmark icon ((2)) to select all of the SOAP/XML policies.
- 3. In the **Select Action** menu in the bottom right of the page, select *Delete Monitors*.



- 4. Select the **[Go]** button to delete the selected SOAP/XML monitoring policies.
- 5. The policy is deleted from the ScienceLogic platform. The associated reports (from the Device Reports > **[Performance]** tab) are also deleted.

# Chapter

21

# **Monitoring Web Content**

#### Monitoring Web Content

The ScienceLogic platform allows users to create policies that monitor a website for specific content. This is helpful:

- To determine if a website is up and running.
- To determine if the connection between a webserver and a database is up and running.
- To monitor system tools that can be accessed through a browser.
- To monitor content on a website.

If the ScienceLogic platform cannot match the expression in the content policy with the text on the website, the platform generates an event.

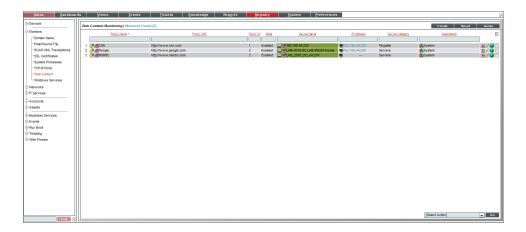
The platform uses cURL to send and receive data from the website.

**NOTE**: Web content monitoring policies cannot monitor web sites larger than 1 MB.

Monitoring Web Content 336

## Viewing the Web Content Monitoring Policies

You can view a list of web content monitoring policies from the **Web Content Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Web Content). The **Web Content Monitoring** page displays the following information for each web content monitoring page:



- Web Content Policy Name. Name of the policy.
- Policy URL. The URL that the ScienceLogic platform will monitor for specified content.
- Policy ID. Unique, numeric ID, assigned to the policy automatically by the ScienceLogic platform.
- **State**. Whether the ScienceLogic platform will monitor the external website. This column will either show "Enabled" (the platform will monitor the external website) or "Disabled" (the platform will not monitor the external website).
- Device Name. Name of the device associated with the policy.
- IP Address. IP address of the device associated with the policy. This is the IP address the platform uses to communicate with the device.
- Device Category. Device category of the device associated with the policy.
- Organization. Organization for the device associated with the policy.

#### Filtering the List of Web Content Monitoring Policies

You can filter the list of policies on the **Web Content Monitoring** page by one or more parameters. Only policies that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **Web Content Monitoring** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Web Content Monitoring** page searches for policies that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use special characters to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

- *Policy Name*. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Web Content Monitoring** page will display only policies with a matching name.
- *Policy URL*. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Web Content Monitoring** page will display only policies that monitor URLs that match the text.
- **Policy ID**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Web Content Monitoring** page will display only policies that have a matching policy ID.
- **State**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Web Content Monitoring** page will display only policies that have a matching state (enabled or disabled).
- **Device Name**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Web Content Monitoring** page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching device name.
- IP Address. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Web Content Monitoring page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching IP address.
- **Device Category**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Web Content Monitoring** page will display only policies aligned with a device with a matching device category.
- Organization. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Web Content Monitoring page will display only policies that have a matching organization.

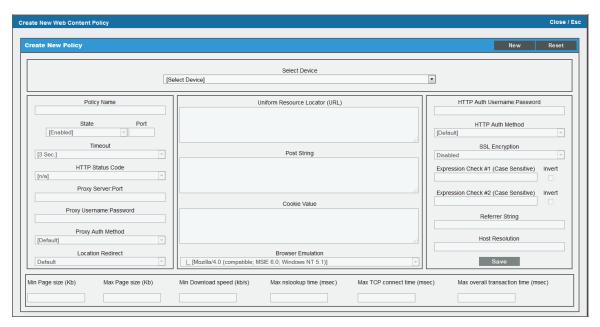
#### Defining a Web Content Policy

There are two places in the ScienceLogic platform from which you can define a policy for monitoring web content:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that you want to associate with the monitoring policy. Select the wrench icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the Device Administration panel, select the [Monitors] tab.
  - From the [Create] menu in the upper right, select Create Web Content Policy.

Or:

- 2. From the **Web Content Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Web Content):
  - In the Web Content Monitoring page, select the [Create] button.
- 3. The Web Content Policy modal page appears.



- 4. In the Web Content Policy modal page, supply a value in the following fields:
  - **Select Device**. From this drop-down list, select a device to align with this policy. By default, the current device is selected in this field.

**NOTE**: Before you can define a content policy, you must decide which managed device you want to associate with the policy. You might want to associate the policy with the web server you will be monitoring with the policy, but you aren't required to do so. The requests to the web server will be sent from an appliance, but you must still associate the policy with a device.

- Policy Name. Name of the new policy. Can be any combination of letters and numbers.
- **State**. Specifies whether the ScienceLogic platform should start collecting data specified in this policy from the device. Choices are:
  - Enabled. The platform will collect the data specified in this policy, from the device, at the
    frequency specified in the Process Manager page (System > Settings > Processes) for the
    Data Collection: Web Content Verifier process.
  - Disabled. The platform will not collect the data specified in this policy, from the device, until the **State** field is set to Enabled.
- **Port**. Port on web-server to which the platform will send queries. This is usually port 80 (the HTTP port), or port 443 (the HTTPS port).
- **Timeout**. After specified number of seconds, the platform should stop trying to connect to the server. If the timeout period elapses before the platform can connect to the server, an event is generated.
- HTTP Status Code. Specify the HTTP status code you expect to receive in the response. If any other status code is returned, the platform will generate an event.
- **Proxy Server:Port**. For companies or organizations that use proxy servers, enter the URL and port for the proxy server in this field. Use the format:
  - URL:port number.
- **Proxy Username:Password**. For companies or organizations that use proxy servers, enter the username and password for the proxy server in this field. Use the format "user name:password".
- **Proxy Auth Method**. For companies or organizations that use proxy servers, specify the type of authentication:
  - Default. By default, no authentication parameters are sent. Use this option for proxy servers that
    do not require authentication. However, if you supply a value in another field that requires
    authentication, e.g. *Proxy Username:Password*, the Any authentication parameter will be
    used.
  - Basic. Most widely compatible authentication across platforms. Sends a Base64-encoded string
    that contains a user name and password for the client. Base64 is not a form of encryption and
    should be considered the same as sending the user name and password in clear text.

Monitoring Web Content 340

- Digest. Password is transmitted as encrypted text, but the user name and content of the
  message are not encrypted. Digest authentication is a challenge-response scheme that is
  intended to replace Basic authentication. The server sends a string of random data called a
  nonce to the client as a challenge. The client responds with a hash that includes the user
  name, password, and nonce, among additional information.
- GSS-Negotiate. Authenticates using Kerberos and the GSS-API. Kerberos authentication is
  faster than NTLM and allows the use of mutual authentication and delegation of credentials to
  remote machines.
- NTLM. NT LAN Manager (NTLM) authentication is a challenge-response scheme that is a
  more secure variation of Digest authentication. NTLM uses Windows credentials to transform
  the challenge data instead of the unencoded user name and password. NTLM authentication
  requires multiple exchanges between the client and server. The server and any intervening
  proxies must support persistent connections to successfully complete the authentication
- Any. Accept any type of authentication.
- Any except Basic (Any Safe). Accept any type of authentication except Basic.
- Location Redirect. Specifies how you want the policy to behave when it encounters an HTTP redirect in a target website. Choices are:
  - Default. If you selected 301, 302, or 303 in the HTTP Status Code field, the web content
    policy will not follow redirection by default. The default behavior for all other web content
    policies is to follow redirection and search for the regular expression on the website to which the
    ScienceLogic platform has been redirected.
  - Always Follow. When you select this option, web content policies follow redirection and search
    for the regular expression on the website to which the ScienceLogic platform has been
    redirected.
  - Never Follow. When you select this option, web content policies never follow redirection. This
    option allows the web content policy to search for a 301, 302, or 303 HTTP status code.
- Uniform Resource Locator (URL). URL or IP address where the website is located. If the website requires login and the login is forms based (user enters username and password in the index page), include the username and password in the URL.
  - You can include the variable **%D** in this field. The ScienceLogic platform will replace the variable with the IP address of the device that this policy is aligned to.
  - You can include the variable **%N** in this field. The ScienceLogic platform will replace the variable with the name of the device that this policy is aligned to.
  - You can include the variable %H in this field. The ScienceLogic platform will replace the
    variable with the hostname of the device that this policy is aligned to. If the device was not
    discovered by hostname, the platform will replace this variable with the IP address of the
    device.
- **Post String**. If the URL is very long or requires data that cannot be transferred with a standard "GET" request (that is, data that cannot be included in the URL), you can enter a POST string in this field. The data will be sent with the cURL equivalent of an HTTP POST command. Data should be formatted as follows:

variable=value

If you are going to include more than one variable/value pair, separate each pair with an ampersand (&).

For example, suppose you want to send values for the following fields:

Birthyear

Value

You could enter the following in the **Post String** field:

Birthyear=1980%Value=OK

**NOTE:** If you want to include non-alphanumeric characters in the **Post String** field, make sure you encode the characters using appropriate URL encoding.

- Cookie Value. For pages that require a cookie value to be set, enter the cookie value in this field.
- Browser Emulation. Specifies how to format the query. Select the agent that is compatible with the
  webserver.
- HTTP Auth Username: Password. For websites that pop-up a dialog box asking for username and password, use this field. Enter the username and password in this field. Use the format "username:password".
- HTTP Auth Method. For websites that require authentication, use one of the selected methods:
  - Default. By default, no authentication parameters are sent. Use this option for websites that do
    not require authentication. However, if you supply a value in another field that requires
    authentication, e.g. HTTP Auth Username:Password, the Any authentication parameter will
    be used.
  - Basic. Most widely compatible authentication across platforms. Sends a Base64-encoded string
    that contains a user name and password for the client. Base64 is not a form of encryption and
    should be considered the same as sending the user name and password in clear text.
  - Digest. Password is transmitted as encrypted text, but the user name and content of the
    message are not encrypted. Digest authentication is a challenge-response scheme that is
    intended to replace Basic authentication. The server sends a string of random data called a
    nonce to the client as a challenge. The client responds with a hash that includes the user
    name, password, and nonce, among additional information.
  - GSS-Negotiate. Authenticates using Kerberos and the GSS-API. Kerberos authentication is
    faster than NTLM and allows the use of mutual authentication and delegation of credentials to
    remote machines.
  - NTLM. NT LAN Manager (NTLM) authentication is a challenge-response scheme that is a
    more secure variation of Digest authentication. NTLM uses Windows credentials to transform
    the challenge data instead of the unencoded user name and password. NTLM authentication
    requires multiple exchanges between the client and server. The server and any intervening
    proxies must support persistent connections to successfully complete the authentication

Monitoring Web Content

- Any. Accept any type of authentication.
- Any except Basic (Any Safe). Accept any type of authentication except Basic.
- **SSL Encryption**. Specifies whether the platform should use SSL when communicating with the website. If login for the website is forms-based, enable this option.
- Expression Check #1. Text to search for:
  - o If you select the *Invert* checkbox, the platform will trigger an event if the text is found.
  - If you do not select the *Invert* checkbox, the platform will trigger an event if the text is not found.
- Expression Check #2. Another text string to search for:
  - o If you select the *Invert* checkbox, the platform will trigger an event if the text is found.
  - o If you do not select the *Invert* checkbox, the platform will trigger an event if the text is not found.
- Referrer String. URL of the website. Some load-balanced configurations will not allow a request for a
  specific IP address. If you entered a specific IP address in the URL field, you can spoof a URL in this
  field.
- Host Resolution. Host name of the website. Some load-balanced configurations will not allow a
  request for a specific IP address. If you entered a specific IP address in the URL field, you can spoof a
  fully-qualified host name in this field.
  - You can include the variable %N in this field. The platform will replace the variable with
    hostname of the device that this policy is aligned to. If the platform cannot determine the
    hostname, the platform will replace the variable with the primary, management IP address for
    the current device.
- Min Page size (Kb). Page size means the size of the page, in Kb, specified in the URL of the policy. If the returned page is not at least the size specified in this field, the ScienceLogic platform generates an event. This threshold triggers the event "Page size below minimum threshold."
- Max Page size (Kb). Page size means the size of the page, in Kb, specified in the URL of the policy. If the returned page is larger than the size specified in this field, the platform generates an event. This threshold triggers the event "Page size above maximum threshold."
- Min Download speed (kb/s). Download speed is the speed, measured in Kb/s, at which data was
  downloaded from the server (specified in the policy) to the platform. If the download speed is not at
  least the speed specified in this field, the platform generates an event. This threshold triggers the event
  "Download speed below threshold."
- Max nslookup time (msec). NSlookup speed is the speed at which your DNS system was able to resolve the name of the server specified in the policy. If the lookup time exceeds the value in this field, the platform generates an event. This threshold triggers the event "DNS hostname resolution time above threshold."
- Max TCP connect time (msec). TCP connect time is the time it takes for the platform to establish
  communication with the external server. In other words, the time it takes from the beginning of the
  HTTP request to the TCP/IP connection. If the connection time exceeds the value in this field, the
  platform generates an event. This threshold triggers the event "TCP connection time above threshold."

- Max Overall transaction time (msec). Overall transaction time is the total time it takes to make a connection to the external server, send the HTTP request, wait for the server to parse the request, receive the requested data from the server, and close the connection. If the overall transaction time exceeds the value in this field, the platform generates an event. This threshold triggers the event "Total transaction time above threshold."
- 5. Select the [Save] button to save the new policy.

#### Executing the Web Content Monitoring Policy

After creating or editing a web content monitoring policy, you can manually execute the policy and view detailed logs of each step during the execution. To do so:

**NOTE**: After you define a web content monitoring policy and enable the policy, the ScienceLogic platform will automatically execute the policy every five minutes. However, you can use the steps in this section to execute the policy immediately and see debug information about the execution of the policy.

- 1. In the **Web Content Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Web Content), find the policy you want to run manually.
- 2. Select the lightning bolt icon ( $\mathcal{I}$ ) to manually execute the policy.
- 3. While the policy is executing, the ScienceLogic platform spawns a modal page called **Session Logs**. The **Session Logs** page provides detailed descriptions of each step during the execution. This is very helpful for diagnosing possible problems with a policy.

#### Editing a Web Content Policy

There are two places in the ScienceLogic platform from which you can edit a policy to monitor web content:

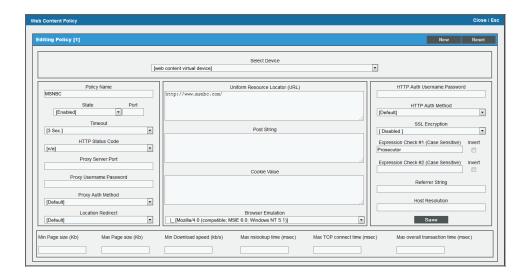
- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the Device Manager page, find the device that you want to associate with the monitoring policy.
     Select wrench icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the **Device Administration** panel, select the **[Monitors]** tab.
  - In the Monitoring Policies page, find the policy you want to edit and select its wrench icon (🌯).

Or:

- 2. From the **Web Content Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Web Content):
  - In the Web Content Monitoring page, find the policy you want to edit and select its wrench icon (
     ).

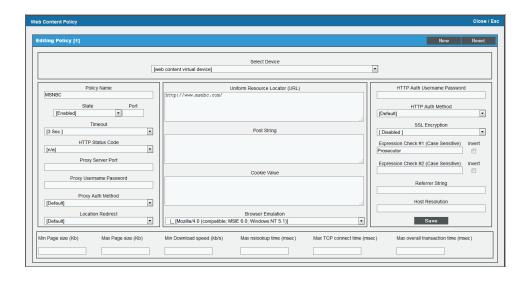
Monitoring Web Content 344

3. The Web Content Policy modal page appears:



- 4. In the **Web Content Policy** modal page, you can change the values in one or more of the fields described in the section on **Defining a Web Content Policy**.
- 5. Select the **[Save]** button to save your changes to the policy.

#### **Example Web Content Policy**



- This policy is aligned with the device "Web Content Virtual Device".
- This policy will search for the expression "Prosecutor", entered in the *Expression Check #1* field, in www.msnbc.com ("http://www.msnbc.com/").

## Viewing Reports on a Web Content Policy

See the chapter *Viewing Performance Graphs* to view information and examples of reports for monitoring port availability.

#### Viewing ASCII Page Content

From the **Web Content Monitoring** page, you can view the ASCII content (from the web page) that was retrieved by the web content monitoring policy. The ASCII content is returned only when the policy is manually executed.

#### The Content Page Dump page displays:

- The regular expression(s) used in the web-content monitoring policy. The ScienceLogic platform searches the web content for these text strings.
- The text (from the website) that was searched.

There are two ways to access the **Content Page Dump** page:

- 1. From the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):
  - In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that you want to associate with the monitoring policy. Select wrench icon ( ) for the device.
  - In the Device Administration panel, select the [Monitors] tab.
  - In the Monitoring Policies page, find the policy you want to edit and select the page icon (
    ).

#### Or:

- 2. From the **Web Content Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Web Content):
  - Select the lightning bolt icon ( $\checkmark$ ) to manually execute the policy.
  - In the Web Content Monitoring page, find the policy you want to edit and select its page icon ( ).

Monitoring Web Content 346

3. The **Content Page Dump** page appears.



- 4. In the **Content Page Dump** page, you can view the content that is searched and the regular expressions that the ScienceLogic platform searched for.
- 5. If the Web Content policy has not yet completed, this page will display the message:

"Web content verification data may take up to 5 minutes to appear. Try again later."

#### Viewing the Monitored Website

In some cases, you might want to view the website being monitored, directly from the user interface. To do this:

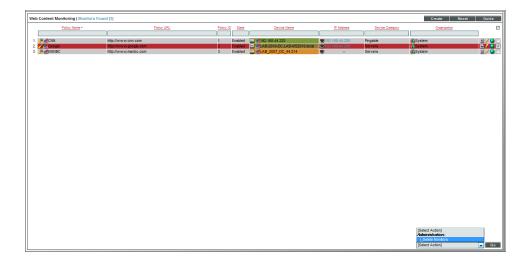
- 1. Go to the **Web Content Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Web Content).
- 2. Find the policy for which you want to view the website. Select its globe icon ( ).
- 3. The ScienceLogic platform will spawn a new browser page and display the monitored website.

### Deleting a Web Content Monitoring Policy

You can delete a web content monitoring policy from the **Web Content Monitoring** page. You can delete individual, multiple, or all existing web content monitoring policies. When you delete a web content monitoring policy, the ScienceLogic platform no longer uses the policy to collect data from the aligned device.

To delete a web content monitoring policy:

- 1. Go to the **Web Content Monitoring** page (Registry > Monitors > Web Content).
- 2. In the **Web Content Monitoring** page, select the checkbox(es) for each web content monitoring policy you want to delete. Click the checkmark icon ( ) to select all of the web content monitoring policies.
- 3. In the **Select Action** menu in the bottom right of the page, select *Delete Monitors*.



- 4. Select the [Go] button to delete the web content monitoring policy.
- 5. The policy is deleted from the ScienceLogic platform. The associated reports (from the Device Reports > [Performance] tab) are also deleted.

Monitoring Web Content 348

# Chapter

**22** 

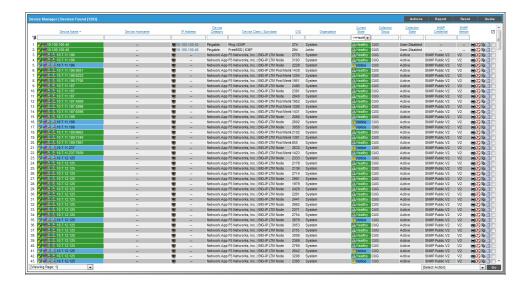
# Managing a Single Device with the Device Administration Panel

#### What is the Device Administration Panel?

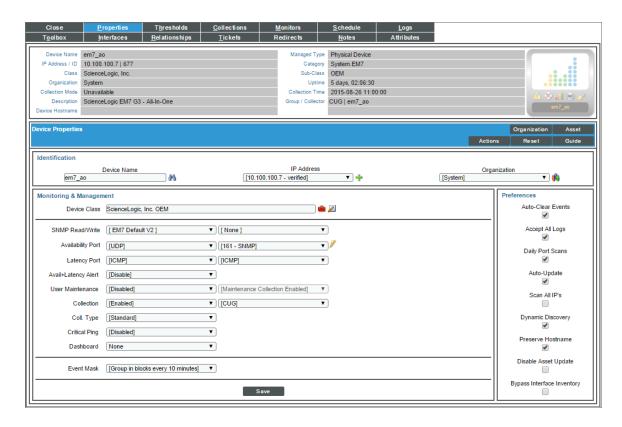
The **Device Administration** panel allows you to define how the ScienceLogic platform will interact with a device. This includes defining the data that will be retrieved, the frequency with which the platform will poll the device, and policies and thresholds that will generate events for the device.

To access the **Device Administration** panel for a device:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).



- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to access the **Device Administration** panel. Select its wrench icon ( ). The **Device Properties** page is displayed. From this page, you can access all the pages in the **Device Administration** panel.
- 3. 'The **Device Administration** tools include the following tabs and pages:



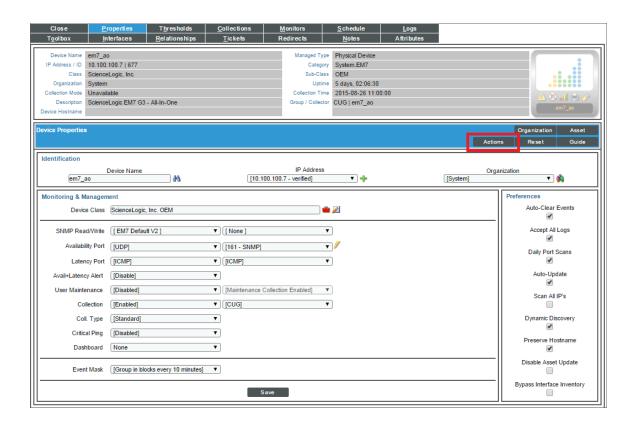
Tab	Description
Properties	In the <b>Device Properties</b> page, you can edit parameters that affect how the ScienceLogic platform "sees" the device and monitors the device. For details on the <b>Device Properties</b> page, see the section in this chapter called <b>Device Properties</b> .
Thresholds	The <b>Device Thresholds</b> page allows you to define usage and performance thresholds and data retention thresholds for a device. When these thresholds are exceeded, the ScienceLogic platform will generate an event for the device. For details on device thresholds, see the chapter on <i>Thresholds and Data Retention</i> .

Tab	Description
Collections	The <b>Dynamic Application Collections</b> page displays all the Dynamic Applications associated with the device. For Dynamic Applications of type "performance," the page displays report policies for each Dynamic Application. For Dynamic Applications of type "configuration," the page displays objects monitored by each Dynamic Application. For details on credentials and Dynamic Applications, see the manual on <b>Credentials and Discovery</b> .
	You can specify a credential for use with the Dynamic Application for the specific device only.
	You can enable or disable one or more report policies for the specific device only.
	You can enable or disable monitoring of one or more objects for the specific device only.
Monitors	The Monitoring Policies page allows you to define monitoring policies for a device.
	The <b>Monitoring Policies</b> page allows you to define policies that monitor: system processes, domain-name availability and lookup speed, email round-trip speed, SOAP and XML transaction speeds, TCP/IP port availability, web-content availability, and Windows services.
	NOTE: All these monitoring policies can generate events. The ScienceLogic platform uses the data collected by these policies to create performance reports and graphs.
Schedule	In the <b>Maintenance Schedule</b> page you can view, edit, and schedule downtimes for the device. For details on scheduling maintenance for a device, see the chapter on <b>Maintenance</b> .
Logs	The <b>Device Logs &amp; Messages</b> page displays all the messages the ScienceLogic platform has collected from the device and from the platform about the device. For details on device logs, see the chapter on <b>Device Logs</b> .
Toolbox	The <b>Device Toolbox</b> page provides access to common network tools. The list of tools available depends upon the type of device and the configuration of the device. This page allows you to access and run diagnostics on a device without leaving the user interface session. For details on the Device Toolbox, see the chapter on <b>Device Toolbox</b> .
Interfaces	The <b>Device Interfaces</b> page displays detailed information about each network interface on the device. From this page, you can view details about each individual interface and define bandwidth monitoring for the interface. For details on interfaces and bandwidth, see the chapter on <b>Network Interfaces</b> .
Relationships	The <b>Device Relationships</b> page displays information about parent-child relationships between devices. From this page, you can view details on the relationships between on layer-2 and layer-3 devices, hypervisors and their virtual machines, and other relationships. For details on device relations, see the chapter on <b>Defining Device Relationships</b> .
Tickets	The <b>Ticket History</b> page displays all tickets associated with the device. This page displays critical information about each ticket. If you require more detail, you can access the <b>Ticket Editor</b> from this page. For details on creating tickets, see the manual <b>Ticketing</b> .

Tab	Description
Redirects	The <b>Redirection</b> page appears only for virtual devices. This page allows you to redirect logs entries from an IP-based device to a virtual device. For details on virtual devices, see the chapter on <i>Virtual Devices</i> .
Notes	The <b>Notes &amp; Attachments</b> page displays a list of all comments and attachments associated with the device properties. When you select the <i>Notepad Editor</i> option in the <b>Device Properties</b> page, the notes appear in this page. For details, see the section on <i>Adding a Note to a Device</i> .
Attributes	The <b>Attributes</b> page displays a list of custom attributes that are already aligned with the device. Additionally, the <b>Attributes</b> page enables you to assign a value to those custom attributes, create and align a new extended custom attribute with the device, or delete a custom attribute from a device. For details, see the section on <b>Aligning Custom Attributes with a Device</b> .

### Actions Menu

The pages in the **Device Administration** panel each include the **[Actions]** menu. The **[Actions]** menu allows you to perform many device-related tasks without requiring you to leave the current page. The **[Actions]** menu looks like a button and is located in the upper right of the page.



The following entries in the [Actions] menu appear only in the Device Properties page:

- Add IP Address. Leads to the Add IP Address modal page, where you can define an additional IP address
  for the device. The ScienceLogic platform will continue to use the primary IP Address for communication with
  the device. For details, see the section on Adding an IP Address to a Device.
- Select Primary IP Addresses. Leads to the Select Primary IP Addresses modal page, where you can define primary IP addresses and secondary IP addresses for the device. A primary IP address allows the ScienceLogic platform to align traps and syslog messages with the device. In the case of duplicate primary IP addresses, you can promote a secondary IP address to a primary IP address and demote the duplicated primary IP address.
- Clear Device Cache. Selecting this option clears data about this device from the cache. For details, see the section on Clearing the Device Cache.
- Device Class. Leads to the Device Class modal page, where you can select a device class to associate with the device. For details, see the chapter on Device Classes and Device Categories.
- Secondary Credentials. Leads to the Secondary Credentials modal page, where you can associate additional credentials with the device. The ScienceLogic platform will then use the primary credential and the additional credentials during discovery for the device. For details, see the section on Aligning a Secondary Credential.
- Merge Device. Allows you to merge the data from a component device and a physical device into a single record. When you merge a physical device and a component device, the device record for the component device is no longer displayed in the user interface; the device record for the physical device is displayed in user interface pages that previously displayed the component device. For example, the physical device is displayed instead of the component device in the Device Components page and the Component Map page. All existing and future data for both devices will be associated with the physical device.
  - For physical devices, this option leads to the **Merge Devices** modal page, where you can view a list of component devices and select a component device to merge with the current physical device.
  - For component devices, this option leads to the **Merge Devices** modal page, where you can view a list of physical devices and select a physical device to merge with the current component device.

For details, see the section on Merging Devices.

Unmerge Device. Appears only in the Device Properties page for physical devices. Prompts you to
unmerge the component device that has been previously merged with the physical device. For details, see
the section on Merging Devices.

**NOTE**: You can merge only one component device with a physical device.

**NOTE**: When you merge two devices, the historical device logs for those devices will be merged and are not unmerged when the *Unmerge Device* option is used.

**NOTE**: In Dashboard widgets, merged devices can be searched for and filtered by the device class or device category of the physical device or the device class or device category of the component device. If both device classes or device categories are selected, a merged device will appear twice in a single widget.

**NOTE:** When you merge two devices, active events associated with the component device will be set to "cleared". The cleared events will not be associated with the physical device. If the devices are unmerged, the cleared events cannot be moved back to the component device.

The following entry in the [Actions] menu appears only in the Device Logs & Messages page:

• Export Logs. Allows you to export the log entries to a file on your local computer. You can save the exported file or save and view the exported file.

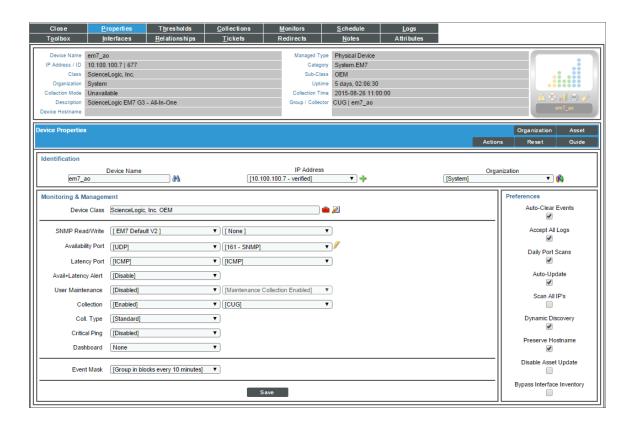
The following entries in the [Actions] menu appear on each page in the Device Administration panel:

- My Bookmarks. Displays the Administer Bookmarks modal page, where you can access pre-defined bookmarks or save a new bookmark. For details, see the manual Customizing User Experience.
- Create a Ticket. Leads to the Ticket Editor page, where you can define a new ticket about the device. For details, see the section on Creating a Ticket About the Device.
- Custom Navigation. Leads to the Custom Navigation modal page, where you can define a custom tab for the device administration panel for the current device. The custom tab will contain a link to an outside URL. For details, see the chapter on Customizing the Interface for a Device.
- Device Children. Leads to the Device Children modal page, where you can add children devices to the
  current device. The current device will be the parent device. For details, see the chapter on Defining Device
  Relationships.
- Device Groups. Leads to the Device Groups modal page, where you can assign the device to a device
  group or remove a device from a device group. For details, see the section on Adding a Device to a Device
  Group.
- Notepad Editor. Leads to the Notepad Editor modal page, where you can enter a note to include with the
  device. The note will appear in the Notes & Attachments page for the device. For details, see the section
  on Adding a Note to a Device.
- Product Catalog. Leads to the Product Catalog modal page, where you can associate a product SKU with
  the device or disassociate the device from a product SKU. For details, see the section on Associating a
  Product SKU with a Device.
- **Report Creator**. Leads to the **Report Creator** modal page, where you can define a device report, including the information to include in the report and the format in which to generate the report. For details, see the section on **Generating a Report for a Single Device**.
- **Resource Usage**. Leads to the **Resource Usage** modal page, where you can view the list of device logs and device statistics gathered by the ScienceLogic platform and also view where the data is stored and how many bytes of data are being stored.

# **Device Properties**

The **Device Properties** page allows you to view basic, read-only information about a device and also to view and edit the device's parameters for discovery (collection).

The settings defined for the device in the **Device Properties** page override any system-wide settings.



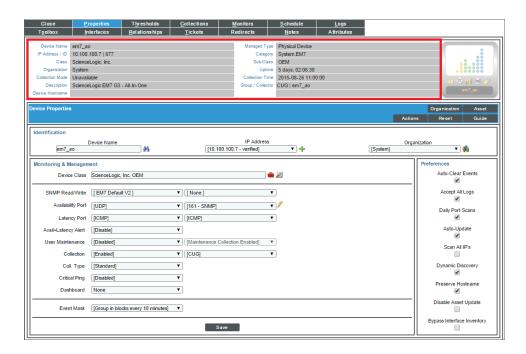
From the **Device Properties** page, you can:

- View Information about the Device. This is described in the section on Read-Only Information about the Device.
- Edit the Discovery Parameters for the Device. This is described in the section on Editing Device Settings.
- Edit the Device Class for the Device. This is described in the chapter on Device Classes.
- Associate an Additional IP Address with the Device. This is described in the section on Adding an IP Address to a Device.
- Remove an IP Address from the Device. This is described in the section on Removing an IP Address from
  a Device.
- Manage Primary and Secondary IP Addresses for the Device. This is described in the section on Managing Device IPs.

- Clear the Device Cache. This is described in the section on Clearing the Device Cache.
- Define Child Devices. This is described in the chapter on Defining Device Relationships.
- Associate a Secondary Credential with the Device. This is described in the section on Aligning a
  Secondary Credential.
- Add the Device to a Device Group. This is described in the section Adding the Device to a Device Group.
- Create a Ticket About the Device. This is described in the section Creating a Ticket About the Device.
- Define Custom Navigation for the Device. This is described in the chapter Customizing the Interface
  for a Device.
- Add a Note to the Device. This is described in the section Adding a Note to a Device.
- Associate a Product SKU with the Device. This is described in the section Associating a Product SKU with the Device.
- Create or Edit an Asset Record for the Device. This is described in the Asset Management manual.
- View Resource Usage for the Device. This is described in the chapter on Performance Graphs.
- Create a Report About the Device. This is described in the chapter on Performance Graphs.

## Viewing Read-Only Information About the Device

Each page in the **Device Administration** panel and the **Device Reports** panel displays the following read-only information about the device:

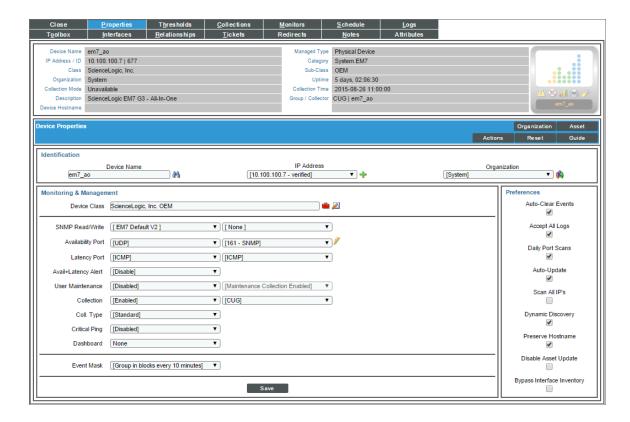


- Device Name. Name of the device. Clicking on this field displays the Device Properties page for the
  device.
- IP Address /ID. IP address of the device and the device ID of the device. The device ID is a unique numeric identifier, automatically assigned to the device by the ScienceLogic platform. Clicking on this field displays the Device Properties page for the device.
- Class. Device class for the device. A device class usually describes the manufacturer of the device.
- Organization. Organization associated with the device. Clicking on this field leads to the Organizational Summary page for the device's organization.
- Collection Mode. Collection mode. Choices are "active", meaning the platform is periodically collecting data from the device, or "inactive", meaning the platform is not currently collecting data from the device. Clicking on this field executes the Remote Port Scanner and displays the Remote Port Scanner modal page.
- **Description**. For SNMP devices, the SysDescr value as reported by the SNMP agent on the device. If a device does not support SNMP, this field appears blank.
- Root Device. For component devices, displays the device name or IP address of the physical device where
  the system that manages the device resides. Clicking on this value displays the Device Properties page for
  the root device.
- Parent Device. For component devices, displays the device name or IP address of the parent device. The parent device can be either another component device or a physical device. A parent device is the device between the current component device and the next layer in the component-device hierarchy. Clicking on this value displays the Device Properties page for the parent device.
- **Device Hostname**. For devices that are discovered and managed by hostname (instead of IP address), this field displays the fully qualified hostname for the device.
- Managed Type. Specifies the protocol used to discover the device and whether or not the device is a
  physical device or a virtual device. Clicking on this field executes an SNMP walk of the device's SNMP file
  and displays the SNMP Walker modal page.
- Category. The device category associated with the device. The device category usually describes the function of the hardware.
- **Sub-Class**. The device sub-class associated with the device. The sub-class usually described the model of a device.
- **Uptime**. The number of days, hours, minutes, and seconds that the device has been continuously up and communicating with the ScienceLogic platform. Clicking on this field displays the System Vitals Summary report.
- Collection Time. The date and time that the platform last collected data from the device.
- **Group/Collector**. The Collector Group and specific collector used to last collect data from the device. For All-In-One Appliances, this field will contain the name of the default, built-in Collector Group.

## **Editing Device Settings**

The fields in the **Device Properties** page affect how the ScienceLogic platform will discover and collect information about the device. Initially, the platform uses system defaults, system-wide settings, and data retrieved during initial discovery of the device to populate these fields.

You can edit one or more of these fields for the device. The settings defined for the device in the **Device Properties** page override any system-wide settings (defined in the pages under System > Settings).



#### Identification

- Device Name. The name of the device. If possible, the ScienceLogic platform retrieves the device name from the device. If the device is running SNMP or has a DNS entry, the name will be retrieved directly from the device. You can set the precedence for which of these names are used (SNMP system name or DNS entry) in the Behavior Settings page (System > Settings > Behavior). You can edit this name in the Device Properties page; however, the Device Name will not be changed on the actual device.
- *IP Address*. The IP address that the platform uses to communicate with the device. You can add additional IP addresses for the device. To change the IP address the platform uses to communicate with the device (called the *admin primary* address), select a different IP address in this field.
- Organization. Organization to which this device has been assigned. To assign this device to a different Organization, select an Organization from the drop-down list. To view details about the assigned organization, select the people icon () to the right of this field.

#### Monitoring & Management

• **Device Class**. Displays the Device Class. To assign a different device class to the device, select the toolbox icon ( to the right of this field. To edit the device's Device Class, select the pencil icon ( to the right of this field.

**NOTE**: If you incorrectly change a device's Device Class, the platform's nightly update will override the new Device Class and assign the device to the correct Device Class.

- **SNMP Read**. The community string for read-only access to SNMP information on the device. The community string is a password that allows the ScienceLogic platform to gather SNMP information from the device. If this device has been aligned with a credential to which you do not have access, this field will display the value Restricted Credential. If you align the device with a different credential, the entry for Restricted Credential will be removed from the list in this field; you will not be able to re-align the device with the Restricted Credential.
- SNMP Write. The community string for read-and-write access to SNMP information on the device. The community string is a password that allows the platform to gather SNMP information from the device and send SNMP information to the device. If this device has been aligned with a credential to which you do not have access, this field will display the value Restricted Credential. If you align the device with a different credential, the entry for Restricted Credential will be removed from the list in this field; you will not be able to re-align the device with the Restricted Credential.

NOTE: Devices that do not support SNMP ("pingable" devices) display the value None in both the SNMP Read field and the SNMP Write field.

NOTE: Your organization membership(s) might affect the list of credentials you can see in the SNMP Read field and the SNMP Write field. For details, see the Discovery and Credentials manual.

- Availability Port. Specifies the protocol and specific port the platform should monitor to determine if the
  device is available. The list of ports will contain all the ports discovered by the platform and the options ICMP
  and ScienceLogic agent. For the ICMP option, the platform performs a ping request. The data collected from
  this port or ping request will be used in device availability reports. The ScienceLogic agent option allows you
  to specify that the platform should use information collected by the agent to determine port availability. The
  agent must be installed on the device to use this option.
  - If you select ICMP as the protocol, you can use the ICMP Availability Thresholds in the Device
     Thresholds page to further define how the platform will test the device's availability.

**NOTE**: Component Devices use a Dynamic Application collection object to measure availability. For details, see the description of the **Component Identifier** field in the **Collection Objects** page. For details, see the chapter **Monitoring Device Availability and Device Latency**.

• Run Availability Policy ( ). When you select this icon, the platform immediately checks the availability of the device, using the port and protocol specified in the Availability Port fields. The platform displays a Session Logs modal page that displays a detailed description of each step of the availability policy. This information is helpful when troubleshooting availability problems with a device.

- Latency Port. Specifies the protocol and specific port the platform should monitor to determine latency for the device. The list of ports will contain all the ports discovered by the platform and the option ICMP, for which the platform performs a ping request. The data collected from this port or ping request will be used in device latency reports.
  - If you select ICMP as the protocol, you can use the ICMP Availability Thresholds in the Device
     Thresholds page to further define how the platform will test the device's latency.
- Avail + Latency Alert. Specifies how the platform should respond when the device fails an availability check, when the device fails a latency check, and when the device fails both. These options allow you to create separate events when SNMP fails on a device and when a device is not up and running. Choices are:
  - Enabled. The platform will create the following events:
    - If the device fails the availability check, generates the event "Device Failed Availability Check: UDP SNMP".
    - If the device fails the latency check, generates the event "Network Latency Exceeded Threshold: No Response".
    - If the device fails both the availability check and the latency check, generates the event "Device Failed Availability and Latency checks".
  - Disabled. The platform will create the following events:
    - If the device fails the availability check, generates the event "Device Failed Availability Check: UDP SNMP".
    - If the device fails the latency check, generates the event "Network Latency Exceeded Threshold: No Response".
    - If the device fails both the availability check and the latency check, generates the event "Device Failed Availability Check: UDP - SNMP". The event "Network Latency Exceeded Threshold: No Response" is suppressed under the availability event.
- **User Maintenance**. Specifies whether the device will be put into "user maintenance" mode. By default, when a device is in "user maintenance", the ScienceLogic platform will not generate events about the device.

You can choose to enable or disable polling during "user maintenance" mode. If polling is enabled during "user maintenance", the platform will collect information from the device but will generate only events of severity less than the severity specified in the system-wide *Maintenance Minimum*Severity setting. For more information about the *Maintenance Minimum Severity* setting, see the Device Maintenance chapter.

"User maintenance mode" is not scheduled. That is, a user must manually enable "user maintenance" to put a device into this mode and a user must manually disable "user maintenance" to turn off this mode for a device. "User maintenance mode" overrides scheduled maintenance for a device. Choices are:

- Enabled. Device will be set to "user maintenance" mode.
- Disabled. Device will not be set to "user maintenance" mode.

- User Maintenance Collection. Specifies whether the platform should poll the device during the "user maintenance". During normal operation, the platform polls each device as specified by each device's policies and aligned Dynamic Applications. Choices are:
  - Enabled. During "user maintenance" mode, the platform will continue to poll the device.
  - o Disabled. During "user maintenance" mode, the platform will not poll the device.
- Collection State. Specifies if device will be monitored by the platform. To edit this field, select one of the following from the drop-down list:
  - Enabled. Device will be monitored by the platform.
  - Disabled. Device will not be monitored by the platform.
- Collection Poller. Specifies which Collector Group will perform discovery and gather data from the device. The drop-down list contains a list of available collector groups. For All-In-One Appliances, this field displays only the built-in Collector Group (and any virtual Collector Groups). For details on Collector Groups, see the System Administration manual.
- Coll. Type. Specifies how the platform should perform collection. The choices are:
  - Standard. The platform will perform discovery of each device based on the device's IP address. This
    method is appropriate for devices using standard DNS.
  - DHCP. The platform will perform a DNS lookup for the device each time the platform retrieves information from the device. This allows the platform to get the latest IP address for the device.
- **Critical Ping**. Frequency with which the platform should ping the device in addition to the five minute availability poll. If the device does not respond, the platform creates an event. The choices are:
  - Disabled. The platform will not ping the device in addition to the five minute availability poll.
  - Intervals from every 120 seconds every 5 seconds.

**NOTE**: The ScienceLogic platform does not use this ping data to create device-availability reports. The platform will continue to collect device availability data only every five minutes, as specified in the process "Data Collection:Availability" (in the **Process Manager** page).

**NOTE**: Because high-frequency data pull occurs every 15 seconds, you might experience up to 15 seconds of latency between an unavailable alert and that alert appearing in the Database Server if you set *Critical Ping* to 5 seconds.

**NOTE**: You might experience some performance issues if you have a large number of devices using Internal Collections Dynamic Applications to monitor Critical Availability on a brief polling interval.

Dashboard. Select a device dashboard from a list of all device dashboards in the ScienceLogic platform.
 The selected device dashboard will appear by default in the Device Summary page for this device. This field

is optional.

- **Event Mask**. Events that occur on a single device within the selected time-interval are grouped together. This allows related events that occur in quick succession on a single device to be rolled-up and posted together, under one event description. Select a time-span from the drop-down list:
  - Disabled. The platform will not group events.
  - o Group in blocks at intervals from every 30 seconds every 1 month

By default, when events are masked, the **Event Console** displays all events that occur on the device within the specified time-span under a single event, the one with the highest severity. The magnifying-glass icon ( appears to the left of the event. When you click on the magnifying-glass icon, the **Suppression Group** modal page is displayed. This page displays details about all events that are masked under the displayed event.

NOTE: If an event has Occurrence Count and Occurrence Time set in its Event Policy Editor page, the platform will use the very first logged occurrence of the event to calculate the Event Mask, even if that first occurrence did not appear in the Event Console (due to the Occurrence Count and Occurrence Time fields).

For example, suppose an event, event\_x, has an *Occurrence Count* of "3" and an *Occurrence Time* of "10 minutes". This means that the event must occur on the same device at least three times within 10 minutes before the event appears in the **Event Console**. Suppose the event, event\_X, occurs on device\_A at 15:51, 15:52, and 15:53. The event will appear in the **Event Console** with a timestamp of "15:53", an age of "2 minutes" and a count of "3".

Suppose **device\_A** includes an **Event Mask** of "Group in blocks every 5 minutes". To calculate how to group event\_x, the **Event Mask** will use the timestamp of the first occurrence, 15:51, even though the event did not appear in the **Event Console** at that time. The **Event Mask** will also use the time of the first occurrence, 15:51, to calculate the "Age/Elapsed" value for the event in the **Suppression Group** modal page.

#### Preferences

- Auto-Clear Events. Auto Clear automatically removes an event from the Event Monitor if a specified succeeding event occurs. For example, suppose the event "Device not responding to ping" occurs. If the next polling session produces the event "Device now responding normally to ping", the Auto Clear feature could clear the event. If you do not want events to be cleared automatically, uncheck this field. For this specific device, this field overrides the global auto-clear settings in the Event Policy Editor page (Registry > Events > Event Manager > create or edit).
- Accept All Logs. This checkbox specifies whether or not you want to keep and save all logs for this device. If you want to retain only logs associated with events, uncheck this field.
- **Daily Port Scans**. This checkbox specifies whether or not you want the platform to perform a daily scan of the device for open ports. Select this field to enable daily port scans.

- Auto-Update. This checkbox specifies whether or not you want the platform to perform a nightly discovery of the device and update records with changes to the device. Check this box to enable nightly updates. If this field is unchecked, the platform will not perform nightly discovery. Changes to the device, including newly opened ports, will not be recorded by the platform.
- **Scan All IPs**. If the device uses multiple IP Addresses, the platform can scan for open ports on all IPs during nightly discovery. Check this box to enable scanning of all IP Addresses for open ports every night.
- **Dynamic Discovery**. If selected, the platform will automatically assign the appropriate Dynamic Applications to the device during nightly discovery.
- **Preserve Hostname**. If selected, the name of the device in the platform will remain the same, even if the name of the actual device is changed. If unselected, the name for the device will be updated if the name of the actual device is changed.
- Disable Asset Update. If selected, the platform will not automatically update the asset record associated
  with the device. For a single device, this checkbox overrides any settings defined in the Asset Automation
  page (System > Settings > Assets).

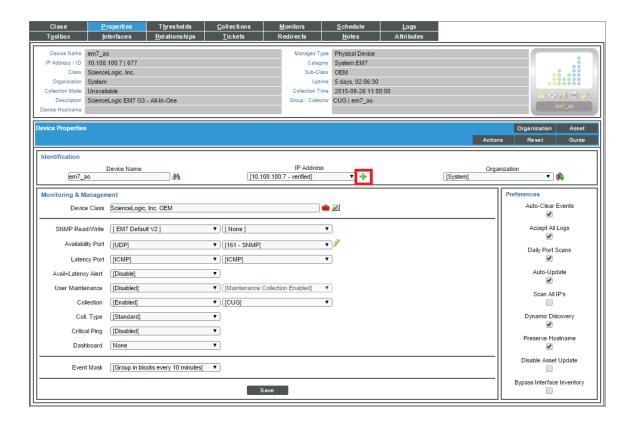
### Adding an IP Address to a Device

If a device has multiple IP addresses, you can add those IP addresses in the ScienceLogic platform. The platform will continue to use the primary IP address for communication with the device. However, after you add an additional IP address to a device, you can change the primary IP address to the new IP address by selecting it in the IP Address field.

To define additional IP addresses for a device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to define additional IP address. Select the wrench icon ( ) for the device.
- 3. In the **Device Properties** page, find the **IP Address** field.

4. To the right of the **IP Address** field, click on the plus-sign icon (\*):



- 5. Alternately, you can also select the [Actions] menu and choose Add IP Address.
- 6. The **Add IP Address** modal page appears. The **Add IP Address** modal page allows you to define an additional IP address for the device.



7. The **Add IP Address** modal page allows you to define an additional IP address for the device. The ScienceLogic platform will continue to use the Admin Primary IP address for communication with the device.

However, the platform will also collect data about the additional IP address(es). To associate an additional IP address with the device, supply values in the following fields:

- IP Address. Supply the IP address, in standard dotted-decimal format.
- Subnet Mask. Supply the subnet mask associated with the IP address. This field is optional.
- 8. Select the [Add] button.
- 9. In the Device Properties page, you will now see the additional IP address in the IP Address field. During auto-discovery, the platform will verify that this IP address exists on the device and will append the label "verified" to the value in the IP Address field.

**NOTE:** After you manually rediscover the device or after the ScienceLogic platform runs nightly auto-discovery (whichever occurs first), the new IP address will appear in the **Network Browser** page.

## Removing an IP Address from a Device

If you have added an IP address to a device using the steps in the section on Associating an Additional IP Address with the Device, you can also delete that IP address.

There are two exceptions to this ability:

- You cannot delete an IP address that is currently the Admin Primary IP address for the device.
- You cannot delete an IP address that is associated with a network interface.

To delete an IP address:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device from which you want to delete an IP address. Select the wrench icon ( ) for the device.
- 3. In the **Device Properties** page, find the **IP Address** field.
- 4. To the right of the *IP Address* field, select the bomb icon ( ). The **Remove IP Address** modal page displays:



- 5. Select the checkbox for the IP address you want to delete.
- 6. Select the [Remove] button. The IP address is deleted.

NOTE: The Remove IP Address modal page will display checkboxes only for IP addresses that you can delete. If an IP address appears in the Remove IP Address modal page without a checkbox, you cannot delete that IP address.

If an IP address that you want to delete appears in the **Remove IP Address** modal page as *Selected*, it is currently the *Admin Primary* IP address and you must select a new Admin Primary IP before you can delete the IP address. To select a new Admin Primary IP address:

- 1. In the IP address drop-down list in the Device Properties page, select a new Admin Primary IP address.
- 2. Select the [Save] button.
- 3. You can now delete the previous Admin Primary IP address.

#### Managing Device IP Addresses

There are three types of IP addresses that can be associated with a device:

- Admin Primary. This is the IP address that the ScienceLogic platform uses to communicate with a device.
   This IP address is always a primary address and cannot be demoted to a secondary address. You can change the Admin Primary address by changing the value in the IP Address field in the Device Properties page.
- Primary. One or more IP addresses that the platform uses to match incoming log messages (traps and syslog messages) with a device. When you select an IP address in the Select Primary IP Addresses modal page, that IP address becomes a primary. You can also unselect an IP address in the Select Primary IP Addresses modal page. When you unselect an IP address, that IP address becomes a secondary.
- **Secondary**. The ScienceLogic platform gathers information about this IP address, but does not use this IP address to match incoming messages (traps and syslog messages) with a device.

A *Message Collection Server* accepts inbound, asynchronous messages from monitored devices and applications in your network. For example, Message Collectors accept all SNMP traps, SNMP informants, and syslog messages. A ScienceLogic system can include one or more Message Collectors.

• A single Message Collector can be aligned with multiple Collector Groups.

**NOTE**: If you are using a combination Data Collector and Message Collector, this combination appliance should be assigned only to its own dedicated Collector Group and that Collector Group should not include other Data Collectors or Message Collectors.

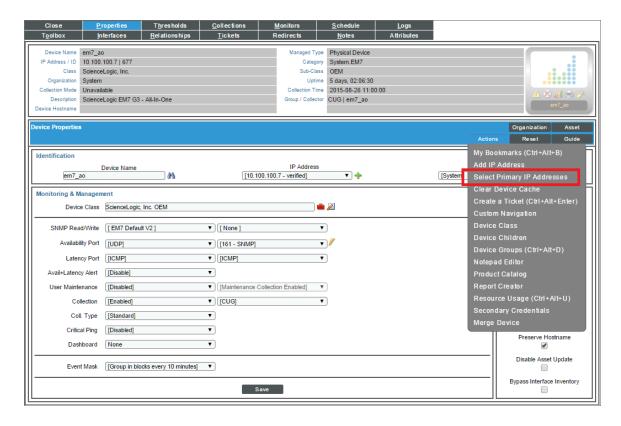
• Although the platform will not allow duplicate IP addresses within a single Collector Group, the platform does allow duplicate IP addresses if each device is aligned with a different Collector Group.

• If a single Message Collector is aligned with multiple Collector Groups, the single Message Collector might be aligned with two or more devices (each in a separate Collector Group) that use the same primary IP address or the same secondary IP address. If this happens, the platform will generate an event. To fix this situation, you can go to the **Select Primary IP Addresses** modal page for one of the devices and change the primary IP address in question. You can demote the primary and promote a secondary IP address for the device. This will fix the problem with duplicate IPs and allow the Message Collector to align messages with the device.

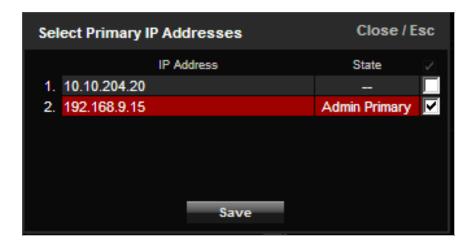
**NOTE**: For All-In-One Appliances, the function provided by a Message Collector is built in to the All-In-One Appliance. All-In-One systems contain only one built-in Collector Group.

The **Select Primary IP Addresses** modal page allows you to view a list of IP addresses for the device and define one or more of those IP addresses as "primary" or "secondary". To change an IP address to Primary or Secondary, perform the following:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Find the device for which you want to manage the IP addresses. Select its wrench icon ( ).
- 3. In the Device Properties page for the device, select the [Actions] menu. Choose Select Primary IP Address.



4. The **Select Primary IP Addresses** modal page appears. There are three types of IP addresses that can be associated with a device:



- Admin Primary. This is the IP address that the ScienceLogic platform uses to communicate with a
  device. This IP address is always the admin primary address and cannot be demoted to a secondary
  address.
- **Primary**. One or more IP addresses that the platform uses to match incoming messages (traps and syslog messages) with a device. When you select an IP address in the Select Primary IP Addresses modal page, that IP address becomes a primary. You can also unselect an IP address in the Select Primary IP Addresses modal. When you unselect an IP address, that IP address becomes a secondary.
- **Secondary**. The ScienceLogic platform gathers information about this IP address, but does not use this IP address to match incoming messages (traps and syslog messages) with a device.

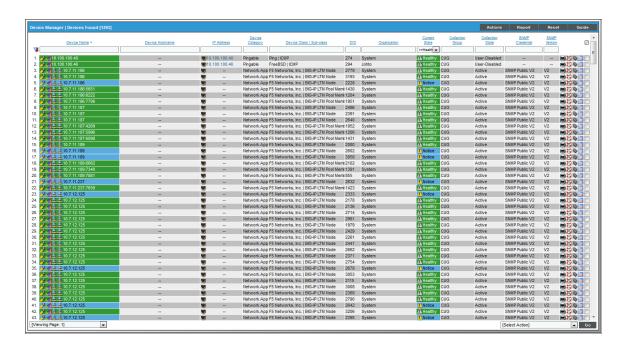
NOTE: Within a Collector Group, multiple devices cannot use the same primary IP address. In some circumstances, an IP address appears in the Select Primary IP Addresses modal page for the current device but does not have a corresponding checkbox. This means that the IP address is currently used as a primary IP on another device in the same Collector Group. The ScienceLogic platform will not allow you to promote this IP address to a primary IP address on the current device.

5. Select the [Save] button to save the changes to the device.

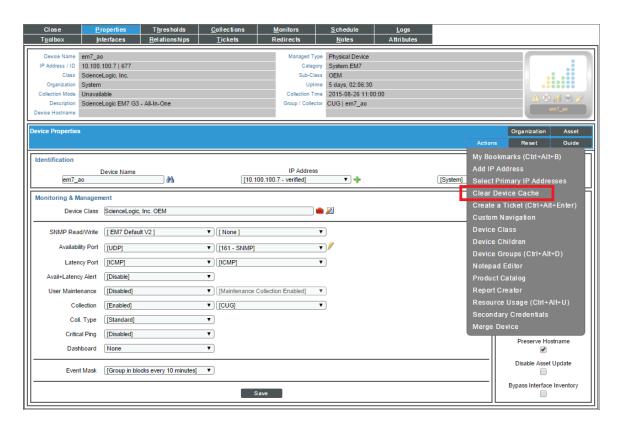
## Clearing the Device Cache

Between HTTP requests, the ScienceLogic platform caches data in memory. For diagnostic purposes, you might want to clear the cached data about a specific device. To do this:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device whose data you want to clear from the cache. Select its wrench icon ( ).



3. In the **Device Properties** page for the device, select the **[Actions]** menu. Select **Clear Device Cache**.



4. Data about the device will be cleared from the cache.

# Aligning a Secondary Credential

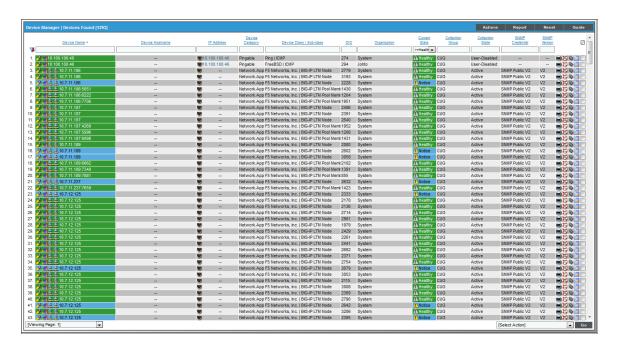
During initial discovery of a device, the ScienceLogic platform uses a specified SNMP credential. If you specified that the ScienceLogic platform should discover non-SNMP devices, the platform will use ICMP and nmap to gather information about a device. After the platform finds devices, discovery can use a second list of specified credentials to access database data, SOAP data, XML data or data that is monitored with a Snippet Dynamic Application.

After initial discovery, you can add additional credentials to a device. For example, if more than one SNMP agent is running on the device, each agent can now be associated with its own credential. If the platform will be monitoring multiple applications on the device, each application can now be associated with its own credential. During the next discovery session, the platform will use the appropriate credential for each agent or application on the device.

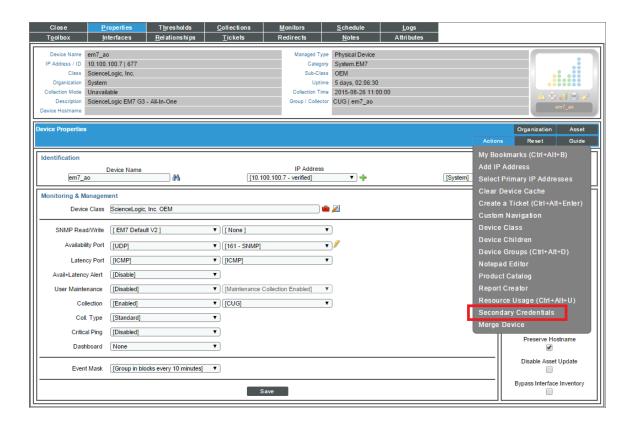
NOTE: When performing a nightly discovery on a device or when performing a manual discovery on a device, the ScienceLogic platform uses the credentials in this order: 1) Each credential manually aligned with each Dynamic Application in the Dynamic Application Collections page, in the Device Administration panel; 2) Secondary credentials defined in the Device Properties page, in the Device Administration panel; 3) The SNMP Read/Write string defined in the Device Properties page, in the Device Administration panel; 4) The credential used in the initial discovery session for the device.

To associate one or more additional credentials with a device:

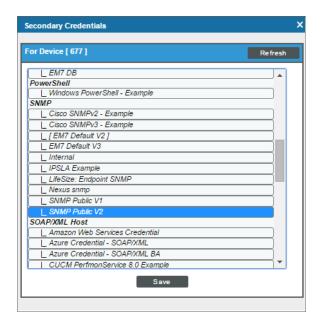
- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to define additional credentials. Select the wrench icon ( ) for the device.



3. In the Device Properties page, select the [Actions] menu and choose Secondary Credentials.



4. The **Secondary Credentials** modal page appears. The **Secondary Credentials** modal page displays a list of all credentials defined in the ScienceLogic platform.



**NOTE**: When defining primary and secondary credentials for a device, you will see only the credentials aligned to organizations you are a member of. If a primary or secondary credential has already been defined on the device, and is aligned to an organization you are not a member of, the credential will be restricted. To learn more about credentials and organizations, see the manual **Discovery and Credentials**.

- To add a credential, highlight an entry in the list of credentials.
- To select multiple credentials, hold down the <CTRL> key and select the entries by left-clicking.
- To remove all secondary credentials from a device, select the Remove All/None option.
- 5. Select the [Save] button.

### Adding the Device to a Device Group

A **device group** is a group of multiple devices. Device groups allow you to configure and edit multiple devices simultaneously. You can view a list of existing device groups, edit a device group, or define a new device group in the **Device Group Editor** page (Registry > Devices > Device Groups).

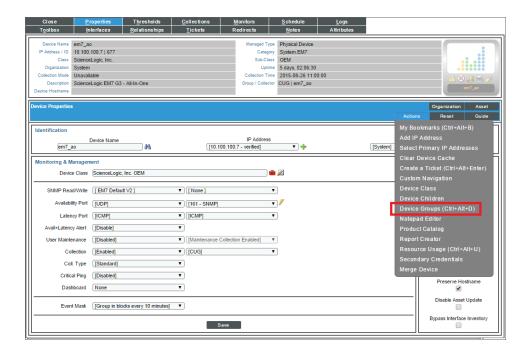
**Device configuration templates** allow you to save a device configuration and apply it to one or more devices, and re-use the same configuration over and over again. A device template contains pre-defined settings for all the fields in the **Device Properties** page (except device name and device IP) and all the fields in the **Device Thresholds** page. Device templates can also apply policies for interface monitoring, port monitoring, web-content monitoring, service monitoring, and process monitoring and align devices with Dynamic Applications. You can view and define device templates in the **Configuration Templates** (Registry > Devices > Templates) page.

You can apply device configuration templates to a device group and automate the initial configuration of multiple devices. You can also use device groups and device configuration templates to modify the configuration of multiple devices.

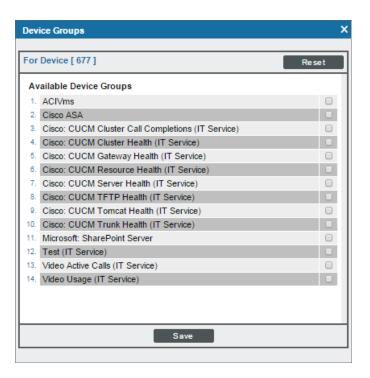
For details on device groups and device templates, see the manual **Device Groups and Device Templates**.

To add a device to an existing device group:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that you want to add to a device group. Select the wrench icon ( ) for the device.
- 3. In the **Device Properties** page, select the **[Actions]** menu and choose **Device Groups**.



4. The **Device Groups** modal page appears. The **Device Groups** modal page allows you to assign a device to a device group or remove a device from a device group.



- To add the device to a device group, in the Available Device Groups pane, select one or more device groups. After selecting the [Save] button, the device group will appear in the Member Device Groups pane.
- To remove the device from a device group, in the Member Device Groups pane, select one or more device groups. After selecting the [Save] button, the device group will appear in the Available Device Groups pane.
- 5. Select the [Save] button.
- 6. To remove the device from a device group, in the **Member Device Groups** pane, select one or more device groups.
- 7. Select the [Save] button.

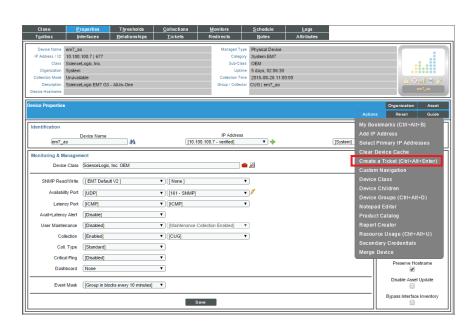
# Creating a Ticket About the Device

A ticket is a request for work. Tickets allow you to monitor work tasks associated with your network. You can create a ticket about a device. The ticket can describe a problem with the device or a maintenance task for the device.

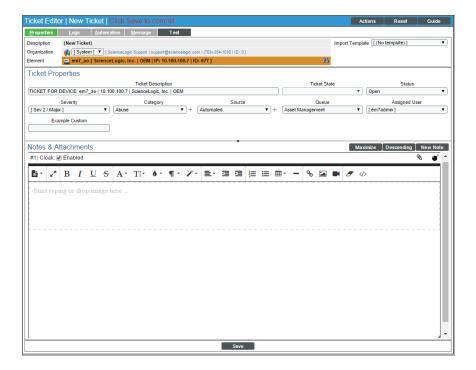
For details on tickets and ticketing, see the manual *Ticketing*.

#### To create a ticket for a device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device about which you want to create a ticket. Click the wrench icon ( ) for the device.
- 3. In the **Device Properties** page, click the **[Actions]** menu and select **Create a Ticket**.



4. The **Ticket Editor** page appears. In this page, you can define the basic parameters for a ticket. Notice that the **Description** field and **Element** field are automatically populated with the device name.



5. Click the [Save] button to save the ticket.

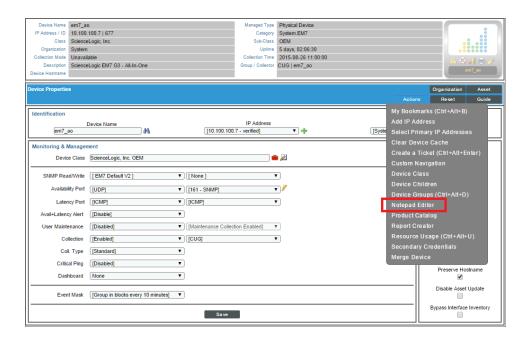
# Adding a Note to a Device

You can add notes about a device to the device administration panel. The note will appear in the **Notes & Attachments** page (the **[Notes]** tab in the **Device Administration** panel). Each note you add to the device can include formatted text, links, images, videos, and attachments.

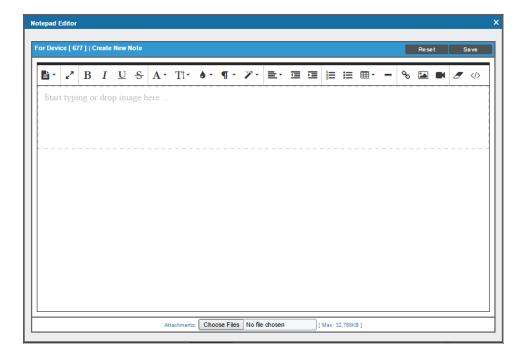
To add a note to a device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that you want to add a note to. Click the wrench icon ( ) for the device.

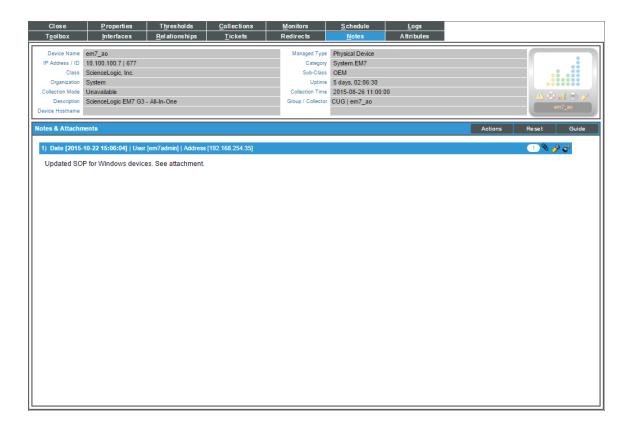
3. In the **Device Properties** page, click the **[Actions]** menu and select **Notepad Editor**.



4. The **Notepad Editor** modal page appears. In this page, you can enter and format text, include images and links in the message, and include an attachment. Click the **[Save]** button to save the note.



- 5. The **Notepad Editor** modal page allows you to enter notes or comments about the device.
  - You can format the text and include links, images, and videos in the note.
  - You can also include a document template (System > Customize > Document Templates) in the field.
- 6. The note will appear in the [Notes] tab, in the Notes & Attachments page.



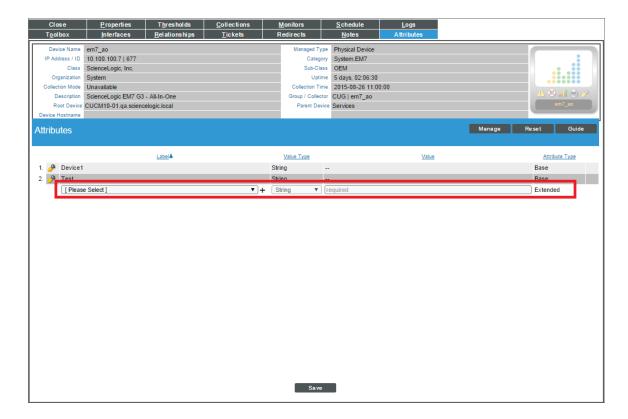
- 7. The **Notes & Attachments** page displays all the notes about the device that were created with the **Notepad Editor** modal page. In the **Notes & Attachments** page, each entry includes the username, date and time, and text of the comment. You can perform the following on each note entry:
  - To view a note's attachment, click the paperclip icon ( ).
  - To edit the content of a note, click the wrench icon ( ). The Notepad Editor modal page appears. You can update the note; format the text; insert content from a saved template; and add an attachment, image, or video to the note. Click the [Save] button to save your changes.

# Aligning Custom Attributes with a Device

You can align custom attributes with a device, assign values to those custom attributes (for the selected device only), and create new extended custom attributes for a device on the **Attributes** page (the **Attributes** tab in the **Device Administration** panel).

To align custom attributes with a device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Find the device that you want to align with a custom attribute. Click its wrench icon (🏲).
- 3. Click the [Attributes] tab.
- 4. In the Attributes page, go to the Please Select field in the bottom-most row.



- 5. Select the custom attribute that you want to align with the device.
- 6. Supply a value in the **Value** field.

**NOTE**: To align an extended custom attribute with a device, you must supply a value. You cannot align an extended custom attribute to a device and leave the value as "null."

**NOTE**: Base custom attributes for devices are automatically aligned with each device in your ScienceLogic system. If the base custom attribute does not include a value for this device, the **Value** column will display "--" (dash dash). To assign a value to an "empty" base custom attribute: Find the base custom attribute that you want to edit, select its wrench icon (), and supply a value in the **Value** field.

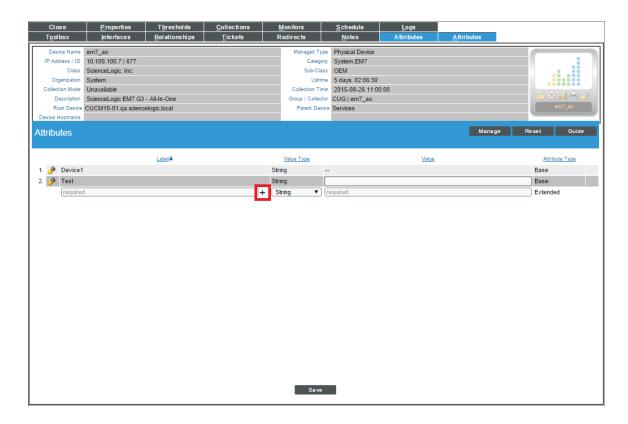
7. Click the [Save] button.

#### Creating a New Extended Custom Attribute

You can create a new extended custom attribute from the **Attributes** page. The custom attribute is then aligned with the current device and available to be used by any device in your ScienceLogic system. To create a new extended custom attribute:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Find the device for which you want to create a new custom attribute. Click its wrench icon (🌯).
- 3. Click the [Attributes] tab.

4. In the **Attributes** page, click the plus icon (+) in the bottom-most row, then supply a value in the following fields:



Label. User-defined name for the custom attribute. This value appears in the user interface. If the
value in this field does not comply with XML rules for names, the ScienceLogic platform will convert the
value to a name that complies with XML rules and store the converted value as the Internal Field
Name for the custom attribute.

NOTE: Names for custom attributes must conform to XML naming standards. The attribute name can contain any combination of alphanumeric characters, a period, a dash, a combining character or an extending character. If a value in the *Internal Field Name* column does not conform to XML standards, the ScienceLogic platform will replace non-valid characters with an underscore plus the hexadecimal value of the illegal character plus an underscore. So "serial number" would be replaced with "serial X20 number".

- Value Type. Specifies the type of value that will be saved in the custom attribute. Choices are:
  - o String. Non-numeric value
  - o Integer. Numeric value
- Value. Value that will be assigned to the custom attribute for this device.

5. Click the [Save] button.

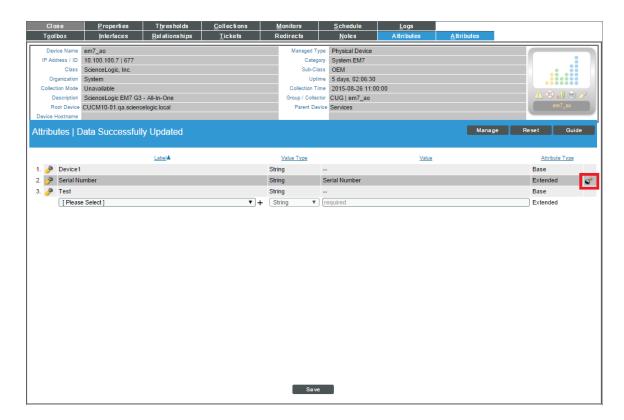
#### Deleting an Extended Custom Attribute from a Device

You can delete an extended custom attribute from a device. When you delete the custom attribute, you remove the value from the custom attribute and unalign the custom attribute with the device.

**NOTE**: You cannot delete a base custom attribute from the **Attributes** page. To delete a base custom attribute, you must go to the **Custom Attribute Manager** page (System > Manage > Custom Attributes). For more information, see the chapter on **Custom Attributes**.

To delete an extended custom attribute from a device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Find the device for which you want to delete a custom attribute. Click its wrench icon (🅕).
- 3. Click the [Attributes] tab.
- 4. In the **Attributes** page, find the extended custom attribute you want to delete. Click its bomb icon (💕).



- 5. A message appears asking you to confirm that you want to delete the value and unalign the custom attribute from the device.
- 6. Click the [OK] button.

# Associating a Product SKU with the Device

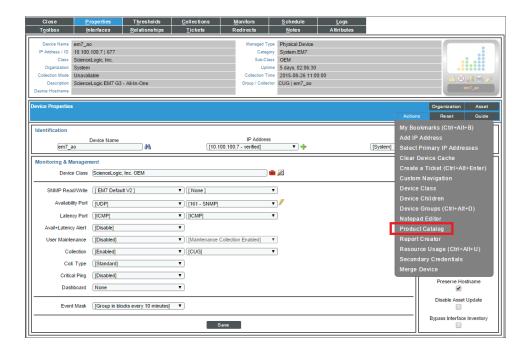
A product SKU describes a billable product or service and can be used later to create a billing policy. For details on creating and editing product SKUs, see the **Product Catalog** page (Registry > Business Services > Product Catalog). For information on billing policies, see the **Bandwidth Billing Policies** page (Registry > Business Services > Bandwidth Billing).

You can associate a product SKU with a device and then use a bandwidth billing policy to generate a bill that includes the device.

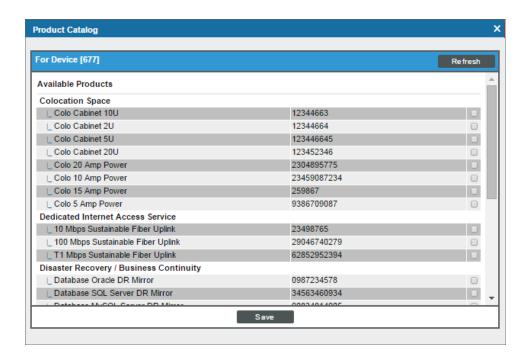
For details on product SKUs and bandwidth billing policies, see the manual Business Services.

To associate a product SKU with a device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device that you want to add a note to. Select the wrench icon (\*) for the device.
- 3. In the Device Properties page, select the [Actions] menu and choose Product Catalog.



4. The **Product Catalog** modal page appears. In this page, you can associate one or more product SKUs with the device



- To associate a product SKU with the device, in the Available Products pane, select one or more product SKUs.
- To disassociate a product SKU with a device, in the Active Product Subscriptions pane, select one or more product SKUs.
- 5. Select the [Save] button.

# Merging Devices

If your ScienceLogic system includes a physical device and a component device, you can merge those device records into a single record for easier monitoring. Merging consolidates the devices and their data—device fields, values, graphs, behaviors, and other user interface elements—providing you with a single set of data for the device. Additionally, merged devices consume only a single device license.

Merging does not remove, replace, or add any data; merging simply groups data together. When you merge a physical device and a component device, the device record for the component device no longer displays in the user interface, while the device record for the physical device displays in user interface pages that previously displayed the component device. For example, the physical device is displayed instead of the component device in the **Device Components** page and the **Component Map** page. All existing and future data for both devices will be associated with the record for the physical device.

Merged devices can be unmerged back into individual device records, if needed.

**NOTE**: You can merge only two individual devices together into a single merged device. To do so, you must have user permissions that allow merging and unmerging on both devices.

**NOTE**: When you merge devices, active events associated with the component device will be set to "cleared." The cleared events will not be associated with the physical device. If the devices are unmerged, the cleared events cannot be moved back to the component device.

**CAUTION:** Merging devices also merges the log data from each device. The log data cannot later be unmerged.

The platform enables you to either merge one pair of devices at a time, as described in the Merging Individual Devices section, or multiple pairs of devices at one time, as described in the Performing a Bulk Device Merge section. For information about unmerging devices, see the Unmerging Individual Devices section or the Performing a Bulk Device Unmerge section.

#### Merging Individual Devices

If you have a small number of physical and component devices that you want to merge, you can merge each device pair individually.

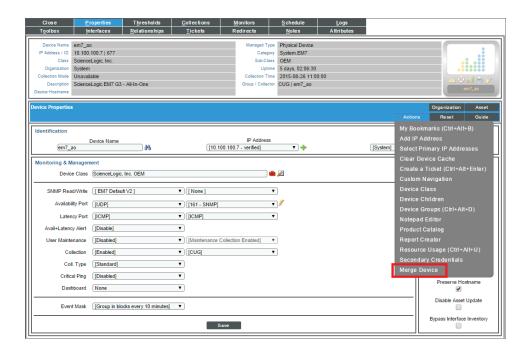
**NOTE**: If you have a large number of devices you want to merge, it might be more efficient to use the Bulk Merge feature, which is described in the *Performing a Bulk Device Merge* section.

**NOTE:** For clarity, the following instructions describe how to merge a physical device from the **Device Manager** page with a selected component device, but the process is the same when merging a component device from the **Device Manager** page with a selected physical device.

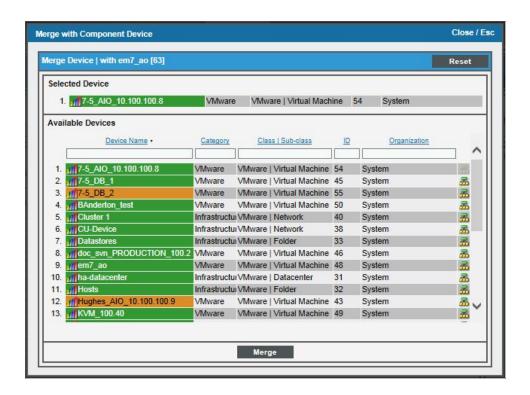
To merge individual devices:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Click the wrench icon (🎤) for the physical device that you want to merge with a component device.

3. On the **Device Properties** page, click the **[Actions]** menu and then select Merge Device.



4. A list of component devices that are available for merging with the physical device displays. Click the merge icon (356) for the component device you want to merge with the physical device. Information for the component device then displays in the **Selected Device** panel.



5. Click the [Merge] button. A pop-up message appears that asks you to confirm the merge.



6. Click the [OK] button.

**NOTE**: To view an updated list of devices that includes your merged devices, click the [**Reset**] button on the **Device Manager** page.

#### Unmerging Individual Devices

You can unmerge any pair of physical device and component device that are currently merged. When you unmerge devices, the ScienceLogic platform does not delete any devices or device data; the devices are simply separated into two separate device records.

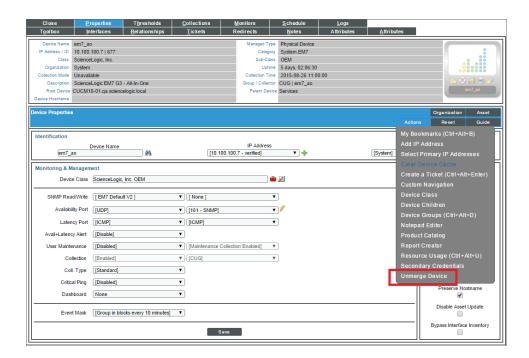
**NOTE**: If you have a large number of devices you want to unmerge, it might be more efficient to use the Bulk Unmerge feature, which is described in the *Performing a Bulk Device Unmerge* section.

CAUTION: The log data associated with the devices cannot be unmerged. After the devices are unmerged, all log data that was generated before the devices were unmerged is associated with the physical device record.

To unmerge individual devices:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Select the wrench icon ( ) for the device that you want to unmerge.

3. On the **Device Properties** page, select the **[Actions]** menu and then choose **Unmerge Device**.



4. A modal window displays that asks you to confirm the unmerging. Select the **[Unmerge]** button.



**NOTE**: To view an updated list of devices that includes your unmerged devices, select the [**Reset**] button on the **Device Manager** page.

## Performing Administrative Tasks for One or More Devices

The **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager) contains a drop-down field in the lower right called **Select Action**. This field allows you to apply an action to multiple devices at once.

To apply an action to multiple devices:

- 1. In the **Device Manager** page, select the checkbox for each device you want to apply the action to. To select all checkboxes for all devices, select the red checkbox (**(**) at the top of the page.
- 2. In the **Select Action** drop-down list, select one of the following actions:
  - **Delete Devices**. Deletes all selected devices from the ScienceLogic platform. Tickets associated with the device are unlinked from the device, but are not deleted.
  - Modify by Template. Displays the Applying Template to Device page, where you can apply the settings in a device templates to all selected devices. You can also make one-time changes to the template, that will be applied only to the selected devices.
  - Clear Device Logs. Deletes data from the device's log files.
  - **Create Asset Record**. Automatically creates an asset record for the device. The ScienceLogic platform automatically populates as many fields as possible, using retrieved data.
  - Schedule Maintenance. Leads to the Maintenance Schedule page. In this page, you can specify a date and time to put each selected device into "maintenance mode". During maintenance mode, the ScienceLogic platform will not generate events about the selected devices. You can choose to enable or enable polling during maintenance mode. Even if polling is enabled, the ScienceLogic platform will collect information from the selected devices but will not generate events for the devices.
  - Find Collection Label Duplicates. Leads to the Duplicates page. In this page, you can view a list of devices where the Collection Labels have more than possible presentation object aligned. From this page, you can manually align a single presentation object with a Collection Label for a device.
  - Change Collection State. Changes the status of the device in the ScienceLogic platform. The choices are:
    - Active. The ScienceLogic platform polls the device on a regular basis and updates the data displayed in the platform.
    - Disabled. The ScienceLogic platform does not poll the device. Data displayed in the platform is not updated.

- Change User Maintenance mode. Specifies whether the selected device or devices will be put into "user maintenance" mode. When a device is in "user maintenance", the ScienceLogic platform will not generate events about the device. You can choose to enable or disable polling during "user maintenance" mode. If polling is enabled during "user maintenance", the platform will collect information from the device but will not generate events for the device. "User maintenance mode" is not scheduled. That is, a user must manually enable "user maintenance" to put a device into this mode and a user must manually disable "user maintenance" to turn off this mode for a device. "User maintenance mode" overrides scheduled maintenance for a device. Choices are:
  - Enabled with Collection. One or more devices are set to "user maintenance" mode. During "user maintenance" mode, the platform will continue to poll the device.
  - Enabled without Collection. One or more devices are set to "user maintenance" mode. During "user maintenance" mode, the platform will not poll the device.
  - Disabled. "User maintenance" mode is disabled for each selected device.
- Change Collector Group. Changes the collector group used to collect data from the device.
   Choose from the list of all collector groups in the ScienceLogic platform. When you select one of the collector groups, each selected device will be polled by the collectors in the collector group. For All-In-One Appliances, you can select only the built-in Collector Group and any virtual Collector Groups.
- Move To Organization. Associates a device with an organization. The list of choices will include all organizations in the ScienceLogic platform.
- Align SNMP Read Credential. This option applies the selected credential to all selected devices. The
  selected devices will use the selected credential as their primary credential. Secondary credentials will
  remain unchanged. Choose from a list of SNMP Read credentials (defined in System > Manage >
  Credentials). The list will include only credentials that you are allowed to use.
- Add to Device Group. This option aligns the selected devices with the selected device group. The
  selected devices will then appear in Device Group Views and will inherit the properties of the device
  group, including scheduling, access, and visibility.
- Align to Device Dashboard. This option aligns the selected devices with the selected device
  dashboard. The selected device dashboard will appear as the default view in the Device Summary
  page.
- 3. Select the [Go] button.
- 4. The selected action is applied to each selected device.

#### Shortcut Keys for Device Administration panel

When you edit a device (select its wrench icon (🎤), you enter the **Device Administration** panel.

When you enter the **Device Administration** panel, you can use the following shortcut keys to navigate the tabbed pages and the entries in the **[Actions]** menu.

Page or Tab	Shortcut Keys
Administer Bookmarks page	Ctrl + Alt + B
Dynamic Application Collectionspage	Ctrl + Alt +C
Device Groups page	Ctrl + Alt + D
Guides page	Ctrl + Alt + G
Device Thresholds page	Ctrl + Alt + H
Device Interfaces page	Ctrl + Alt + I ("eye")
Device Logs & Messages page	Ctrl + Alt + L
Monitoring Policies page	Ctrl + Alt + M
Notes & Attachments page	Ctrl + Alt + N
Device Toolbox page	Ctrl + Alt + O ("oh")
Device Properties page	Ctrl + Alt + P
Maintenance Schedule page	Ctrl + Alt + S
Ticket History page	Ctrl + Alt + T
Resource Usage page	Ctrl + Alt + U
Exit Device Administration panel	Ctrl + Alt + X
Device Properties page	Ctrl + Alt + . ("period")
Ticket Editor page	Ctrl + Alt + <enter></enter>

## Chapter

**23** 

# Managing Device Classes and Device Categories

#### **Device Classes**

In the ScienceLogic platform, each device is associated with a device class. Typically, device classes map to a make/model pair. When possible, the ScienceLogic platform automatically assigns each discovered device to a device class. Device classes determine:

- How devices are represented in the user interface.
- Whether the device is a physical device or a virtual device.
- How managed devices are discovered with the discovery tool.

The ScienceLogic platform includes already-defined device classes for the most popular hardware. The **Device Class Editor** page allows advanced administrators to define new or legacy device classes in the platform and to customize properties of existing device classes.

Most TCP/IP-compliant devices have an internally-defined class ID, called the System Object ID and abbreviated to SysObjectID. This SysObjectID is an SNMP OID defined by the manufacturer. Each manufacturer specifies a SysObjectID for each different hardware model. In the platform, each SNMP device class is associated with a SysObjectID. During initial discovery, the platform searches each device for the SysObjectID and assigns each device to the appropriate device class.

The ScienceLogic platform also includes device classes for devices that do not support SNMP. These device classes are associated with values returned by nmap. The platform runs nmap against each device during discovery.

#### Generic | SNMP

The ScienceLogic platform includes a default device class for devices that include a SysObjectID but for which the platform does not have an aligned device class. This device class is **Generic | SNMP**.

For each device with a device class of **Generic | SNMP**, you can use the platform to view the SysObjectID for the device and then define a new device class using that SysObjectID.

#### Non-SNMP

The ScienceLogic platform also includes device classes for devices that do not support SNMP. Devices that do not support SNMP are sometimes referred to as "pingable". Devices that have a device category of "pingable" are devices that meet one of the following criteria:

- Device does not support SNMP.
- SNMP has been disabled on the device.
- Wrong credential was provided during discovery and "Discover Non-SNMP" was enabled for the discovery session.

The ScienceLogic platform can use nmap to match a "pingable" device to an appropriate "pingable" device class.

#### Component

The ScienceLogic platform includes device classes for component devices. The platform discovers management systems and the component devices they manage. The platform uses Dynamic Applications to retrieve data from a management system and discover each component device managed by that management system. Device classes for components are aligned with the Dynamic Applications that discover component devices.

## Agent-Only Device Classes

The ScienceLogic platform includes device classes for devices that are monitored by the ScienceLogic agent and are not monitored via SNMP.

During initial discovery, the agent returns operating system type and version information to SL1.

Based on this information, SL1 assigns one of the following device classes to a device monitored only by an agent:

- Microsoft Windows Workstation
- Microsoft Windows Cluster Point
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2
- Microsoft Windows Server 2012
- Microsoft Windows Server 2012 Domain Controller
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Domain Controller

- Microsoft Windows 8.1 Workstation
- Microsoft Windows 8 Workstation
- Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2
- Microsoft Windows 7 Workstation
- Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2 Domain Controller
- Microsoft Windows 10 Workstation
- Linux Ubuntu 16.04
- Linux Ubuntu 14.04
- Linux Ubuntu 12.04
- Linux Debian 8
- Linux Debian 7
- Linux Debian 6
- Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7
- Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6
- Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5
- Linux Oracle Linux 7
- Linux Oracle Linux 6
- Linux Oracle Linux 5
- Linux CentOS 7
- Linux CentOS 6

**NOTE**: If a device is monitored by an agent and via SNMP, the device class assigned by SNMP discovery will take precedence.

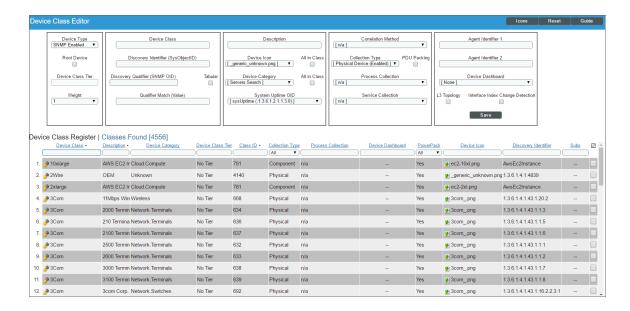
## Viewing the List of Device Classes

The Device Class page displays a list of existing device classes in the Device Class Register pane.

To view the list of device classes:

1. Log in to the ScienceLogic platform.

2. Go to the **Device Class** page (System > Customize > Device Classes).



3. For each device class, the **Device Class Register** pane displays:

**TIP**: To sort the list of device classes, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort by descending order, click the column heading again.

- Device Class Name. Name of the device class.
- **Description**. Description of the device class. If the device class is for an entire manufacturer, rather than for a specific product, the description will contain the value "OEM".

NOTE: If you see a device class of *Ping* | *ICMP* or a device with a device category of *pingable*, this means that the device does not support SNMP, that SNMP has been disabled on the device, or that the wrong SNMP credential was provided during discovery.

**NOTE**: If you see a device class of **Generic | SNMP**, this means that the platform discovered a SysObjectID for the device, but the platform does not include a device class that aligns with that SysObjectID.

Device Category. The device category. A device category is a way to categorize devices by primary
function. The platform uses device categories to group related devices in reports and views. The list of
device categories is defined in the Device Category Editor page (System > Customize > Device
Categories).

• Device Class Tier. A read-only field that displays the device tier for subscription billing. The device class tier allows you to calculate the "cost" (according to your license) of each device. By default, this field displays "Standard Device". If you are using a subscription model for billing, this field will display the license tier for the device class.

**NOTE**: If you create a custom device class, please contact ScienceLogic Customer Support to define the device class tier for the new device class.

- Class ID. Unique numeric ID, automatically assigned to the device class by the ScienceLogic platform.
- Collection Type. Device type. Can be either "physical" or "virtual".
- **Process Collection**. Specifies the application that maintains process information for the device. The ScienceLogic platform will poll this application for information on the system processes. Choices are:
  - o n/a. Don't monitor processes.
  - Host Resource. MIB that provides information on processes.
  - HP/UX. Specifies that HP agents will provide information on processes.
  - Solaris (prior to Solaris 10). Specifies that Solaris agents will provide information on processes.
  - Extended User Information. Specifies that ScienceLogic's custom extension to net-SNMP will provide process information. Users must have installed the extension before selecting this option.
- Device Dashboard. This field displays the device dashboard associated with the device class.
- PowerPack. This field specifies whether or not this device class is included in a PowerPack.
- Device Icon. The icon associated with the device class. To view the icon, select the picture icon (🔊).
- Discovery Identifier. An SNMP OID defined by the manufacturer. Usually, a hardware manufacturer specifies a SysObjectID for each different hardware model.
- **Subs**. Specifies if one or more devices are aligned with the device class. If so, the devices icon (4) appears in this column. Selecting the devices column leads to the **Subscribers** modal page, where you can view a list of devices that are aligned with the device class.

#### Filtering the List of Device Classes

You can filter the list on the Device Class Editor page by one or more parameters. Only device classes that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the Device Class Editor page.

For each filter except Collection Type, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Device Class Editor** page searches for device classes that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use special characters to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

- Device Class. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Device Class Editor page will display only devices that have a matching device class name.
- **Description**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Class Editor** page will display only devices that have a matching description name.
- **Device Category**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Class Editor** page will display only devices that have a matching device category name.
- **Device Class Tier**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Device Class Editor page will display only devices that have a matching device class tier.
- Class ID. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Device Class Editor page will display only devices that have a matching class ID.
- **Collection Type** Specifies the device class's collection type. Only those devices that match all the previously selected fields and have the specified collection type will be displayed. The choices are:
  - o All. Include device classes that have a Collection Type of physical and virtual.
  - o Physical. Include only device classes that have a Collection Type of physical.
  - o Virtual. Include only device classes that have a Collection Type of virtual.
- **Device Dashboard**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Class Editor** page will display only devices that have a matching device dashboard.
- Process Collection. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Device Class Editor
  page will display only devices that have a matching process collection type.
- **PowerPack**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Class Editor** page will display only devices that have a matching PowerPack value.
- **Device Icon**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Class Editor** page will display only devices that have a matching device icon name.
- **Discovery Identifier**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Class Editor** page will display only devices that have a matching discovery identifier.
- **Subs**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Device Class Editor** page will display only devices that have a matching subs value.

## Creating Device Classes

The following sections describe how to create new device classes for:

- Devices that support SNMP.
- Devices with Device Class "Generic | SNMP".
- Devices that do not support SNMP.
- Devices with a Device Class of "Component".

## Creating a New Device Class of Type "SNMP-Enabled"

In the **Device Class Editor** page, you can define a new device class. The ScienceLogic platform can then use this device class during discovery and users can assign this device class to devices.

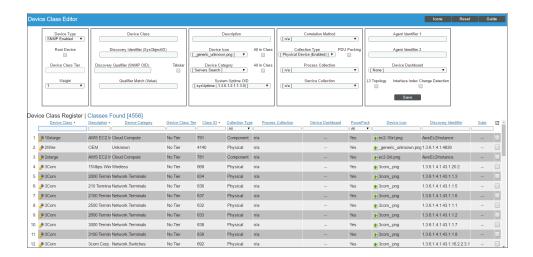
**NOTE**: You can use an existing device class as a template when defining a new device class. To do this, follow the steps in the Editing an *SNMP-Enabled Device Class* section, but supply a new name in the **Device Class** field and click [Save As] to save your changes.

**NOTE**: The **Device Class Tier** is a read-only field that is automatically populated by the subscription billing process. If you create a custom device class, please contact ScienceLogic Customer Support to define the **Device Class Tier** for the new device class.

When you create a new device class of type **SNMP Enabled**, you are defining a device class that uses the **SNMP SysObjectID** to identify member device.

To create a new device class of type **SNMP Enabled**:

- 1. Go to the **Device Class Editor** page (System > Customize > Device Classes).
- 2. Click [Reset] to clear the fields in the Device Class Editor pane.
- 3. Select SNMP Enabled in the **Device Type** drop-down list. You can now define the value in the following fields:



• **Root Device**. If selected, this checkbox specifies that this device can have children devices. Ensures that root devices are included in nightly re-discovery.

Weight. If two device-class definitions are similar, a device might meet the criteria for both device
classes. In this case, the Weight field tells the ScienceLogic platform which device class to align with
the device. The Weight field allows you to define both detailed, non-SNMP device-class definitions,
as well as less detailed, catch-all device classes.

The ScienceLogic platform will align the device with the device-class definition with the lowest weight. If a device matches two device-class definitions, and both device classes have the same weight, the ScienceLogic platform will align the device with the device class that appears first in the alphabetical list of device classes.

For example, you could define a detailed device class with a weight of "1" and a similar but less detailed device class with a weight of "10". The ScienceLogic platform will first try to assign a discovered device to the device class with a weight of "1". If the device does not meet the criteria for that device class, the ScienceLogic platform will then try to assign the discovered device to the device class with a weight of "10".

- **Device Class**. The name of the manufacturer who created the device and/or agent. Can be any combination of alphanumeric characters, up to 48 characters in length.
- **Discovery Identifier (SysObjectID)**. The SNMP OID, in numeric form, that is returned when querying the device's sysObjectID. Can be up to 64 characters in length. Refer to the appropriate MIB file to determine this value.

**NOTE**: To view a list of OIDs associated with companies, organizations, and manufacturers, see <a href="http://www.iana.org/assignments/enterprise-numbers">http://www.iana.org/assignments/enterprise-numbers</a>

- Discovery Qualifier (SNMP OID). Optional field. Secondary SNMP OID, in numeric form, used to
  further qualify device types. Can be up to 255 characters in length. If a device matches both the
  Discovery Identifier and responds to the Discovery Qualifier, the device will be assigned to the
  device class.
- Tabular. If you want to use a tabular value in the **Discovery Qualifier** field, select this checkbox. When you select this checkbox, the platform will perform an SNMP walk of the **Discovery Qualifier** (as opposed to an SNMP "get" request) and then search for the value that matches the **Qualifier Match** field.
- Qualifier Match. Optional field. String that must be present in returned value for the Discovery
  Qualifier OID. If a device matches the Discovery Identifier, responds to the Discovery Qualifier,
  and the response matches the Qualifier Match, the device will be assigned to the device class. Can
  be up to 64 characters in length.
- **Description**. The model name of the device. Can be any combination of alphanumeric characters, up to 48 characters in length. For ease-of-use, ScienceLogic recommends that you follow this convention: If you are creating a device class for an entire manufacturer, rather than for a specific product, enter "OEM" as the device description.
- **Device Icon**. The icon used to display the device in the graphical interface. To view the available icons, click **[Icons]**. Select an icon from the drop-down list.

- All in class. Selecting this checkbox updates the device icon for all existing members of the device class.
- **Device Category**. A logical categorization of device by primary function. This field allows the platform to group related devices in reports and views. Select a value from the drop-down list.
- All in class. Selecting this checkbox updates the device category for all existing members of the device class.
- System Uptime OID. Specifies the OID to monitor to determine system uptime. Choices are:
  - sysUpTime (.1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0). EM7 Default. From the System group of MIB RFC 1213. Returns uptime of the device's SNMP Agent. The time (in hundredths of a second) since the network management portion of the system was last re-initialized.
  - hrSystemUptime (.1.3.6.1.2.1.25.1.1.0). From the HR-MIB. The amount of time since this host was last initialized.
  - Any additional OIDs defined in the System Uptime OIDs page (System > Customize > Uptime OIDs).
- **Correlation Method**. Used for special topological correlation. Allows the platform to support event correlation and mapping for VMware and Microsoft hypervisors.
- Collection Type. Specifies whether the device is a hardware-based device (physical) or a virtual device.
- PDU Packing. If your managed network includes a large number of interfaces, and you want to
  monitor those interfaces, select this checkbox. PDU packing enables quicker collection of interface
  data.
- Process Collection. Specifies how the platform will retrieve process information for the device. The
  platform will use this method to gather information on the system processes. Choices are:
  - o n/a. Don't monitor processes.
  - Host Resource. Specifies that the Host Resources MIB will be used to collect information on processes.
  - HP/UX. Specifies that HP agents will provide information on processes.
  - Solaris (prior to Solaris 10). Specifies that Solaris agents will provide information on processes.
  - Extended User Information. Specifies that ScienceLogic's custom extension to net-SNMP will provide process information. Users must have installed the extension before selecting this option.
- Service Collection. Specifies how to collect information on Windows services. Choices are:
  - $\circ$  n/a. This is not a Windows device class.
  - Windows Basic. Use the Windows MIB to gather information about Windows services.
  - WMI Informant. Use the WMI Informant MIB to gather information about Windows services.
- Agent Identifier 1 and Agent Identifier 2: These fields are used to align device classes to devices
  using the ScienceLogic agent. Device classes exist for every possible combination of values returned
  by the agent; you do not need to enter or change values in these fields when creating or editing a

device class.

- Device Dashboard. Select a device dashboard from a list of all device dashboards in the ScienceLogic platform. For devices with this device class, the selected device dashboard will appear as an option in the Device Summary page. This field is optional.
- L3 Topology. If selected, the platform includes devices in this device class in the Layer-3 Maps page (Views > Topology Maps > Layer-3). The platform uses traceroute from each Data Collector to each managed device to create Layer-3 maps.
- Interface Index Change Detection. On some devices, the SNMP index of an interface can change when the interface goes down and then comes back up. If you select this checkbox, the platform will use the combination of interface ID and ifPhysAddress to monitor interfaces on devices that use this device class and to align events with those interfaces.
- 4. Click [Save] to save the new device class or click [Save As] to save your changes under a new device class name.

### Editing an SNMP-Enabled Device Class

In the Device Class Editor page, you can edit a device class for a device that supports SNMP.

When you **select SNMP Enabled**, you are defining a device class that uses the **SNMP SysObjectID** to identify member devices.

To edit an existing device class:

- Go to the Device Class Editor page (System > Customize > Device Classes), or from the Device Properties page, select the pencil icon (
- 2. In the **Device Class Register** pane at the bottom of the page, find the device class you want to edit. Select its wrench icon ( ).
- 4. The fields in the top pane will be populated with values from the selected device class. You can edit one or more of the fields described in the section Creating a New Device Class for Devices That Support SNMP.
- 5. Select the [Save] button to save your changes to the device class or select the [Save As] button to save your changes under a new device class name.

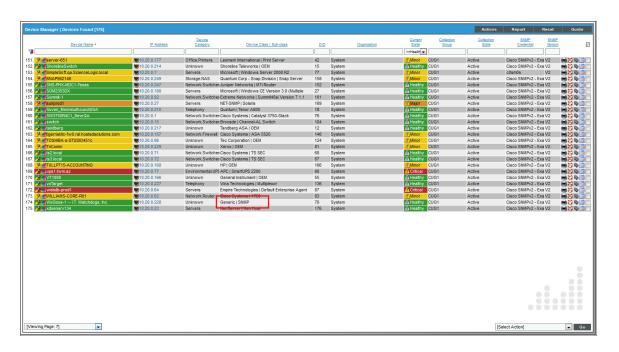
## Creating a New Device Class for a Device with Device Class "Generic | SNMP"

After discovery, the ScienceLogic platform might discover devices and assign those devices to the device class **Generic | SNMP**. This means that the platform was able to retrieve a SysObjectID value from the device, but the platform does not include a Device Class for that SysObjectID.

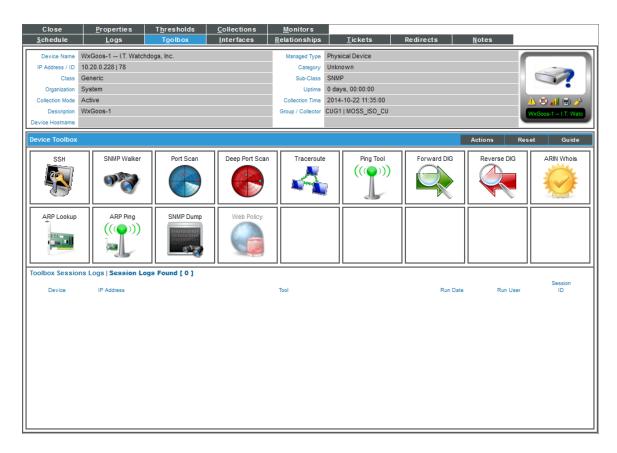
**NOTE**: The **Device Class Tier** is a read-only field that is automatically populated by the subscription billing process. If you create a custom device class, please contact ScienceLogic Customer Support to define the **Device Class Tier** for the new device class.

To create a new device class for a device with device class **Generic | SNMP**, perform the following:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device with the device class **Generic | SNMP**. Select the wrench icon ( ) for the device.

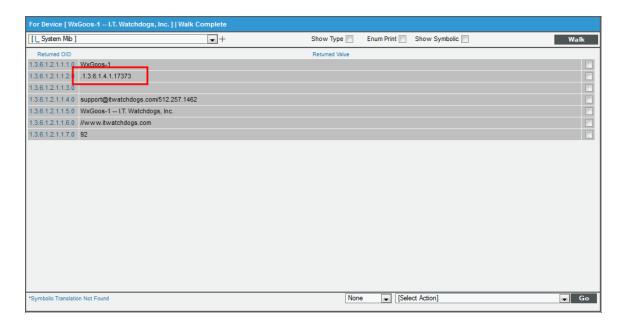


3. In the **Device Administration** panel, select the **[Toolbox]** tab.



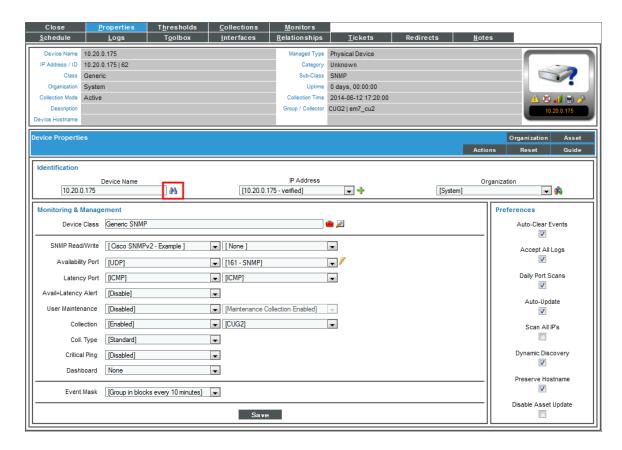
4. In the **Device Toolbox** page, select the icon for SNMP Walker.

5. In the **SNMP Walker** modal page, go to the drop-down menu in the upper left and select **System MIB**. Then select the **[Walk]** button.



- 6. The second entry in the **Returned Value** column is the SysObjectID. In the example above, that value is **1.3.6.1.4.1.303.3.3.7.3**. Copy this value and save it in a document or write down this value. You will need it to create a new device class.
- 7. Follow the directions in the section Creating a New Device Class of type "SNMP-Enabled". In the Discovery Identifier field, enter the value of the SysObjectID from the SNMP Walker. Make sure there are no blank spaces before or after the SysObjectID value.
- 8. To assign the new device class to a device, follow the instructions in the section *Manually Changing the Device Class for a Device*.

9. Alternately, you can re-discover the device with the device class "Generic | SNMP". To re-discover the device, go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager). Find the device you want to rediscover. Select its wrench icon (). In the **Device Properties** page for the device, select the binoculars icon ().



10. After the device is re-discovered, it should now be aligned with the new device class.

## Creating a New Device Class for Devices That Do Not Support SNMP

The ScienceLogic platform includes device classes for devices that are "pingable". By default, these devices are aligned with the device category of "pingable" and are placed in the device class "Ping | ICMP". To discover devices that have a device category of "pingable", you must select *Discover Non-SNMP* in the **Discovery Session Editor** page.

Devices with the device category of "pingable" are devices that meet one of the following criteria:

- Device does not support SNMP.
- SNMP has been disabled on the device.
- Either no SNMP credential was provided in the discovery session or an incorrect SNMP credential was provided in the discovery session.

In some cases, you might want to discover a "pingable" device and use XML requests, XSLT requests, WMI requests, SOAP transactions, Python snippets, or SQL queries to gather information from the device. You can do this through Dynamic Applications.

You might also want to create a more descriptive device class for these types of devices and assign a device category other than "pingable". The ScienceLogic platform can use the values returned by nmap (run during discovery) to match a "pingable" device to a descriptive device class.

**NOTE**: You can use an existing device class as a template when defining a new device class. To do this, follow the steps in the *Editing a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled* section, but supply a new name in the *Device Class* field and click [Save As] to save your changes.

**NOTE**: The **Device Class Tier** is a read-only field that is automatically populated by the subscription billing process. If you create a custom device class, please contact ScienceLogic Customer Support to define the **Device Class Tier** for the new device class.

When you create a new device class of type **Pingable**, you are defining a device class that uses the **XML values returned by nmap** to identify member devices.

To create a new device class with a device category of "pingable":

To discover details about devices that do not support SNMP, during discovery (System > Manage >
Discovery), you should select an *Initial Scan Level* of 5. Deep Discovery and select the checkbox for
Discover Non-SNMP. The ScienceLogic platform will run the following nmap command on each device during discovery:

nmap -sS -O --host-timeout=12000ms "-p 21,22,23,25,80" -A --version-all -oX full pathname of file in which to store XML outputIP address of device

NOTE: Depending on your selections in the **Discovery Session Editor** page, the ScienceLogic platform might use the *-sU* or *-sT* option instead of *-sS*. The value supplied to the *host-timeout* option will vary depending upon the list of ports specified in the **Discovery Session Editor**page. The list of ports supplied with the *-p* option will vary depending upon the list of ports specified in the **Discovery Session Editor**page. For more details on the nmap command, see the webpage <a href="http://nmap.org/book/man.html">http://nmap.org/book/man.html</a>.

- 2. The ScienceLogic platform stores the output from the nmap command in an XML file. In the NMAP Report XPATH field (described later in this section), you specify a path in that XML file. That path will specify the location of a value in the XML file. The ScienceLogic platform will then examine the specified value and use the regular expression defined in the XPATH Match Regex field (described later in this section) to match devices to this device class.
- 3. To begin gathering information to include in the device class, find a device for which you want to create a "pingable" device class. If you have already discovered this device, it might currently have a device class of "Ping | ICMP".

4. You must now run nmap on the device. You can either log in directly to the device or log in to another device that can communicate with the device on which you want to run nmap. At the command prompt, enter the following:

```
nmap -sS -O -oX full pathname of file in which to XML output-sV --version-all -A IP address of device
```

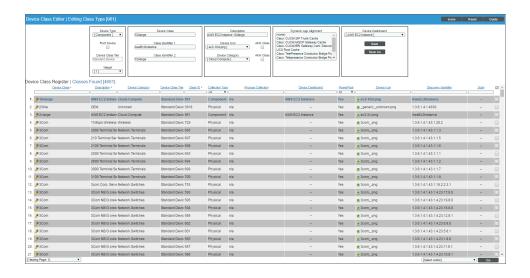
5. Navigate to the XML file where you stored the output from the nmap command. Examine the output and find an XML element or attribute that you can use to uniquely identify a device class for the device. Note the XPATH to the element or attribute.

**NOTE**: For information on XPATH syntax, see http://www.w3schools.com/xpath/xpath syntax.asp

- 6. The device data in the XML report generally uses the following element structure:
  - Information about nmap, including scan level and debugging level.
  - Information about each discovered host, including start-time and end-time for the nmap and the IP address, MAC address, and hardware vendor.
  - Specific information about each port, including the service running on the port, some stored as attributes of the Port element, some stored as child elements of the Port element
  - Specific information about the operating system, include vendor and version number, stored as attributes of the OSClass element
  - Information about uptime for the device.
  - Information about traceroute to the discovered device and round-trip time to the discovered device.
  - Performance data for this session of nmap.
- 7. For example, suppose we want to create a device class for each device that runs an Apache web server. After running nmap on a device that is running Apache, we might see the following elements and attributes under Host/Ports:

The XPATH would be /nmaprun/host/ports/port/service/@product

8. Go to the **Device Class Editor** page (System > Customize > Device Classes) to create a new device class. Click the **[Reset]** button to clear any values from the **Device Class Editor** page. Supply a value in the following fields:



- **Device Type**. Select Pingable.
- **Root Device**. Specifies that this device can have children devices. Ensures that root devices are included in nightly re-discovery. Leave this box unchecked.
- Weight. If two device-class definitions are similar, a device might meet the criteria for both device classes. In this case, the Weight field tells the ScienceLogic platform which device class to align with the device. The Weight field allows you to define both detailed, non-SNMP device-class definitions, as well as less detailed, catch-all device classes.

The ScienceLogic platform will align the device with the device-class definition with the lowest weight. If a device matches two device-class definitions, and both device classes have the same weight, the ScienceLogic platform will align the device with the device class that appears first in the alphabetical list of device classes.

For example, you could define a detailed device class with a weight of "1" and a similar but less detailed device class with a weight of "10". The ScienceLogic platform will first try to assign a discovered device to the device class with a weight of "1". If the device does not meet the criteria for that device class, the ScienceLogic platform will then try to assign the discovered device to the device class with a weight of "10".

• **Device Class**. The name of the manufacturer who created the device and/or agent. Can be any combination of alphanumeric characters, up to 48 characters in length.

- NMAP Report XPATH. Specifies how should parse the results of an nmap request (run during discovery) to determine whether the device should be aligned to this device class. If you select an Initial Scan Level of 5. Deep Discovery for a discovery session, the platform will run the following nmap command on each device during discovery. The ScienceLogic platform will include the -A option, to retrieve as much information as possible and match pingable devices with custom device classes.
  - In the NMAP Report Path field, enter the XPATH for the element or attribute you want to use to
    identify member devices. That path will specify the location of a value in the XML file. The
    ScienceLogic platform will then examine the specified value and use the regular expression defined
    in the XPATH Match Regex field to match devices to this device class.

In the ScienceLogic platform, the XPATH must always begin with **/nmaprun/host**. Using our example from step #7 above, we would provide an XPATh of:

/nmaprun/host/ports/port/service/@product

NOTE: In the NMAP Report Path field, we included the entire path to the attribute we want to match, but intentionally did not filter on the attribute value. That is, we specified /nmaprun/host/ports/port/service/@product instead of /nmaprun/host/ports/port/service/@product='Apache httpd'. When you include the value of the attribute in the XPATH, XPATH does not return the attribute value, but instead returns the entire element that includes the attribute. Because the element is not a text string, the ScienceLogic platform cannot search the element using a regex.

XPATH Match Regex. In this field, specify a regular expression you want to use when examining the
value returned by nmap. The location of the value returned by nmap is defined in the NMAP Report
XPATH field. The ScienceLogic platform will align a device to a device class if the nmap response
includes a value at the path specified in the NMAP Report XPATH and the value at that location
matches the regular expression in the XPATH Match Regex field.

Using our example in step #7, we would provide the value **Apache httpd**.

- **Description**. The model name of the device. Can be any combination of alpha-numeric characters, up to 48-characters in length. For ease-of-use, ScienceLogic recommends that you follow this convention: If you are creating a device class for an entire manufacturer, rather than for a specific product, enter "OEM" as the device description.
- **Device Icon**. The icon used to display the device in the graphical interface. To view the available icons, click **[Icons]**. Select an icon from the drop-down list.
- All in class. Selecting this checkbox updates the device icon for all existing members of the device class.
- **Device Category**. A logical categorization of device by primary function. This field allows to group related devices in reports and views. Select a value from drop-down list.
- All in class. Selecting this checkbox updates the device category for all existing members of the device class.

- Collection Type. Specifies whether the device is a hardware-based device (physical) or a virtual
  device.
- Weight. If two device-class definitions are very similar, a device might meet the criteria for both
  device classes. In this case, the Weight field tells which device class to align with the device. The
  platform will align the device with the device-class definition with the lowest weight. If a device
  matches two device-class definitions, and both device classes have the same weight, the platform will
  align the device with the device-class that appears first in the alphabetical list of device classes.

The **Weight** field allows you to define detailed non-SNMP device-class definitions and still have catch-all device-classes with less-specific criteria.

For example, you could define a detailed device class with a weight of "1" and a similar but less detailed catch-all device class with a weight of "10". The ScienceLogic platform will first try to assign a discovered device to the device class with a weight of "1". If the device does not meet the criteria for that device class, the ScienceLogic platform will then try to assign the discovered device to the device class with a weight of "10".

- **Device Dashboard**. Select a device dashboard from a list of all device dashboards in the ScienceLogic platform. For devices with this device class, the selected device dashboard will appear as an option in the **Device Class Editor** page. This field is optional.
- 9. Click the [Save] button to save your changes to the device class or click the [Save As] button to save your changes under a new device-class name.

#### Applying the New Device Class

To apply a new "pingable" device class during discovery:

- 1. Go to the **Discovery Control Panel** page (System > Manage > Discovery). If you are creating a new discovery session, click the **[Create]** button. If you are editing an existing discovery session, click its wrench icon ().
- 2. In the **Discovery Session Editor**page:
  - In the *Initial Discovery Scan Level* field, select 5. Deep Discovery.

NOTE: You can also define *Initial Discovery Scan Level* in the **Behavior Settings** page (System > Settings > Behavior). Because this discovery level is very compute-intensive, you might want to avoid setting this discovery level globally and instead choose this discovery level *only for specific discovery sessions*.

- Select the **Discover Non-SNMP** checkbox.
- Select the Model Device checkbox.
- 3. Click the [Save] button.
- 4. When you run the discovery session, the ScienceLogic platform will apply the new device class to discovered or re-discovered devices.

NOTE: You can also apply a new "pingable" device class *during nightly auto-discovery*. You can define (nightly) *Rediscovery Scan Level* in the Behavior Settingspage (System > Settings > Behavior) and select 5. Deep Discovery. However, because this auto-discovery level is very compute-intensive, you might not want to use this setting for global auto-discovery.

#### Maintaining the New Device Class During Auto-Discovery

If you have applied a new "pingable" device class to a device, you should do the following to make sure that doesn't reset the device's device-class to "Ping | ICMP" during nightly auto-discovery.

NOTE: The ScienceLogic platform will reset a pingable device's device class to "Ping | ICMP" if Deep Discovery is not enabled for nightly auto-discovery. You can enable Deep Discovery for nightly auto-discovery in the **Behavior Settings** page (System > Settings > Behavior). Go to the field **Rediscovery Scan Level**, and select 5. Deep Discovery. However, because this auto-discovery level is very compute-intensive, you might not want to use this setting for global auto-discovery.

You can disable auto-discovery for each device that uses Deep Discovery. Instead of using nightly auto-discovery, you can create a scheduled discovery session that will update the device class. To do this:

- 1. Go to the **Device Properties** page (Registry > Devices > wrench icon).
- 2. Unselect the checkbox for **Auto-Update**.
- 3. Click the [Save] button.
- 4. Go to the **Discovery Control Panel** page (System > Manage > Discovery) and create a discovery session for this device (and each device that uses Deep Discovery and which you want to update regularly). When creating this discovery session:
  - In the *Initial Discovery Scan Level* field, select 5. Deep Discovery.
  - Select the Discover Non-SNMP checkbox.
  - Select the Model Device checkbox
- 5. Define the new discovery session as a scheduled discovery session, so you can periodically update the device's data.

#### Editing a Device Class That is Not SNMP-Enabled

In the **Device Class Editor** page, you can edit the parameters of an existing device class.

When you **do not select SNMP Enabled**, you are defining a device class that does not use SNMP to identify member devices. Instead, the device class will use a value returned by nmap (run during discovery) to identify member devices.

**NOTE**: You can use an existing device class as a template for a new device class. To do this, follow the steps in this section, but supply a new name in the **Device Class** field and select the **[Save As]** button to save your changes.

To edit an existing Device Class:

- 1. Go to the **Device Class Editor** page (System > Customize > Device Classes), or from the **Device Properties** page, select the pencil icon (<a>><a>></a>).
- 2. In the **Device Class Register** pane at the bottom of the page, find the device class you want to edit. Select its wrench icon ().
- 3. The fields in the top pane will be populated with values from the selected device class.
- 4. In the **Device Class Editor** page, you can edit the parameters of an existing device class. If you do not select SNMP Enabled in the **Device Type** drop-down list, you can edit the value in one or more of the fields described in the section **Creating a New Device Class for Devices That Do Not Support SNMP**.
- 5. Select the **[Save]** button to save you changes to the device class or select the **[Save As]** button to save your changes under a new
- 6. The newly selected device class is now associated with the device.

## Creating a Device Class of Type "Component"

A device of type "component" is an entity that runs under the control of a management system running on a physical device. For example, the ScienceLogic platform can discover a VMWare ESX server (management system) and then discover the virtual machines (component devices) running on that ESX server.

The ScienceLogic platform uses Dynamic Applications to retrieve data from a management system and discover each component device managed by that management system. The ScienceLogic platform then uses that retrieved data to create a device for each component device.

Device classes for components are aligned with the Dynamic Applications that discover component devices. For example, we could have a device class of type component for "Cisco Systems | UCS Chassis". We could align the Dynamic Application for "UCS Chassis Discovery" with this device class. When the ScienceLogic platform runs the "UCS Chassis Discovery" Dynamic Application and discovers a component device, the platform assigns each discovered component device to the device class "Cisco Systems | UCS Chassis".

When you create a new device class of type **Component**, you are defining a device class that uses an aligned Dynamic Application to identify the member devices.

**NOTE**: The **Device Class Tier** is a read-only field that is automatically populated by the subscription billing process. If you create a custom device class, please contact ScienceLogic Customer Support to define the **Device Class Tier** for the new device class.

To create a new device class of type **Component**:

- 1. Go to the **Device Class Editor** page (System > Customize > Device Classes), or from the **Device Properties** page, click the pencil icon (**A**).
- 2. Click [Reset] to clear any values from the Device Class Editor page.
- 3. Supply a value in each required field in the top pane:
  - Device Type. Select Component.
  - **Root Device**. Specifies that this device can have children devices. Ensures that root devices are included in re-discovery.
  - Weight. If two device-class definitions are similar, a device might meet the criteria for both device classes. In this case, the Weight field tells the ScienceLogic platform which device class to align with the device. The Weight field allows you to define both detailed, non-SNMP device-class definitions, as well as less detailed, catch-all device classes.

The ScienceLogic platform will align the device with the device-class definition with the lowest weight. If a device matches two device-class definitions, and both device classes have the same weight, the ScienceLogic platform will align the device with the device class that appears first in the alphabetical list of device classes.

For example, you could define a detailed device class with a weight of "1" and a similar but less detailed device class with a weight of "10". The ScienceLogic platform will first try to assign a discovered device to the device class with a weight of "1". If the device does not meet the criteria for that device class, the ScienceLogic platform will then try to assign the discovered device to the device class with a weight of "10".

- **Device Class**. The name of the manufacturer who created the device and/or agent. Can be any combination of alphanumeric characters, up to 48 characters in length.
- **Description**. The model name of the device. Can be any combination of alphanumeric characters, up to 48 characters in lenath.
- **Device Icon**. The icon used to display the device in the graphical interface. To view the available icons, click [Icons]. Select an icon from the drop-down list.
- All in class. Selecting this checkbox updates the device icon for all existing members of the device class.
- Device Category. A logical categorization of device by primary function. This field allows the ScienceLogic platform to group related devices in reports and views. Select a value from the dropdown list.
- All in class. Selecting this checkbox updates the device category for all existing members of the device class.
- Dynamic App Alignment. The Dynamic Application to align with this device class. This list will include all Dynamic Applications that have the Component Mapping checkbox selected in the Dynamic Applications Properties Editor page and are not currently being used by another device class. When you select a Dynamic Application, each component device discovered by that Dynamic Application will be assigned to the current device class.

- **Device Dashboard**. Select a device dashboard from a list of all device dashboards in the ScienceLogic platform. For devices with this device class, the selected device dashboard will appear as an option in the **Device Summary** page. This field is optional.
- 4. Click **[Save]** to save you changes to the device class or click **[Save As]** to save your changes under a new device-class name.

## Editing a Device Class of Type "Component"

To edit an existing Device Class of Type "Component":

- Go to System > Customize > Device Classes, or from the **Device Properties** page, select the pencil icon (
- 2. In the **Device Class Register** pane at the bottom of the page, find the device class you want to edit. Select its wrench icon ().
- 3. The fields in the top pane will be populated with values from the selected device class.
- 4. You can edit the value in one or more of the fields. For details on each field, see the section on *Creating a New Device Class of Type "Component"*.
- 5. Select the [Save] button to save you changes to the device class or select the [Save As] button to save your changes under a new device-class name.

## Legacy Device Classes of Type "ICMP"

The ScienceLogic platform includes legacy device classes of type **SNMP Enabled** for "pingable" devices (that is for devices that don't support SNMP). The ScienceLogic platform includes the following legacy, **SNMP Enabled** device classes for "pingable" devices:

- Cisco Systems | ICMP
- FreeBSD | ICMP
- Linux | ICMP
- Microsoft | ICMP
- Novell | ICMP
- Ping | ICMP
- Sun Microsystems | ICMP
- Tektronix, Inc. | ICMP

**NOTE**: Best practice is to define "pingable" devices as those that do not support SNMP. For "pingable" devices that do not support SNMP, ScienceLogic recommends you sue the new "deep discovery" feature and then create device classes of type "pingable".

## Managing Device Classes

The following sections describe:

- Manually changing the device class for a device.
- Changing the icon for a device class.
- Deleting one or more device classes.

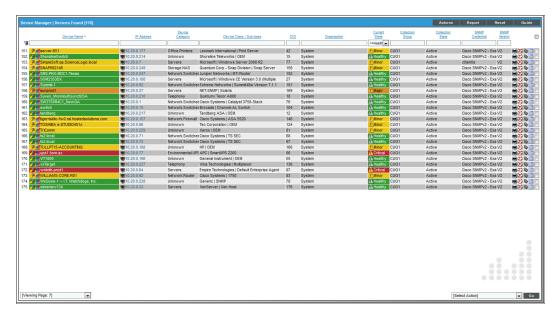
## Manually Changing the Device Class for a Device

During discovery, the ScienceLogic platform automatically assigns a device class to each discovered device. For example, the platform assigns the device class "Ping" to devices that do not support SNMP. You might want to manually change the device class for such a device after discovery.

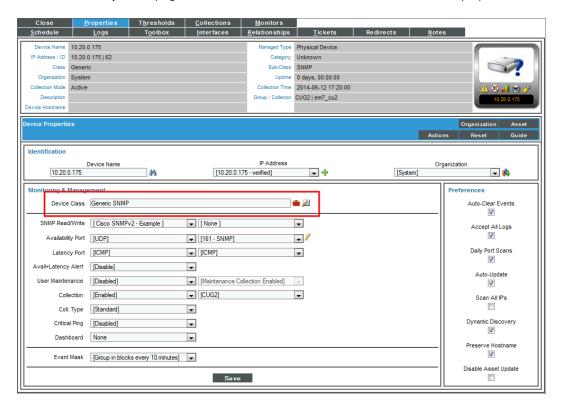
In the **Device Properties** page, you can assign a different device class to the device.

To assign a different device class to the device:

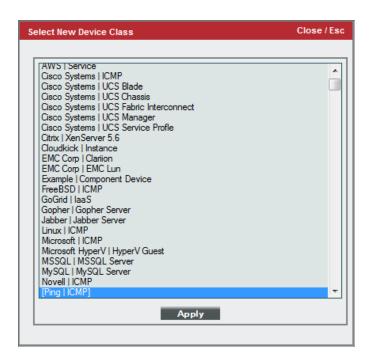
- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Find the device you want to edit. Select its wrench icon ( ).



3. In the **Device Properties** page, find the *Device Class* field. Select the toolbox icon (•).



4. In the **Select New Device Class** modal page, select a device class.



- 5. There are two other ways to align devices with the devices class:
  - You can re-run discovery for a single device. To re-discover a device, go to Registry > Devices >
     Device Manager. Find the device you want to re-discover. Select its wrench icon ( ). In the Device
     Properties page for the device, select the binoculars icon ( ). After the device is re-discovered, it will be aligned with the appropriate device class. You can repeat this process for each device you want to align with the new or edited device class.
  - If you re-run one or more discovery sessions (System > Manage > Discovery), the ScienceLogic platform will automatically apply the new or edited device class to those devices that match the criteria. Remember that to discover details about device of type "pingable", you must select the checkbox *Discovery Non-SNMP*. Optionally, to retrieve details about "pingable" devices, in the field *Initial Scan Level*, you can also select 5. Deep Discovery.

## Changing the Icon for a Device Class

You can select a new icon for a device class or import your own image as an icon. To do this:

- 1. Go to the **Device Class Editor** page (System > Customize > Device Classes), or from the **Device Properties** page, select the pencil icon (

  ).
- 2. In the **Device Class Register** pane at the bottom of the page, find the device class you want to edit. Select its wrench icon ().
- 3. The fields in the top pane will be populated with values from the selected device class. To edit the icon associated with the selected device class, edit the value of the **Device Icon** field. The icon you select will be associated with the device class.
  - To view the list of icon names and icon images, select the [Icon] button in the upper right of the page.
  - The **Device Icon Browser** modal page displays a list of all icons for device class.
  - To import an image to use as an icon, select the [Import] button. In the Device Icon Browser modal page, you can import a .png image for use as an icon in the ScienceLogic platform.
- 4. Select the [Save] button to save the changes to the device class.

## Deleting One or More Device Classes

From the **Device Class Editor** page, you can delete one or more device classes.

**NOTE**: Before you delete a device class, you should assign any member devices to another device class. If you delete a device class that is associated with a device, that device will now display "Unknown - Missing" for device class. During the next discovery session, the ScienceLogic platform will try to find the appropriate device class for the device.

To delete one or more device classes:

- Go to the **Device Class Editor** page (System > Customize > Device Classes), or from the **Device** Properties page, select the pencil icon (
- 2. In the **Device Class Register** pane at the bottom of the page, find the device class(es) you want to delete. Select its checkbox.
- 3. In the **Select Action** drop-down in the lower right, select DELETE Device Classes. Select the **[Go]** button.
- 4. Each selected device class is deleted from the ScienceLogic platform.
- 5. If the device class includes devices, after deletion, those devices will have a device class of "unknown". While the device has a device class of "unknown", polling associated with existing device policies might fail. During the next discovery session, the platform will rediscover those devices and try to assign a device class to another device class. For example, if you delete the device class for Microsoft Servers, during nightly discovery, the platform would assign those devices to the device class for Microsoft OEM.

## Aligning One or More Device Classes with a Device Dashboard

From the **Device Class Editor** page, you can align one or more device classes with a device dashboard. You can manually align a device dashboard with a device class. For devices that do not have a device dashboard defined in the **Device Properties** page, the device dashboard associated with the device class will appear as the default view in the **Device Summary** page.

**NOTE**: From the **Device Summary** page, the user can select and view any device dashboards that are associated with the device, the device's device class, the device's device category, the device's Dynamic Applications, and the Global Default.

- 1. To align a device dashboard with one or more device classes:
- 2. Go to the **Device Class Editor** page (System > Customize > Device Classes).
- 3. In the **Device Class Register** pane at the bottom of the page, find the device class(es) you want to align. Select its checkbox (**(**).
- 4. In the **Select Action** drop-down in the lower right, select a device dashboard in the Align Device Dashboard section. Select the **[Go]** button.
- 5. Each selected device class is now aligned with the selected device dashboard. For devices that do not have a device dashboard defined in the **Device Properties** page, the device dashboard associated with the device class will appear as the default view in the **Device Summary** page.

#### **Device Categories**

A device category is a logical categorization of a device by primary function; for example, "server", "switch", or "router". The ScienceLogic platform uses device categories to group related devices in reports and views.

Device categories are paired with device classes to organize and describe discovered devices. Device class usually describes the manufacturer. Device category describes the function of the hardware. Each device class can include a device category.

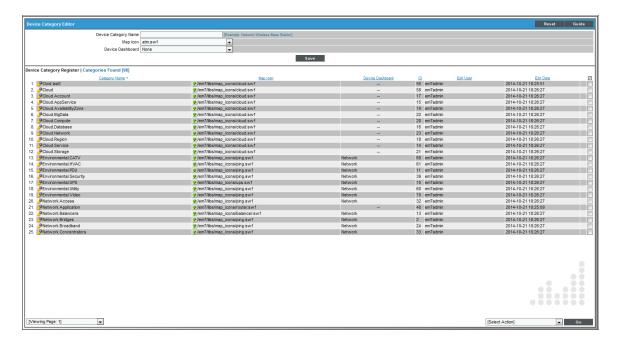
**NOTE**: "Reserved" device categories are those device categories required by the ScienceLogic platform.

These device categories cannot be edited or deleted. If a device category does not display the bomb icon ( ), the device category is a reserved device category and cannot be deleted.

## Viewing the List of Device Categories

The Device Category Editor page displays a list of all existing device categories. To view this page:

- 1. Log in to the ScienceLogic platform.
- 2. Go to the **Device Category Editor** page (System > Customize > Device Categories).



3. For each device category, the **Device Category Editor** page displays the following:

**TIP**: To sort the list of device categories, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort by descending order, click the column heading again. The **Edit Date** column sorts by descending order on the first click; to sort by ascending order, click the column heading again.

- Category Name. The name of the device category.
- Map Icon. Pathname of the image used as an icon for the device category.

- Device Dashboard. This field displays the device dashboard associated with the device category.
- *ID*. A unique numeric identifier for the device category, automatically assigned by the ScienceLogic platform.
- Edit User. User who created or last edited the device category.
- Edit Date. Date and time the device category was created or last edited.

## "Pingable" Device Category

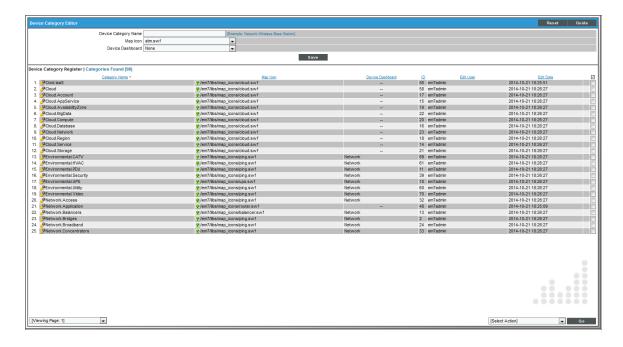
Devices that have a device category of "pingable" are devices that meet one of the following:

- Device does not support SNMP.
- SNMP has been disabled on the device.
- Wrong credential was provided during discovery and "Discover Non-SNMP" was enabled for the discovery session.

## Creating a New Device Category

From the **Device Category Editor** page, you can create a new device category. To do this:

- 1. Go to the **Device Category Editor** page (System > Customize > Device Categories).
- 2. In the **Device Category Editor** page, select the **[Refresh]** button to clear any values from the fields in the editor pane.



- 3. In the editor pane (top of the page), supply values in each of the following fields:
  - Category Name. Enter a name for the new device category. This name can be any combination of
    alphanumeric characters, up to 32 characters in length. The ScienceLogic platform naming
    convention is to create names using the following prefixes:
    - Environmental for environmental-monitoring devices.
    - Network for networking hardware like routers, switches, and firewalls.
    - o Office for office equipment.
    - Server for server hardware.
    - System for networked hardware like servers and network stores.
    - Telephony for telephone hardware.
    - Wireless for wireless network hardware.

However, you are not required to follow this convention.

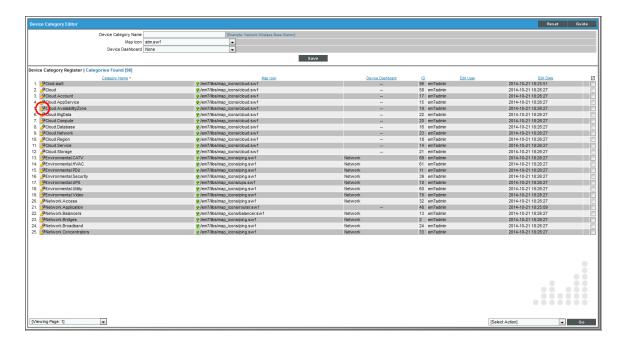
- Map Icon. Select an icon to be associated with this device category. You can select from a list of all possible icons for device categories. The selected icon will be used to represent members of the device category in the network maps in Views and maps.
- **Device Dashboard**. Select a device dashboard from a list of all device dashboards in the ScienceLogic platform. For devices with this device category, the selected device dashboard will appear as an option in the **Device Summary** page. This field is optional.
- 4. Select the [Save] button.
- 5. The new device category should now appear in the list of device categories in this page and appear in the **Device Category** drop-down list in the **Device Class Editor** page.

#### Editing a Device Category

In the Device Category Editor page, you can edit the parameters of an existing device category. To do this:

1. Go to the **Device Category Editor** page (System > Customize > Device Categories).

2. In the **Device Category Editor** page, in the register pane at the bottom of the page, find the device category you want to edit. Select its wrench icon (🏲).



- 3. The fields in the top pane will be populated with values from the selected device category. You can edit the value in one or more of the fields.
- 4. For a description of each field, see the previous section on Creating a New Device Category.

### Deleting a Device Category

From the **Device Category Editor** page, you can edit an existing device category.

**CAUTION:** Do not delete device categories that are being used by managed devices. If you delete a device category to which devices have been assigned, you risk losing data from the device.

To delete a device category:

- 1. Go to the **Device Category Editor** page (System > Customize > Device Categories).
- 2. In the **Device Category Editor** page, find the device category you want to delete. Select its bomb icon (©).
- 3. The device category is deleted from the ScienceLogic platform.

# Aligning One or More Device Categories with a Device Dashboard

From the **Device Category Editor** page, you can align one or more device categories with a device dashboard. For devices that do not have a device dashboard defined in the **Device Properties** page, or a device dashboard defined in the **Device Class Editor** page, the device dashboard associated with the device category will appear as the default view in the **Device Summary** page.

**NOTE**: From the **Device Summary** page, the user can select and view any device dashboards that are associated with the device, the device's device class, the device's device category, the device's Dynamic Applications, and the Global Default.

- 1. To align a device dashboard with one or more device categories:
- 2. Go to the **Device Category Editor** page (System > Customize > Device Categories).
- 3. In the **Device Category Register** pane at the bottom of the page, find the device categories you want to align. Select their checkboxes (2).
- 4. In the **Select Action** drop-down list in the lower right, select a device dashboard under the Align Device Dashboard section. Select the **[Go]** button.
- 5. Each selected device category is now aligned with the selected device dashboard. For devices that do not have a device dashboard defined in the **Device Properties** page, or a device dashboard defined in the **Device Class Editor** page, the device dashboard associated with the device category will appear as the default view in the **Device Summary** page.

## Chapter

**24** 

# Monitoring Device Availability and Device Latency

### **Availability**

Availability means a device's ability to accept connections and data from the network. During polling, a device has two possible availability values:

- 100%. Device is up and running.
- 0%. Device is not accepting connections and data from the network.

By default, the method the platform uses to monitor availability of the device is determined by the first method of discovery:

- If the agent is installed and creates a device record before the device is discovered as an SNMP or pingable device, availability is measured based on whether the agent is reporting data to the platform.
- If the device is discovered as an SNMP or pingable device before the agent is installed, availability is measured based on the method used to discover the device (SNMP, ICMP, or TCP).

If a device or interface becomes unavailable multiple times in a specified time frame, the platform can generate an "availability flapping" event. By default, the platform generates an event if a device becomes unavailable three times in an hour, or if an interface becomes unavailable three times in twenty-four hours.

To generate availability reports, the platform must be configured to collect availability and latency data from devices. The following section describes how to configure the platform to collect this data.

NOTE: Unlike for hardware-based devices, the ScienceLogic platform does not use use an ICMP, TCP, or UDP to monitor availability for component devices. Component Devices use a Dynamic Application collection object to measure availability. The platform polls component devices for availability at the frequency defined in the Dynamic Application. For details, see the description of the Component Identifier field in the Collection Objects page.

### Configuring Availability Monitoring on a Device

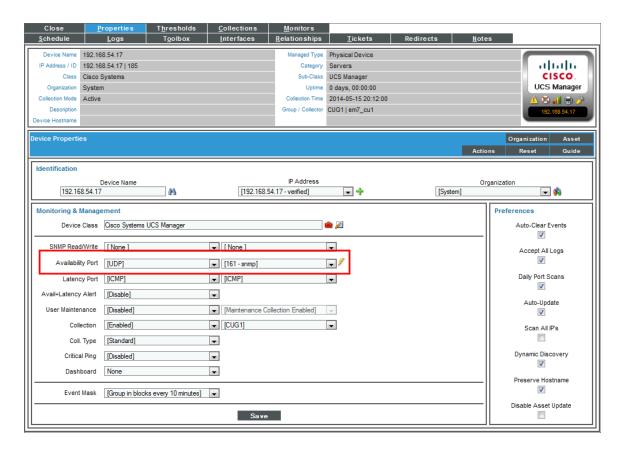
The ScienceLogic platform uses ports to monitor a device's availability. You specify which ports to use for device availability in the **Device Properties** page.

**NOTE**: Unlike for hardware-based devices, the ScienceLogic platform does not use use an ICMP, TCP, or UDP to monitoring availability for component devices. Component Devices use a Dynamic Application collection object to measure availability. The ScienceLogic platform polls component devices for availability at the frequency defined in the Dynamic Application. For details, see the description of the **Component Identifier** field in the **Collection Objects** page.

To configure availability monitoring for a device:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).

2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to configure availability monitoring. Select its wrench icon ( ). The **Device Properties** page is displayed:



- 3. In the **Device Properties** page, edit the following fields:
  - Availability Port. Specifies the protocol (first drop-down menu) and specific port (second drop-down
    menu) the ScienceLogic platform should monitor to determine if the device is available. The list of
    ports will contain the ports discovered by the ScienceLogic platform. The data collected from this port
    will be used in device availability reports.
    - If you select ICMP as the protocol, you can use the ICMP Availability Thresholds in the Device
       Thresholds page to further define how the ScienceLogic platform will test the device's availability.

NOTE: Component Devices use a Dynamic Application collection object to measure availability.

- Avail + Latency Alert. Specifies how the platform should respond when the device fails an availability check, a latency check, or fails both. These options allow you to create separate events when SNMP fails on a device and when a device is not up and running (indicated by the device failing both the availability check and the latency check). Choices are:
  - Enabled. The platform will create the following events:
    - If the device fails the availability check, generates the event "Device Failed Availability Check: UDP - SNMP".
    - If the device fails the latency check, generates the event, "Network Latency Exceeded Threshold: No Response".
    - If the device fails both the availability check and the latency check, generates the event "Device Failed Availability and Latency checks".
  - Disabled. The platform will create the following events:
    - If the device fails the availability check, generates the event "Device Failed Availability Check: UDP - SNMP".
    - If the device fails the latency check, generates the event, "Network Latency Exceeded Threshold: No Response".
    - If the device fails both the availability check and the latency check, generates only the event "Device Failed Availability Check: UDP - SNMP". The event "Network Latency Exceeded Threshold: No Response" is suppressed under the availability event.
- 4. Select the [Save] button.

### Defining Availability Thresholds

The ScienceLogic platform allows you to define global Availability Thresholds that apply to all devices and device-specific Availability Thresholds that apply to only a selected device. When a device fails to meet the availability threshold (that is, is not available as specified in the threshold), the platform generates an event about the device.

For details on defining availability thresholds, see the chapter on Thresholds and Data Retention.

NOTE: Unlike for hardware-based devices, the ScienceLogic platform does not use ICMP, TCP, or UDP to montior availability for component devices. Component Devices use a Dynamic Application collection object to measure availability. The ScienceLogic platform polls component devices for availability at the frequency defined in the Dynamic Application. For details, see the section on monitoring availability of component devices.

## Configuring Availability for Component Devices

Dynamic Applications that create component devices have the **Component Mapping** checkbox selected in the **Dynamic Applications Properties Editor** page and also include the **Component Identifiers** field.

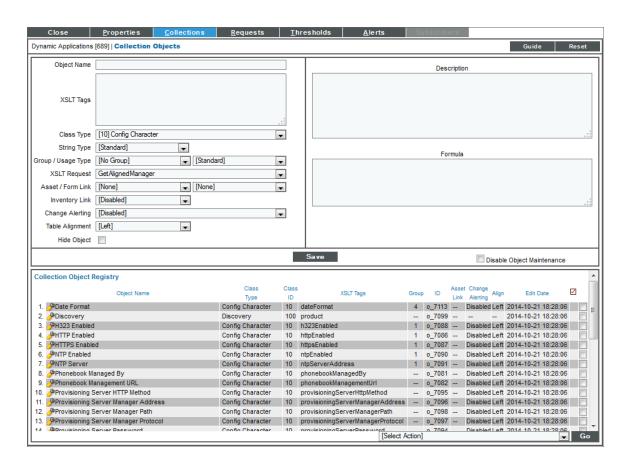
In the **Component Identifiers** field, you map the value of a collection object to the *Device Name* identifier and *Unique Identifier*, so the ScienceLogic platform can create one or more component devices.

In the *Component Identifiers* field, you can also map a collection object to the *Availability* identifier. For hardware-based devices, the platform monitors an ICMP, TCP, or UDP port to determine availability. Because component devices might not include ICMP, TCP, or UDP ports, you must use a Component Identifier to determine availability.

To configure the ScienceLogic platform to monitor availability for a component device:

- 1. Go to the **Dynamic Applications Manager** page (System > Manage > Applications).
- 2. Find the Dynamic Application that creates and monitors the component devices you are interested in. Select its wrench icon().
- 3. In the **Dynamic Applications Properties Editor** page, examine the **Component Mapping** checkbox. If the checkbox is selected, this is the correct Dynamic Application to edit.

4. Select the [Collections] tab.



5. In the list of Collection Objects in the **Collection Object Registry** pane, determine which collection object will always be available if the component device is available. Click on the wrench icon (🏲) for that collection object.

#### 6. In the **Component Identifiers** field, select:

- Availability. Object that specifies whether a component device is available. If the ScienceLogic
  platform can collect a value for a component device using the aligned collection object and the value
  is not 0 (zero) or "false", the platform considers the component device as "available". If the platform
  cannot collect a value for a component device using the aligned collection object or the platform
  collects a value that is 0 (zero) or "false", the platform considers the component device as
  "unavailable".
  - If the collection objects aligned with the Device Name and Unique Identifier component identifiers return lists of values, the platform will create multiple component devices. Each component device will be associated with an index, i.e. a location in the list of values. If all the component devices in the list should be considered available, the collection object aligned with the Availability component identifier should return a list of values with a value at each index associated with a component device. A component device is unavailable when the list of values returned by the collection object aligned with the Availability component identifier does not include a value at the index or returns a value of 0 (zero) or false at the index for the component device. For more information about Dynamic Application indexing, see the Dynamic Application Development manual.
  - If you align a collection object with this component identifier, the platform will create a system availability graph for each component device in the **Device Performance** page.
  - If you align a collection object with this component identifier and the platform cannot collect a value for a component device using the aligned collection object the platform will supply the Value "Unavailable" in the Collection State column in the Device Components page.
- 7. Select the [Save] button to save your changes.
- 8. The ScienceLogic platform will now monitor availability and graph availability statistics for the component devices aligned with the Dynamic Application.

The following rules apply to the availability state for component devices:

- Component devices can use a Component Identifier to monitor availability. However, in a tree of component devices, some component devices might have a component identifier for availability and others might not. For example, suppose a component device has a component identifier for availability, and the ScienceLogic platform considers that component device "unavailable". All the descendents of that component device that do not have their own component identifier for availability will be considered unavailable. As soon as the platform finds a descendent with its own component identifier for availability, the platform stops checking that descendent and its descendents for availability. Component devices without their own component identifier for availability inherit their availability from their nearest ancestor that has a component identifier for availability.
- For trees that include merged devices, so include both hardware devices and component devices, the ScienceLogic platform skips over the hardware devices and allows them to use a network-based protocol to determine availability. For example, suppose you have a tree like this:
  - Grandparent device is a component device with a component identifier for availability. The platform has determined that the grandparent device is unavailable.

- Child device is a hardware device that uses ICMP and ping to determine availability. When the
  platform evaluates the grandparent's component identifier, the platform skips over this device. ICMP
  and ping determine the availability of this device.
- Grandchild device is a component device that does not have its own component identifier for availability. When the platform evaluates the grandparent's component identifier, the platform assigns the grandparent's availability to this grandchild device.
- If all the hosts in a cluster are powered off or unavailable in a VMware system, both the hardware-based hosts and the associated component devices will display the value *Unavailable* in the *Collection State* column. When at least one host in the cluster becomes available, some or all of the associated component devices will also become available.

#### Latency

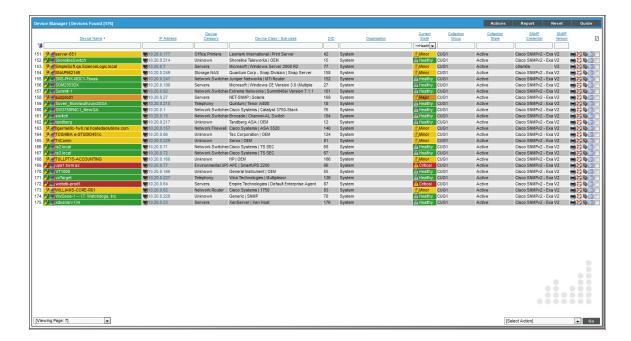
Latency means the amount of time it takes the ScienceLogic platform to communicate with a device. Specifically, latency refers to the amount of time between when the platform initiates communication with a device and when the device responds and allows communication. Latency is expressed in milliseconds (ms).

### Configuring Latency Monitoring on a Device

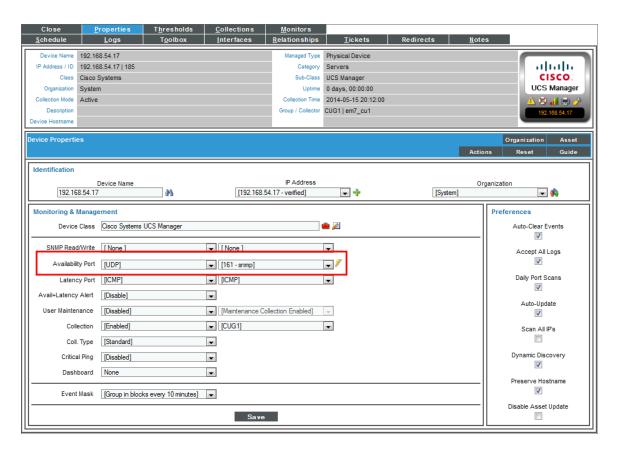
The ScienceLogic platform uses ports to monitor a device's latency. You specify which ports to use for device latency in the **Device Properties** page.

To configure latency monitoring for a device:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).



- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to configure latency monitoring. Select its wrench icon ( ).
- 3. The **Device Properties** page appears.



- 4. In the **Device Properties** page, edit the following fields:
  - Latency Port. Specifies the protocol (first drop-down menu) and specific port (second drop-down menu) the ScienceLogic platform should monitor to determine latency for the device. The list of ports will contain all the ports discovered by the ScienceLogic platform. The data collected from this port will be used in device latency reports.
    - If you select ICMP as the protocol, you can use the ICMP Availability Thresholds in the Device
       Thresholds page to further define how the ScienceLogic platform will test the device's latency.

- Avail + Latency Alert. Specifies how the platform should respond when the device fails an availability check, a latency check, or fails both. These options allow you to create separate events when SNMP fails on a device and when a device is not up and running. Choices are:
  - Enabled. The platform will create the following events:
    - If the device fails the availability check, generates the event "Device Failed Availability Check: UDP - SNMP".
    - If the device fails the latency check, generates the event, "Network Latency Exceeded Threshold: No Response".
    - If the device fails both the availability check and the latency check, generates the event "Device Failed Availability and Latency checks".
  - Disabled. The platform will create the following events:
    - If the device fails the availability check, generates the event "Device Failed Availability Check: UDP - SNMP".
    - If the device fails the latency check, generates the event, "Network Latency Exceeded Threshold: No Response".
    - If the device fails both the availability check and the latency check, generates only the event "Device Failed Availability Check: UDP SNMP". The event "Network Latency Exceeded Threshold: No Response" is suppressed under the availability event.

### **Defining Latency Thresholds**

The ScienceLogic platform allows you to define global Latency Thresholds that apply to all devices and device-specific Latency Thresholds that apply only to a specific device. When a device fails to meet the latency threshold (that is, takes longer than the specified time-span to respond), the platform generates an event about the device. For example, if the latency threshold is "100 ms", when a device does not respond to a poll within 100 ms, the platform will generate an event about that device.

To disable the latency threshold for a single device, set the threshold to 0% (zero percent). When you disable a threshold, the platform does not generate an event for the threshold.

For details on defining latency thresholds, see the chapter on *Thresholds and Data Retention*.

## Viewing Reports on Device Availability and Device Latency

See the chapter *Viewing Performance Graphs* to view information and examples of reports for device availability and device latency.

#### 25

## Chapter

**25** 

## **Device Toolbox**

#### What is the Device Toolbox?

The **Device Toolbox** page allows you to access common network tools. The list of tools available depends upon the type of device and the configuration of the device.

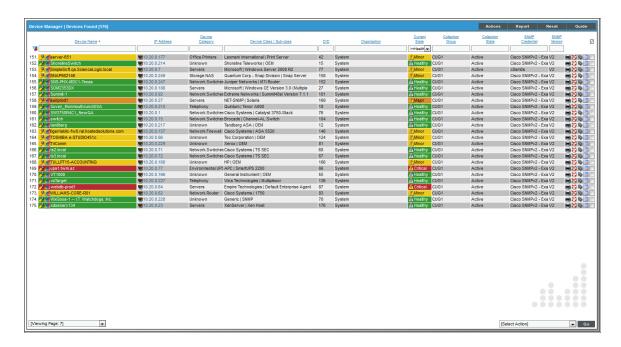
The **Device Toolbox** page allows you to run diagnostics on a device and access devices without leaving the user interface session.

## Accessing the Device Toolbox page

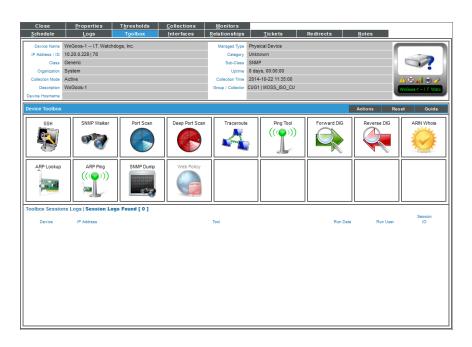
To access the **Device Toolbox** page:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).

2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to access the **Device Toolbox** page. Select its wrench icon (🎤).



3. In the **Device Administration** panel, select the Toolbox tab.



- 4. Depending on the device, the **Device Toolbox** page can display one or more of the following buttons. These tools run on the Data Collector that is currently monitoring the device unless otherwise noted:
  - FTP. Opens a new browser window and attempts to make an FTP connection to the current device. This tool is initiated from the user's machine and does not run on a Data Collector. This tool appears only if the correct port (port 21) is detected as open by the ScienceLogic platform.
  - **SSH**. Opens an SSH session on the device. This tool is initiated from the user's machine and does not run on a Data Collector. This tool appears only if the correct port (port 22) is detected as open by the ScienceLogic platform.

**NOTE**: The SSH tool is not available for ScienceLogic systems that are configured as military unique systems.

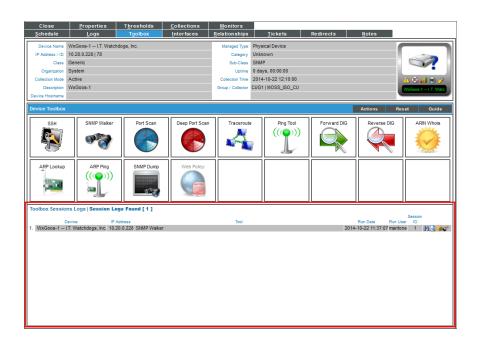
- **Telnet**. Opens a browser session or terminal session using the IP address of the current device and prompts you for the telnet username and password. This tool is initiated from the user's machine and does not run on a Data Collector. This tool appears only if the correct port (port 23) is detected as open by the ScienceLogic platform.
- Terminal. Opens the Terminal Services Client Web Connection modal page, where you can enter the login information for the terminal services session. This tool is initiated from the user's machine and does not run on a Data Collector. This tool appears only if the correct port (port 3389) is detected as open by the ScienceLogic platform.
- **Web**. Opens a new browser window and attempts to make an http connection to the current device. This tool is initiated from the user's machine and does not run on a Data Collector.
- Secure Web. Opens a new browser window and attempts to make an HTTPS connection to the current device. This tool is initiated from the user's machine and does not run on a Data Collector. This tool appears only if the correct port (port 443) is detected as open by the ScienceLogic platform.
- SNMP Walker. Opens the SNMP Walker modal page, where you can perform an SNMP walk on the
  device. If the device has an IPv6 address, the ScienceLogic platform will use the appropriate IPv6
  SNMP command.
- **Port Scan**. Leads to the **Port Scan** modal page, where you can view a list of all open ports on the device at the time of the scan.
- **Deep Port Scan**. Leads to the **Deep Port Scan** modal page, where you can view a list of all open ports and view as much detail about each open port as the deep port scanner can retrieve.
- Traceroute. Leads to the Traceroute modal page, where you can view the network route between the platform and the device. If the device has an IPv6 address, the ScienceLogic platform will use the appropriate IPv6 traceroute command.
- *Ping Tool*. Leads to the *Ping\_Tool* modal page, where you can view the statistics returned by the ping tool. The ping tool sends a packet to the device's IP address (the one used by the platform to communicate with the device) and waits for a reply. The ScienceLogic platform then displays the number of seconds it took to receive a reply from the device and the number of bytes returned from the device. If the device has an IPv6 address, the ScienceLogic platform will use the appropriate IPv6 ping command.

Device Toolbox 436

- Forward DIG. Leads to the Forward DIG modal page, where you can view the output from the DIG
  utility. This tool automatically finds all available DNS information about the domain associated with the
  current device.
- Reverse DIG. Leads to the Reverse DIG modal page, where you can view the output from the
  reverse DIG utility. The reverse DIG tool retrieves the domain name that is associated with the device's
  IP.
- **ARIN Whois**. Leads to the **ARIN Whois** modal page, where you can view the output from the Whois utility. The Whois utility displays information about the device's IP, including the organization that registered the IP and contacts within that organization.
- ARP Lookup. Leads to the ARP Lookup modal page, where you can view the results from the ARP
  Lookup tool. The ARP Lookup tool displays a list IP addresses for the device and the resolved Ethernet
  or Token Ring physical addresses (MAC addresses) for each IP address.
- ARP Ping. Leads to the ARP Ping modal page, where you can view the results from the ARP Ping tool. The ARP Ping tool is similar in function to ping, but it operates using ARP instead of ICMP. The ARP Ping tool can be used only on the local network.
- **SNMP Dump**. Leads to the **SNMP Dump** modal page, where you can view the results of the SNMP Dump. The SNMP Dump tool retrieves each OID and its corresponding value from the device.
- Web Policy. Leads to the Web Policy modal page, where you can manually run a web-content policy on the device. This tool is initiated from the user's machine and does not run on the collector. This tool appears only if a Web Content Monitoring Policy has been configured for the device.

#### Viewing the Session Logs

After you run a tool in the Device Toolbox, information about the session appears the **Toolbox Sessions Logs** pane (at the bottom of the page).



For each session, you can view the following:

- Device. Device associated with the session.
- IP Address. IP address that was polled by the session.
- Tool. Tool that was run.
- Run Date. Date the session occurred.
- Run User. User who initiated the session.
- Session ID. Unique numeric identifier automatically assigned to the session by the ScienceLogic platform.

#### From the Toolbox Sessions Logs pane, you can also:

- View an SNMP Walk Session ( ).
- View raw data from the session ( ).
- Export raw data from the session to a file on the local computer ().
- Delete a session from the **Toolbox Sessions Logs** pane ( ).

Device Toolbox 438

# Chapter

**26** 

## **Device Maintenance**

#### What is Scheduled Maintenance?

Scheduled Maintenance is a date and time when a device is put into "maintenance mode". During maintenance mode, for the selected devices the ScienceLogic platform will generate only events with a severity less than the system-wide *Maintenance Minimum Severity* setting. By default, no events are generated during maintenance. You can choose to enable or disable polling during maintenance mode. Even if polling is enabled, the ScienceLogic platform will collect information from the selected devices but will not generate applicable events for the devices.

The ScienceLogic platform includes tools that allow you to view, edit, and define scheduled maintenance for one or more devices. The **Schedule Manager** page allows you to schedule one-time and recurring maintenance tasks and downtime for a device. You can use the scheduled maintenance to:

- Specify recurring downtime for routine maintenance (for example, a weekly database backup that occurs every Tuesday at 3 AM).
- Specify one-time downtime (for example, when upgrading software or hardware).

When a device is in maintenance, the ScienceLogic platform will generate only events with a severity less than the system-wide *Maintenance Minimum Severity* setting. By default, no events are generated during maintenance. You can choose to enable or disable polling during maintenance mode. Even if polling is enabled during maintenance, the ScienceLogic platform will collect information from the device but will not generate applicable events for the device.

You can specify a "patch window" within the larger maintenance period. The "patch window" allows the ScienceLogic platform to limit the suppression events to a small time-frame within the larger maintenance window. For example:

Suppose you have to patch a server that is monitored by the ScienceLogic platform. Suppose you know you will perform this task sometime between midnight and 6:00 AM. Suppose you know that the actual patch process will require only 15 minutes of downtime for the server. In the ScienceLogic platform, you would define a maintenance window of 24:00 - 6:00 and a patch window of 15 minutes.

- 1. At 24:00, the ScienceLogic platform generates an event saying that the server is going into maintenance mode. Because you have defined a patch window, the platform continues to monitor this server as normal.
- 2. At 3:00, you apply the patch to the server. The server reboots, and the ScienceLogic platform generates an event saying that the server is offline. This first event within the larger maintenance window triggers the start of the patch maintenance window.
- 3. The ScienceLogic platform suppresses the event that triggered the patch maintenance window and instead generates an event "Patch Maintenance Window Opened".
- 4. For the next 15 minutes, the ScienceLogic platform will suppress all events for the device.
- 5. At 3:15, the ScienceLogic platform will generate an event for "Patch Maintenance Window Closed". This event clears the previous event "Patch Maintenance Window Opened".
- The ScienceLogic platform will now generate events for the device, even though the maintenance window extends until 6:00.

**NOTE**: If the patch was applied at 5:50, the server was rebooted, and the ScienceLogic platform generated an event saying that the server is offline, events would be suppressed only until the end of the maintenance window, 6:00, even though the patch window is 15 minutes.

#### What is User Maintenance?

User maintenance is an option that allows a user to manually put a device in to "maintenance mode". During maintenance mode, for the selected devices the ScienceLogic platform will generate only events with a severity less than the system-wide *Maintenance Minimum Severity* setting. By default, no events are generated during maintenance. You can choose to enable or disable polling during maintenance mode. Even if polling is enabled, the ScienceLogic platform will collect information from the selected devices but will not generate applicable events for the devices.

User maintenance mode is not scheduled. That is, a user must manually enable user maintenance to put a device into this mode and a user must manually disable user maintenance to turn off this mode for a device. User maintenance mode overrides scheduled maintenance for a device.

User maintenance can be enabled and disabled in the user interface or through the API. For information about using the API, see the *ScienceLogic API* manual.

## The Maintenance Minimum Severity Setting

The global *Maintenance Minimum Severity* setting specifies the minimum severity required for an event to be suppressed during device maintenance and user maintenance. The default value is *Healthy*, which causes all events to be suppressed. To change this setting:

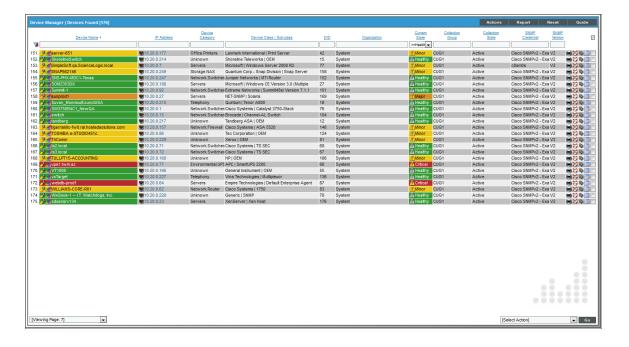
- 1. Go to the **Behavior Settings** page (System > Settings > Behavior).
- 2. In the **Behavior Settings** page, select a value in the **Maintenance Minimum Severity** drop-down list. The choices are Healthy, Notice, Minor, Major, or Critical.
- 3. Select the **[Save]** button. Events with a severity lower than the severity you chose will now be generated for all devices in scheduled maintenance mode and user maintenance mode.

# Enabling and Disabling User Maintenance for a Single Device

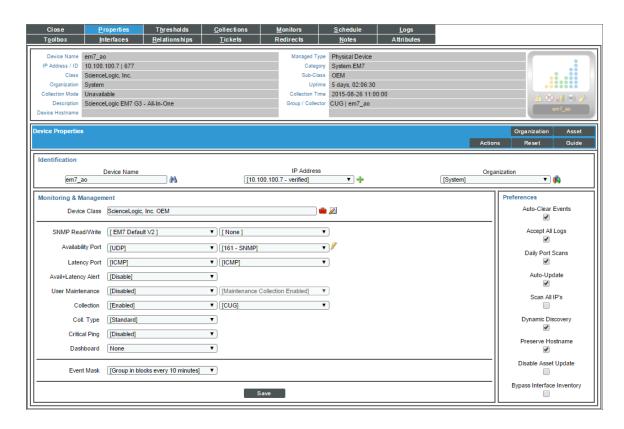
You can enable and disable user maintenance mode in the Device Properties page.

To enable or disable user maintenance mode for a device:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).



2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to enable or disable user maintenance. Select its wrench icon ( ). The **Device Properties** page is displayed:



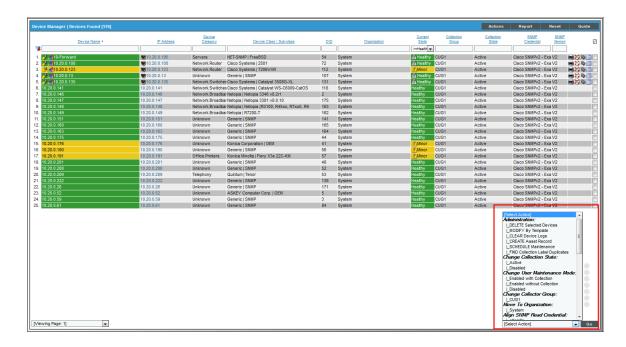
- 3. In the **Device Properties** page, edit the following fields:
  - User Maintenance. Specifies whether the device is in user maintenance mode. During maintenance
    mode, for the selected devices the ScienceLogic platform will generate only events with a severity less
    than the system-wide Maintenance Minimum Severity setting. By default, no events are generated
    during maintenance. You can choose to enable or disable polling during maintenance mode. Even if
    polling is enabled, the ScienceLogic platform will collect information from the selected devices but will
    not generate applicable events for the devices. Choices are:
    - Enabled. Device will be put in user maintenance mode. The device will remain in this state until you or another user disables user maintenance mode.
    - o Disabled. User maintenance mode will be disabled for this device.
  - User Maintenance Collection. The drop-down list to the right of the User Maintenance field specifies whether the platform will poll the device during user maintenance mode. Choices are:
    - o Enabled. The device will be polled during user maintenance mode.
    - Disabled. The device will not be polled during user maintenance mode.
- 4. Select the [Save] button.

# Enabling and Disabling User Maintenance for a One or More Devices

The **Device Manager** page contains a drop-down field in the lower right called **Select Action**. This field allows you to apply an action to multiple devices at once. From the **Select Action** menu, you can enable or disable user maintenance mode for multiple devices, simultaneously.

To enable or disable user maintenance mode for multiple devices:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):



- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, select the checkbox for each device to which you want to apply the action. To select all checkboxes for all devices, select the red checkbox (**D**) at the top of the page.
- 3. In the **Select Action** drop-down list, select one of the following:
  - Change User Maintenance Mode: Enabled with Collection. This option puts the selected devices into user maintenance mode with collection enabled. The devices will remain in this state until you or another user disables user maintenance mode.
  - Change User Maintenance Mode: Enabled without Collection. This option puts the selected devices into user maintenance mode with collection disabled. The devices will remain in this state until you or another user disables user maintenance mode.
  - Change User Maintenance Mode: Disabled. This option disables user maintenance mode for the selected devices.

- 4. Click the [Go] button.
- 5. The changes are applied to each selected device.

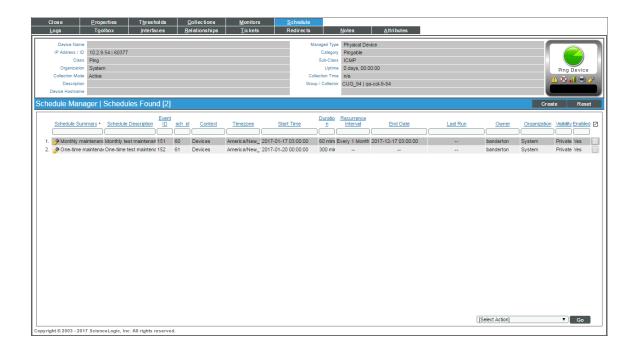
### Scheduling Maintenance for a Single Device

In the **Schedule Manager** page (in the **Device Administration** panel), you can schedule maintenance and downtime for a device.

**NOTE**: You can also view and manage all scheduled processes from the **Schedule Manager** page (Registry > Schedules > Schedule Manager). For more information, see the **System Administration** manual.

#### Viewing the Schedule Manager

The **Schedule Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > wrench icon > Schedule) displays the following information about each scheduled or recurring device maintenance window:



- Schedule Summary. Displays the name assigned to the scheduled process.
- Schedule Description. Displays a description of the scheduled process.
- **Event ID**. Displays a unique, numeric ID for the scheduled process. The ScienceLogic platform automatically created this ID for each scheduled process.
- sch id. Displays a unique, numeric ID for the schedule. The ScienceLogic platform automatically created this ID for each schedule.

- Context. Displays the area of the ScienceLogic platform upon which the schedule works.
- *Timezone*. Displays the time zone associated with the scheduled process.
- Start Time. Displays the date and time at which the scheduled process will begin.
- **Duration**. Displays the duration, in minutes, which the scheduled process occurs.
- Recurrence Interval. If applicable, displays the interval at which the scheduled process recurs.
- End Date. If applicable, displays the date and time on which the scheduled process will recur.
- Last Run. If applicable, displays the date and time the scheduled process most recently ran.
- Owner. Displays the username of the owner of the scheduled process.
- Organization. Displays the organization to which the scheduled process is assigned.
- *Visibility*. Displays the visibility level for the scheduled process. Possible values are "Private", "Organization", or "World".
- Enabled. Specifies if the scheduled process is enabled. Possible values are "Yes" or "No".

To edit a scheduled or recurring device maintenance window, click its wrench icon ( ) and update the settings as needed on the **Schedule Editor** modal page. (For more information, see the section **Defining a Scheduled or Recurring Device Maintenance Window for a Single Device**.)

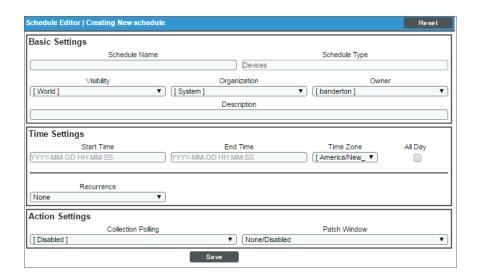
# Defining a Scheduled or Recurring Device Maintenance Window for a Single Device

You can schedule a device maintenance window in the ScienceLogic platform from the **Schedule Manager** page. The ScienceLogic platform will automatically set the status of the device to "maintenance" at the scheduled time.

To define a scheduled or recurring device maintenance window:

- 1. Go to the **Schedule Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > wrench icon > Schedule).
- 2. Click [Create]. The Schedule Editor modal page appears.

3. On the **Schedule Editor** modal page, enter values in the following fields:



#### **Basic Settings**

- Schedule Name. Type a name for the scheduled process.
- Schedule Type. Indicates the scheduled process type (such as Tickets, Reports, or Devices).
- Visibility. Select the visibility for the scheduled process. You can select one of the following:
  - o Private. The scheduled process is visible only to the owner selected in the **Owner** field.
  - Organization. The scheduled process is visible only to the organization selected in the Organization field.
  - World. The scheduled process is visible to all users.
- Organization. Select the organization to which you want to assign the scheduled process.
- Owner. Select the owner of the scheduled process. The default value is the username of the user who created the scheduled process.
- Description. Type a description of the scheduled process.

#### **Time Settings**

- Start Time. Click in the field and select the date and time you want the scheduled process to start.
- End Time. Click in the field and select the date and time you want the scheduled process to end.
- Time Zone. Select the region or time zone for the scheduled start time.

447

**NOTE:** If you want the ScienceLogic platform to automatically adjust for daylight savings time (if applicable), then you must select a named region (such as *America/New York*) in the *Time Zone* field. If you select a specific time zone (such as *EST*) or a specific time offset (such as *GMT-5*), then the ScienceLogic platform will not automatically adjust for daylight savings time.

- All Day. Select this checkbox if the scheduled process occurs all day rather than during a specific period of time. If you do so, the **End Time** field becomes disabled.
- **Recurrence**. Select whether you want the scheduled process to occur once or on a recurring basis. You can select one of the following:
  - None. The scheduled process occurs only once.
  - By Interval. The scheduled process recurs at a specific interval.

If you select By Interval, the following additional fields appear:

- Interval. In the first field, enter a number representing the frequency of the scheduled process, then select the time interval in the second field. Choices are Minutes, Hours, Days, Weeks, or Months. For example:
  - If you specify "6 Hours", then the scheduled process recurs every six hours from the time listed in the **Start Time** field.
  - If you specify "10 Days", then the scheduled process recurs every 10 days from the date listed in the
     Start Time field
  - If you specify "2 Weeks", then the scheduled process recurs every two weeks, on the same day of the week as the **Start Time**.
  - If you specify "3 Months" the ticket recurs every three months, on the same day of the month as the **Start Time**.
- **Recur Until**. Specifies when the scheduled process stops recurring. You can select one of the following:
  - No Limit. The scheduled process recurs indefinitely until it is disabled.
  - Specified Date. The scheduled process recurs until a specific date and time. If you select Specified
    Date, you must select a date and time in the Last Recurrence field.
- Last Recurrence. Click in the field and select the date and time you want the scheduled process to stop recurring.

#### **Action Settings**

- Collection Polling. Specifies whether the ScienceLogic platform should perform collection on the device during the scheduled maintenance. Choices are:
  - Enabled. During scheduled maintenance, the ScienceLogic platform will collect data from the device, but no events will be triggered for the device.
  - Disabled. During scheduled maintenance, the ScienceLogic platform will not collect data from the device. No events will be triggered for the device.
- **Patch Window**. You can specify a "patch window" within the larger maintenance period. The "patch window" allows the ScienceLogic platform to limit the suppression of events to a small time-frame within the larger maintenance window. Your choices are:
  - None
  - Between 5 minutes and 60 minutes, in five-minute intervals.

#### For example:

Suppose you have to apply a patch to a server that is monitored by the ScienceLogic platform. Suppose you know you will perform this task sometime between midnight and 6:00 AM. Suppose you know that the actual patch process requires only 15 minutes of downtime for the server. In the ScienceLogic platform, you would define a maintenance window of 24:00 - 6:00 and a patch window of 15 minutes. In this scenario:

- 1. At 24:00, the ScienceLogic platform generates an event saying that the server is going into maintenance mode. Because you have defined a patch window, the platform continues to monitor this server as normal.
- 2. At 3:00, you apply the patch to the server. The server reboots, and the ScienceLogic platform generates an event saying that the server is offline. The first event that both matches or exceeds the *Patch Maintenance Minimum Severity* in the *Behavior Settings* page (System > Settings > Behavior) and occurs within the larger maintenance window triggers the start of the patch window.
- 3. The ScienceLogic platform suppresses the event that triggered the patch maintenance window and instead generates an event "Patch Maintenance Window Opened".
- 4. For the next 15 minutes, the ScienceLogic platform will suppress all events for the device.
- 5. At 3:15, the ScienceLogic platform will generate an event for "Patch Maintenance Window Closed". This event clears the previous event "Patch Maintenance Window Opened".
- 6. The ScienceLogic platform will now generate events for the device, even though the maintenance window extends until 6:00.

**NOTE**: If the patch was applied at 5:50, the server was rebooted, and the ScienceLogic platform generated an event saying that the server is offline, events would be suppressed only until the end of the maintenance window, 6:00, even though the patch window is 15 minutes.

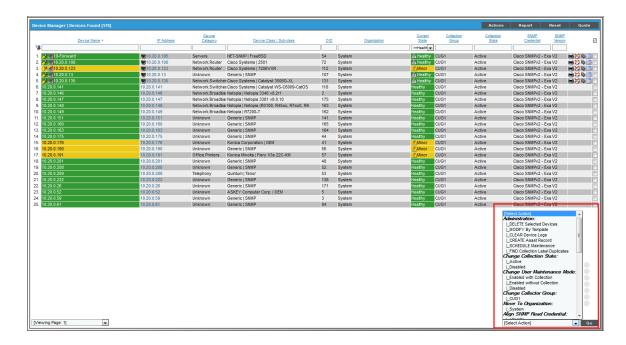
4. Click [Save].

## Scheduling Maintenance for One or More Devices

The **Device Manager** page contains a drop-down field in the lower right called **Select Action**. This field allows you to apply an action to multiple devices at once. From the **Select Action** menu, you can schedule maintenance for multiple devices, simultaneously.

To schedule maintenance for multiple devices:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager):

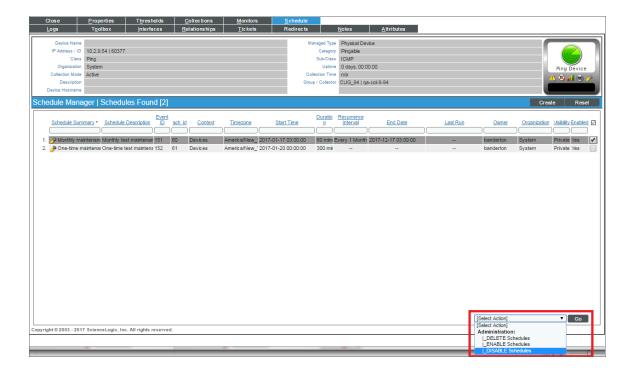


- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, select the checkbox for each device for which you want to schedule maintenance. To select all checkboxes for all devices, select the red checkbox (**Z**) at the top of the page.
- 3. In the **Select Action** drop-down list, select Schedule Maintenance, and then click **[Go]**. The **Schedule Editor** modal page appears.
- 4. To schedule maintenance for the selected devices, follow the steps described in the section <u>Defining a Scheduled or Recurring Device Maintenance Window for a Single Device</u>. The values you supply in the <u>Schedule Editor</u> modal page are applied to each selected device.

# Enabling or Disabling Scheduled Maintenance for One or More Devices

You can enable or disable one or more scheduled or recurring device maintenance windows from the **Schedule Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > wrench icon > Schedule). To do this:

1. Go to the **Schedule Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > wrench icon > Schedule).



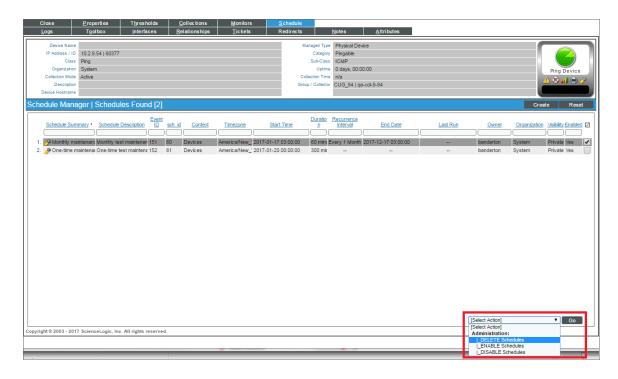
- 2. Select the checkbox icon for each scheduled process you want to enable or disable.
- 3. Click the **Select Action** menu and choose Enable Schedules or Disable Schedules.
- 4. Click the [Go] button.

## Deleting Scheduled Maintenance for One or More Devices

You can delete one or more scheduled or recurring device maintenance windows from the **Schedule Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > wrench icon > Schedule).

#### To delete maintenance windows:

1. Go to the **Schedule Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > wrench icon > Schedule).



- 2. Select the checkbox icon for each scheduled process you want to delete.
- 3. Click the **Select Action** menu and choose Delete Schedules.
- 4. Click the **[Go]** button.

## Chapter

**27** 

## **Managing Dynamic Applications**

#### Overview

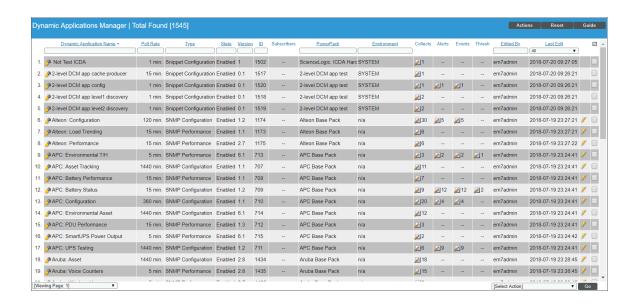
This chapter will describe how to manage Dynamic Applications. This chapter will describe:

- Viewing the List of Installed Dynamic Applications
- Viewing the Dynamic Applications Associated With a Device
- Viewing the Status of a Dynamic Application
- Maintenance of Collection State
- Status of Objects for Deviation Alerting
- Manually Associating a Dynamic Application with a Device
- Manually Associating a Credential with a Dynamic Application
- Performing Other Administrative Tasks for an Aligned Dynamic Application
- Setting Thresholds for Dynamic Applications
- How Dynamic Applications work with Discovery

## Viewing the List of Dynamic Applications

The **Dynamic Applications Manager** page (System > Manage > Applications) displays a list of all existing Dynamic Applications. For each Dynamic Application, the page displays the following:

**TIP**: To sort the list of Dynamic Applications, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort by descending order, click the column heading again. The *Last Edit* column sorts by descending order on the first click; to sort by ascending order, click the column heading again.



**NOTE**: By default, the cursor is placed in the first Filter-While-You-Type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields.

- **Dynamic Application Name**. Name of the Dynamic Application, as defined in the **Dynamic Applications Properties Editor** page.
- Poll Rate. Frequency, in minutes, at which the ScienceLogic platform will poll all devices that use this Dynamic Application.

NOTE: The *Poll Rate* column displays the default poll frequency for the Dynamic Application, as defined in the Dynamic Applications Properties Editor page. You can define a *custom* poll frequency for one or more devices in a device template. The poll frequency defined in the device template overrides the poll frequency defined for the Dynamic Application. Devices to which the device template is applied will use the poll frequency defined in the device template.

- Type. Type of Dynamic Application. The choices are:
  - Bulk Snippet Configuration. A single instance of the Dynamic Application uses custom-written Python
    code to collect static configuration data from multiple devices. This is useful for systems that include a
    large number of component devices. For details on creating bulk snippet Dynamic Applications, see
    the Snippet Dynamic Application Development Manual.
  - Bulk Snippet Performance. A single instance of the Dynamic Application uses custom-written Python
    code to collect trendable performance data from multiple devices. This is useful for systems that
    include a large number of component devices. For details on creating bulk snippet Dynamic
    Applications, see the Snippet Dynamic Application Development Manual.
  - Database Configuration. The Dynamic Application retrieves configuration data from a database application. The Dynamic Application uses SQL queries. The queried device returns table data. For details on creating database Dynamic Applications, see the **DatabaseDynamic Application Development Manual**.
  - Database Performance. The Dynamic Application retrieves trendable performance data from a
    database application. The Dynamic Application uses SQL queries. The queried device returns table
    data. For details on creating database Dynamic Applications, see the DatabaseDynamic
    Application Development Manual.
  - Internal Collection Inventory. The Internal Collection Inventory Dynamic Application (ICDA) retrieves
    configuration data about filesystems and interface. For filesystem, an ICDA Inventory can retrieve data
    such as storage size, filesystem type, and storage used. These ICDAs can also collect configuration
    data about interfaces, such as physical address, operational status, and IP addresses. For details on
    creating ICDAs, see the Internal Collection Dynamic Application Development Manual.
  - Internal Collection Performance. The Internal Collection Performance Dynamic Application (ICDA)
    retrieves data about availability and latency, device information (system description, system uptime,
    system locale), filesystem performance, and interface performance. For details on creating ICDAs, see
    the Internal Collection Dynamic Application Development Manual.
  - IT Service. A special type of Dynamic Application that the ScienceLogic platform uses to monitor IT Services. When you create and edit an IT Service in the IT Service Editor page, the ScienceLogic platform will automatically create and maintain a Dynamic Application for that IT Service. Dynamic Applications for IT Services will appear in the Dynamic Applications Manager page. However, if you want to edit the settings for an IT Service, you should not edit the Dynamic Application for that IT Service. Instead, use the IT Service Editor page to edit IT Services. For details on creating IT Service policies, see the IT Services Manual.

- PowerShell Configuration. The Dynamic Application uses PowerShell commands to collect static
  configuration data from a Windows device. For details on creating PowerShell Dynamic Applications,
  see the manual Dynamic Application Development WMI and PowerShell. For information on
  configuring the ScienceLogic platform and external systems to use PowerShell Dynamic Applications,
  see the manual Monitoring Windows Systems.
- PowerShell Performance. The Dynamic Application uses PowerShell commands to collect trendable
  performance data from a Windows device. For details on creating PowerShell Dynamic Applications,
  see the manual *Dynamic Application Development WMI and PowerShell*. For information on
  configuring the ScienceLogic platform and external systems to use PowerShell Dynamic Applications,
  see the manual *Monitoring Windows Systems*.
- Snippet Configuration. The Dynamic Application uses custom-written Python code to collect configuration data from a device. For details on creating snippet Dynamic Applications, see the Snippet Dynamic Application Development Manual.
- Snippet Journal. The Dynamic Application uses custom-written Python code to collect data formatted
  as log entries from a device. For details on creating snippet Dynamic Applications, see the Snippet
  Dynamic Application Development Manual.
- Snippet Performance. The Dynamic Application uses custom-written Python code to collect trendable performance data from a device. For details on creating snippet Dynamic Applications, see the Snippet Dynamic Application Development Manual.
- SNMP Configuration. The Dynamic Application uses SNMP to retrieve static, configuration data from devices or applications. For details on creating SNMP Dynamic Applications, see the SNMP Dynamic Application Development Manual.
- SNMP Performance. The Dynamic Application uses SNMP to retrieve trendable performance data from devices or applications. For details on creating SNMP Dynamic Applications, see the SNMP Dynamic Application Development Manual.
- SOAP Configuration. The Dynamic Application uses XML and SOAP to retrieve static configuration data from a SOAP server. The queried device returns XML data. For details on creating SOAP Dynamic Applications, see the XML, SOAP, and XSLT Dynamic Application Development Manual.
- SOAP Performance. The Dynamic Application uses XML and SOAP to retrieve trendable performance data from a SOAP server. The queried device returns XML data. For details on creating SOAP Dynamic Applications, see the XML, SOAP. and XSLT Dynamic Application Development Manual.
- WMI Configuration. The Dynamic Application retrieves configuration information from either WMI or WBEM running on a managed device. WMI Dynamic Applications use a query format to request data from a managed device. WBEM Dynamic Applications use whemcli and HTTP to request data from a managed device. For details on creating WMI Dynamic Applications, see the manual Dynamic Application Development WMI and PowerShell. For information on configuring the ScienceLogic platform and external systems to use PowerShell Dynamic Applications, see the manual Monitoring Windows Systems.
- WMI Performance. The Dynamic Application retrieves trendable performance data from either WMI or WBEM running on a managed device. WMI Dynamic Applications use a query format to request data from a managed device. WBEM Dynamic Applications use whem cli and HTTP to request data from a managed device.

- XML Configuration. The Dynamic Application uses HTTP GET queries. The queried device returns static configuration data in XML format. For details on creating SOAP Dynamic Applications, see the XML, SOAP, and XSLT Dynamic Application Development Manual.
- XML Performance. The Dynamic Application uses HTTP GET queries. The queried device returns
  trendable performance data in XML format. For details on creating SOAP Dynamic Applications, see
  the XML, SOAP, and XSLT Dynamic Application Development Manual.
- XSLT Configuration. The Dynamic Application uses XML and SOAP to retrieve static configuration data from a SOAP server. The requests used to retrieve data are generated by performing an XSLT transformation on an XML document that contains data already collected by the Dynamic Application. The queried device returns XML data, which must be changed to a specific format by performing a second XSLT transformation. For details on creating SOAP Dynamic Applications, see the XML, SOAP, and XSLT Dynamic Application Development Manual.
- XSLT Performance. The Dynamic Application uses XML and SOAP to retrieve trendable performance data from a SOAP server. The requests used to retrieve data are generated by performing an XSLT transformation on an XML document that contains data already collected by the Dynamic Application. The queried device returns XML data, which must be changed to a specific format by performing a second XSLT transformation. For details on creating SOAP Dynamic Applications, see the XML, SOAP, and XSLT Dynamic Application Development Manual.
- State. Specifies whether the Dynamic Application is Enabled or Disabled.
- **Version**. Version number to assign to the Dynamic Application. You can customize this value and increment it according to your change-management policies.
- ID. Unique application ID, assigned by the ScienceLogic platform.
- Subscribers. Number of devices that use the Dynamic Application. Clicking on the icon leads to the Application Subscribers modal page, where you can view the list of devices and access other pages for each subscriber device. You can also access this page by selecting the wrench icon ( ) for a Dynamic Application and selecting the [Subscribers] tab.
- PowerPack. Specifies whether or not the Dynamic Application is included in a PowerPack.
- **Environment**. The execution environment to which the Dynamic Application is aligned, if it is a snippet or internal collection Dynamic Application. If it is not a snippet or internal collection Dynamic Application, then this column displays "n/a".
- Collects. Number of objects included in the Dynamic Application. Clicking on the icon ( ) leads to the Collection Objects page, where you can view the list of collection objects and edit their properties.
- Alerts. Number of custom alerts defined for the Dynamic Application. Clicking on the icon ( ) leads to the Alert Objects page, where you can view and edit each alert defined for the Dynamic Application.
- Events. Number of events associated with the Dynamic Application. Clicking on the icon ( leads to the Event Policy Manager page, where you can view information about each event definition associated with the Dynamic Application definition and edit each event definition.
- *Thresh*. Number of threshold objects defined for the Dynamic Application. Clicking on the icon ( leads to the *Threshold Objects* page, where you can view and edit information about each threshold object defined for the Dynamic Application.

- Edited By. Username of the person who created or last edited the Dynamic Application.
- Last Edit. Date that the Dynamic Application was created or last edited.

#### Searching and Filtering the List of Dynamic Applications

The Filter-While-You-Type fields appear as a row of blank fields at the top of the list. These fields allow you to filter the items that appear in the list.

The list is dynamically updated as you select each filter. For each filter, you must make a selection from a drop-down menu or type text to match against. The ScienceLogic platform will search for entries that match the text, including partial matches. Text matches are not case-sensitive, and you can use special characters in each text field.

By default, the cursor is placed in the first Filter-While-You-Type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields.

You can filter by one or more of the following parameters. Only items that meet all of the filter criteria are displayed on the page.

- **Dynamic Application Name**. You can enter text to match, including **special characters**, and the Dynamic Applications Manager page will display only Dynamic Applications that have a matching name.
- **Poll Rate**. You can enter text to match, including **special characters**, and the Dynamic Applications Manager page will display only Dynamic Applications that have a matching polling rate.
- **Type**. You can enter text to match, including *special characters*, , and the Dynamic Applications Manager page will display only Dynamic Applications that have a matching type.
- **State**. You can enter text to match, including **special characters**, and the Dynamic Applications Manager page will display only Dynamic Applications that have a matching state.
- **Version**. You can enter text to match, including **special characters**, and the Dynamic Applications Manager page will display only Dynamic Applications that have a matching version number.
- *ID*. You can enter text to match, including *special characters*, and the Dynamic Applications Manager page will display only Dynamic Applications that have a matching ID number.
- **Subscribers**. You can enter text to match, including **special characters**, and the Dynamic Applications Manager page will display only Dynamic Applications that have a matching number of subscribers.
- **PowerPack**. You can enter text to match, including **special characters**, and the Dynamic Applications Manager page will display only Dynamic Applications that have a matching PowerPack.
- **Environment**. You can enter text to match, including **special characters**, and the Dynamic Applications Manager page will display only Dynamic Applications that have a matching execution environment.
- **Collects**. You can enter text to match, including **special characters**, and the Dynamic Applications Manager page will display only Dynamic Applications that have a matching number of collection objects.
- Alerts. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Dynamic Applications Manager page will display only Dynamic Applications that have a matching number of alerts.
- **Events**. You can enter text to match,including **special characters**, and the Dynamic Applications Manager page will display only Dynamic Applications that have a matching number of event policies.

- *Thresh*. You can enter text to match, including *special characters*, and the Dynamic Applications Manager page will display only Dynamic Applications that have a matching number of thresholds.
- *Edited By*. You can enter text to match, including *special characters*, and the Dynamic Applications Manager page will display only Dynamic Applications that were created or edited by a a matching username.
- Last Edited. Only those Dynamic Applications that match all the previously selected fields and have the specified "last edited" date will be displayed. The choices are:
  - o All. Display all Dynamic Applications that match the other filters.
  - Last Minute. Display only Dynamic Applications that have been modified within the last minute.
  - o Last Hour. Display only Dynamic Applications that have been modified within the last hour.
  - Last Day. Display only Dynamic Applications that have been modified within the last day.
  - o Last Week. Display only Dynamic Applications that have been modified within the last week.
  - · Last Month. Display only Dynamic Applications that have been modified within the last month.
  - o Last Year. Display only Dynamic Applications that have been modified within the last year.

## Special Characters

You can include the following special characters to filter by each column except those that display date and time:

NOTE: When searching for a string, the ScienceLogic platform will match substrings by default, even if you do not include any special characters. For example, searching for "hel" will match both "hello" and "helicopter". When searching for a numeric value, the ScienceLogic platform will not match a substring unless you use a special character.

#### String and Numeric

- , (comma). Specifies an "OR" operation. Works for string and numeric values. For example:
  - "dell, micro" matches all values that contain the string "dell" OR the string "micro".
- & (ampersand). Specifies an "AND" operation. Works for string and numeric values. For example:
  - "dell & micro" matches all values that contain both the string "dell" AND the string "micro", in any order.

- ! (exclamation point). Specifies a "not" operation. Works for string and numeric values. For example:
  - "!dell" matches all values that do not contain the string "dell".
  - "! ^ micro" would match all values that do not start with "micro".
  - "!fer\$" would match all values that do not end with "fer".
  - "! ^ \$" would match all values that are not null.
  - "! ^ " would match null values.
  - "!\$" would match null values.
  - "!\*" would match null values.
  - "happy, !dell" would match values that contain "happy" OR values that do not contain "dell".

**NOTE**: You can also use the "!" character in combination with the arithmetic special characters (min-max, >, <, >=, <=, =) described below.

- \* (asterisk). Specifies a "match zero or more" operation. Works for string and numeric values. For a string, matches any string that matches the text before and after the asterisk. For a number, matches any number that contains the text. For example:
  - "hel\*er" would match "helpers" and "helicopter" but not "hello".
  - "325\*" would match "325", "32561", and "325000".
  - "\*000" would match "1000", "25000", and "10500000".
- ? (question mark). Specifies "match any one character". Works for string and numeric values. For example:
  - "I?ver" would match the strings "oliver", "levers", and "lover", but not "believer".
  - "135?" would match the numbers "1350", "1354", and "1359", but not "135" or "13502"

#### String

- ^ (caret). For strings only. Specifies "match the beginning". Matches any string that begins with the specified string. For example:
  - "^sci" would match "scientific" and "sciencelogic", but not "conscious".
  - "^happy\$" would match only the string "happy", with no characters before or after.
  - "! ^ micro" would match all values that do not start with "micro".
  - "! ^ \$" would match all values that are not null.
  - "! ^ " would match null values.

• \$ (dollar sign). For strings only. Specifies "match the ending". Matches any string that ends with the specified string. For example:

"ter\$" would match the string "renter" but not the string "terrific".

"^happy\$" would match only the string "happy", with no characters before or after.

"!fer\$" would match all values that do not end with "fer".

"! ^ \$" would match all values that are not null.

"!\$" would match null values.

NOTE: You can use both ^ and \$ if you want to match an entire string and only that string. For example,
" ^ tern\$" would match the strings "tern" or "Tern" or "TERN"; it would not match the strings "terne" or
"cistern".

#### Numeric

- min-max. Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value between the minimum value and the maximum value, including the minimum and the maximum. For example:
  - "1-5 "would match 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5.
- - (dash). Matches numeric values only. A "half open" range. Specifies values including the minimum and greater or including the maximum and lesser. For example:
  - "1-" matches 1 and greater. So would match 1, 2, 6, 345, etc.
  - "-5" matches 5 and less. So would match 5, 3, 1, 0, etc.
- > (greater than). Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value "greater than". For example:
  - ">7" would match all values greater than 7.
- < (less than). Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value "less than". For example:
  - "<12" would match all values less than 12.
- >= (greater than or equal to). Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value "greater than or equal to". For example:
  - "=>7" would match all values 7 and greater.
- <= (less than or equal to). Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value "less than or equal to". For example:
  - "=<12" would match all values 12 and less.

- = (equal). Matches numeric values only. For numeric values, allows you to match a negative value. For example:
  - "=-5" would match "-5" instead of being evaluated as the "half open range" as described above.

### **Additional Examples**

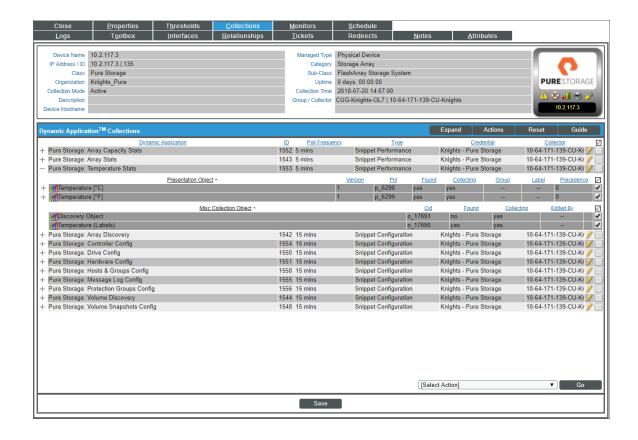
- "aio\$". Matches only text that ends with "aio".
- "^shu". Matches only text that begins with "shu".
- "^silo\$". Matches only the text "silo", with no characters before or after.
- "!silo". Matches only text that does not contains the characters "silo".
- "! ^ silo". Matches only text that does not start with "silo".
- "!0\$". Matches only text that does not end with "0".
- "! ^ silo\$". Matches only text that is not the exact text "silo", with no characters before or after.
- "! ^". Matches null values, typically represented as "--" in most pages.
- "!\$". Matches null values, typically represented as "--" in most pages.
- "!^\$". Matches all text that is not null.
- silo, laggr". Matches text that contains the characters "silo" and also text that does not contain "aggr".
- "silo, 02, laggr". Matches text that contains "silo" and also text that contains "02" and also text that does not contain "aggr".
- "silo, 02, laggr, !01". Matches text that contains "silo" and also text that contains "02" and also text that does not contain "aggr" and also text that does not contain "01".
- "^s\*i\*l\*o\$". Matches text that contains the letter "s", "i", "l", "o", in that order. Other letters might lie between these letters. For example "sXiXIXo" would match.
- "!^s\*i\*l\*o\$". Matches all text that does not that contains the letter "s", "i", "l", "o", in that order. Other letters might lie between these letters. For example "sXiXIXo" would not match.
- "!vol&!silo". Matches text that does not contain "vol" AND also does not contain "silo". For example, "volume" would match, because it contains "vol" but not "silo".
- "!vol&02". Matches text that does not contain "vol" AND also contains "02". For example, "happy02" would match, because it does not contain "vol" and it does contain "02".
- "aggr,!vol&02". Matches text that contains "aggr" OR text that does not contain "vol" AND also contains "02".
- "aggr,!vol&!infra". Matches text that contains "aggr" OR text that does not contain "vol" AND does not contain "infra".
- "\*". Matches all text.
- "!\*". Matches null values, typically represented as "--" in most pages.
- "silo". Matches text that contains "silo".
- "!silo". Matches text that does not contain "silo".
- "!^silo\$". Matches all text except the text "silo", with no characters before or after.
- "-3,7-8,11,24,50-". Matches numbers 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 11, 24, 50, and all numbers greater than 50.

- "-3,7-8,11,24,50-,a". Matches numbers 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 11, 24, 50, and all numbers greater than 50, and text that includes "a".
- "?n". Matches text that contains any single character and the character "n". For example, this string would match "an", "bn", "cn", "1 n", and "2 n".
- "n\*SAN". Matches text the contains "n", zero or any number of any characters and then "SAN". For example, the string would match "nSAN", and "nhamburgerSAN".
- "^?n\*SAN\$". Matches text that begins with any single character, is following by "n", and then zero or any number of any characters, and ends in "SAN".

# Viewing the Dynamic Applications Associated with a Device

To view the Dynamic Applications associated with a device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to view Dynamic Applications. Select its wrench icon ( ).
- 3. In the **Device Administration** panel, select the **[Collections]** tab.
- 4. The **Dynamic Application Collections** page displays a list of all Dynamic Applications aligned with the current device. For each Dynamic Application, the **Dynamic Application Collections** page displays the following read-only information:



- *Plus Sign* (+). Clicking on this icon displays a list of all Presentation Objects included in Dynamic Applications of type "Performance" and "Journal" or a list of all Collection Objects included in Dynamic Applications of type "Configuration". You can click on the plus sign next to each Presentation Object to see all the Collection Objects included in the Presentation Object.
- Minus Sign ( ). Collapses a Dynamic Application and hides the display of Presentation Objects and Collection Objects.
- Dynamic Application. Name of the Dynamic Application.
- ID. Numeric ID for the Dynamic Application.
- Poll Frequency. Frequency at which the ScienceLogic platform will query the device to retrieve the
  data specified in the Dynamic Application. Each Dynamic Application includes a default frequency.
  From this page (Dynamic Application Collections), you can change the poll frequency for a
  Dynamic Application on the current device. This edited poll frequency will override the default
  frequency for the Dynamic Application and the poll frequency defined for a Dynamic Application in
  one or more device templates.
- Type. The protocol used by the Dynamic Application (Database [SQL], Internal Collection Inventory or Internal Collection Performance (ICDA), Snippet [Python], SNMP, SOAP, WMI, XML, or XSLT) and the type of data collected by the Dynamic Application (Configuration, Performance, or Journal).
- **Credential**. Name of the credential that the ScienceLogic platform uses to access the device and retrieve the data specified in the Dynamic Application.

NOTE: Cache-consuming Dynamic Applications do not require a credential. If you aligned a cache-consuming Dynamic Application in the **Dynamic Application Alignment** modal page, the *Credential* field displays *N/A* and is grayed out. You do not have to select a credential in the **Dynamic Application Alignment** modal page.

• Collector. Name of the specific Data Collector used to collect data from the Dynamic Application.

NOTE: Based on the Dynamic Application's *Collector Affinity* settings, the Dynamic Application might be assigned to a different Data Collector than the Data Collector that is assigned to the device in the Device Properties page (Registry > Devices > wrench icon). In the **Dynamic Application**Collections page, hover your mouse over the *Collector* name for any of the Collection Objects to view a tooltip that explains why the Dynamic Application is assigned to its particular Data Collector.

• Run Dynamic Application ( ). Performs a test run of data collection for the selected Dynamic Application on the current device.

**NOTE**: If a device is currently unavailable, the lightning-bolt icon ( ) will be grayed out for each Dynamic Application aligned with the device.

Checkbox (
). Apply an action from the Select Action field to this instance of the Dynamic Application.

# Viewing the Status of a Dynamic Application

For each device, the ScienceLogic platform maintains the collection status for each collection object in each Dynamic Application aligned with that device. The **Dynamic Application Collections** page displays the status of each collection object for a device as represented by two values: **Found** and **Collect**. The **Dynamic Application Collections** page also displays the **Found** and **Collect** values for each presentation object, which are derived from the status of each collection object used by the presentation object.

## Found

The **Found** status for a collection object has two possible values:

- Yes. Data has been successfully collected from this device for this object. **Found** is set to Yes the first time data is successfully collected from this device for this object.
- No. Data has never been successfully collected from this device for this object. No is the initial value of
   Found for every object when a Dynamic Application is initially aligned with a device.

The *Found* status for a presentation object also has two possible values (Yes and No).

- If the presentation object uses only one collection object, the presentation object always has the same default Found and default Collect values as that collection object.
- If a presentation object uses multiple collection objects, the default Found value for the presentation object will be Yes only if all the collection objects used by the presentation object have a Found value of Yes.

After **Found** is set to Yes for an object, the ScienceLogic platform will never automatically change the value of **Found** for this object.

The value of **Found** is used by the ScienceLogic platform to determine whether icons, tabs, and Navbar links that lead to the [**Performance**] or [**Configs**] page where the collection object is used should be active.

### Collect

The **Collect** status for a collection object has two possible values:

- Yes. The ScienceLogic platform will attempt to collect data for this object when collection for this Dynamic
  Application occurs. Yes is the initial value for Collect for every object when a Dynamic Application is initially
  aligned with a device.
- No. The ScienceLogic platform will not attempt to collect data for this object when collection for this Dynamic Application occurs. The platform might set **Collect** to No automatically if no data has been collected.
- If a collection object has a **Collect** value of No, all presentation objects that use that collection object will also have a **Collect** value of No.

The **Collect** status for a presentation object also has two possible values (Yes and No).

- If the presentation object uses only one collection object, the presentation object always has the same default Found and default Collect values as that collection object.
- If a presentation object uses multiple collection objects, the default Collect value for the presentation object will be Yes only if all the collection objects used by the presentation object have a Collect value of Yes. If one or more collection objects used by the presentation object have a Collect value of No, the presentation object will also have a default Collect value of No.
- The Collect status for a presentation object has no effect upon its collection objects. If you manually change
  the Collect status for a presentation object, the Collect status for the collection objects used by the
  presentation object will not change.

**NOTE**: Before determining which collection objects defined in a Dynamic Application will be collected, the platform determines whether the Dynamic Application itself should be collected. Dynamic Applications are not collected for devices that are unavailable (because of a failed availability check) or have collection disabled (either manually by a user or because of maintenance scheduled in the platform) regardless of the **Collect** value of the objects.

# How the ScienceLogic Platform Manages Collect Status

## Stopping Collection

One of the ScienceLogic hourly maintenance tasks checks the last collection time for every collection object being collected from every device. If the last collection time for an object on a device is more than two days ago, collection is stopped for that collection object on that device. The ScienceLogic platform will set the **Collect** status of that object to No.

**NOTE**: If a device is in maintenance mode, is unavailable, or has been manually disabled by a user, the ScienceLogic platform will not automatically set the **Collect** status of objects to No. The ScienceLogic platform will automatically set the **Collect** status of objects to No only if the device is up and running, but the platform still cannot collect the object.

When the ScienceLogic platform sets the **Collect** status of that object to *No*, the platform generates an event. The event will include the name of the device, the name of the Dynamic Application, the name of the collection object, and the collection object IDs. By default, this event is of severity "notice".

NOTE: For Dynamic Applications that have the *Component Mapping* checkbox selected in the **Dynamic**Applications Properties Editor page, the ScienceLogic platform will never automatically set the

Collect status to No for any of the collection objects in the Dynamic Application.

**NOTE**: For Dynamic Applications that have the *Caching* fields set to either *Cache Results* or *Consume* cached results in the **Dynamic Applications Properties Editor** page, the ScienceLogic platform will never automatically set the **Collect** status to No for any of the collection objects in the Dynamic Application.

## Starting Collection

For each object that has the **Collect** status of No, the ScienceLogic platform will attempt to re-collect the object once a day. If re-collection is successful, the ScienceLogic platform will automatically set the **Collect** value for that object to Yes.

**NOTE**: If a user manually sets the **Collect** status of a collection object or presentation object to *No*, the ScienceLogic platform will **not** attempt to re-collect the object once a day and will **not** set the **Collect** status to Yes.

## Collection Objects that are Excluded from Maintenance

The **Collect** status of the following collection objects is never changed automatically:

- Collection objects in Dynamic Applications that have the **Component Mapping** checkbox checked in the **Dynamic Applications Properties Editor** page.
- Collection objects in Dynamic Applications that have the **Caching** fields set to either Cache Results or Consume cached results, in the **Dynamic Applications Properties Editor** page.
- Collection objects that have the **Disable Object Maintenance** setting enabled.
- Collection objects that have a **Collect** status defined by a user, i.e. collection objects that were manually enabled or disabled by a user.

# Status of Objects for Deviation

The ScienceLogic platform allows you to examine the value of an object and trigger an alert if that value falls outside the range of "normal" values for that object at the hour of the day on that day of the week. The deviation function allows you to define such alerts.

To use the deviation function, you must configure the ScienceLogic platform to store and calculate the mean values and standard deviation for an object. You do this by selecting the *Enable Deviation Alerting* field in the *Collection Objects* page. You then specify the minimum and maximum number of weeks to collect deviation data for the object. The ScienceLogic platform must have already collected at least the minimum number of weeks' worth of values for an object before the ScienceLogic platform can evaluate alert formulas that use the deviation function. To use the deviation function, you must specify a minimum value of at least two weeks.

If a Dynamic Application in the **Dynamic Application Collections** page contains one or more alerts that use the deviation function, the **Dynamic Application Collections** page displays the status of the collection objects.

For example, suppose an alert in a Dynamic Application will apply the deviation function to object "o\_123". Suppose that you specified that the ScienceLogic platform must collect at least two weeks' worth of deviation data for this object. Suppose that the ScienceLogic platform contains only one weeks' worth of values for object "o\_123". In this case, the **Dynamic Application Collections** page will display the following message:

```
Note: object 123 not ready for deviation alerting.
```

When the ScienceLogic platform contains at least two weeks worth of values for object "o\_123", the **Dynamic Application Collections** page will display the following message:

All objects ready for deviation alerting.

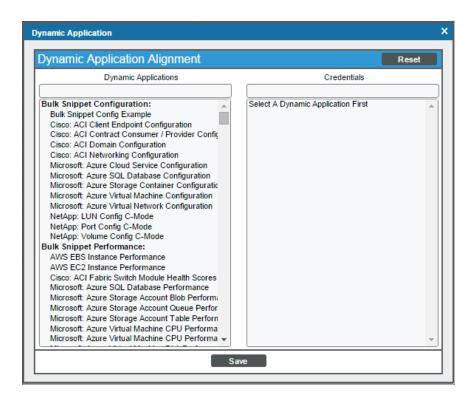
# Manually Associating a Dynamic Application with a Device

From the **Dynamic Application Collections** page, you can manually associate a new Dynamic Application with a device.

To manually associate a Dynamic Application with a device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device you want to associate with a Dynamic Application. Click its wrench icon ().
- 3. In the **Device Administration** panel, click the **[Collections]** tab.
- 4. In the **Dynamic Application Collections** page, click the **[Actions]** menu and select *Add Dynamic Application*.

5. The **Dynamic Application Alignment** modal page appears. To align a Dynamic Application with a device in this page:



- Select the Dynamic Application you want to align with the device in the Dynamic Applications field.
   You can filter the list of Dynamic Applications using the search field above the Dynamic Applications field.
- After selecting a Dynamic Application, you must select a credential. Select a credential in the
   Credentials field. You can filter the list of credentials using the search field above the Credentials
   field.

**NOTE**: Your organization membership(s) might affect the list of credentials you can see in the **Credentials** field.

NOTE: Cache-consuming Dynamic Applications do not require a credential. If you selected a cache-consuming Dynamic Application in the Dynamic Application Alignment modal page, the Credential field displays N/A and is grayed out. You do not have to select a credential in the Dynamic Application Alignment modal page.

6. Click the **[Save]** button in the **Dynamic Application Alignment** modal page to align the Dynamic Application and the credential to the device.

- 7. The ScienceLogic platform will associate the Dynamic Application with the device and immediately attempt to collect the data specified in the Dynamic Application using the selected credential.
- 8. After the first, immediate collection, the ScienceLogic platform will collect the data at the frequency defined in the *Polling Frequency* field in the *Application Configuration Editor* page for the Dynamic Application.

# Editing the Credential Associated with a Dynamic Application

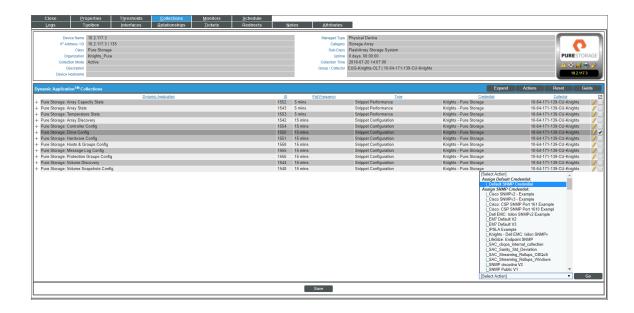
From the **Dynamic Application Collections** page, you can change the credential associated with a Dynamic Application. This credential will be used by the ScienceLogic platform for this specific Dynamic Application associated with this specific device . For all other devices, the ScienceLogic platform will use the default credential associated with the device, or will use the credential defined in the **Dynamic Application Collections** page for each device.

**NOTE**: Cache-consuming Dynamic Applications do not require a credential. If you aligned a cache-consuming Dynamic Application with this device (you do this in the **Dynamic Application Alignment** modal page), the **Credential** field displays N/A and is grayed out.

To change the credential associated with a Dynamic Application for a device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to define a credential. Select its wrench icon ().
- 3. In the **Device Administration** panel, select the **[Collections]** tab.
- 4. In the **Dynamic Application Collections** page, find the Dynamic Application for which you want to change the credential. Select its checkbox (✓). To apply a credential to multiple Dynamic Applications, select the checkbox for each Dynamic Application.

5. From the **Select Action** drop-down list, select the credential from the list of all credentials that you are allowed to use, and then select the **[Go]** button.



**NOTE**: Your organization membership(s) might affect the list of credentials you can see in the **Select Action** drop-down list.

**NOTE**: If this Dynamic Application has already been aligned with a credential to which you do not have access, the **Credential** column will display the value *Restricted Credential*. If you align the device with a different credential, you will not be able to re-align the device with the *Restricted Credential*.

6. You should see your change reflected in the **Credential** column in the **Dynamic Application Collections** page.

# Performing Other Administrative Tasks for an Aligned Dynamic Application

You can perform the following other administrative tasks for an aligned Dynamic Application in the **Dynamic Application Collections** page:

- Enable or disable one or more collection objects or presentation objects.
- Stop data collection for the whole Dynamic Application.
- Reset the statistical data that has been stored for standard deviation alerting.
- Reset persistent session objects that have been collected and stored for a Dynamic Application.

- Test collection for a Dynamic Application.
- Remove all data collected using the Dynamic Application and optionally unalign the Dynamic Application from the device.

To perform one of these tasks:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to perform an administrative task. Select its wrench icon ().
- 3. In the **Device Administration** panel, select the **[Collections]** tab.
- 4. In the **Dynamic Application Collections** page, find the Dynamic Application for which you want to perform an administrative task. The following sections describe how to perform each task.

## **Enabling or Disabling Objects**

From the **Dynamic Application Collections** page, you can customize the collection performed by the Dynamic Application for the current device. This customization will be used by the ScienceLogic platform only for this specific device. For all other devices, the platform will use the default list of objects from the Dynamic Application's definition or will use the list of objects defined in the **Dynamic Application Collections** page for that device.

**NOTE**: If a collection object has a **Collect** value of No, all presentation objects that use that collection object will also have a **Collect** value of No.

To enable or disable collection for one or more objects in a Dynamic Application:

- To disable collection for one or more collection objects, unselect the checkbox for each object for which you want to disable collection.
- For each unselected object, the **Collect** column should now display No.
- To enable collection for one or more collection objects, select the checkbox for each object for which you want to enable collection.
- For each selected object, the **Collect** column should now display Yes.
- Select the [Save] button.

**NOTE**: If a user **manually** sets the **Collect** status of a collection object or presentation object to No, the platform will **not** attempt to re-collect the object once a day and will **not** automatically set the **Collect** status to Yes.

## Restarting Automatic Maintenance of Collection Objects

If a user **manually** sets the **Collect** status of a collection object or presentation object, the ScienceLogic platform will **not** automatically change the **Collect** status of that object as described in the **How the ScienceLogic Platform** 

#### Manages Collect Status section.

If you want the ScienceLogic platform to restart automatic maintenance of the objects in a Dynamic Application, perform the following steps:

- 1. In the **Dynamic Application Collections** page, select the checkbox ( ) for the Dynamic Application for which you want to restart automatic collection maintenance. To restart automatic collection maintenance for multiple Dynamic Applications, select the checkbox for each Dynamic Application.
- 2. From the **Select Action** drop-down list, select Restore System Control of Collection State and then select the **[Go]** button.
- 3. Automatic collection maintenance for all objects in the Dynamic Application will now occur. The **Collect** status of the objects in the Dynamic Application will not change immediately.

# Editing the Poll Frequency for a Dynamic Application on the Current Device

**Poll Frequency** is the frequency at which the ScienceLogic platform will query the device to retrieve the data specified in the Dynamic Application. Each Dynamic Application includes a default frequency.

From the **Dynamic Application Collections** page, you can change the poll frequency for a Dynamic Application on the current device. For the current device, the edited poll frequency will override:

- the default frequency for the Dynamic Application.
- the poll frequency defined for a Dynamic Application in one or more device templates.

To edit the poll frequency for a Dynamic Application on the current device:

- 1. In the **Dynamic Application Collections** page, select the checkbox (**(**) for the Dynamic Application for which you want to change the poll frequency. To change the poll frequency for multiple Dynamic Applications, select the checkbox for each Dynamic Application.
- 2. From the **Select Action** drop-down list, select *Poll Frequency* from the list of poll frequencies and then select the **[Go]** button.
- You should see your change reflected in the *Poll Frequency* column in the **Dynamic Application** Collections page.

## Stopping Data Collection for a Dynamic Application

You can stop data collection for a Dynamic Application on the current device. This will affect collection only for this specific device. For all other subscriber devices, the ScienceLogic platform will continue to use this Dynamic Application to collect data.

To stop data collection for a Dynamic Application on this device:

1. Select the checkbox (☑) of each Dynamic Application for which you want to stop data collection.

- 2. From the **Select Action** drop-down list, select the following:
  - Disable All Collection Objects. For all collection objects in the selected Dynamic Application(s), the Collect value will be set to No.
- 3. Select the [Go] button.

NOTE: If a user manually sets the *Collect* status of a collection object or presentation object to *No*, the ScienceLogic platform will not attempt to re-collect the object once a day and will not set the *Collect* status to Yes

## Resetting Statistical Data for a Dynamic Application

The ScienceLogic platform allows you to examine the value of an object and trigger an alert if that value falls outside the range of "normal" values for that object at that hour of the day on that day of the week. The deviation function allows you to define such alerts.

To use the deviation function, you must configure the ScienceLogic platform to store and calculate the mean values and standard deviation for an object. You do this by selecting the *Enable Deviation Alerting* field in the *Collection Objects* page. You then specify the minimum and maximum number of weeks to collect deviation data for the object. The ScienceLogic platform must have already collected at least the minimum number of weeks' worth of values for an object before the ScienceLogic platform will evaluate alert formulas that use the deviation function. To use the deviation function, you must specify a minimum value of at least two weeks.

In some cases, you might want to delete all the collected statistics for an object and start over. This is useful if known circumstances change the value of an object, and you no longer want to use the old data to calculate the "normal" ranges. You can do this by "resetting" the statistical data for an object.

For example, suppose you were monitoring bandwidth usage with a standard deviation alert. Suppose your company previously ran on a 09:00 to 17:00 work schedule. Suppose your company has recently added a nightshift to the schedule. In this circumstance, you might want to reset the statistical data to determine the new "normal" usage patterns.

When you reset the statistical data for an object, you are telling the ScienceLogic platform to ignore all previously collected values and to use only values from today onward. When you reset the statistical data for an object, the **Dynamic Application Collections** page will again display a message like:

```
Note: object 123 not ready for deviation alerting.
```

until enough data has been collected to again calculate standard deviation for the object. The ScienceLogic platform will again start collecting the minimum number of weeks of data for the object (as specified in the **Enable Deviation Alerting** field in the **Collection Objects** page) and calculating the "normal" ranges for those objects for each hour at each day of the week.

To delete all current statistical data for an object:

- 1. In the Dynamic Application, find the object for which you want to reset data.
- 2. In that Dynamic Application, find the object for which you want to reset data. Select its checkbox (🗹).

- 3. From the **Select Action** drop-down list, select the following option:
  - Reset Statistical Data. Removes all previously collected statistical data for the selected object. The
    ScienceLogic platform will again start collecting the minimum number of weeks of data for the object
    (as specified in the Enable Deviation Alerting field in the Collection Objects page) and calculating
    the "normal" ranges for those objects for each hour at each day of the week.
- 4. Select the [Go] button.
- 5. The **Dynamic Application Collections** page will display a message like:

Note: object 123 not ready for deviation alerting.

## Resetting Persistent Session Objects for a Dynamic Application

SOAP or XSLT Dynamic Applications can contain a collection object that stores a Session ID. The value for this collection object can be defined as a persistent value. If the ScienceLogic platform has already retrieved and stored a value in the collection object for the Session ID, the ScienceLogic platform will not collect a new value for the collection object until a SOAP fault occurs. You can force the ScienceLogic platform to re-collect a Session ID collection object by deleting the current persistent value.

To delete the current persistent value for a session object:

- 1. In the Dynamic Application, find the object for which you want to reset data. Select its checkbox (🗵).
- 2. From the **Select Action** drop-down list, select the following option:
  - Reset Persistent Session Objects. Removes the stored value for collection objects of type SOAP/XSLT
    Session ID. SOAP/XSLT Session ID objects are persistent across collection periods; the ScienceLogic
    platform does not collect a SOAP/XSLT Session ID object if a collected value is available from a
    previous poll. After selecting this option, the ScienceLogic platform will delete the existing value for the
    object and collect a new value during the next collection.
- 3. Select the [Go] button.

## Testing Data Collection for a Dynamic Application

On a single device, you can perform a test-run of collection with a single Dynamic Application. During this test run, the ScienceLogic platform displays details of each step of the collection process. This information can be very helpful for troubleshooting and debugging.

**NOTE**: During a test run of a collection with a Dynamic Application, the ScienceLogic platform does not store the collected data or generate alerts. The ScienceLogic platform will continue to collect data and generate alerts using the selected Dynamic Application at the frequency defined in the Dynamic Application.

To execute a test run of collection with a single Dynamic Application:

1. Find the Dynamic Application for which you want to test collection and click its lightning bolt icon ( $\mathscr{F}$ ).



**NOTE**: If a device is currently unavailable, the lightning bolt icon ( ) will be grayed out for each Dynamic Application aligned with the device.

2. The ScienceLogic platform displays a Session Logs modal page that includes details about each step of the collection process and diagnostic details about alerts in the Dynamic Application. This information can be helpful during troubleshooting.

## Removing Data Collected by a Dynamic Application

You can remove the data retrieved with a Dynamic Application from the current device. You have two options for removing Dynamic Application data associated with a device:

- Remove all previously collected data, but continue to collect data at the specified polling frequency.
- Remove all normalized data, but retain all raw collected data and continue to collect data at the specified polling frequency.
- Remove all previously collected data and stop collecting data with this Dynamic Application. This unaligns the device from the Dynamic Application. The device will no longer be a subscriber to the Dynamic Application.

To remove Dynamic Application data associated with a device:

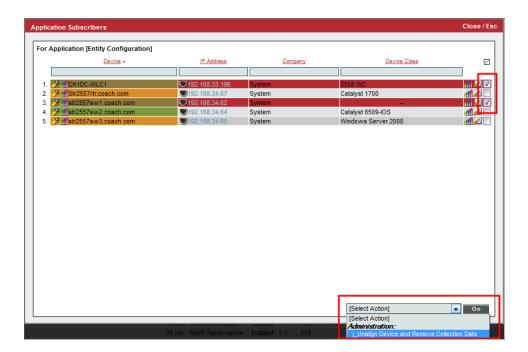
- 1. In the **Dynamic Application Collections** page, select the checkbox (**(**) of the Dynamic Application for which you want to remove data. To remove data for multiple Dynamic Applications, select the checkbox for each Dynamic Application.
- 2. From the **Select Action** drop-down list, select one of the following options:
  - Remove Data. Removes all previously collected data, but data will continue to collect at the specified polling frequency.
  - Remove Normalized Data. Removes all normalized data, but all raw collected data is retained and data will continue to collect at the specified polling frequency.
  - Stop Collection and Remove Data. Removes all previously collected data and stops collection of data with this Dynamic Application. This "unaligns" the device from the Dynamic Application. The device is no longer considered a subscriber to the Dynamic Application. If you perform this option and later want to subscribe to this Dynamic Application again, you must re-align the device with the Dynamic Application.
- 3. Select the [Go] button.

# Bulk Un-Aligning Dynamic Applications

The Application Subscribers page contains a drop-down field in the lower right called Select Action. This field allows you to un-align a Dynamic Application from one or more subscriber-devices.

To un-align a Dynamic Application from one or more devices:

- 1. Go to the **Dynamic Applications Manager** page (System > Manage > Applications).
- 2. In the **Dynamic Applications Manager** page, find an application with a subscriber icon (**a**) in the **Subscribers** column. Select the icon.
- 3. The Application Subscribers page appears.



- 4. In the **Application Subscribers** page, select the checkbox for each device you want to apply the action to. To select all checkboxes for all devices, select the red checkbox (**II**) at the top of the page.
- 5. In the **Select Action** drop-down list, select one of the following actions.
  - Unalign Device and Remove Collection Data. This option unaligns the device from the Dynamic
    Application and deletes all data collected by the Dynamic Application from the device. The device is
    no longer considered a subscriber to the Dynamic Application. If you perform this option and later want
    to subscribe to this Dynamic Application again, you must re-align the device with the Dynamic
    Application.
- 6. Select the [Go] button to apply the action to all selected devices.

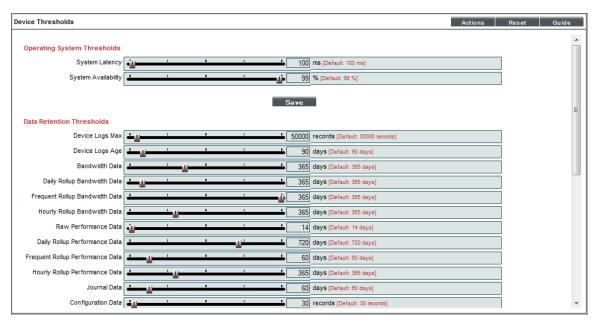
# Setting Thresholds for Dynamic Applications

If a Dynamic Application includes one or more *thresholds*, you can change the threshold value on a per-device basis. To change a Dynamic Application threshold for a device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the Device Manager page, find the device for which you want to define a threshold. Select its wrench icon



- 3. In the **Device Administration** panel, select the **[Thresholds]** tab.
- 4. The **Device Thresholds** page displays a list of thresholds defined for each Dynamic Application that is aligned to the device. To change a threshold, move the slider for that threshold or enter a value in the number field for that threshold:



5. After changing one or more thresholds, select the [Save] button to save your changes.

**NOTE**: Changing a threshold in the **Device Thresholds** page affects only the current device. The threshold values defined in the Dynamic Application remain unchanged.

# Dynamic Applications and Discovery

**Discovery** is the ScienceLogic tool that automatically discovers devices in your network. You supply the discovery tool with a range or list of IP addresses, and the discovery tool determines if a device exists at each IP address. The discovery tool also determines which (if any) Dynamic Applications to align with the device. If the discovery tool finds Dynamic Applications to align with the device, the discovery tool triggers collection for each aligned Dynamic Application.

To learn more about discovery, see the **Discovery and Credentials** manual.

# How Does the ScienceLogic Platform Align Dynamic Applications During Discovery?

Most Dynamic Applications include a discovery object. A discovery object enables the platform to determine which devices to align with a Dynamic Application.

During discovery, the ScienceLogic platform:

- 1. Searches the list of Dynamic Applications.
- 2. If a Dynamic Application includes a discovery object, the platform adds that Dynamic Application to the list of Dynamic Applications to try to align during discovery.
- 3. For each Dynamic Application that includes a discovery object, the platform checks the current discovery session for an appropriate credential. For example, for each database Dynamic Application, the platform would look for one or more database credentials that have been selected for the discovery session.
- 4. For each discovered device, both those that support SNMP and those that don't, discovery tries to determine which Dynamic Applications to align. For each discovered device, the platform tries to align each Dynamic Application in the list of Dynamic Applications to try during discovery. For each Dynamic Application in the list, the platform tries to connect to each device with each of the appropriate credentials (until the platform finds a working credential) and then tries to find the discovery object. If the platform is able to connect to a device with one of the credentials and can then retrieve the discovery object, the platform will align the Dynamic Application with the device.

**NOTE**: The ScienceLogic platform also includes more sophisticated logic that allows you to define multiple discovery objects, validate the value of the discovery object, and to align the Dynamic Application if a discovery object is not available. However, the most common use of a discovery object is as described above (discovery object exists).

- 5. If discovery aligns a Dynamic Application with a device, immediately after discovery completes the platform will start the first collection from that device using the aligned Dynamic Application. This step is not performed for Dynamic Applications that meet all of the following three criteria:
  - Has a collection frequency of 1 minute, 2 minutes, 3 minutes or 5 minutes.
  - Does not have component mapping enabled (does not discover component devices).
  - Is aligned with a component device.

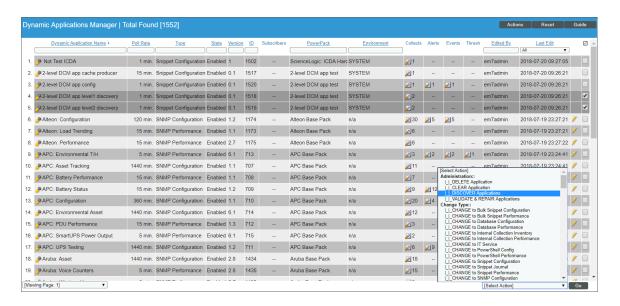
NOTE: During discovery, the platform tries each SNMP credential specified in the discovery session on each discovered device, to determine if the platform can collect SNMP details from the device. Later in the discovery session, during alignment of Dynamic Applications, discovery again tries each SNMP credential specified in the discovery session. If one of the SNMP credentials times out three times without any response, discovery will stop trying to use that SNMP credential to align SNMP Dynamic Applications. Note that "no response" means that a device did not respond at all. Note that if a device reports that "no OID was found" or "the end of the OID tree was reached", these are considered a legitimate response and would not cause the platform to abandon the credential.

## Queuing Discovery from the Dynamic Applications Manager Page

From the **Dynamic Applications Manager** page, you can manually run the Dynamic Application alignment portion of discovery for all devices in the system using one or more selected Dynamic Applications.

To manually queue discovery from the **Dynamic Applications Manager** page:

- 1. Go to the **Dynamic Applications Manager** page (System > Manage > Applications).
- 2. In the **Dynamic Applications Manager** page, select the checkbox for each Dynamic Application you want to use for discovery.
- 3. In the **Select Action** drop-down list, select Discover Applications. Select the **[Go]** button.



4. You can also run the Dynamic Application alignment portion of discovery for all devices in the system using a single Dynamic Application. To do this, select the lightning bolt icon ( ) for that Dynamic Application.

# Chapter

**28** 

# Grouping Dynamic Application Data Using Collection Labels

# What are Collection Labels and Collection Groups?

Collection Labels and Collection Groups allow you to group and view data from multiple performance Dynamic Applications in a single dashboard widget.

#### For example:

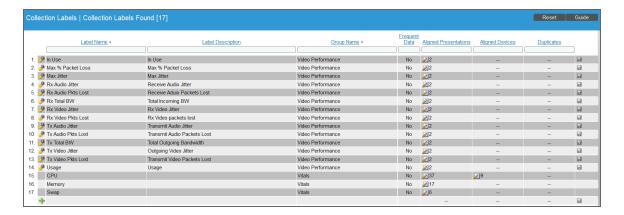
- Suppose you monitor phone systems from multiple vendors.
- Suppose you want to create a dashboard that displays the ten phone systems that drop the most calls.
- You could create a Collection Group called "Dropped Calls".
- You could create two Collection Labels: "Average Dropped Calls", and "Raw Dropped Calls".
- For each vendor, you could edit the appropriate performance Dynamic Application and align a collected value with "Average Dropped Calls" and align another collected value with "Raw Dropped Calls".
- You could then create a dashboard that displays the ten phone systems with the highest values for "Raw Dropped Calls" and also displays the ten phone systems with the highest values for "Average Dropped Calls".

# Viewing the List of Collection Labels

The **Collection Labels** page (System > Manage > Collection Labels) displays a list of all the existing Collection Labels. By Default, the ScienceLogic platform includes the following Collection Groups:

- Vitals. Includes the Collection Labels "CPU", "Memory", and "Swap".
- Video Performance. Includes Collection Labels for common performance metrics associated with video endpoint devices.

The **Collection Labels** page displays the following about each existing Collection Label:



- Label Name. Name of the Collection Label.
- Label Description. Description of the Collection Label. This field is optional.
- **Group Name**. Collection Group that contains this Collection Label.
- Frequent Data. Specifies whether frequently rolled up data is calculated for the Collection Label.
- Aligned Presentations. Presentation Objects aligned with this Collection Label.
- Aligned Devices. Devices that currently populate the Collection Label.
- **Duplicates**. Number of devices for which two or more Presentation Objects are aligned with the same Collection Label.

# Filtering the List of Collection Labels

You can filter the list of Collection Labels on the **Collection Labels** page by one or more parameters. Only Collection Labels that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **Collection Labels** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Collection Labels** page searches for Collection Labels that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use **special characters** to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

- Label Name. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the Collection Labels page will display only Collection Labels that are associated with a matching label name.
- Label Description. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the Collection Labels page will display only Collection Labels that are associated with a matching label description.

- **Group Name**. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **Collection Labels** page will display only Collection Labels that are associated with a matching group name.
- **Frequent Data**. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **Collection Labels** page will display only Collection Labels that have a a matching value in the **Frequent Data** field.
- Aligned Presentations. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and
  exclamation mark), and the Collection Labels page will display only Collection Labels that are associated
  with a matching number of presentations.
- Aligned Devices. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the Collection Labels page will display only Collection Labels that are associated with a matching number of aligned devices.
- **Duplicates**. You can enter text to match, including special characters (comma, ampersand, and exclamation mark), and the **Collection Labels** page will display only Collection Labels that are associated with a matching number of duplicates.

## Special Characters

You can include the following special characters to filter by each column except those that display date and time:

NOTE: When searching for a string, the ScienceLogic platform will match substrings by default, even if you do not include any special characters. For example, searching for "hel" will match both "hello" and "helicopter". When searching for a numeric value, the ScienceLogic platform will not match a substring unless you use a special character.

### String and Numeric

- , (comma). Specifies an "OR" operation. Works for string and numeric values. For example:
  - "dell, micro" matches all values that contain the string "dell" OR the string "micro".
- & (ampersand). Specifies an "AND" operation. Works for string and numeric values. For example:
  - "dell & micro" matches all values that contain both the string "dell" AND the string "micro", in any order.

- ! (exclamation point). Specifies a "not" operation. Works for string and numeric values. For example:
  - "!dell" matches all values that do not contain the string "dell".
  - "! ^ micro" would match all values that do not start with "micro".
  - "!fer\$" would match all values that do not end with "fer".
  - "! ^ \$" would match all values that are not null.
  - "! ^ " would match null values.
  - "!\$" would match null values.
  - "!\*" would match null values.
  - "happy, !dell" would match values that contain "happy" OR values that do not contain "dell".

**NOTE**: You can also use the "!" character in combination with the arithmetic special characters (min-max, >, <, >=, <=, =) described below.

- \* (asterisk). Specifies a "match zero or more" operation. Works for string and numeric values. For a string, matches any string that matches the text before and after the asterisk. For a number, matches any number that contains the text. For example:
  - "hel\*er" would match "helpers" and "helicopter" but not "hello".
  - "325\*" would match "325", "32561", and "325000".
  - "\*000" would match "1000", "25000", and "10500000".
- ? (question mark). Specifies "match any one character". Works for string and numeric values. For example:
  - "I?ver" would match the strings "oliver", "levers", and "lover", but not "believer".
  - "135?" would match the numbers "1350", "1354", and "1359", but not "135" or "13502"

#### String

- ^ (caret). For strings only. Specifies "match the beginning". Matches any string that begins with the specified string. For example:
  - "^sci" would match "scientific" and "sciencelogic", but not "conscious".
  - "^happy\$" would match only the string "happy", with no characters before or after.
  - "! ^ micro" would match all values that do not start with "micro".
  - "! ^ \$" would match all values that are not null.
  - "! ^ " would match null values.

• \$ (dollar sign). For strings only. Specifies "match the ending". Matches any string that ends with the specified string. For example:

"ter\$" would match the string "renter" but not the string "terrific".

"^happy\$" would match only the string "happy", with no characters before or after.

"!fer\$" would match all values that do not end with "fer".

"! ^ \$" would match all values that are not null.

"!\$" would match null values.

NOTE: You can use both ^ and \$ if you want to match an entire string and only that string. For example, " ^ tern\$" would match the strings "tern" or "Tern" or "TERN"; it would not match the strings "terne" or "cistern".

#### Numeric

- min-max. Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value between the minimum value and the maximum value, including the minimum and the maximum. For example:
  - "1-5 "would match 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5.
- - (dash). Matches numeric values only. A "half open" range. Specifies values including the minimum and greater or including the maximum and lesser. For example:
  - "1-" matches 1 and greater. So would match 1, 2, 6, 345, etc.
  - "-5" matches 5 and less. So would match 5, 3, 1, 0, etc.
- > (greater than). Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value "greater than". For example:
  - ">7" would match all values greater than 7.
- < (less than). Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value "less than". For example:
  - "<12" would match all values less than 12.
- >= (greater than or equal to). Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value "greater than or equal to". For example:
  - "=>7" would match all values 7 and greater.
- <= (less than or equal to). Matches numeric values only. Specifies any value "less than or equal to". For example:
  - "=<12" would match all values 12 and less.

- = (equal). Matches numeric values only. For numeric values, allows you to match a negative value. For example:
  - "=-5" would match "-5" instead of being evaluated as the "half open range" as described above.

#### **Additional Examples**

- "aio\$". Matches only text that ends with "aio".
- "^shu". Matches only text that begins with "shu".
- "^silo\$". Matches only the text "silo", with no characters before or after.
- "!silo". Matches only text that does not contains the characters "silo".
- "! ^ silo". Matches only text that does not start with "silo".
- "!0\$". Matches only text that does not end with "0".
- "! ^ silo\$". Matches only text that is not the exact text "silo", with no characters before or after.
- "! ^". Matches null values, typically represented as "--" in most pages.
- "!\$". Matches null values, typically represented as "--" in most pages.
- "!^\$". Matches all text that is not null.
- silo, laggr". Matches text that contains the characters "silo" and also text that does not contain "aggr".
- "silo, 02, laggr". Matches text that contains "silo" and also text that contains "02" and also text that does not contain "aggr".
- "silo, 02, laggr, !01". Matches text that contains "silo" and also text that contains "02" and also text that does not contain "aggr" and also text that does not contain "01".
- "^s\*i\*l\*o\$". Matches text that contains the letter "s", "i", "l", "o", in that order. Other letters might lie between these letters. For example "sXiXIXo" would match.
- "!^s\*i\*l\*o\$". Matches all text that does not that contains the letter "s", "i", "l", "o", in that order. Other letters might lie between these letters. For example "sXiXIXo" would not match.
- "!vol&!silo". Matches text that does not contain "vol" AND also does not contain "silo". For example, "volume" would match, because it contains "vol" but not "silo".
- "!vol&02". Matches text that does not contain "vol" AND also contains "02". For example, "happy02" would match, because it does not contain "vol" and it does contain "02".
- "aggr,!vol&02". Matches text that contains "aggr" OR text that does not contain "vol" AND also contains "02".
- "aggr,!vol&!infra". Matches text that contains "aggr" OR text that does not contain "vol" AND does not contain "infra".
- "\*". Matches all text.
- "!\*". Matches null values, typically represented as "--" in most pages.
- "silo". Matches text that contains "silo".
- "!silo". Matches text that does not contain "silo".
- "!^silo\$". Matches all text except the text "silo", with no characters before or after.
- "-3,7-8,11,24,50-". Matches numbers 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 11, 24, 50, and all numbers greater than 50.

- "-3,7-8,11,24,50-,a". Matches numbers 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 11, 24, 50, and all numbers greater than 50, and text that includes "a".
- "?n". Matches text that contains any single character and the character "n". For example, this string would match "an", "bn", "cn", "1 n", and "2 n".
- "n\*SAN". Matches text the contains "n", zero or any number of any characters and then "SAN". For example, the string would match "nSAN", and "nhamburgerSAN".
- "^?n\*SAN\$". Matches text that begins with any single character, is following by "n", and then zero or any number of any characters, and ends in "SAN".

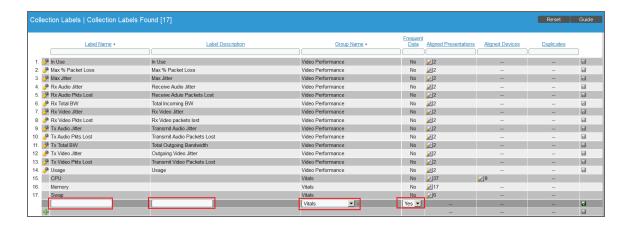
# Creating a Collection Group

You cannot create a Collection Group separately from creating a Collection Label. When you create a Collection Label, you can specify a new Collection Group or specify an existing Collection Group. If you specify a new Collection Group, the ScienceLogic platform saves the new Collection Group when it saves the new Collection Label.

# Creating a Collection Label

You can create a new Collection Label from the **Collection Labels** page (System > Manage > Collection Labels). To do so:

- 1. Go to the **Collection Labels** page (System > Manage > Collection Labels).
- 2. Select the green plus-sign in the lower left of the page.



- 3. Enter values in the following columns:
  - Label Name. Name of the Collection Label. This field is required.
  - Label Description. Description of the Collection Label. This field is optional.

- **Group Name**. Collection Group to align with the Collection Label. You can select from a list of existing Collection Groups or enter the name of a new Collection Group. This field is required.
- Frequent Data. Specifies whether frequently rolled up data is calculated for the Collection Label. If the Collection Label will include data that is collected every five minutes or more frequently, and you require that dashboard data be updated every 15 minutes or 20 minutes, select Yes in this field. This data is available immediately for use in a collection label.
- Save icon (■). Select this icon to save your new Collection Label.
- 4. The new Collection Label appears in the page.

### What is Normalization?

Normalization and roll-up are the processes by which the ScienceLogic platform manages collected performance data for display and storage.

- Raw data is the data exactly as it was collected from a device or application.
- **Normalized** and **rolled up** data is data for which the platform has performed calculations, usually averaging raw data over a period of time.

**Dynamic Applications** can collect raw performance data from a device at the following intervals:

- 1 minute
- 2 minutes
- 3 minutes
- 5 minutes
- 10 minutes
- 15 minutes
- 30 minutes
- 1 hour2 hours
- 6 hours
- 12 hours
- 24 hours

For performance Dynamic Applications, you specify this interval in the **Poll Frequency** field, in the **Properties Editor** page (System > Manage > Applications > Create or  $\nearrow$ )

The platform **rolls up** data so that reports with a larger timespan do not become difficult to view and to save storage space on the ScienceLogic database. When the platform rolls up data, the platform groups data into larger sets and calculates the average value for the larger set.

There are two types of roll up:

- Hourly. Way to group and average data that is collected at intervals of less than or equal to 60 minutes. The platform rolls up data and calculates an average hourly value for each metric. Hourly samples include samples from the top of the hour to the end of the hour. For example, for an hourly rollup of data collected at 1-minute intervals between 1 am and 2 am, the first data point would be the one collected at 01:00:00 and ending at 01:59:00.
- **Daily**. Way to group and average all data. The platform rolls up data and calculates an average daily value for each metric. Daily samples include samples from the beginning of the day until the end of the day. For example, for a daily roll-up of data collected at 1-minute intervals, the first data point is collected at 00:00:00 and the last data point is collected at 23:59:00.

The platform rolls up raw performance data as follows:

Frequency of Raw Collection	Roll-up
Every 1 minute	60 minutes, 24 hours
Every 2 minutes	60 minutes, 24 hours
Every 3 minutes	60 minutes, 24 hours
Every 5 minutes	60 minutes, 24 hours
Every 10 minutes	60 minutes, 24 hours
Every 15 minutes	60 minutes, 24 hours
Every 30 minutes	60 minutes, 24 hours
Every 60	60 minutes, 24 hours
Every 120 minutes or longer	24 hours

Before the platformnormalizes date, EM7 transforms the data. To transform data, the platform:

- For bandwidth data and data from Dynamic Applications of type "Performance", the platform derives rates from counter metrics.
- The rate from counter metrics are expressed in units-per-polling\_interval. For example, rates for 5-minute collections are expressed as units-per-5-minutes.
- For data from Dynamic Applications of type "Performance", the platform evaluates presentation formulas. Counter metrics are first transformed into rates before evaluation.

**NOTE**: During the data transform steps, the platform does not directly roll up the raw data in the database tables.

When the platform rolls up data, the platform must *normalize* that data. To normalize data, the platform:

- groups and orders the data
- determines the sample size
- calculates count
- determines the maximum value
- determines the minimum value
- calulcates the mean value
- calculates the average value
- calculates the sum
- determines the standard deviation

**NOTE**: In the ScienceLogic platform, normalized data does not include polling sessions that were missed or skipped. So for normalized data, null values are not included when calculating sample size, maximum values, minimum values, or average values.

### Example

For example, suppose that **every five minutes**, the platform collects data about file system usage on the device named **my\_device**. When the platform normalizes and rolls up the collected data for file system usage for **my\_device**, the platform will:

- 1. Apply any necessary data transforms (mentioned above).
- 2. Repeat the following step for both hourly normalization and daily normalization:
- 3. If this is the first data point for an hourly normalization or a daily normalization, insert summary statistics for that one data point:
  - $\circ$  Sample size = 1
  - Average = value of new data point
  - Max = value of new data point
  - Min = value of new data point
  - Sum = value of new data point
  - Standard Deviation = 0
- 3. For all subsequent data points for an hourly normalization or a daily normalization, the ScienceLogic platform will update the summary statistics for the already existing data points in the data set (either hourly data set or daily data set).
- 4. If there are no gaps in collection, the summary statistics for hourly normalization will represent 12 data points, and the summary statistics for daily normalization will represent 288 data points.

# What are Duplicates and How Does the ScienceLogic Platform Manage Them?

Multiple presentation objects can be aligned with a single Collection Label. For example, suppose that a Dynamic Application includes a presentation object for "memory used", and another Dynamic Application includes a presentation object for "memory usage". Suppose that both of these presentation objects are aligned with the Collection Label named "Memory".

Suppose that one of the devices monitored by the ScienceLogic platform subscribes to both of those Dynamic Applications (for example, a Dynamic Application that monitors OEM hardware and a Dynamic Application that monitors the operating system). For that device, the ScienceLogic platform will collect values for both presentation objects that are aligned with the Collection Label named "Memory".

When this situation arises, the platform uses precedence and some internal rules to assign a single presentation object to the Collection Label for that device. However, you can manually assign a different presentation object to the Collection Label after discovery.

If a device has a duplicate, the platform uses the following rules to determine which presentation object to use for that Collection Label for that device:

- If a manually defined Collection Label-presentation object pair exists, use that pair.
- If the platform cannot find a manually defined Collection Label-presentation object pair, use the pair with the lowest *precedence* value.
- If the platform finds more than one Collection Label-presentation object pair with the same precedence value, the platform will create a pair using the presentation object with the lowest presentation ID.

# What is Precedence?

The ScienceLogic platform performs discovery (during initial discovery and during nightly updates) and aligns Dynamic Applications with devices. During discovery, the platform will also align Collection Labels with devices. For devices with *duplicates*, the platform evaluates *precedence* to automatically align a single presentation object with each Collection Label. For devices with duplicates, the platform assigns the Collection Label-presentation object pair with the lowest precedence value.

The ScienceLogic platform evaluates precedence:

• During nightly update discovery.

**NOTE**: If you have manually defined a Collection Label-presentation object pair for one or more devices, nightly update discovery will not change the Collection Label-presentation object pair.

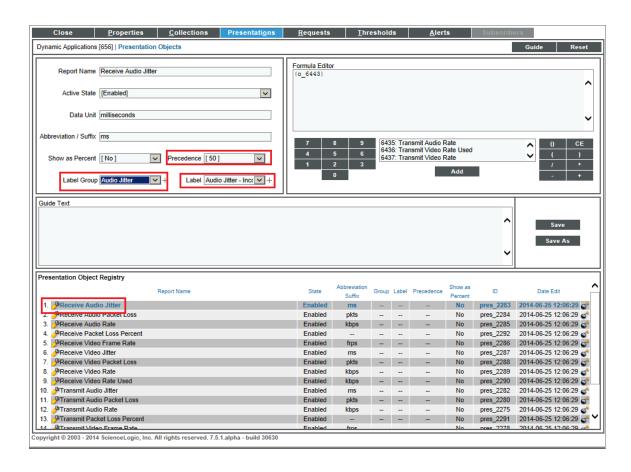
- When a Dynamic Application is manually aligned with a device in the **Dynamic Application Collections** page
- When devices are manually merged.

# Aligning a Presentation Object with a Collection Label

You can align one or more presentation objects with a collection label. This allows the ScienceLogic platform to compare and display reports on data from multiple performance Dynamic Applications.

To align a presentation object with a collection label:

- 1. Go to the **Dynamic Applications Manager** page (System > Manage > Applications).
- 2. Find the performance Dynamic Application that contains the presentation object you are interested in. Select the wrench icon ( ) for that Dynamic Application.
- 3. In the Dynamic Application panel, select the **Presentations** tab.
- 4. In the **Presentation Objects** page, go to the **Presentation Object Registry** pane and find the presentation object you want to align with a Collection Label. Select the wrench icon ( ) for that presentation object.

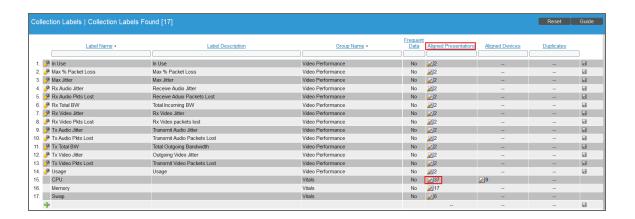


- 5. The top pane is populated with values from the selected presentation object. Select values for the following fields:
  - **Precedence**. Set the global precedence for this Collection Label-presentation object pair. For more information, see the section on **Precedence**.
  - Label Group. Select from a list of existing Collection Groups or click on the plus-sign icon (\*) and enter the value for a new Collection Group. The current presentation object will be a member of the specified Collection Group.
  - Label. Select from a list of existing Collection Labels or click on the plus-sign icon (\*) and enter the value for a new Collection Label. The current presentation object will be aligned with the specified Collection Label.
- 6. When you generate reports on the selected Collection Label, this presentation object will be included in the report.

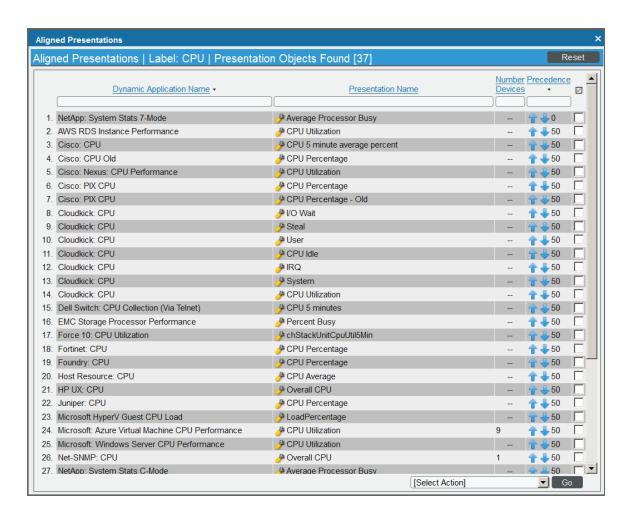
# Viewing and Managing the List of Presentation Objects Aligned with a Collection Label

From the **Collection Labels** page, you can view information about each Collection Label. For each Collection Label, you can view a list of presentation objects aligned with that Collection Label. To view this information:

1. Go to the **Collection Labels** page (System > Manage > Collection Labels).



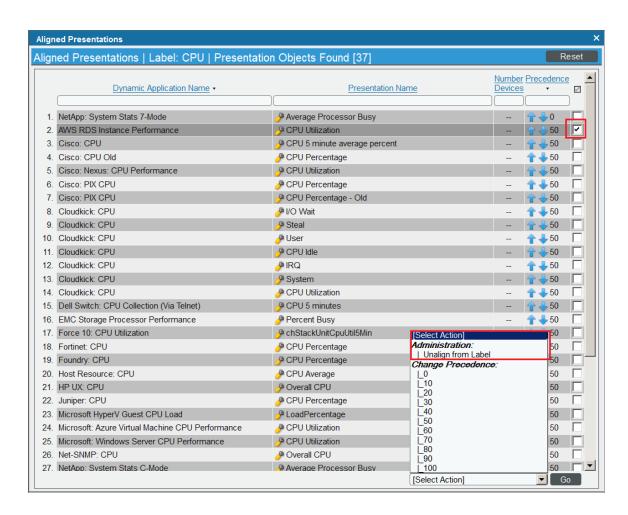
2. Find the Collection Label you are interested in. In the **Aligned Presentations** column, select the pencil icon ( **Aligned Presentations** modal page appears:



3. In the Aligned Presentations modal page, you can view information about the presentation objects aligned with the current Collection Label and perform actions to manage those presentation objects. You can also unalign a presentation object from a Collection Label and change the precedence for one or more Collection Label-presentation object pairs.

To globally unalign a presentation object from a Collection Label:

 In the Aligned Presentations modal page, find the presentation object that you want to unalign from the Collection Label and select its checkbox.



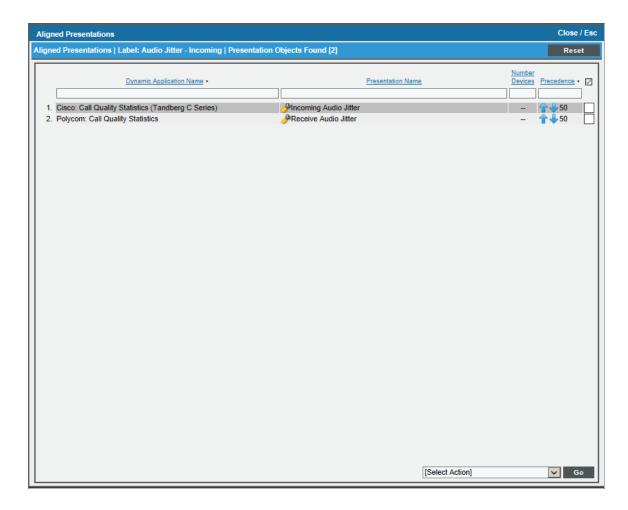
- 2. From the **Select Action** field in the lower right, select *Unalign from Label*. Select the Go button.
- 3. The selected presentation object will no longer be associated with the Collection Label.

For each Collection Label-presentation object pair, you can define precedence. For example, suppose that both the "Cisco: CPU" Dynamic Application and the "Host Resource: CPU" include a presentation object that is aligned with the **CPU** Collection Label. You can define precedence to specify priority for each presentation object associated with a Collection Label.

Collection Group / Collection Label	Presentation Object	Dynamic Application
Vitals / CPU	CPU Average	Host Resource: CPU
Vitals / CPI	CPU 5 minutes average percent	Cisco: CPU

To set the precedence for the Collection Label (in our example, "CPU"):

1. The **Aligned Presentations** modal page displays all the presentation objects associated with the selected Collection Label. By default, each presentation object has a precedence of 50.



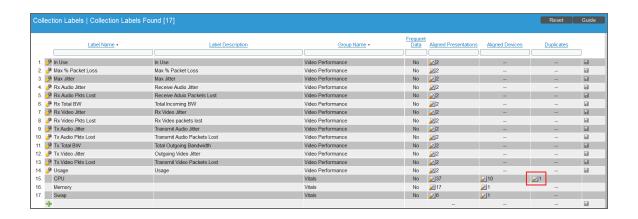
- 2. In the **Aligned Presentations** modal page, you can edit precedence in two ways:
  - In the **Precedence** column, use the up arrow and down arrow to change the value for a single presentation object. Repeat for each presentation object for which you want to edit precedence.
  - Select the checkbox of one or more presentation objects. In the Select Action field, select Change
     Precedence and a value. Select the [Go] button. Each selected presentation object will be assigned
     the new (and identical) precedence value.
- 3. Repeat steps 2-4 for each Presentation Object for which you want to edit the precedence value.

**NOTE**: The precedence values you define in the **Aligned Presentations** modal page override the precedence value you set per presentation object in the **Presentation Objects** page.

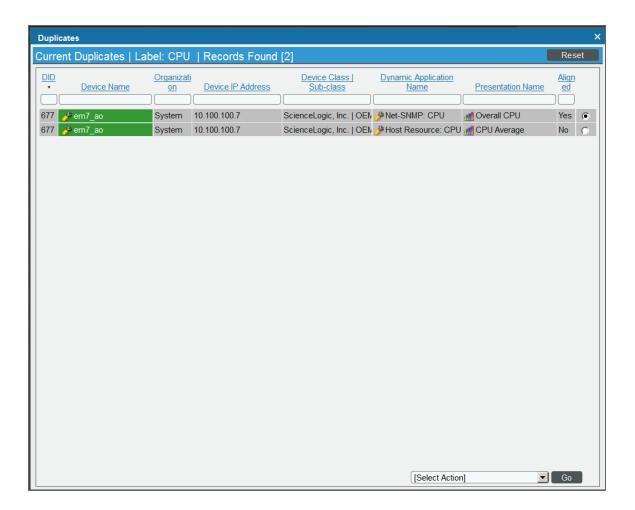
# Viewing and Editing Duplicate Presentation Objects by Collection Label

You can view a list of devices where duplicates occur, view how the ScienceLogic platform assigned the Collection Label-presentation object pair, and edit the Collection Label-presentation object pair for one or more devices. When you manually define a Collection Label-presentation object pair for a device, the platform will not edit or change that pair.

1. Go to the **Collection Labels** page (System > Manage > Collection Labels).



2. Find the Collection Label you are interested in. In the **Duplicates** column, select the pencil icon (**A**). The **Duplicates** modal page appears.

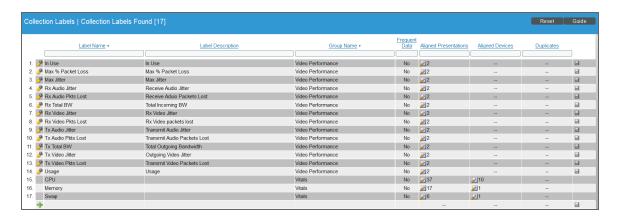


- 3. In the **Duplicates** modal page, you can view a list of devices for which there are multiple possible Collection Label-presentation object pairs. You can view which pair is currently assigned to the device.
- 4. To change the pair for a device, click on the pair's radio button.
- 5. Repeat step #4 for each device on which you want to edit the duplicate.
- 6. In the Select Action field (in the lower right), select Align Presentation for Device. Select the [Go] button.
- 7. Each edited device will now use the selected Collection Label-presentation object pair.

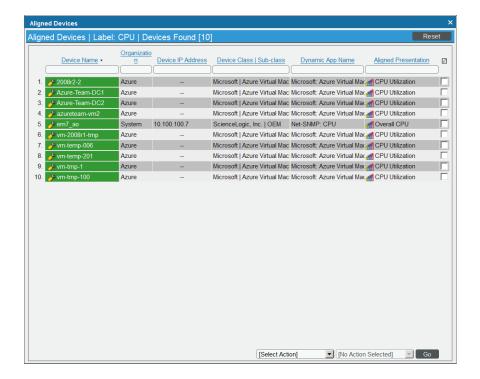
# Viewing and Managing the List of Devices Aligned with a Collection Label

From the **Collection Labels** page, you can view information about each Collection Label. For each Collection Label, you can view a list of devices from which the ScienceLogic platform is collecting values. To view this information:

1. Go to the **Collection Labels** page (System > Manage > Collection Labels).



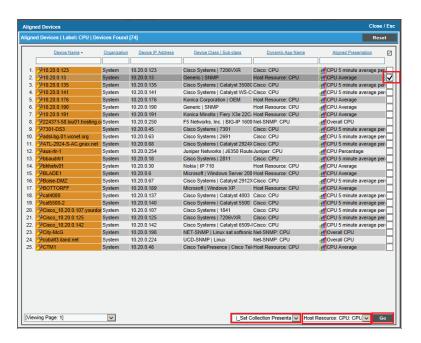
2. Find the Collection Label you are interested in. In the **Aligned Devices** column, select the pencil icon (**2**).



3. In the **Aligned Devices** modal page, you can view information about the devices that are aligned with the current Collection Label and perform actions to manage those devices.

For devices that include duplicates, you can reset the presentation object for one or more devices. When you manually define a Collection Label-presentation object pair for a device, the ScienceLogic platform will not edit or change that pair.

1. In the **Aligned Devices** modal page, select the checkbox for one or more devices for which you want to change the Collection Label-presentation object pair.

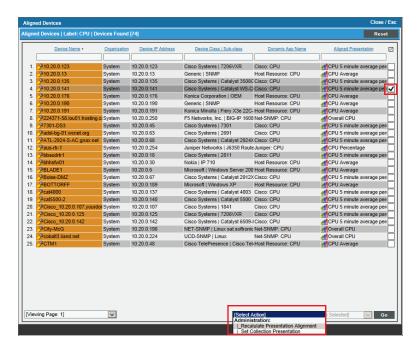


2. In the menus in the lower right, select **Set Collection Presentation** and then select the presentation object. Select the **[Go]** button.

For devices that include duplicates, you can clear all current settings, including manual settings. The ScienceLogic platform will then automatically evaluate the precedence for each possible presentation object and assign the Collection Label-presentation object pair with the lowest precedence.

To clear the current Collection Label-presentation object pair for one or more devices:

1. In the **Aligned Devices** modal page, select the checkbox for one or more devices for which you want to clear the aligned presentation object.



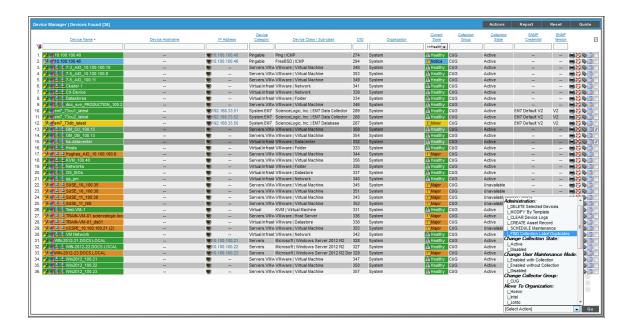
- 2. In the menus in the lower right, select **Recalculate Presentation Alignment**. Select the **[Go]** button.
- 3. The ScienceLogic platform will evaluate the precedence of each possible presentation object and assign the presentation object with the lowest precedence.

# Editing Duplicate Presentation Objects by Device

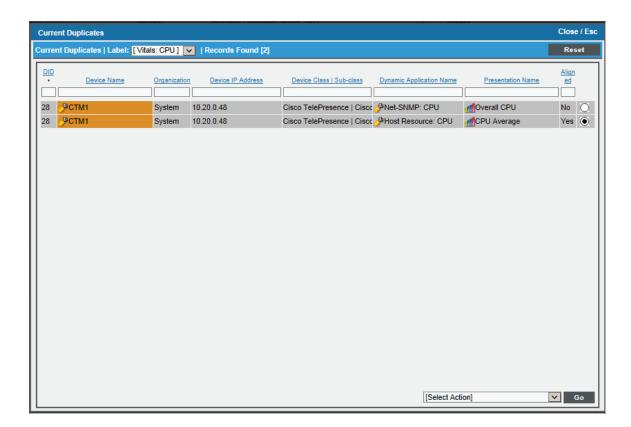
You can view a list of devices where duplicates occur, view how the ScienceLogic platform assigned the Collection Label-presentation object pair, and edit the Collection Label-presentation object pair for one or more selected devices. When you manually define a Collection Label-presentation object pair for a device, the platform will not edit or change that pair:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).

2. Select the checkbox for each device you are interested in.



- 3. If you want to view a list of duplicates for all possible devices, select the red check-box (☑) in the top row of the page. This selects all devices.
- 4. In the Select Action field (lower right), select FIND Collection Label Duplicates. Select the [Go] button.



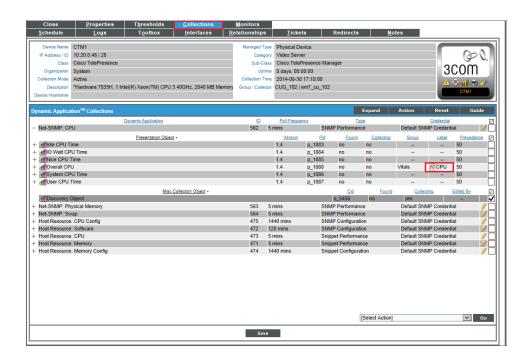
- 5. The **Current Duplicates** page is displayed. For each device, you can edit the presentation object that is aligned with a Collection Label.
  - To select a Collection Label, use the drop-down list in the upper left.
  - To change the aligned presentation object for one or more devices:
    - o Click on the radio button for the desired presentation object for the device.
    - For each additional device you want to edit, click on the radio button for the desired presentation object.
    - In the **Select Action** menu (lower right), select Align Presentation for Device. Select the **[Go]** button

## Editing Duplicate Presentation Objects for a Single Device

You can edit the Collection Label-presentation object pair for a single device. If a single device includes duplicate Collection Label-presentation object pairs, you can specify which one the ScienceLogic platform should use for that device.

To edit the Collection Label-presentation object pairs for a single device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Find the device you want to edit. Select its wrench icon ( ).
- 3. Select the [Collections] tab. In the Dynamic Application Collections page, click on the plus signs (+) to expand each Dynamic Application.

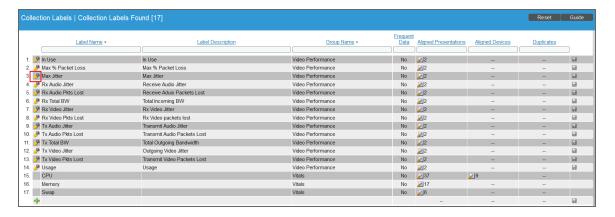


- 4. You will notice that some presentation objects include the chart icon in the **Label** column. These presentation objects are duplicates that are not currently aligned with a Collection Label. If you want to align one of these presentation objects with the Collection Label (instead of the current alignment), click on the chart icon.
- 5. You will be prompted before the ScienceLogic platform aligns the presentation object with the Collection Label. After approving, you will notice that a new presentation object now displays a chart icon in its **Label** column. This is because this presentation object is no longer associated with a Collection Label.

## Editing a Collection Label

You can edit a Collection Label from the **Collection Labels** page (System > Manage > Collection Labels). To do so:

1. Go to the **Collection Labels** page (System > Manage > Collection Labels).



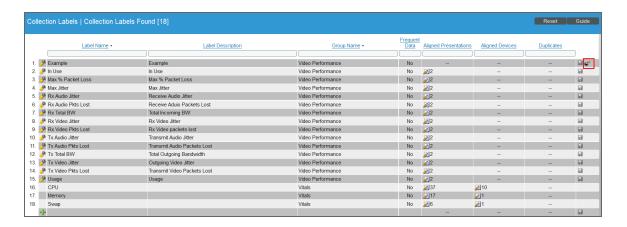
- 2. Find the Collection Label you want to edit. Select its wrench icon (🎤).
- 3. You can edit one or more of the following:
  - Label Name. Name of the Collection Label. This field is required.
  - Label Description. Description of the Collection Label. This field is optional.
  - Group Name. Collection Group to align with the Collection Label. You can select from a list of
    existing Collection Groups or enter the name of a new Collection Group. This field is required.
  - Frequent Data. Specifies whether frequently rolled up data is calculated for the Collection Label. If the Collection Label will include data that is collected every five minutes or more frequently, and you require that dashboard data be updated every 15 minutes or 20 minutes, select Yes in this field. This data is available immediately for use in a collection label.
  - Save icon (■). Select this icon to save your changes.

# Deleting a Collection Label

You can delete a Collection Label from the **Collection Labels** page (System > Manage > Collection Labels) only if the Collection Label has no **Aligned Presentations**. To delete a Collection Label:

NOTE: You can delete a Collection Label only if no presentation objects are aligned with that label.

1. Go to the **Collection Labels** page (System > Manage > Collection Labels).

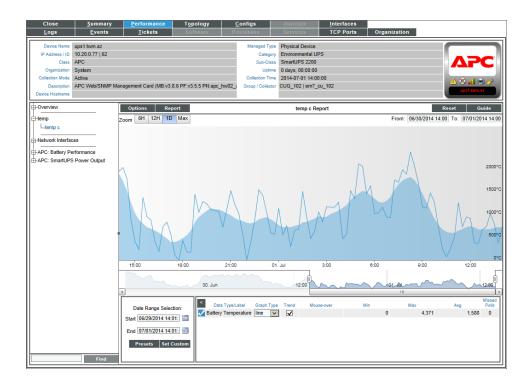


- 2. Find the Collection Label you want to delete.
- 3. Select its bomb icon ( ).
- 4. The Collection Label will be deleted from the ScienceLogic platform.

# Viewing Reports About Collection Labels on a Single Device

For each device in the ScienceLogic platform, the **Device Performance** page displays time-series graphs about the data collected from that device.

If a device subscribes to a Dynamic Application that includes Collection Labels, the platform will display the Collection Group in the left pane of the **Device Performance** page. You can expand the Collection Group and select a Collection Label.



The graph for a Collection Label displays collected values on the Y-axis and time on the X-axis.

# Viewing Dashboards About Collection Labels

You can use the following dashboard widgets to include data associated with Collection Labels in a dashboard:

- Multi-Series Performance Widget
- Leaderboard / Top-N Widget
- Gauge / Meter

For details on each widget, see the **Dashboards** manual.

# Chapter

**29** 

## **Device Thresholds and Data Retention**

#### Overview

The ScienceLogic platform allows users to define performance thresholds for devices. When these thresholds are exceeded, the platform generates an **event**. Events are messages that are triggered when a specific condition is met. For example, an event can signal that a CPU is at maximum capacity or that a device's hard drives are getting too full

These events have messages like:

- CPU usage exceeded threshold
- Physical Memory usage exceeded threshold
- Virtual Memory usage exceeded threshold
- File system usage exceeded (critical) threshold
- File system usage exceeded (major) threshold
- Bandwidth usage exceeded threshold

These events notify users when hardware is starting to reach its limits. This allows users to fix the problem before a catastrophic hardware or software failure occurs.

Users can define hardware thresholds in two ways:

- Users can define global hardware thresholds in the Global Threshold Settings page (System > Settings >
  Thresholds), in the Operating System Thresholds pane. These global thresholds apply to all hardware
  discovered by the ScienceLogic platform.
- 2. For a single device, users can override the global hardware thresholds in the **Global Threshold Settings** page (System > Settings > Thresholds). Users can do this in the **Device Thresholds** page.

This chapter describes how to define both types of hardware thresholds.

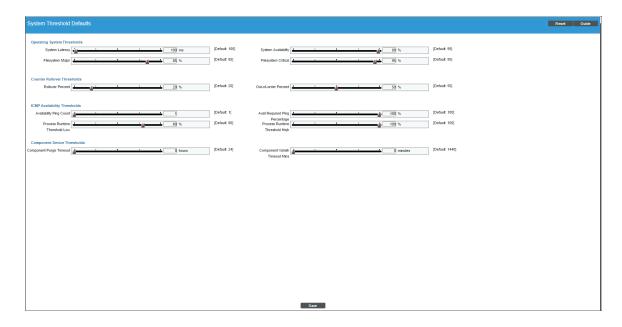
# Global Settings for Thresholds

The **System Threshold Defaults** page (System > Settings > Thresholds > System) allows you to define global thresholds for system latency, file system usage, counter rollovers, ICMP availability, and number of component devices.

These settings apply to all devices. However, you can override these system settings on a case-by-case basis. For example, you can define thresholds for a device's file systems in the **Device Thresholds** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > wrench icon > Thresholds). The settings you define for the specific device override the settings in the **System Threshold Defaults**page.

To edit the global settings for system thresholds:

1. Go to the **System Threshold Defaults** page (System > Settings > Thresholds > System).



- 2. In the **System Threshold Defaults** page, you can drag sliders to change to value of each field or edit a field manually. You can edit the value for one or more of the following fields:
  - Interface Inventory Timeout. Specifies the maximum amount of time that the discovery processes will spend polling a device for the list of interfaces. After the specified time, the ScienceLogic platform will stop polling the device, will not model the device, and will continue with discovery. The default value is 600,000 ms (10 minutes).
    - During initial discovery, initiated from the Discovery Session Editor page (System > Manage
       Discovery > Create), the ScienceLogic platform uses the value in this field if there is no differing value specified in the Discovery Session Editor page.

- During re-discovery (clicking the binocular icon ( ) in the Device Properties page), the
  ScienceLogic platform will use the value in this field if there no value is specified in the Device
  Thresholds page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > wrench icon > Thresholds) for the
  device.
- During nightly auto-discovery (run automatically by the ScienceLogic platform every night, to update device information), the platform uses the value in this field if no differing value is specified in the Device Thresholds page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > wrench icon > Thresholds) for a device.
- Maximum Allowed Interfaces. Specifies the maximum number of interfaces per device. If a device
  exceeds this number of interfaces, the ScienceLogic platform will stop scanning the device, will not
  model the device, and will continue with discovery. The default value is 10,000.
  - During initial discovery, initiated from the Discovery Session Editor page (System > Manage > Discovery > Create), the ScienceLogic platform uses the value in this field if there is no differing value specified in the Discovery Session Editor page.
  - During re-discovery (clicking the binocular icon ( ) in the Device Properties page), the
    ScienceLogic platform will use the value in this field if there is no differing value is specified in
    the Device Thresholds page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > wrench icon >
    Thresholds) for the device.
  - During nightly auto-discovery (run automatically by the ScienceLogic platform every night, to update device information), the platform uses the value in this field if no differing value is specified in the Device Thresholds page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager > wrench icon > Thresholds) for a device.
- System Latency. During polling, the platform initially pings monitored devices. The value in this field is the maximum number of milliseconds for the device to respond to the platform's ping (round-trip time divided by 2). The default value is 100 ms. When the latency threshold is exceeded, the platform generates an event for that device.
- System Availability. During polling, the platform monitors devices for availability. Availability means the device's ability to accept connections and data from the network. The value in this field is the percent availability required of each device. The default value is 99%. When a device falls below this level of availability, the platform generates an event for that device.

During polling, a device has two possible availability values:

- 100%. Device is up and running.
- 0%. Device is not accepting connections and data from the network.

**NOTE**: Component devices use a Dynamic Application collection object to measure availability. The ScienceLogic platform polls component devices for availability at the frequency defined in the Dynamic ApplicationFor details, see the chapter on *Monitoring Device Availability and Device Latency* in the **Device Management** manual.

• File System Major. Threshold that will trigger a "low disk space" event. The default threshold is 85%. When a device has used more disk space than the specified percentage, the platform will generate a "file system usage exceeded threshold" event with a status of "major".

• File System Critical. Threshold that will trigger a "low disk space" event. The default threshold is 95%. When a device has used more disk-space than the specified percentage, the platform will generate a "file system usage exceeded threshold" event with a status of "critical".

**NOTE**: If you hide a file system in the **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware), the platform does not generate events for that file system.

- Rollover Percent. For any collected data that uses a 32-bit counter, you can specify how the platform determines that the counter has "rolled over", that is, has reached its maximum value, is reset to zero, and restarts counting. When this happens, the collected values go from the maximum value to a lower value. However, there are multiple circumstances under which a counter value can go from a higher value to a lower value:
  - o Maximum value has been exceeded and counter was reset to zero.
  - Retrieved value was manually reset to zero on the external device.
  - Data was collected out-of-order, that is, due to a slowdown somewhere in the network, two counter values were stored out of sequence.

**NOTE**: For 64-bit counters, when the counter values go from a higher value to a lower value, the ScienceLogic platform assumes that the counter has been manually reset or that the two values were collected out of order. The ScienceLogic platform does not assume that the counter has rolled over.

The **Rollover Percent** field allows you to specify a threshold that indicates that a 32-bit counter has reached its maximum value and restarted counting. The default value is 20%. When the platform records a counter value that is lower than the previously collected value, the platform:

• Calculates the difference between the two counter values (the delta):

2<sup>32</sup> - Last Collected Value + Current Collected Value

- Examines the value of the Rollover Percent threshold. If the delta is less than the specified
  percentage of the maximum possible value (2<sup>32</sup>), the platform concludes that the 32-bit
  counter rolled over.
- For example, if you specified "25" in this field, the platform would determine if the delta is less than 25% of the maximum possible value. If the delta is less than 25% of the maximum possible value, the platform concludes that the 32-bit counter rolled over.
- When the platform determines a counter has rolled over, the platform uses the delta value when displaying the data point for this poll period.

**NOTE**: The *Rollover Percent* field applies only to 32-bit counters. If a 64-bit counter value goes from a higher value to a lower value, the change is treated as either a manual reset or an out-of-order collection.

- Out-of-order Percent. For any collected data that uses a counter, you can specify how the platform determines that data has been collected out of order. When this data is collected out of order, the collected values go from a higher value to a lower value. However, there are multiple circumstances under which a counter value can go from a higher value to a lower value:
  - o Maximum value has been exceeded and counter was reset to zero (for 32-bit counters only).
  - Data was collected out-of-order, that is, due to a slowdown somewhere in the network, two counter values were stored out of sequence.
  - o Retrieved value was manually reset to zero on the external device.

The **Out-of-order Percent** field allows you to specify a threshold that indicates that data has been collected out of order. The default value is 50%. When the platform records a counter value that is lower than the previously collected value and the platform has determined that the value is not a rollover, the platform:

- Compares the current value to the last collected value:
   current value / last collected value
- If the ratio of current value / last collected value is greater than the percent specified in the Outof-order Percent field, the platform concludes that the data was collected out of order.
- When the platform determines a data point has been collected out of order, the platform uses the following value as the current value of the data point:

last collected value - current collected value

**NOTE**: If a 32-bit counter value goes from the maximum value to a lower value, and the current collected value does not meet the criteria for a rollover AND the current collected value does not meet the criteria for out-of-order, the platform concludes that the 32-bit counter was manually reset to zero (0). The platform uses the current collected value for this data point.

NOTE: If a 64-bit counter value goes from a higher value to a lower value, and the current collected value does not meet the criteria for out-of-order, the platform concludes that the 64-bit counter was manually reset to zero (0). The platform uses the current collected value for this data point.

- Availability Ping Count. If you select ICMP in the Availability Port field in the Device Properties page (Registry > Devices > wrench icon) for a device, this field specifies the number of packets that should be sent during each availability check. The default value is "1".
- Avail Required Ping Percentage. If you select ICMP in the Availability Port field in the Device
   Properties page Registry > Devices > wrench icon) for a device, this field specifies the percentage of
   packets that must be returned during an availability check for the platform to consider the device
   available. The default value is "100%".
- Process Runtime Threshold Low. Threshold that will trigger a "process time exceeded" event. The
  default threshold is 80%. When a process has used more than 80% of its allowed Run Length, the
  ScienceLogic platform will generate a "process time exceeded threshold" event with a status of
  "minor".

Process Runtime Threshold High. Threshold that will trigger a "process time exceeded" event. The
default threshold is 100%. When a process has used 100% of its allowed Run Length, the
ScienceLogic platform will generate a "process time exceeded threshold" event with a status of
"major".

**NOTE**: Run Length is defined in the **Process Manager** page (System > Settings > Processes).

• Component Purge Timeout. If the ScienceLogic platform cannot retrieve information from a root device about a component device, this field specifies how many hours to wait until purging the component device. When a device is purged, the platform stops trying to collect data about the component device. The purged device will not appear in reports or views on in any pages in the user interface. When a device is purged, all of its configuration data and collected data is deleted from the Database Server. If you set this value to "O", component devices are never purged. You can override this threshold for a specific device in the Device Thresholds page for the device.

**NOTE**: When a device is set to "vanished", all children of that device are also set to "vanished". When a device is purged, all children of that device are also purged.

- Component Vanish Timeout Mins. If the ScienceLogic platform cannot retrieve information from a root device about a component device, this field specifies how many minutes to wait until putting the component device into "vanish" mode. When a device is set to "vanished", the platform stops trying to collect data about the component device. The vanished device will not appear in reports or views. The vanished device will appear in the Vanished Device Manager page. If you set this value to "0", component devices are never set to "vanished". You can override this threshold for a specific device in the Device Thresholds page for the device.
- 3. Click the [Save] button to save changes in this page.

### Device Thresholds

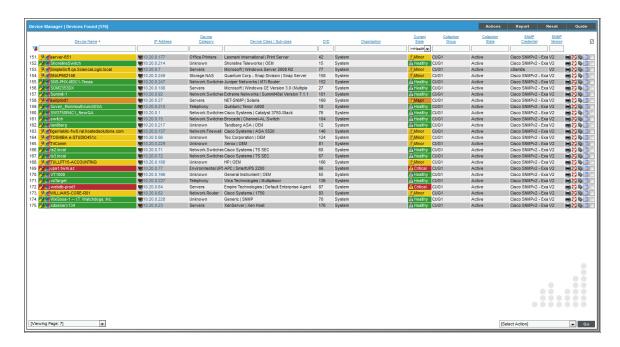
The **Device Thresholds** page allows you to define space and performance thresholds for a device. When performance thresholds are exceeded, the ScienceLogic platform will generate an event for the device. When space thresholds are exceeded, the platform will remove the oldest data from the database. For each of these thresholds, the platform defines a default value. You can edit the thresholds to meet your needs.

The thresholds defined for the device in the **Device Thresholds** page override the global thresholds defined in the **Global Threshold Settings** page (System > Settings > Thresholds) and the **Data Retention Settings** page (System > Settings > Data Retention).

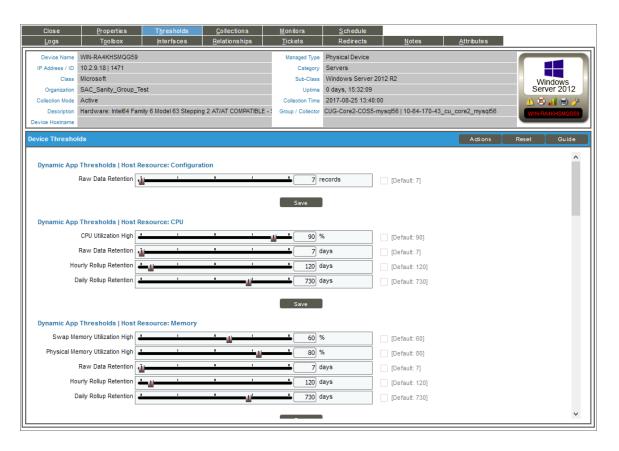
To define thresholds for a device:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).

2. On the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to define thresholds and click its wrench icon ().



3. In the **Device Administration** panel, click the **[Thresholds]** tab.



4. In the **Device Thresholds** page, you can define one or more of the following thresholds:

**TIP**: You might want to retain normalized data for longer periods of time and non-normalized data for shorter periods of time. This allows you to save space and still create historical reports.

• Dynamic Application Thresholds. If the device is a subscriber for one or more Dynamic Applications, this page can include threshold objects from those Dynamic Applications. By default, each threshold object will have the default value as defined in its Dynamic Application. However, in the Device Thresholds page you can define a threshold value specifically for the current device. You can define a custom value for each threshold object, and the ScienceLogic platform will use that custom value when evaluating Dynamic Application alerts for this device. The following data retention thresholds always appear for Dynamic Applications of type performance:

**NOTE**: To return a threshold to the default value as defined in its Dynamic Application, select the **Restore Default** checkbox.

- Raw Data Retention. Number of days to retain raw performance data collected from the device
  using this Dynamic Application. Raw data that is older than the specified number of days is
  automatically deleted. The default value is defined in the **Data Retention Settings** page (System
  > Settings > Data Retention).
- Hourly Rollup Performance Data. Number of days to retain hourly normalized data for this Dynamic Application. Hourly normalized data that is older than the specified number of days is automatically deleted. The default value is defined in the **Data Retention Settings** page (System > Settings > Data Retention).
- Daily Rollup Performance Data. Number of days to retain daily normalized data for this Dynamic Application. Daily normalized data that is older than the specified number of days is automatically deleted. The default value is defined in the **Data Retention Settings** page (System > Settings > Data Retention).
- Interface Inventory Thresholds. When a device has a large number of interfaces, these settings prevent the ScienceLogic platform from consuming too many resources during re-discovery (clicking the binocular icon ( ) in the Device Properties page) and during auto-discovery (run automatically by the platform every night, to update device information).

**NOTE**: To return a threshold to the default value as defined in the **Global Threshold Settings** page (System > Settings > Thresholds), select the **Restore Default** checkbox.

o Interface Inventory Timeout. Specifies the maximum amount of time that the discovery processes will spend polling a device for the list of interfaces. After the specified time, the ScienceLogic platform will stop scanning the device, will not update the device, and will continue with discovery. This setting is used during re-discovery (clicking the binoculars icon (44)) in the Device Properties page) and during nightly auto-discovery (run automatically by the platform every night, to update device information). The default value is 600,000 ms (10 minutes).

- Maximum Allowed Interfaces. Specifies the maximum number of interfaces per device. If a device exceeds this number of interfaces, the ScienceLogic platform will stop scanning the device, will not update the device, and will continue with discovery. This setting is used during re-discovery (clicking the binoculars icon ( ) in the Device Properties page) and during nightly auto-discovery (run automatically by the platform every night, to update device information). The default value is 10,000.
- File System Thresholds. For each file system on the device that has been detected by the ScienceLogic platform, you can define two thresholds:

NOTE: To return a threshold to the default value as defined in the Global Threshold Settings page (System > Settings > Thresholds), select the *Restore Default* checkbox.

- Major. Threshold that will trigger a "low disk space" event. The default threshold is 85%. When a
  device has used more disk space than the specified percentage, the platform will generate a "file
  system usage exceeded threshold" event with a status of "major". To disable this threshold for the
  current device, set the threshold to 0% (zero percent). When you disable a threshold, the platform
  does not generate an event for the threshold.
- Critical. Threshold that will trigger a "low disk-space" event. The default threshold is 95%. When a
  device has used more disk space than the specified percentage, the platform will generate a "file
  system usage exceeded threshold" event with a status of "critical". To disable this threshold for
  the current device, set the threshold to 0% (zero percent). When you disable a threshold, the
  platform does not generate an event for the threshold.

**NOTE**: If you hide a file system in the **Device Hardware** page (Registry > Devices > Hardware), the platform does not monitor the thresholds on the file system and does not generate events for that file system.

• Operating System Thresholds. You can define the following two thresholds for the device. The thresholds defined for the device in this page override the global thresholds defined in the Global Threshold Settings page (System > Settings > Thresholds).

**NOTE**: To return a threshold to the default value as defined in the **Global Threshold Settings** page (System > Settings > Thresholds), select the **Restore Default** checkbox.

System Latency. Every five minutes, the platform polls monitored devices to determine latency. The value in this field is the maximum number of milliseconds for the device to respond to the platform's poll (round-trip time divided by two). The default threshold value is 100ms. When the latency threshold is exceeded, the platform generates an event ("network latency exceeded threshold") for that device. To disable this threshold for the current device, set the threshold to 0 (zero) milliseconds. When you disable a threshold, the platform does not generate an event for the threshold.

System Availability. Every five minutes, the platform polls devices for availability. The default
threshold value is 99%. Availability means the device's ability to accept connections and data from
the network. The value in this field is the percent availability required of each device. When a
device falls below this level of availability, the platform generates an event for that device.

For availability collection, a device has two possible availability values:

- 100%. Device is up and running.
- 0%. Device is not accepting connections and data from the network.

However, you might see values other than 100 or 0 in an availability report. If a report contains any other percentage, it is an average of multiple readings. For example, if the platform gathered five readings and during one of those readings a device was unavailable, the average would be 80% (100 + 100 + 100 + 100 + 0 = 400; 400/5 = 80).

NOTE: Component Devices use a Dynamic Application collection object to measure availability. The platform polls component devices for availability at the frequency defined in the Dynamic Application. For details, see the description of the Component Identifier field in the Collection Objects page. For details, see the chapter on monitoring availability of component devices.

• **Data Retention Thresholds**. These thresholds specify how long the ScienceLogic platform will store data collected from the device. The thresholds defined for the device on this page override the global thresholds defined in the **Data Retention Settings** page (System > Settings > Data Retention).

**NOTE**: To return a threshold to the default value as defined in the **Global Threshold Settings** page (System > Settings > Thresholds), select the **Restore Default** checkbox.

- Device Logs Max. Maximum number of records to store in the device log. The default value is 50,000 entries. When this number is exceeded, the oldest entries will be removed.
- Device Logs Age. Number of days to retain device logs. Log records that are older than the specified number of days are automatically removed. The default value is 90 days.
- Bandwidth Data. Number of days to retain bandwidth data and CBQoS data collected from each interface on a device. Bandwidth data that is older than the specified number of days is automatically removed. The default value is 270 days.
- Daily Rollup Bandwidth Data. Number of days to retain daily normalized data and daily normalized CBQoS data for each interface on the device. Daily normalized data that is older than the specified number of days is automatically deleted. The default value is defined in the **Data Retention** Settings page.
- Hourly Rollup Bandwidth Data. Number of days to retain hourly normalized data and hourly normalized CBQoS data for each interface on a device. Hourly normalized data that is older than the specified number of days is automatically deleted. The default value is defined in the **Data Retention Settings** page.

- Raw Performance Data. Number of days to retain performance data collected from the device. This setting applies to availability statistics, latency statistics, file system statistics, statistics generated by monitoring policies, and Performance Dynamic Applications for which a specific Raw Data Retention setting has not been defined. Performance data that is older than the specified number of days is automatically deleted. The default value is defined in the Data Retention Settings page.
- Daily Rollup Performance Data. Number of days to retain daily normalized performance data for
  the device. This setting applies to daily normalized availability data, normalized latency data,
  normalized file system data, normalized data for monitoring policy statistics, and normalized data
  for Performance Dynamic Applications for which a specific Daily Rollup Retention setting has not
  been defined. Daily normalized performance data that is older than the specified number of days is
  automatically deleted. The default value is defined in the Data Retention Settings page.
- Hourly Rollup Performance Data. Number of days to retain hourly normalized performance data for the device. This setting applies to hourly normalized availability data, normalized latency data, normalized file system data, normalized data for monitoring policy statistics, and normalized data for Performance Dynamic Applications for which a specific Hourly Rollup Retention setting has not been defined. Hourly normalized performance data that is older than the specified number of days is automatically deleted. The default value is defined in the Data Retention Settings page.
- Raw Journal Data. Number of days to retain raw collected data from Dynamic Applications of type "journal". The default value is defined in the **Data Retention Settings** page.
- Crunched Journal Data. Number of days to retain data that has been processed using the
  presentation objects in Dynamic Applications of type "journal". The default value is defined in the
  Data Retention Settings page.
- Configuration Data. Number of days to retain data from Dynamic Applications of type "configuration". The default value is defined in the **Data Retention Settings** page.

**NOTE**: In the ScienceLogic platform, normalized data does not include polling sessions that were missed or skipped. So for normalized data, null values are not included when calculating maximum values, minimum values, or average values.

**TIP**: You might want to retain normalized data for longer periods of time and non-normalized data for shorter periods of time. This allows you to save space and still create historical reports.

• Counter Rollover Thresholds. You can define the following two thresholds for the counters on the device. The thresholds defined for the device in this page override the global thresholds defined in the Global Threshold Settings page (System > Settings > Thresholds).

**NOTE**: To return a threshold to the default value as defined in the **Global Threshold Settings** page (System > Settings > Thresholds), select the **Restore Default** checkbox.

Rollover Percent. For any collected data that uses a 32-bit counter, you can specify how the
platform determines that the counter has "rolled over", that is, has reached its maximum value, is
reset to zero, and restarts counting. When this happens, the collected values go from the maximum
value to a lower value. However, there are multiple circumstances under which a 32-bit counter
value can go from a higher value to a lower value:

NOTE: For 64-bit counters, when the counter values go from a higher value to a lower value, the ScienceLogic platform assumes that the counter has been manually reset or that the two values were collected out of order. The ScienceLogic platform does not assume that the counter has rolled over.

- Maximum value has been exceeded and counter was reset to zero.
- Data was collected out-of-order, that is, due to a slowdown somewhere in the network, two counter values were stored out of sequence.
- Retrieved value was manually reset to zero on the external device.

The *Rollover Percent* field allows you to specify a threshold that indicates that a 32-bit counter has reached its maximum value and restarted counting. The default value is 20%. When the platform records a counter value from a 32-bit counter that is lower than the previously collected value, the platform:

■ calculates the difference between the two counter values (the delta):

```
maximum value (either 2^{32}) - Last Collected Value + Current Collected Value
```

- Examines the value of the *Rollover Percent* threshold. If the delta is less than the specified percentage of the maximum possible value (either 2<sup>32</sup>), the platform concludes that the counter rolled over.
- For example, if you specified "25" in this field, the platform would determine if the delta is less than 25% of the maximum possible value. If the delta is less than 25% of the maximum possible value, the platform concludes that the counter rolled over.
- When the platform determines a 32-bit counter has rolled over, the platform uses the delta value when displaying the data point for this poll period.

- Out-of-order Percent. For any collected data that uses a counter, you can specify how the platform
  determines that data has been collected out of order. When this data is collected out of order, the
  collected values go from a higher value to a lower value. However, there are multiple
  circumstances under which a counter value can go from a higher value to a lower value.
  - Maximum value has been exceeded and counter was reset to zero (for 32-bit counters only).
  - Data was collected out-of-order, that is, due to a slowdown somewhere in the network, two counter values were stored out of sequence.
  - Retrieved value was manually reset to zero on the external device.

The **Out-of-order Percent** field allows you to specify a threshold that indicates that data has been collected out of order. The default value is 50%. When the platform records a counter value that is lower than the previously collected value and the platform has determined that the value is not a rollover, the platform:

• compares the current value to the last collected value:

current value / last collected value

- If the ratio of current value / last collected value is greater than the percent specified in the Out-of-order Percent field, the platform concludes that the data was collected out of order.
- When the platform determines a data point has been collected out of order, the platform uses the following value as the current value of the data point:

last collected value - current collected value

**NOTE**: If a 32-bit counter value goes from the maximum value to a lower value, and the current collected value does not meet the criteria for a rollover AND the current collected value does not meet the criteria for out-of-order, the platform concludes that the 32-bit counter was manually reset to zero (0). The platform uses the current collected value for this data point.

NOTE: If a 64-bit counter value goes from a higher value to a lower value, and the current collected value does not meet the criteria for out-of-order, the platform concludes that the 64-bit counter was manually reset to zero (0). The platform uses the current collected value for this data point.

• ICMP Availability Thresholds. You can define the following availability thresholds for the device. The thresholds defined for the device in this page override the global thresholds defined in the Global Threshold Settings page (System > Settings > Thresholds).

**NOTE**: To return a threshold to the default value as defined in the **Global Threshold Settings** page (System > Settings > Thresholds), select the **Restore Default** checkbox.

- Availability Ping Count. If you selected ICMP in the Availability Port field in the Device Properties page, this field specifies the number of packets that should be sent during each availability check. If you selected ICMP in the Latency Port field in the Device Properties page, this field specifies the number of packets that should be sent during each latency check. The default value is "1".
- Avail Required Ping Percentage. If you selected ICMP in the Availability Port field in the Device
  Properties page, this field specifies the percentage of packets that must be returned during an
  availability check for the platform to consider the device available. The default value is "100%".
- Availability Packet Size. If you selected ICMP in the Availability Port field in the Device Properties page, this field specifies the size of each packet, in bytes, that is sent during each availability check. If you selected ICMP in the Latency Port field in the Device Properties page, this field specifies the size of each packet, in bytes, that is sent during each latency check. The default value is "56 bytes".
- Component Device Thresholds. You can define the following thresholds for component devices.

  The thresholds defined for the device in this page override the global thresholds defined in the Global Threshold Settings page (System > Settings > Thresholds).

**NOTE**: To return a threshold to the default value as defined in the **Global Threshold Settings** page (System > Settings > Thresholds), select the **Restore Default** checkbox.

- Component Vanish Timeout Mins. If the ScienceLogic platform cannot retrieve information from a root device about a component device, this field specifies how many minutes to wait until putting the component device into "vanish" mode. When a device is set to "vanished", the ScienceLogic platform stops trying to collect data from the component device. The vanished device will not appear in reports or views. The vanished device will appear in the Vanished Device Manager page. If you set this value to "0", the component device is never set to "vanished". For the current device, this setting overrides the Component Vanish Timeout in the Global Threshold Settings page.
- Component Purge Timeout. If the ScienceLogic platform cannot retrieve information from a root device about a component device, this field specifies how many hours to wait until purging the component device. When a device is purged, the ScienceLogic platform stops trying to collect data from the component device. The purged device will not appear in reports or views on in any pages in the user interface. When a device is purged, all of its configuration data and collected data is deleted from the Database Server. If you set this value to "O", the component device is never purged. For the current device, this setting overrides the Component Purge Timeout in the Global Threshold Settings page.

**NOTE**: When a device is set to "vanished", all children of that device are also set to "vanished". When a device is purged, all children of that device are also purged.

5. Click the [Save] button to save your changes.

# Chapter

30

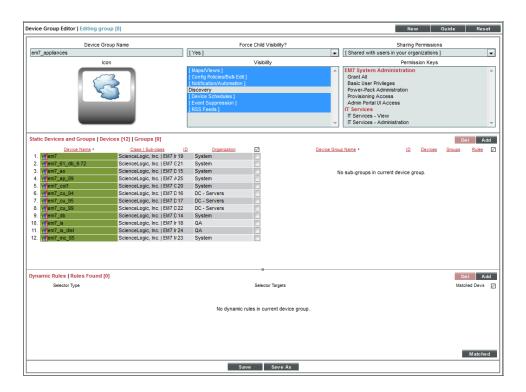
# Bulk Management with Device Groups and Device Templates

# Overview

This chapter provides an overview of the device groups and device template features. For more information on how to use and manage device groups and device templates, see the **Device Groups & Device Templates** manual.

# What is a Device Group?

A device group is a group of multiple devices.



#### Device groups allow you to:

- Use device configuration templates to perform initial configuration for multiple devices simultaneously.
- Use device configuration templates to make changes to the configuration for multiple devices simultaneously.
- In the [Views] tab, view each device group and the sub-groups and devices within each device group.
- Schedule maintenance and downtime for multiple devices simultaneously.
- Suppress events on multiple devices simultaneously.
- Include the device group in an automation policy. An automation policy allows you to trigger an automatic action if specified criteria are met on all the devices in the device group.

A device can belong to multiple device groups. For example, suppose the ScienceLogic platform discovered a server. Suppose this server hosts a corporate website that you want to monitor with a web-content policy. Suppose this server also hosts a MySQL database that you want to monitor with a Dynamic Application for MySQL. You could make this server a member of two device groups, one device group for web servers and another device group for MySQL databases. You could then use a device configuration template to apply a web-content policy to all devices in the device group for web servers and another device configuration template to apply a Dynamic Application for MySQL to all devices in the device group for MySQL servers.

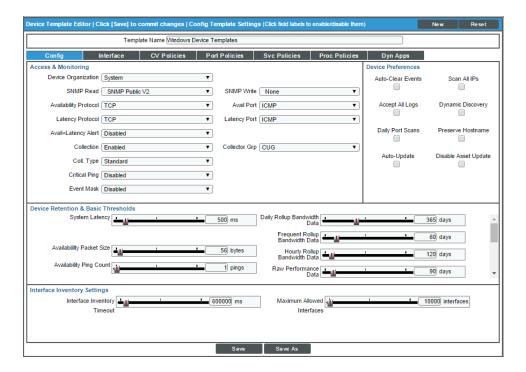
You can add devices to a device group either explicitly or dynamically.

- You can create **static device groups**, where you explicitly assign one or more devices to a device group.
- You can create *dynamic device groups*, where you define *rules* for the device group. Each device that meets the criteria in the rule is automatically included in the device group. For example, suppose that you define a rule that specifies "include all devices in the *System* organization, with an IP address that starts with '10.100.100' ". The ScienceLogic platform would automatically assign all devices from the *System* organization with an IP of "10.100.100.\*" to the new device group. When a new device is added to the *System* organization with an IP that begins with "10.100.100.\*", that device will also be included in the device group. If a device with an IP that starts with "10.100.100.\*" is removed from the *System* organization, that device will also be removed from the device group.
- You can create a device group that includes both explicitly assigned devices and also includes a dynamic
  rule. This device group will include both the explicitly assigned devices and all devices that meet the criteria
  in the dynamic rule.

The IT Services feature in the ScienceLogic platform uses device groups to define an IT Service. An IT Service contains sets of rules that define the state of that IT Service based on the state of the devices within the device group. For example, if you created an IT Service that represents the state of your Email service, the associated device group might contain your DNS Servers, Exchange Servers, and Virtual Devices that are associated with Email Round-Trip Policies. To learn more about IT Services, see the *IT Services* manual.

# What is a Device Template?

**Device templates** allow you to save a device configuration, apply it to one or more devices, and re-use the same configuration over and over again.



A device template contains the following tabs and settings:

- [Config] tab. Contains all the fields in the Device Properties page (except device name and device IP) and all the fields in the Device Thresholds page. When you apply a device template to a device group or selected devices, you do not have to manually define any settings in the Device Properties page or the Device Thresholds page for the devices that use the template. All the devices that use the template will inherit the field values from the device template.
- [Interface] tab. Contains all the fields in the Interface Properties page that define how the ScienceLogic platform will monitor one or more network interfaces and the thresholds for those network interfaces. When you apply a device template to a device group or selected devices, you do not have to manually define any settings in the Interface Properties page for the devices that use the template. All the devices that use the template will inherit the field values from the device template.

- [CV Policies] tab. Specifies one or more web-content policies that can be applied to all devices that use the template. These web-content policies enable the ScienceLogic platform to monitor a website. The ScienceLogic platform will periodically check the website for specified content. If the content cannot be found on the website, the platform will generate an event. When you apply a device template to a device, you do not have to manually define any web-content and availability policies in the Monitoring Policies page for the devices. All the devices that use the template will inherit the web-content policies from the device template; the platform will automatically create these web-content policies for each device that uses the template.
- [Port Policies] tab. Specifies one or more TCP/IP Port policies that can be applied to all member devices. These TCP/IP Port policies tell the ScienceLogic platform to monitor a specified port for availability every five minutes. Availability refers to the port's ability to accept connections and data. When you apply a device template to a device group, you do not have to manually define any TCP/IP port policies in the Monitoring Policies page for the member devices. All the devices in the device group will inherit the TCP/IP port policies from the device template; the platform will automatically create these port policies for each device that uses the template.
- [Svc Policies] tab. Specifies one or more Windows service policies that can be applied to devices that use the template. These Windows services policies tell the ScienceLogic platform to monitor the device and look for the specified service. You can define a service policy so that the platform monitors whether or not the service is running and then performs an action (starts, pauses, or restarts the service, reboots or shuts down the device, triggers the execution of a remote script or program). When you apply a device template to devices, you do not have to manually define any Windows service policies in the Monitoring Policies page for those devices. All the devices that use the template will inherit the Windows service policies from the device template; the platform will automatically create these Windows service policies for each device that uses the template.

NOTE: In addition to using a Windows Service policy, the ScienceLogic platform includes a PowerPack called "Windows Restart Automatic Services". This PowerPack includes a Dynamic Application that monitors Windows Services with a mode of "Automatic". This PowerPack also includes two events and a Run Book policy. If the Dynamic Application reports that a Windows Service with a mode of "Automatic" has stopped running, the ScienceLogic platform generates an event and the Run Book policy automatically restarts the Windows Service.

• [Proc Policies] tab. Specifies one or more Process policies that can be applied to devices that use the template. These Process policies tell the ScienceLogic platform to monitor the device and look for the process. You can define a process policy so that the platform monitors whether or not the process is running and optionally, how much memory a process can use and how many instances of a process can run simultaneously. When you apply a device template to devices, you do not have to manually define any Process policies in the Monitoring Policies page for those devices. All the devices that use the device template will inherit the Process policies from the device template; the platform will automatically create these process policies for each device that uses the template.

- [Dynamic Apps] tab. Specifies or more Dynamic Applications that can be aligned with devices that use the template. The ScienceLogic platform will use the specified Dynamic Applications to retrieve data from the devices that use the template. (Note that each device that uses the template might also be aligned with additional Dynamic Applications that have been aligned with the device in other ways: for example, from the automatic alignment that occurs during discovery.) When you apply a device template to devices, you do not manually have to align Dynamic Applications in the Dynamic Application Collections page for those devices. All devices that use the device template will be aligned with the Dynamic Applications specified in the device template.
  - If you select a Dynamic Application in a Device Template, and that Dynamic Application has
    associated thresholds, you can change one or more of those thresholds from the Device Template.
    The thresholds you specify in the Device Template will override the thresholds defined in the Dynamic
    Application. When you apply a device template to devices, you do not manually have to edit the
    Dynamic Application Thresholds in the Device Thresholds page for those devices. All devices that
    use the device template will inherit the Dynamic Application Thresholds specified in the device
    template.

NOTE: In a configuration template, you are not required to define all the fields in each tab. For example, you can choose to define only one or more fields in only one tab. When you apply the configuration template to devices, only those fields you defined in the template will be applied to the devices. For the remaining fields, the devices will retain their previous values or use the default values.

You can apply device templates to:

- One or more device groups.
- One or more devices, selected from the **Device Manager** page.
- all the devices discovered by a specific discovery session.

You can also apply device templates to automate the initial configuration of multiple devices. If you change a device template, you can use it to automate the editing of the configuration of multiple devices.

**Device templates are not dynamic**. That is, when you update or change a device template, no changes are made to any devices that have used the template in the past.

You can make temporary changes to a device template, apply the template to a devices, and then exit the device template without saving the temporary changes. In this way, you can apply settings to a device group but not permanently save the settings in the device template.

**NOTE**: If you make changes to a device template or simply apply the device template a second time, the ScienceLogic platform will not create duplicate policies on the member devices. However, if you edit a device template and make a change to a policy, the policy will be updated on the member devices.

# Chapter

31

## **Virtual Devices**

#### What is a Virtual Device?

A virtual device is a container for collected data. A virtual device can be used when you want to:

- Monitor a device or application that doesn't support TCP/IP, SNMP, or both. The device's data can be pushed to the ScienceLogic platform via another method (for example, email) and stored in a virtual device.
- Monitor multiple SNMP agents on a single device. In such a case, one of the SNMP agents (for example, a hardware agent) can be associated with the device and another SNMP agent (for example, an agent that monitors a software application) can be associated with a virtual device.
- Isolate and monitor specific parameters separately from their originating device. For example, you might want to monitor a database and keep its data separate from the hardware data you are collecting from the host device.

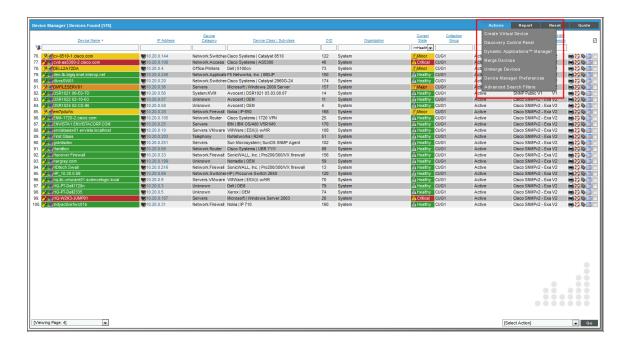
# Defining a Virtual Device

To create a virtual device, you must complete the following tasks:

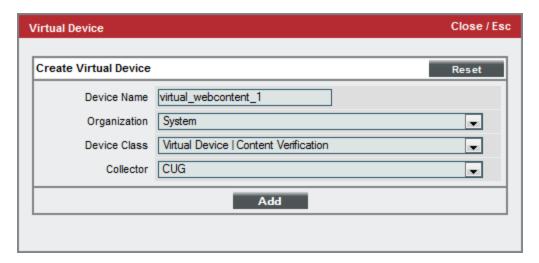
 Ensure that the ScienceLogic platform includes a device class for virtual devices. These device classes must have a device category of "virtual" and a collection type of "virtual". If the platform does not include such a device class, you must define one in the Device Class Editor page (System > Customize > Device Classes).

Virtual Devices 527

2. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).



- 3. From the [Actions] menu, select Create Virtual Device.
- 4. The Create Virtual Device modal page appears.



- 5. Supply a value in each of the following fields:
  - **Device Name**. Name of the virtual device. Can be any combination of alphanumeric characters, up to 32 characters in length.
  - Organization. Organization to associate with the virtual device. Select from the drop-down list of all organizations in the ScienceLogic platform.

528 Virtual Devices

- Device Class. The device class to associate with the virtual device. Select from the drop-down list of
  device classes. Only device classes with a device category of "virtual" and a collection type of "virtual"
  appear in the list.
- Collector. Specifies which instance of the platform will perform auto-discovery and gather data from
  the device. Can also specify a "virtual" poller. Select from the drop-down list of all collectors in the
  platform.
- 6. Select the [Add] button to save the new virtual device.
- 7. You must now define the data to store in the virtual device.

### Directing Data to a Virtual Device

After defining a virtual device, you must tell the ScienceLogic platform which data to store in the virtual device.

- For data that is pushed to the platform, go to the **Redirect Policy Editor** page for the virtual device (Registry > Devices > Device Manager, find virtual device, select its wrench icon [ ], and then select the [**Redirects**] tab). Define the log data you want to collect and associate with the virtual device.
- For data that is collected via SNMP or TCP/IP, go to the **Dynamic Application Collections** page for the virtual device (Registry > Devices > Device Manager, find the virtual device, select its wrench icon [\*], and then select the **[Collections]** tab). Manually associate a Dynamic Application with the device. This ensures that data collected by the Dynamic Application is stored in the virtual device.

### Redirecting Log Data to a Virtual Device

The **Redirect Policy Editor** is most useful for devices that don't support TCP/IP. For these devices, data can be pushed from the device to another device that does support TCP/IP. The ScienceLogic platform can then collect the data from the device that does support TCP/IP. You can create a virtual device in the platform to represent the device that doesn't support TCP/IP. You can then move the data from the TCP/IP device that is monitored by the platform to the virtual device in the platform. The **Redirect Policy Editor** page allows you to move data from the TCP/IP device to the virtual device. The **Redirect Policy Editor** page allows you to move log entries generated by inbound SNMP Trap, Syslog, or Email messages from the TCP/IP device to the virtual device.

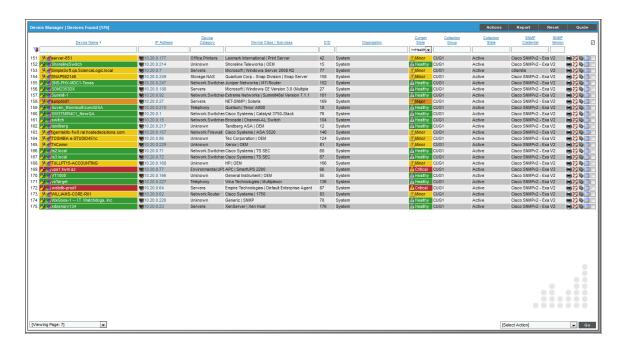
- Log entries that are redirected to a virtual device will no longer appear in the log files for the IP-based device.
- Log entries that are redirected to a virtual device are no longer associated with the IP address of the original device.
- Log entries with a **Source** of *Internal*, *Dynamic*, or *API* that match a redirect policy are not moved from the IP-based device to the current device.

To redirect data from a TCP/IP device to a virtual device:

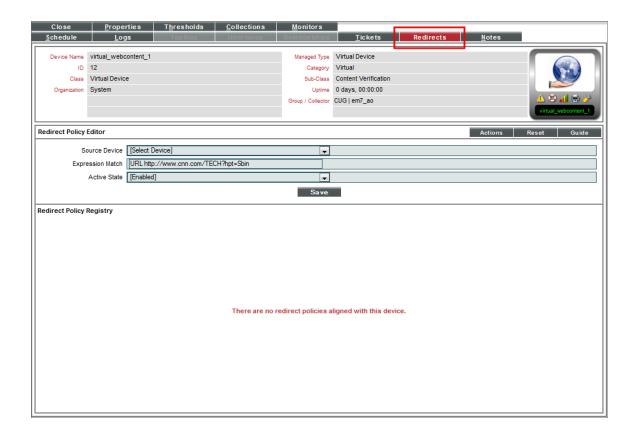
1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).

Virtual Devices 529

2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the virtual device to which you want to redirect data. Select its wrench icon (🌮).



3. In the **Device Administration** panel, select the **[Redirects]** tab.



- 4. To move SNMP Trap, Syslog, or Email log messages from an IP-based device to the current device, provide values in each of the following fields:
  - **Source Device**. This is the TCP/IP device from which you want to redirect log messages. Data from this device will be moved to the virtual device. Select from a drop-down list of all IP-based devices discovered by the platform.
  - Expression Match. A regular expression used to locate the log entry to redirect. Can be any combination of alphanumeric and multi-byte characters, up to 64 characters in length. The platform's expression matching is case-sensitive. For details on the regular-expression syntax allowed by the platform, see http://www.python.org/doc/howto/.
  - Active State. Specifies whether or not the platform will execute the redirection policy. The choices are:
    - o Enable. The platform will execute the redirection policy.
    - o Disable. The platform will not execute the redirection policy.
- 5. Select the [Save] button.
- 6. You can repeat Step 4 and Step 5 to redirect data to the virtual device from more than one device or from more than one type of log message.

#### Aligning a Dynamic Application with a Virtual Device

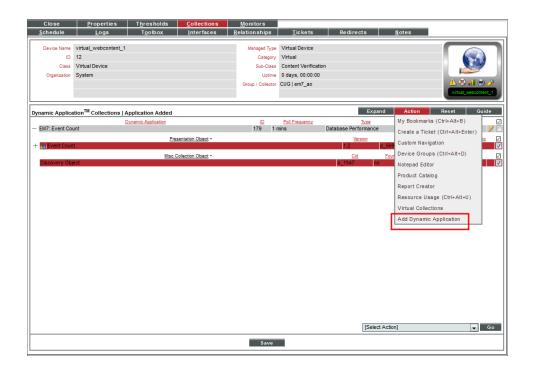
For data that is collected via Dynamic Application, you can associate that data with a virtual device. The data collected by the Dynamic Application will be stored in the virtual device.

**NOTE**: You cannot align SNMP Dynamic Applications with a virtual device. You can align all other types of Dynamic Applications with a virtual device.

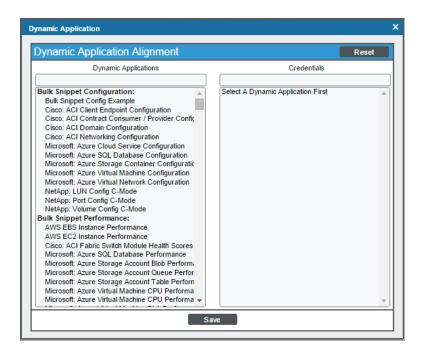
To manually associate a Dynamic Application with a device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device you want to associate with a Dynamic Application. Click its wrench icon ().
- 3. In the **Device Administration** panel, click the **[Collections]** tab.

4. In the **Dynamic Application Collections** page, click the **[Action]** menu and select *Add Dynamic Application*.



5. The **Dynamic Application Alignment** modal page appears.



- To associate an additional Dynamic Application with the device, highlight it in the *Dynamic Applications*field. You can filter the list of Dynamic Applications using the search field above the *Dynamic Applications*field.
- 7. After selection a Dynamic Application, you must select a credential. Select a credential in the *Credentials* field. You can filter the list of credentials using the search field above the *Credentials* field.

**NOTE**: Your organization membership(s) might affect the list of credentials you can see in the **Credentials** field.

- 8. Click the **[Save]** button in the **Dynamic Application Alignment** modal page to align the Dynamic Application and the credential to the device.
- 9. The ScienceLogic platform will associate the Dynamic Application with the device and immediately attempt to collect the data specified in the Dynamic Application using the selected credential.
- 10. After the first, immediate collection, the platform will collect the data at the frequency defined in the **Polling**Frequency field in the Application Configuration Editor page for the Dynamic Application.

# Chapter

**32** 

# **Customizing the User Interface for a Device**

### **Custom Navigation**

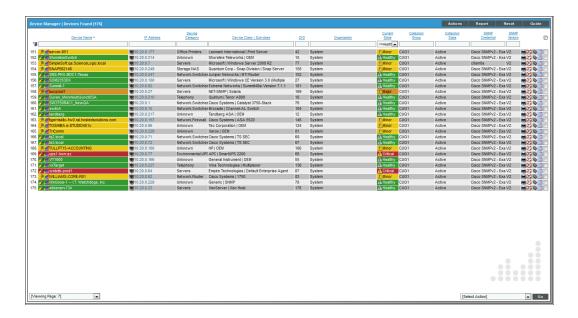
In the **Device Administration** panel you can access the **Custom Navigation** modal page.

The **Custom Navigation** modal page allows users to define custom tabs to include in the **Device Administration** panel for a specific device. Each custom tab includes one or more links. The links can be to internal pages in the ScienceLogic platform or external URLs and URls.

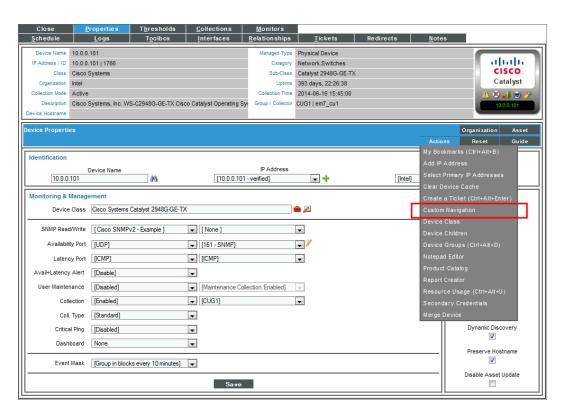
To define a custom tab for a device:

1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).

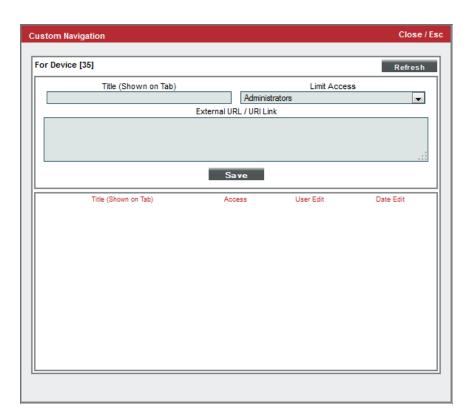
2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to create a custom tab. Select its wrench icon (🎤).



3. In any page in the **Device Administration** panel, select the **[Actions]** menu and choose *Custom Navigation*.



4. The Custom Navigation modal page appears.



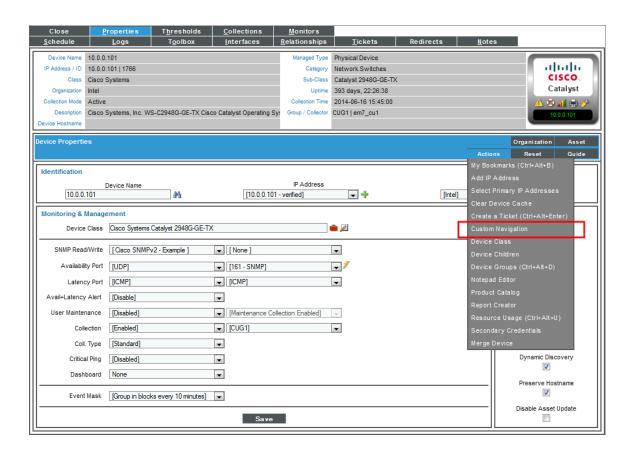
- 5. To create a custom tab in the **Device Administration** panel for the device, enter values in the following fields:
  - *Title (Shown on Tab)*. Enter a name for the tab. This name will appear on a new tab in the Device Administration tools for this device.
  - Limit Access. Users who will be allowed to access the custom tab, based on the type of user account. The choices are:
    - Administrators. Only users with account type "Administrator" are allowed to access this tab.
    - Users. Both users with account type "User" and users with account type "Administrator" are allowed to access this tab.
  - External URL / URl Link. The URL of the page that is displayed when a user selects the tab. The page can be an internal page in the ScienceLogic platform or an external web page. This field can contain any combination of alphanumeric characters, with a maximum length of 128 characters. Forward slash (/), underscore (\_), and question mark (?) are allowed.

### Editing a Custom Navigation tab

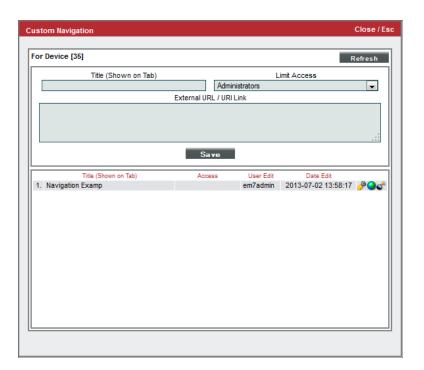
After you have defined one or more custom tabs in the **Device Administration** panel, each tab appears as an entry in the **Register** pane in the bottom of the **Custom Navigation** modal page.

To edit a custom tab:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. In the **Device Manager** page, find the device for which you want to edit a custom tab. Select its wrench icon ( ).
- 3. In any page in the **Device Administration** panel, select the **[Actions]** menu and choose **Custom Navigation**.



#### 4. The Custom Navigation modal page appears:



- 5. Go to the **Register** pane. Find the custom tab you want to edit. Select its wrench icon (🌯).
- 6. The fields in the top pane will be populated with values from the selected custom tab.
- 7. You can edit the values in one or more fields. Select the **[Save]** button to save your changes to the custom tab.
- 8. To delete the custom tab, go to the **Register** pane. Find the custom tab you want to edit. Select its bomb icon (©).

**NOTE**: for details on creating a custom Navigation Tab for all devices, see the manual *Customizing User Experience*.

# Chapter

33

# **Vanishing & Purging Devices**

#### Overview

If the platform cannot retrieve information about a component device for the amount of time specified in the **Component Vanish Timeout** field (in either the **Global Threshold Settings** page, the **Device Thresholds** page for the component device, or the **Device Thresholds** page for a device higher in the component tree), the platform sets the device to "vanished". When device is set to "vanished", the platform stops trying to collect data about the component device. The vanished device will not appear in reports or views. The vanished device will appear only in the **Vanished Device Manager** page. When a device is set to "vanished", all children of that device are also set to "vanished".

**NOTE**: A vanished device automatically returns to a monitored state when the root device reports the device in the latest inventory of the component device discovery application.

After a device is vanished and the platform cannot retrieve information about a component device for the amount of time specified in the *Component Purge Timeout* field (in either the *Global Threshold Settings* page, the *Device Thresholds* page for the component device, or the *Device Thresholds* page for a device higher in the component tree), the platform purges the device. Purged devices are completely removed from the platform and all associated data is deleted. When a device is purged, all children of that device are also purged.

If a component device is merged with a physical device:

- The device can be vanished only if the platform cannot retrieve information about a component device and the availability check for the physical device has determined that the device is unavailable.
- The **Component Vanish Timeout** and **Component Purge Timeout** settings for that device are compared to the time since the availability check for the physical device determined that the device is unavailable.

The **Vanished Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Vanished Device Manager) displays a list of all component devices that have "vanished" from the ScienceLogic platform.

**NOTE**: The vanishing and purging functions apply only to component devices and merged physical and component devices. Physical, IP-based devices and virtual devices that have not been merged with a component device are never vanished or purged.

# Setting Vanish and Purge Thresholds

Two threshold settings control the vanishing and purging behavior for component devices:

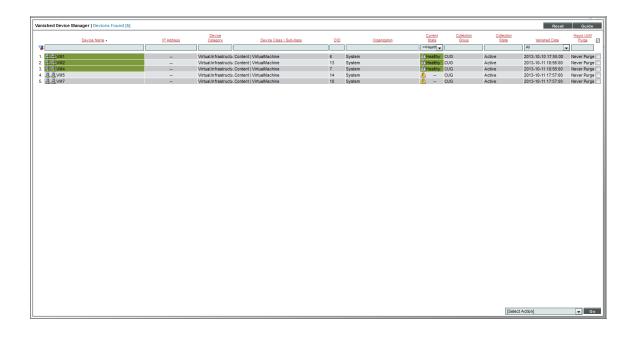
- Component Vanish Timeout. If the platform cannot retrieve information from a root device about a component device, this threshold specifies how many minutes to wait until putting the component device into "vanish" mode. When a device is set to "vanished", the platform stops trying to collect data from the component device. The vanished device will not appear in reports or views. The vanished device will appear in the Vanished Device Manager page. If this threshold is set to zero for a component device, the component device is never set to "vanished".
- Component Purge Timeout. If the platform cannot retrieve information from a root device about a component device, this field specifies how many hours to wait until purging the component device. When a device is purged, the platform stops trying to collect data from the component device. The purged device will not appear in reports or views in any pages in the user interface. When a device is purged, all of its configuration data and collected data is deleted from the platform. If this threshold is set to zero for a component device, the component device is never purged.

The platform uses the following logic to determine the threshold value for a given component device when determining whether the component should be vanished or purged:

- If the threshold has been configured in the Device Thresholds page for the component device, that threshold value is used.
- If the threshold has not been configured in the Device Thresholds page for the component device but the threshold has been configured in the Device Thresholds page for an ancestor of the component device (i.e., a component device in the component tree between the root device and the component device), that threshold value is used. If multiple ancestors have the threshold configured in the Device Thresholds page, the platform uses the threshold value for the component device that is closest to the root device (furthest up the tree).
- If the threshold has not been configured in the Device Thresholds page for the component device or an
  ancestor of the component device, the threshold value defined in the Global Threshold Settings page
  (System > Settings > Thresholds) is used.

# Viewing the List of Vanished Devices

The **Vanished Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Vanished Device Manager) displays the following about each device:



**TIP**: To sort the list of devices, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort by descending order, click the column heading again.

- Device Name. Name of the device. For devices running SNMP or with DNS entries, the named device is
  discovered automatically. For devices without SNMP or DNS entries, the device's IP address will appear in
  this field.
- IP Address. The IP address of the device.
- **Device Category**. The ScienceLogic category assigned to the device. Categories include servers, routers, switches, firewalls, printers, etc. The category is automatically assigned during discovery, at the same time as the Device Class/Sub-Class.
- Device Class/Sub-class. The manufacturer (device class) and type of device (sub-class). The Device Class/Sub-Class is automatically assigned during discovery, at the same time as the as Category.
- DID. Device ID. This is a unique number automatically assigned to the device by the ScienceLogic platform.
- Organization. The organization to which the device is assigned.
- Current State. Condition of the device, based upon events generated by the device. Condition can be one of the following:
  - o Critical. Device has a serious problem that requires immediate attention.

- Major. Device has a problem that requires immediate attention.
- Minor. Device has a less-serious problem.
- Notice. Device has an informational event associated with it.
- Healthy. Device is running with no problems.
- Collection Group. Specifies the collector group to which the device belongs. Collector Groups are defined in the Collector Group Management page (System > Settings > Collector Groups) and specify one or more ScienceLogic Data Collectors. An ScienceLogic Data Collector is the appliance that gathers data from the device. For All-In-One Appliances, this field displays only the built-in Collector Group (and any virtual Collector Groups).
- Collection State. Collection state can be one of the following:
  - Active. The platform is currently collecting data from the device.
  - o Disabled. The platform is not currently collecting data from the device.
  - Unavailable. The device is currently unavailable, so the platform cannot collect data from the device at this time.
  - Component Vanished. The component device has vanished. The platform cannot collect data from the device at this time.
- Vanished Date. Date on which the device was set to "vanished". If the ScienceLogic platform cannot retrieve information from a root device about component device for the amount of time specified in the Component Vanish Timeout field (defined globally in the Global Threshold Settings page or for an individual device in the Device Thresholds page), the platform sets the device to "vanished". When device is set to "vanished", the platform stops trying to collect data from the component device. The vanished device will not appear in reports or views. The vanished device will appear only in the Vanished Device Manager page.
- Hours Until Purge. Based on the threshold Component Purge Timeout, specifies the number of hours until the vanished device will be purged. When a device is purged, the ScienceLogic platform stops trying to collect data from the component device. The purged device will not appear in reports or views in any pages in the user interface. When a device is purged, all of its configuration data and collected data is deleted from the Database Server. You can define a global threshold for Component Purge Timeout in the Global Threshold Settings page. You can override the global threshold and define the Component Purge Timeout threshold for a single device in the device Device Thresholds page.

**NOTE**: To ensure that one or more devices are never purged, you can set one or more devices to never purge.

NOTE: To manually purge a device prior to the *Hours to Purge* time, you can manually purge selected devices.

**NOTE**: When a device is set to "vanished", all children of that device are also set to "vanished". When a device is purged, all children of that device are also purged.

### Filtering the List of Devices

You can filter the list on the **Custom Attribute Manager** page by one or more parameters. Only devices that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **Custom Attribute Manager** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Web Content Monitoring** page searches for devices that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use **special characters** to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

- Device Name. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Vanished Device Manager page will display only devices that have a matching device name.
- IP Address. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Vanished Device Manager page will display only devices that have a matching IP address.
- **Device Category**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Vanished Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching device category.
- Device Class. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Vanished Device Manager page will display only devices that have a matching device class.
- **DID**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Vanished Device Manager** page will display only devices that have a matching device ID.
- Organization. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Vanished Device Manager page will display only devices that have a matching organization.
- Current State. Specifies the device's current state. Only those devices that match all the previously selected fields and have the specified condition will be displayed. A device's condition is determined by its most severe, outstanding event. The choices are:
  - >=Healthy. Include devices with a condition of "Healthy" or greater. This will include all devices.
  - >=Notice. Include devices with a condition of "Notice" or greater. This means, include devices with a condition of "Notice", "Minor", "Major", and "Critical".
  - >=Minor. Include devices with a condition of "Minor" or greater. This means, include devices with a condition of "Minor", "Major", and "Critical".
  - >=Major. Include devices with a condition of "Major" or greater. This means, include devices with a condition of "Major" and "Critical".
  - >=Critical. Include devices with a condition of "Critical" or greater. This means, include devices with
    a condition of "Critical", because there is no "greater" condition.
- Collection Group. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Vanished Device
  Manager page will display only devices that have a matching Collector Group.

- Collection State. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Vanished Device Manager page will display only devices that have a matching Collection State.
- Vanished Date. Date on which the device vanished. The Vanished Device Manager page will display only devices that match the specified vanish date. The choices are:
  - All. Display all tickets that match the other filters.
  - o Last Minute. Display only tickets that have been created within the last minute.
  - Last Hour. Display only tickets that have been created within the last hour.
  - o Last Day. Display only tickets that have been created within the last day.
  - o Last Week. Display only tickets that have been created within the last week.
  - Last Month. Display only tickets that have been created within the last month.
  - o Last Year. Display only tickets that have been created within the last year.
- Hours Until Purge. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Vanished Device
   Manager page will display only devices that have a matching number of hours until the device is purged.

#### Using the Advanced Filters

In the **Vanished Device Manager** page, you can specify one or more parameters to filter the display of devices. Only devices that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed.

The Advanced Filter Tool allows you to make selections instead of manually typing in a string to filter on.

TIP: To select multiple entries in the Advanced Filter Tool, hold down the <Ctrl> key and left-click the entries.

- After selecting all filters, select the [Apply] button to apply the filters to the list of devices.
- To reset each field and apply no filters, select the [Reset] button.

To access the Advanced Filter Tool:

- 1. Go to the Vanished Device Manager page.
- 2. Click on the funnel icon (\*\*).
- 3. The Advanced Filter Tool will display advanced filters for each column in the page.

**NOTE**: Unlike the "find while you type" feature, the Advanced Filter Tool is not applied to the list of devices until you select the **[Apply]** button.

4. In the Advanced Filter Tool, you can filter by one or more of the following filters:

- Device Name. In the Match Any fields, you can enter one or more text strings to match, including
  special characters. The Vanished Device Manager page will display only devices that have a
  matching device name.
- IP Address. In the Match Any fields, you can enter one or more text strings to match, including special characters. The Vanished Device Manager page will display only devices that have a matching IP address.
- Device Category. Select from a list of device categories that have member devices. The Vanished
   Device Manager page will display only devices that have a matching device category. In the Match
   Any fields, you can enter one or more text strings to match, including special characters.
- Device Class | Sub-class. In the Match Any fields, you can enter one or more text strings to match, including special characters. The Vanished Device Manager page will display only devices that have a matching device class or sub-class.
- *DID*. In the *From* and *To* field, you can specify a range of device IDs. The **Vanished Device**Manager page will display only devices that fall within that range of device IDs.
- Organization. Select from a list of organizations that have member devices. The Vanished Device
   Manager page will display only devices that have a matching organization. In the Match Any fields,
   you can enter one or more text strings to match, including special characters.
- Current State. You can select from a list of device states. The Vanished Device Manager page will display only devices that have a matching state.
- Collection Group. Select from a list of collection groups that have member devices. The Vanished Device Manager page will display only devices that have a matching collection group.
- Collection State. You can select from a list of collection states. The Vanished Device Manager page will display only devices that have a matching state.
- Vanished Date. In the From and To field, you can specify a range of vanished dates, in the format yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss. The Vanished Device Manager page will display only device with a vanished date that falls within that range of date.
- Hour Until Purge. In the Match Any fields, you can enter one or more text strings to match, including
  special characters. The Vanished Device Manager page will display only devices that have a
  matching number of hours until purge.
- 5. After selecting all filters, select the [Apply] button to apply the filters to the list of devices.
- 6. To reset each field and apply no filters, select the [Reset] button.

**TIP**: You can perform an advanced filter and then perform a second advanced filter on the results of the first advanced filter. You can continue to modify and apply an advanced filter multiple times.

# Manually Purge Selected Devices

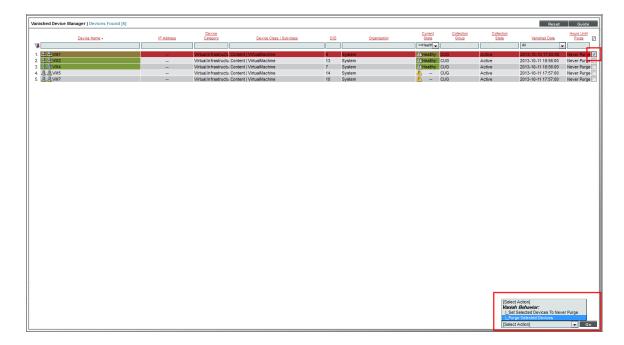
You can manually purge one or more devices in the Vanished Device Manager page.

When a device is purged, the ScienceLogic platform stops trying to collect data from the component device. The purged device will not appear in reports or views in any pages in the user interface. When a device is purged, all of its configuration data and collected data is deleted from the Database Server.

NOTE: When a device is purged, all children of that device are also purged.

To purge one or more vanished devices:

In the Vanished Device Manager page (Registry > Devices > Vanished Device Manager), select the
checkbox for each device you want to purge. To select all checkboxes for all devices, select the red checkbox
 at the top of the page.



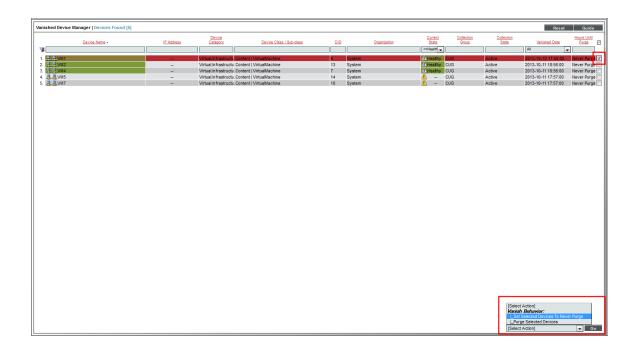
- 2. In the **Select Action** drop-down list, select Purge Selected Devices.
- 3. Select the [Go] button.

# Set One or More Devices to Never Purge

You can specify that a vanished device should never be purged. When you define this setting for a device, the device is never purged, regardless of the global threshold for **Component Purge Timeout** in the **Global Threshold Settings** page or the **Component Purge Timeout** threshold set for the device in the **Device Thresholds** page.

To set one or more vanished devices to never be purged:

1. In the **Vanished Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Vanished Device Manager), select the checkbox for each device you want to prevent from being purged. To select all checkboxes for all devices, select the select the red checkbox (**(**) at the top of the page.



- 2. In the **Select Action** drop-down list, select Set Selected Devices to Never Purge.
- 3. Select the [Go] button.

# Chapter

34

#### **Device Dashboards**

#### Overview

A dashboard is a page that displays graphical reports. Each report, called a widget, is displayed in its own pane. To define a graphical report, you select from a list of pre-defined widgets and then customize the selected widget by supplying values in the configuration fields. The customized widget then generates a graph, chart, table, or other information in a pane in the dashboard. For information on generating and viewing dashboards, see the **Dashboards** manual.

The **Device Summary** page, which is displayed when you select the graph icon (411) for a device, displays one or more dashboards similar to the dashboards available under the **[Dashboards]** tab.

Dashboards for the **Device Summary** page are always displayed with the context set to the device being viewed. Typically, the widgets on a device dashboard are configured to read the device context, i.e. the widgets will display data for the device being viewed.

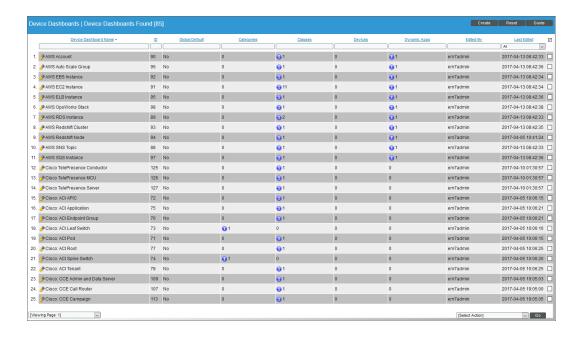
The **Device Dashboards** page (System > Customize > Device Dashboards) displays a list of dashboards that can be displayed for a device in the **Device Summary** page. From the **Device Dashboards** page, you can create, edit, delete, and align device dashboards.

# Viewing the List of Device Dashboards

The **Device Dashboards** page displays a list of existing device dashboards. These dashboards include predefined device dashboards (which are installed with the ScienceLogic platform or can be installed with a PowerPack) and any user-defined device dashboards.

Device Dashboards 548

For each device dashboard, the **Device Dashboards** page displays:



**TIP**: To sort the list of dashboards, click on a column heading. The list will be sorted by the column value, in ascending order. To sort by descending order, click the column heading again. The *Last Edited* column sorts by descending order on the first click; to sort by ascending order, click the column heading again.

- Device Dashboard Name. Name of the device dashboard.
- ID. Unique ID that the ScienceLogic platform automatically assigned to each device dashboard.
- Global Default. Specifies whether the device dashboard is the default device dashboard for all devices.
- Categories. Specifies the number of device categories aligned with the device dashboard.
- Classes. Specifies the number of device classes aligned with the device dashboard.
- **Devices**. Specifies the number of devices that have been manually aligned with the device dashboard.
- Dynamic Apps. Specifies the number of Dynamic Applications that are aligned with the device dashboard.
- Edited By. ScienceLogic user who created or last edited the device dashboard.
- Last Edited. Date and time the device dashboard was created or last edited.

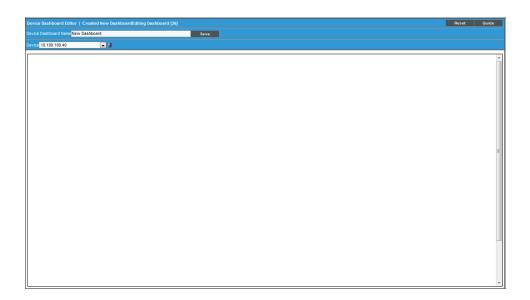
**NOTE**: By default, the cursor is placed in the first Filter-While-You-Type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields.

550

# Creating a Device Dashboard

To create a device dashboard:

- 1. Go to the **Device Dashboards** page (System > Customize > Device Dashboards).
- 2. In the **Device Dashboards** page, click the **[Create]** button.
- 3. The **Device Dashboard Editor** page appears. Supply values in the following fields:



- Device Dashboard Name. Name of the device dashboard.
- **Device**. Select a device to provide sample data while you create the dashboard. This device will not be permanently associated with the dashboard.
- Adding Widgets. To add a widget, go to the big pane below the Device field. Left-click and drag with
  your mouse to draw a rectangle. This shape will determine the initial size and position of the widget in
  your dashboard. When the Widget Configuration page appears, configure the widget as you would
  for a dashboard.

**NOTE**: For maximum flexibility, when configuring a device-specific widget, ScienceLogic recommends that you select Contextual Device (Auto) in the **Element** field.

NOTE: For details on configuring widgets, see the manual Dashboards.

4. The new device dashboard is automatically saved.

Device Dashboards

#### Aligning Device Dashboards

The device dashboard that is defined as the "Global Default" is the default dashboard that appears in the in the **Device Summary** page for each device.

The ScienceLogic platform decides what to display in the **Device Summary** page as follows:

- If the device is manually aligned with a device dashboard (in the **Device Properties** page), that dashboard is displayed in the **Device Summary** page for the device.
- If the device is not manually aligned with a device dashboard, the device dashboard that is aligned with the Device Class is displayed.
- If the device class is not aligned with a device dashboard, the device dashboard that is aligned with the Device Category is displayed.
- If the device category is not aligned with a device dashboard, the device dashboard that is defined as the "Global Default" is displayed.

NOTE: If the *Prefer Global Device Summary Dashboard Over Category/Class* checkbox is checked in the **Behavior Settings** page (System > Settings > Behavior) and a device is not manually aligned with a device dashboard, the dashboard that is defined as the "Global Default" is displayed.

**NOTE:** Although you can align a device dashboard with a Dynamic Application, the device dashboards that are aligned with Dynamic Applications are never displayed in the **Device Summary** page as the default display. However, from the **Device Summary** page, a user can select and view any device dashboards that are aligned with Dynamic Applications for the device.

#### Aligning a Device Dashboard with a Device

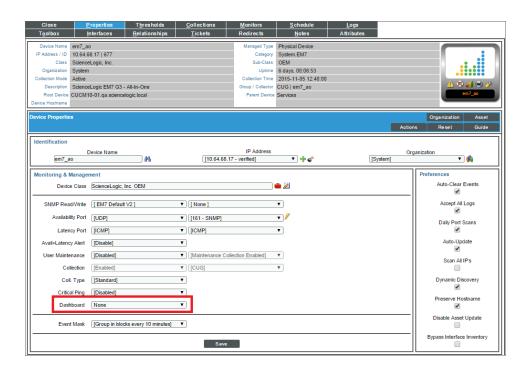
You can manually align a device dashboard with a device. The device dashboard will then appear as the default view in the **Device Summary** page.

**NOTE**: From the **Device Summary** page, the user can select and view any device dashboards that are associated with the device, the device's device class, the device's device category, the device's Dynamic Applications, and the Global Default.

To align a device dashboard with a device:

- 1. Go to the **Device Manager** page (Registry > Devices > Device Manager).
- 2. Find the device you want to align with a device dashboard. Click the wrench icon (🏲) for that device.

3. In the **Device Properties** page, edit the following field:



- **Dashboard**. Select a device dashboard from a list of all device dashboards in the ScienceLogic platform. The selected device dashboard will appear by default in the **Device Summary** page for this device.
- 4. Click the [Save] button.

#### Aligning a Device Dashboard with a Device Class

You can manually align a device dashboard with a device class. For devices that do not have a device dashboard defined in the **Device Properties** page, the device dashboard associated with the Device Class will appear as the default view in the **Device Summary** page.

**NOTE**: From the **Device Summary** page, the user can select and view any device dashboards that are associated with the device, the device's device class, the device's device category, the device's Dynamic Applications, and the Global Default.

To align a device dashboard with a device class:

- 1. Go to the **Device Class Editor** page (System > Customize > Device Classes).
- 2. In the **Device Class Register** pane, find the device class you want to align with a device dashboard. Click the wrench icon ( ) for that device class.

Device Dashboards 552

- 3. In the **Device Class Editor** page, edit the following field:
  - **Dashboard**. Select a device dashboard from a list of all device dashboards in the ScienceLogic platform. The selected device dashboard will be associated with all devices that use this device class and will appear as an option in the **Device Summary** page.



4. Click the [Save] button.

**NOTE**: If a PowerPack updates one or more device classes, the ScienceLogic platform will not overwrite the alignment between device dashboards and any updated device classes.

#### Aligning a Device Dashboard with a Device Category

You can manually align a device dashboard with a device category. For devices that do not have a device dashboard defined in the **Device Properties** page or a device dashboard defined in the **Device Class Editor** page, the device dashboard associated with the Device Category will appear as the default view in the **Device Summary** page.

**NOTE**: From the **Device Summary** page, the user can select and view any device dashboards that are associated with the device, the device's device class, the device's device category, the device's Dynamic Applications, and the Global Default.

To align a device dashboard with a device category:

- 1. Go to the **Device Category Editor** page (System > Customize > Device Categories).
- 2. In the **Register** pane, find the device category you want to align with a device dashboard. Click the wrench icon ( ) for that device category.
- 3. In the **Editor** pane, edit the following field:
  - **Device Dashboard**. Select a device dashboard from a list of all device dashboards in the ScienceLogic platform. The selected device dashboard will be associated with all devices that use this device category and will appear as an option in the **Device Summary** page.



4. Click the [Save] button.

**NOTE**: If a PowerPack updates one or more device categories, the ScienceLogic platform will not overwrite the alignment between device dashboards and any updated device categories.

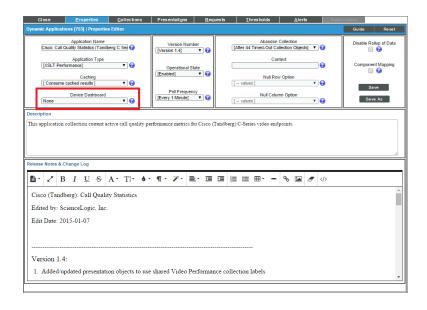
#### Aligning a Device Dashboard with a Dynamic Application

You can manually align a device dashboard with a Dynamic Application. For each device that subscribes to the Dynamic Application, the aligned device dashboard will appear as an option in the **Device Summary** page.

**NOTE**: From the **Device Summary** page, the user can select and view any device dashboards that are associated with the device, the device's device class, the device's device category, the device's Dynamic Applications, and the Global Default.

To manually align a device dashboard with a Dynamic Application:

- 1. Go to the **Dynamic Applications Manager** page (System > Manage > Applications).
- 2. Find the Dynamic Application you want to align with a device dashboard. Click the wrench icon ( ) for that Dynamic Application.
- 3. In the **Dynamic Applications Properties Editor** page, edit the following field:
  - Device Dashboard. Select a device dashboard from a list of all device dashboards in the
    ScienceLogic platform. The selected device dashboard will be associated with all devices that
    subscribe to this Dynamic Application and will appear as an option in the Device Summary page.



4. Click the [Save] button.

Device Dashboards 554

**NOTE**: If a PowerPack updates one or more Dynamic Applications, the ScienceLogic platform will not overwrite the alignment between device dashboards and any updated Dynamic Applications.

## Editing a Device Dashboard

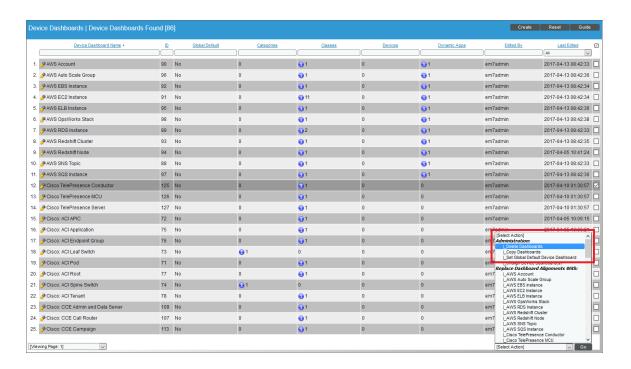
To edit a device dashboard:

- 1. Go to the **Device Dashboards** page (System > Customize > Device Dashboards).
- 2. In the **Device Dashboards** page, find the device dashboard you want to edit. Click its wrench icon (💞).
- 3. The Device Dashboard Editor page appears. Edit one or more fields and/or the dashboard widgets.
- 4. The ScienceLogic platform automatically saves your changes.

## Deleting a Device Dashboard

To delete one or more device dashboards:

- 1. Go to the **Device Dashboards** page (System > Customize > Device Dashboards).
- 2. In the Device Dashboards page, select the checkbox for each dashboard you want to delete.
- 3. In the **Select Action** drop-down list, select Delete Dashboards.



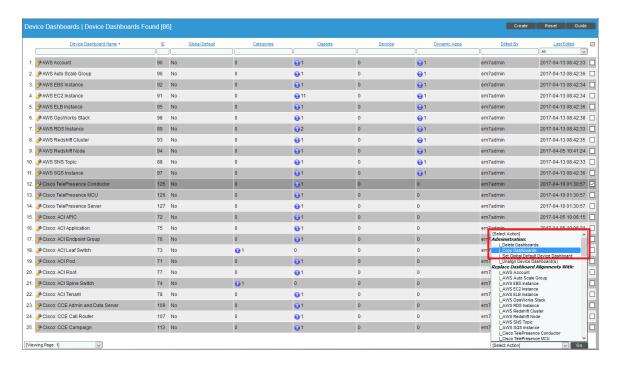
4. Click the **[Go]**button. The selected device dashboard(s) will no longer appear in this page or be accessible in the **Device Summary** page.

NOTE: You cannot delete a device dashboard that is defined as the Global Default.

#### Copying a Device Dashboard

To copy one or more device dashboards:

- 1. Go to the **Device Dashboards** page (System > Customize > Device Dashboards).
- 2. In the **Device Dashboards** page, select the checkbox for each dashboard you want to copy.
- 3. In the **Select Action** drop-down list, select Copy Dashboards.



4. Click the **[Go]** button. One or more new device dashboards will appear in this page with names that start with "Copy of".

#### Defining the Global Default for Device Dashboards

The device dashboard that is defined as the "Global Default" is the default dashboard that appears in the in the **Device Summary** page for each device.

Device Dashboards 556

The ScienceLogic platform decides what to display in the **Device Summary** page as follows:

- If the device is manually aligned with a device dashboard (in the **Device Properties** page), that dashboard is displayed in the **Device Summary** page for the device.
- If the device is not manually aligned with a device dashboard, the device dashboard that is aligned with the Device Class is displayed.
- If the device class is not aligned with a device dashboard, the device dashboard that is aligned with the Device Category is displayed.
- If the device category is not aligned with a device dashboard, the device dashboard that is defined as the "Global Default" is displayed.

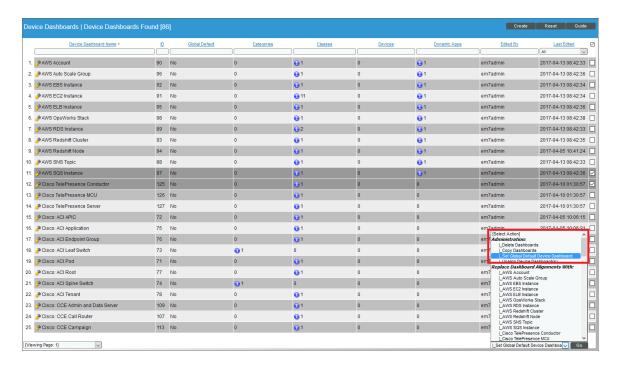
NOTE: If the *Prefer Global Device Summary Dashboard Over Category/Class* checkbox is checked in the **Behavior Settings** page (System > Settings > Behavior) and a device is not manually aligned with a device dashboard, the dashboard that is defined as the "Global Default" is displayed.

**NOTE**: Although you can align a device dashboard with a Dynamic Application, the device dashboards that are aligned with Dynamic Applications are never displayed in the **Device Summary** page as the default display. However, from the **Device Summary** page, a user can select and view any device dashboards that are aligned with Dynamic Applications for the device.

To define the Global Default for device dashboards:

- 1. Go to the **Device Dashboards** page (System > Customize > Device Dashboards).
- 2. In the **Device Dashboards** page, select the checkbox for the dashboard you want to define as the Global Default.

3. In the **Select Action** drop-down list, select Set Global Default Device Dashboard.



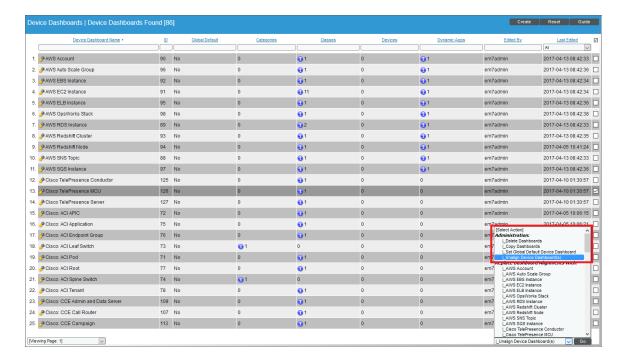
4. Click the **[Go]** button. In the **Global Default** field for the selected device dashboard the value "Yes" will appear.

# Unaligning a Device Dashboard

If you no longer want a device dashboard to appear as an option in the **Device Summary**page for any devices, you can remove all alignments for that device dashboard. To do this:

- 1. Go to the **Device Dashboards** page (System > Customize > Device Dashboards).
- 2. In the **Device Dashboards** page, select the checkbox for the dashboard you want to remove from the **Device Summary** page.

3. In the **Select Action** drop-down list, select Unalign Device Dashboard(s).



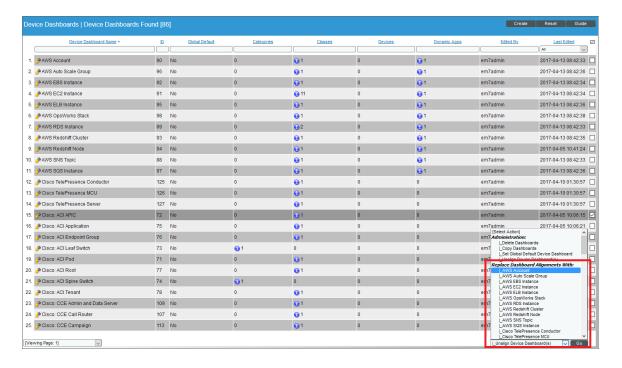
- 4. Click the [Go] button.
- 5. The selected dashboards are no longer aligned with Device Categories, Device Classes, Devices, or Dynamic Applications. The selected dashboards will no longer appear as an option in the **Device Summary** page for any devices.

## Moving Alignment for Device Dashboards

You can specify that you want a device dashboard to "steal" all the alignments from another device dashboard. When you do this, the device dashboard that is stolen from will no longer have any alignment. To move alignments from one dashboard to another:

- 1. Go to the **Device Dashboards** page (System > Customize > Device Dashboards).
- 2. In the **Device Dashboards** page, select the checkbox for the dashboard that you want to "steal" alignments.

3. In the **Select Action** drop-down list, select Replace Dashboard Alignments with and then select the device dashboard that you want to "steal" alignments from.



- 4. Click the [Go] button.
- 5. The Device Dashboards page shows that the alignments have been removed from the device dashboard that you chose in the Select Action drop-down. In the Device Dashboards page, the device dashboard for which you selected the checkbox now displays all the alignments that it "stole" from the other device dashboard.

#### 35

# Chapter

**35** 

# **Using Custom Attributes**

#### Overview

Custom Attributes are name-value pairs. You can use custom attributes to add custom descriptive fields to assets, devices, interfaces, themes, and vendors. In the the ScienceLogic platform, you can create and update custom attributes via the API, in configuration Dynamic Applications, and in the **Custom Attribute Manager** page. Custom attributes can be used to dynamically define device groups and can be viewed with the custom table widget.

There are two categories of custom attributes:

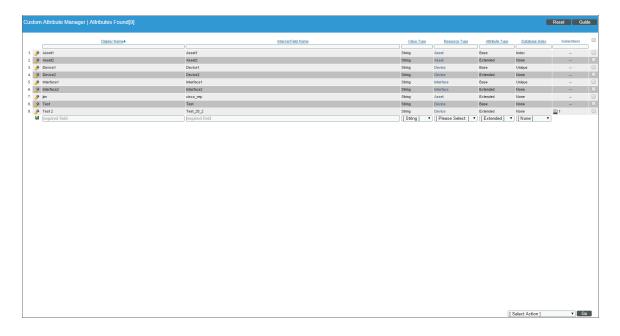
- Base Custom Attributes. These custom attributes are applied to each member of an element type. For example, a base attribute for devices would be applied to all devices.
- Extended Custom Attributes. These custom attributes are applied individually to one or more members of an element type. For example, you could apply the custom attribute cisco\_ios\_version only to those asset records for Cisco devices; you would not want to assign this custom attribute to all asset records.

This chapter will describe how you can create and use custom attributes for devices.

Using Custom Attributes 561

# Viewing the List of Custom Attributes

The **Custom Attribute Manager** page (System > Manage > Custom Attributes) displays a list of all the existing custom attributes created through the user interface.



For each custom attribute, the **Custom Attribute Manager** page displays the following information:

- Display Name. Name for the custom attribute. This value appears in the user interface.
- Internal Field Name. Name for the custom attribute that complies with XML naming rules. If the value in the
   Display Name field does not comply with XML rules, the ScienceLogic platform will convert the value to a
   name that complies with XML rules.

NOTE: Names for custom attributes must conform to XML naming standards. The attribute name can contain any combination of alphanumeric characters, a period, a dash, a combining character, or an extending character. If a value in the *Display Name* column does not conform to XML standards, the ScienceLogic platform will replace non-valid characters with an underscore plus the hexadecimal value of the illegal character plus an underscore. So "serial number" would be replaced with "serial\_X20 number".

- Value Type. Specifies the type of value that will be saved in the custom attribute. Choice are:
  - o String. Non-numeric value
  - o Integer. Numeric value

- Resource Type. Specifies the ScienceLogic element that will use the custom attribute. Choices are:
  - Asset. Custom attribute will be associated with one or more asset records.
  - Device. Custom attribute will be associated with one or more devices.
  - o Interface. Custom attribute will be associated with one or more network interfaces.
  - Theme. Custom attribute will be associated with one or more user-interface themes.
  - Vendor. Custom attribute will be associated with one or more vendor records.
- Attribute Type. Specifies the behavior of the custom attribute. Choices are:
  - Base. A base custom attribute is automatically aligned to all members of the specified **Resource Type**.
     For example, a base custom attribute for devices would be aligned with each and every device in your ScienceLogic system.
  - Extended. An extended custom attribute is manually assigned only to some members of the **Resource** *Type* and should not be assigned to all members of the **Resource Type**. For example, you could apply the custom attribute cisco\_ios\_version only to those asset records for Cisco devices; you would not want to assign this custom attribute to all asset records.
- Database Index. Specifies how the custom attribute is stored in the ScienceLogic database. Choices are:
  - None. Custom attribute is not indexed.

**NOTE**: Extended custom attributes allow only the value *None* in this field.

- Unique. For base custom attributes, ensures that the value of each base custom attribute is unique within its **Resource Type**.
- Index. For base custom attributes, allows the ScienceLogic platform to efficiently search for custom attributes in the ScienceLogic database.
- Subscribers. Specifies the Resource Type and number of subscribers. Possible values in this field include:

NOTE: For base custom attributes, the value in the Subscribers column is always "- - " (dash dash).

- (Asset). Custom attribute is associated with one or more asset records. Clicking on the icon displays the **Custom Attribute Subscribers** page, where you can view details about each subscriber of type Asset.
- (Device). Custom attribute is associated with one or more devices. Clicking on the icon displays the Custom Attribute Subscribers page, where you can view details about each subscriber of type Device.
- Interface). Custom attribute is associated with one or more network interfaces. Clicking on the icon displays the Custom Attribute Subscribers page, where you can view details about each subscriber of type Interface.

Using Custom Attributes 563

- \*\*(Theme). Custom attribute is associated with one or more user-interface themes. Clicking on the icon displays the **Custom Attribute Subscribers** page, where you can view details about each subscriber of type Theme.
- Selection (Vendor). Custom attribute is associated with one or more vendor records. Clicking on the icon displays the **Custom Attribute Subscribers** page, where you can view details about each subscriber of type Vendor.

#### Filtering the List of Custom Attributes

You can filter the list on the **Custom Attribute Manager** page by one or more parameters. Only attributes that meet all the filter criteria will be displayed in the **Custom Attribute Manager** page.

To filter by parameter, enter text into the desired filter-while-you-type field. The **Custom Attribute Manager**page searches for attributes that match the text, including partial matches. By default, the cursor is placed in the left-most filter-while-you-type field. You can use the <Tab> key or your mouse to move your cursor through the fields. The list is dynamically updated as you type. Text matches are not case-sensitive.

You can also use special characters to filter each parameter.

Filter by one or more of the following parameters:

- **Display Name**. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the **Custom Attribute**Managerpage will display only custom attributes that have a matching display name.
- Internal Field Name. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Custom Attribute Managerpage will display only custom attributes that have a matching internal field name.
- Value Type. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Custom Attribute Managerpage will display only custom attributes that have a matching value type.
- Resource Type. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Custom Attribute Managerpage will display only custom attributes that have a matching resource type.
- Attribute Type. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Custom Attribute Managerpage will display only custom attributes that have a matching attribute type
- Database Index. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Custom Attribute Managerpage will display only custom attributes that have a matching database index.
- Subscribers. You can enter text to match, including special characters, and the Custom Attribute Managerpage will display only custom attributes that have a matching number of subscribers.

#### Viewing the List of Subscribers for a Custom Attribute

To view a list of subscribers for a custom attribute:

- 1. Go to the **Custom Attribute Manager** page (System > Manage > Custom Attributes).
- 2. Click the icon in the **Subscribers** column.
- 3. The Custom Attribute Subscribers modal page appears.

- For (Asset), the Custom Attribute Subscribers modal page displays the following for each subscriber:
  - Make. Make of the asset.
  - o Model. Model of the asset.
  - **Device**. If applicable, name of the device associated with the asset record.
  - Asset Tag. Asset tag associated with the asset.
  - Name of the custom attribute. The value assigned to the custom attribute for this subscriber.
- For (Device), the Custom Attribute Subscribers modal page displays the following for each subscriber:
  - **DID**. Device ID for the device. The ScienceLogic platform automatically assigns this value to the device
  - Device Name. Name of the device.
  - IP Address. If applicable, the IP address associated with the device.
  - Name of the custom attribute. The value assigned to the custom attribute for this subscriber.
- For \( \bigcup \) (Interface), the **Custom Attribute Subscribers** modal page displays the following for each subscriber:
  - **Device Name**. Name of the device associated with the interface.
  - IF Name. Name of the interface.
  - IF Port. Port number associated with the interface.
  - Alias. Alias associated with the interface.
  - Name of the custom attribute. The value assigned to the custom attribute for this subscriber.
- For \$\infty\$ (Theme), the **Custom Attribute Subscribers** modal page displays the following for each subscriber:
  - *ID*. Unique ID associated with the theme. The ScienceLogic platform automatically assigns this value to the theme.
  - Theme Name. Name of the theme.
  - HTML Header/Title. HTML header associated with the theme.
  - Name of the custom attribute. The value assigned to the custom attribute for this subscriber.
- For [Vendor], the Custom Attribute Subscribers modal page displays the following for each subscriber:
  - *ID*. Unique ID associated with the vendor. The ScienceLogic platform automatically assigns this value to the vendor.

Using Custom Attributes 565

- Vendor Name. Name of the vendor.
- Name of the custom attribute. The value assigned to the custom attribute for this subscriber.

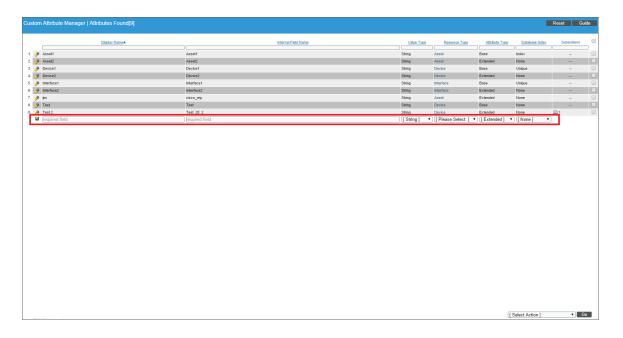
#### Creating Custom Attributes

You can create custom attributes on the **Custom Attribute Manager** page, via the ScienceLogic API, or by using a configuration Dynamic Application. The following rules apply to the creation of custom attributes:

- If you define a base custom attribute for devices on the **Custom Attribute Manager** page, that base custom attribute is aligned with each device in your system. The value of the base custom attribute will be null until you assign a value for each device.
- If you define an extended custom attribute for devices on the **Custom Attribute Manager** page, that extended custom attribute is not aligned with any devices.
- You can use the Attributes page in the Device Administration panel to assign a value or edit the value for
  each custom attribute aligned with a device. For more information, see the chapter Managing a Single
  Device with the Device Administration Panel.
- You can use Dynamic Applications of type "configuration" to create custom attributes and/or assign values to
  custom attributes for devices. For details, see the section on *Using a Dynamic Application to Create*and/or Populate Custom Attributes.
- If you create a base custom attribute for asset records, network interfaces, themes, and vendor records, those
  custom attributes will appear in the ScienceLogic API for the specified entity. Initially, the value of the base
  attribute will be null. You cannot use the ScienceLogic user interface to assign a value to these base custom
  attribute. You must use the ScienceLogic API to assign values to these base custom attribute. For details, see
  the section on Custom Attributes in the ScienceLogic API.
- If you create an extended custom attribute for asset records, network interfaces, themes, and vendor records,
  those custom attributes can be aligned and populated using the ScienceLogic API. You cannot use the
  ScienceLogic user interface to assign a value to these extended custom attributes. You must use the
  ScienceLogic API to assign values to these extended custom attributes. For details, see the section on
  Custom Attributes in the ScienceLogic API.

To create a custom attribute from the **Custom Attribute Manager** page:

1. Go to the **Custom Attribute Manager** page (System > Manage > Custom Attributes).



- 2. In the bottom-most row, enter a value in each field.
- 3. Click the **Save** icon ( $\blacksquare$ ).

#### Deleting One or More Custom Attributes

From the **Custom Attribute Manager** page, you can delete custom attributes from the ScienceLogic platform. To do this:

- 1. Go to the **Custom Attribute Manager** page (System > Manage > Custom Attributes).
- 2. Select the checkbox (🗹) for each custom attribute you want to delete.
- 3. Click the **Select Action** field in the lower-right and select DELETE Custom Attributes.
- 4. Click the [Go] button.

**NOTE:** The ScienceLogic platform will not allow you to delete an extended custom attribute that is aligned with one or more subscribers. If you try to delete an extended custom attribute that is aligned with one or more subscribers, the platform will display the error message: "Error: Some attributes have entities aligned. Unalign entity from attribute before deleting." This message appears to the right of the page title.

Using Custom Attributes 567

### Custom Attributes in the ScienceLogic API

The ScienceLogic API includes resources for adding custom attributes to the following resources:

- /asset
- /device
- The /interface sub-resource under /device resources
- /theme
- /vendor

When you define a custom attribute for a resource:

- For any instance of that resource (e.g., a specific device), you can perform a POST operation specifying a value for that attribute for that instance.
- If you configure the attribute as a base attribute, the attribute will appear in the list of fields for all instances of
  that resource. For example, if you define a custom attribute as a base attribute for the /device resource, the
  response to a GET request for any /device/device\_id resource includes the custom attribute in the list of
  fields
- If you configure the attribute as an extended attribute, the attribute will appear in the list of fields for instances
  of that resource only if a value has been specified for the attribute for that instance. For example, suppose you
  define a custom attribute as an extended attribute for the /device resource. The response to a GET request on
  the /device resource index with the extended\_fetch option enabled will include the custom attribute only for
  devices that have a value for that custom attribute.
- GET requests for the resource index can include filter and sort criteria that use that custom attribute.

When you define a value for a custom attribute by performing a POST request to a resource, the value is available through the API and can be used in dynamic rules for device groups and viewed in the custom table widget.

You can use the ScienceLogic API to view, edit, and create custom attributes. For details on viewing, creating, and editing custom attributes, see the manual *Using the ScienceLogic API*.

# Using a Dynamic Application to Create and/or Populate Custom Attributes

For details on creating aDynamic Application or creating collection objects, see the manual **Dynamic Application Development**.

One of the ways you can create and/or populate a custom attribute for devices is through a Dynamic Application of type configuration.

In Dynamic Applications of archetype configuration, you can:

- Use a collection object to populate the value of an existing custom attribute.
- Use a pair of collection objects to create a custom attribute and provide a value for that custom attribute. You must define a collection object to define the name of the custom attribute; this causes the ScienceLogic system to create a custom attribute with the name from the collection object. You must also define a second collection object to populate the value of the custom attribute.

**NOTE**: For details on creating and managing custom attributes, see the manual **Using the ScienceLogic API**.

The following fields in the **Collection Objects** page allow you to use one or more collection objects to define and/or populate a custom attribute:



- Align to Custom Attribute. Specify the custom attribute to associate with this collection object. The custom attribute will be populated with a value from a collection object. Choices are:
  - None. This collection object is not associated with a custom attribute.
  - Static. This collection object is associated with a specific custom attribute.
  - Static Name. If you selected Static in the Custom Attribute field, the Static Name field appears. In
    this field, specify the name of the custom attribute that you want to populate with the value of the
    collection object. You can select from a list of existing custom attributes.
    - If the list does not include the custom attribute you want to align with the collection, select the plussign icon ( ). The icon clears the field and allows you to manually enter a value.
    - If you manually specify a custom attribute, the platform will search for a custom attribute with a matching name and populate the custom attribute with the value of this collection object. If the platform does not find a custom attribute with a matching name and therefore creates the custom attribute, the new custom attribute will be an extended custom attribute, for devices. The data type will be integer (for numeric values) or string (for all other value types).

Using Custom Attributes 569

• Dynamic Name. You can use a pair of collection objects to populate the name and value of a custom attribute. You must define each collection object separately. When you select Dynamic Name in the Custom Attribute field, the name of the custom attribute is populated with the value of the collection object. If the platform does not find a custom attribute with a matching name, the platform will create the custom attribute. If the platform does not find a custom attribute with a matching name and therefore creates the custom attribute, the new custom attribute will be an extended custom attribute, for devices. The data type will be integer (for numeric values) or string (for all other value types).

**NOTE**: If you select *Dynamic Name* in the **Custom Attribute** field, you must create a second collection object that will populate the value of the custom attribute.

NOTE: Names for custom attributes must conform to XML naming standards. The attribute name can contain any combination of alphanumeric characters, a period, a dash, a combining character or an extending character. If a collected value for an attribute name does not conform to XML standards, the platform will replace non-valid characters with an underscore + the hexadecimal value of the illegal character + an underscore. So "serial number" would be replaced with "serial\_X20\_number". The attribute label will use the original, non-converted value ("serial number").

- **Dynamic Value**. The value of the custom attribute selected in the *Dynamic Name* field is populated with the value of the collection object.
- Dynamic Name. If you selected Dynamic Value in the Custom Attribute field, the Dynamic Name field appears. Select from the list of collection objects that have a Custom Attribute value of Dynamic Name.

**NOTE**: The collection object assigned to the *Dynamic Value* is added to the same *Group* as the collection object assigned to the associated *Dynamic Name*. If the collection object for *Dynamic Name* is not assigned to a *Group*, you will be prompted to select a *Group* for the both the collection object for *Dynamic Name* and the collection object for *Dynamic Value*.

**NOTE**: Each group can contain only one collection object that is assigned to a *Dynamic Value* and only one collection object that is assigned to a *Dynamic Name*. The group can contain other collection objects, but should not contain more than one collection object assigned to a *Dynamic Value* and not more than one collection object assigned to a *Dynamic Name*.

# Using Custom Attributes to Define Device Groups

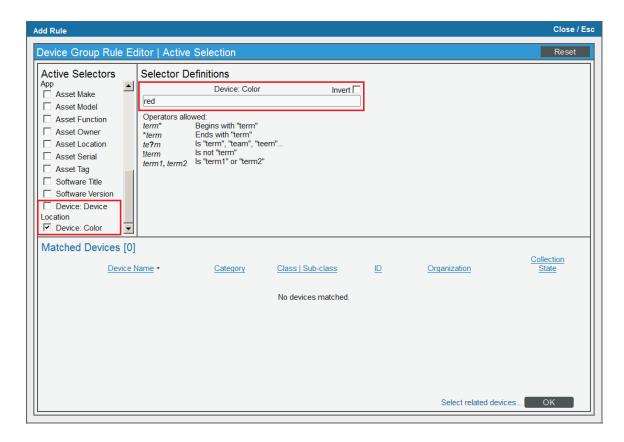
A device group is a group of multiple devices, grouped together for ease of management. You can use custom attributes to define membership in a device group. Only devices that have a specific value for a custom attribute will be included in the device group.

You can add devices to a device group either explicitly or dynamically.

- You can create **static device groups**, where you explicitly assign one or more devices to a device group.
- You can create **dynamic device groups**, where you define **rules** for the device group. Each device that meets the criteria in the rule is automatically included in the device group. For example, suppose that you define a rule that specifies "include all devices in the System organization, with an IP address that starts with '10.100.100' ". The ScienceLogic platform would automatically assign all devices from the System organization with an IP of "10.100.100.\*" to the new device group. When a new device is added to the System organization with an IP that begins with "10.100.100.\*", that device will also be included in the device group. If a device with an IP that starts with "10.100.100" is removed from the System organization, that device will also be removed from the device group.
- You can create a device group that includes both explicitly assigned devices and also includes a dynamic rule. This device group will include both the explicitly assigned devices and all devices that meet the criteria in the dynamic rule.

Using Custom Attributes 571

In the **Device Group Rule Editor** page, the **Active Selectors** field includes an entry for each custom attribute you have defined with the API or with a Dynamic Application. When you select a custom attribute, the **Selector Definitions** pane displays a field in which you can enter a string. The platform will use the string to search for devices that have a matching value for this custom attribute.



In the example above, we selected the custom attribute Device: Color and specified the value red. Our device group will include only devices that ihave the value red assigned to the Device: Color custom attribute.

For additional details on defining device groups and defining device group rules, see the manual **Device Groups** and **Device Templates**.

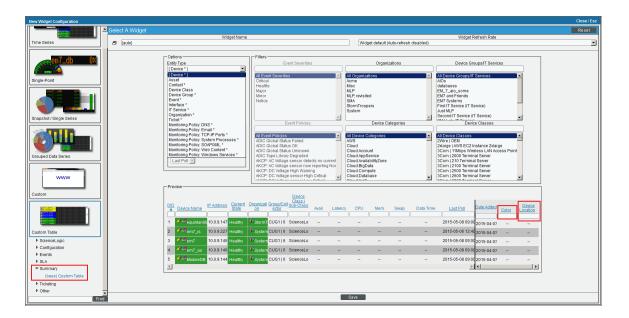
### Viewing Custom Attributes in the Custom Table Widget

A dashboard is a page that displays one or more graphical reports, called widgets. The ScienceLogic platform includes pre-defined widgets that can be customized and displayed in the **Dashboards tab** page. These widgets are displayed in their own pane, and display graphs, tables, and/or text.

To define an instance of a widget, you first select from a list of pre-defined widget definitions, and then customize what will be displayed by the selected widget by supplying values in the option fields provided by that widget.

The **Custom Table** widget displays multiple instances of an entity in a table. The **Custom Table** widget can be configured to display a list of devices, device classes, or device groups (and also other entities).

The generated table displays information about each entity in the list. You can configure which information is included in the table in the *Layout Editor* pane during configuration.



The Layout Editor panel displays the columns that will be displayed in the widget.

In the example above, Color and Device Location are custom attributes for devices.

If you selected *Device*, or *Asset*, or *Interface* in the *Entity Type* field of the Custom Table Widget, the Layout Editor will include columns for the custom attributes defined in your system for that entity type.

- By default, the columns for the custom attributes are excluded from the configuration.
- If an extended custom attribute is defined in your system but has not been assigned a value for any asset, device, or interface, it will not appear in the list of columns.

You can add or remove custom attributes from the layout of the widget using the following buttons:

• <| > You can move columns from left to right by clicking on the arrow characters at the top of each column and dragging the column left or right. Double-clicking on the arrow moves the column out of the display past a black bar to the right. All disabled columns can be seen to the right of the black bar. Double-clicking on the arrow again moves the column back into the display.

For additional details on configuring the Custom Table Widget, see the Dashboards manual.

Using Custom Attributes 573

© 2003 - 2018, ScienceLogic, Inc.

All rights reserved.

#### LIMITATION OF LIABILITY AND GENERAL DISCLAIMER

ALL INFORMATION AVAILABLE IN THIS GUIDE IS PROVIDED "AS IS," WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. SCIENCELOGIC™ AND ITS SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT.

Although ScienceLogic<sup> $\top$ </sup> has attempted to provide accurate information on this Site, information on this Site may contain inadvertent technical inaccuracies or typographical errors, and ScienceLogic<sup> $\top$ </sup> assumes no responsibility for the accuracy of the information. Information may be changed or updated without notice. ScienceLogic<sup> $\top$ </sup> may also make improvements and / or changes in the products or services described in this Site at any time without notice.

#### Copyrights and Trademarks

ScienceLogic, the ScienceLogic logo, and EM7 are trademarks of ScienceLogic, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

Below is a list of trademarks and service marks that should be credited to ScienceLogic, Inc. The  $^{\circledR}$  and  $^{\intercal}$  symbols reflect the trademark registration status in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and may not be appropriate for materials to be distributed outside the United States.

- ScienceLogic<sup>™</sup>
- EM7<sup>™</sup> and em7<sup>™</sup>
- Simplify IT<sup>™</sup>
- Dynamic Application<sup>™</sup>
- Relational Infrastructure Management<sup>™</sup>

The absence of a product or service name, slogan or logo from this list does not constitute a waiver of ScienceLogic's trademark or other intellectual property rights concerning that name, slogan, or logo.

Please note that laws concerning use of trademarks or product names vary by country. Always consult a local attorney for additional guidance.

#### Other

If any provision of this agreement shall be unlawful, void, or for any reason unenforceable, then that provision shall be deemed severable from this agreement and shall not affect the validity and enforceability of any remaining provisions. This is the entire agreement between the parties relating to the matters contained herein.

In the U.S. and other jurisdictions, trademark owners have a duty to police the use of their marks. Therefore, if you become aware of any improper use of ScienceLogic Trademarks, including infringement or counterfeiting by third parties, report them to Science Logic's legal department immediately. Report as much detail as possible about the misuse, including the name of the party, contact information, and copies or photographs of the potential misuse to: legal@sciencelogic.com



800-SCI-LOGIC (1-800-724-5644)

International: +1-703-354-1010